

# F-08A

ISSUE DATE:

'09.6

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

<sup>NTT</sup>**docomo**

docomo **STYLE** series

Easy Search/Contents/Precautions	
Before Using the Handset	
Voice/Videophone Calls	
Phonebook	
Sound/Screen/Light Settings	
Security Settings	
Mail	
i-mode/Full Browser	
i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier	
Camera	
1Seg	
Music	
i-appli/i-Widget	
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa	
Data Management	
Convenient Functions	
Character Entry	
Network Services	
Overseas Use	
PC Connection	
Appendix/Troubleshooting	
Index/Quick Manual	

## DOCOMO W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS System

### Thank you for purchasing "docomo STYLE series F-08A" mobile terminal.

Before and during use of your FOMA terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this manual and instruction manuals that come with other optional devices to ensure you are able to correctly use your FOMA terminal. For more detailed information, contact "General Inquiries" using the phone number on the back of this manual. F-08A is your capable partner. Please treat it with care and enjoy using it for years.

### Before using your FOMA terminal

- Because your FOMA terminal uses wireless transmission, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to penetrate, such as tunnels, underground passages and some buildings, in areas where radio waves are weak, or out of service area. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves and you are not moving (traveling).
- Use your FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public spaces, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Because your FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, it is possible that a third party may attempt to tap your calls. However, the W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS system automatically applies a confidential communication function to all calls, so even if a third party could somehow tap a call, they only hear noise.
- Your FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital data. When you are operating your FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Maintain a separate record of the data (Phonebook, Schedule, Notepad, Recorded messages, Voice memos, Movie memo, etc.) you registered in your FOMA terminal. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of saved contents of data resulting from malfunction, repair, changing of the model or other handling of FOMA terminal.
- You are recommended to save important data to microSD card. Using DOCOMO keitai datalink, you can transfer and save phonebook, mail, schedule and other data to a PC.

- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL/TLS.  
Neither DOCOMO nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL/TLS. If the data should be erased, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.  
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., Comodo CA Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area.
- FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and DOCOMO's roaming area.

### Before using this manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekai Tool (→P90). When changing the design of the menu screen using Kisekai Tool, the structure of some menus may be changed according to the usage frequency depending on the menu type. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applicable to some menu items.

Latest information about this manual can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website.

- User's Manual Download

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

\* The URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

# Viewing/Searching this manual

This manual provides the methods below for necessary function's easy search.

## Searching from Easy Search

▶ P4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions by plain words.

## Searching from Menu list

▶ P344

Search from menu displayed on the display of F-08A.

## Searching from thumb indices

▶ Front cover

Search from the index on the front cover.

\*See P2-3 for examples.

## Searching from Contents

▶ P6

Search from Contents categorized into chapters by functions.

## Searching by main functions

▶ P8

Search from featured functions or new functions of F-08A.

## Searching from the Index

▶ P400

Search from the function name, item keyword or service name.

## Using the Quick Manual

▶ P408

You can cut out Quick Manual from this manual and carry it with you anywhere.

"Quick Manual" in English version and "Quick Manual (Overseas Use)" that is useful when you use FOMA terminal overseas are appended.

- In this "Manual for F-08A", "F-08A" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal". Please be forewarned.
- This manual explains functions performed with a microSD card. A microSD card is required separately.  
microSD card→P269
- The images or illustration used in this manual are examples. They may differ from the actual displays.
- The icons and screens that appear on the display have been initialized to the default settings selected from the combinations prepared in FOMA terminal depending on FOMA terminal color.  
This manual mainly gives descriptions assuming that Kisekai Tool is set to "Purple".→P90
- In this manual, "i-appli compatible with Osaifu-Keitai which supports IC card function" is referred to as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli".
- The description of "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering the terminal security code in 4-8 digits.→P98
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

# Viewing/Searching this manual

Methods to search pages are described, taking "Record message" for example.

## Searching from Easy Search

Functions frequently used and convenient functions are categorized by their purposes and with simple words.



### When you cannot answer the call

Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately

Respond and Hold 62

Recording the other party's voice or image ..... Record message 64

## Searching from Menu list

Functions can be searched from the words displayed on the FOMA terminal screen.

### Phonebook & Logs

- 1 Phonebook
- 2 Phonebook new entry
- 3 Add group
- 4 Phonebook (UIM) new entry
- 5 Received calls
- 6 Redial
- 7 Record msg & Voice memo
- 8 Mail logs
- 9 User information

4	4	Phonebook(UIM) new entry		70
4	5	Received calls		54
4	6	Redial		54
4	7	Record msg.&Voice memo		
4	7	1 Record message	OFF	64
4	7	2 Recorded messages		65
4	7	3 Record voice memo		300
				65

## Searching from thumb indices

Functions can be searched by using indices in the order of the front cover, chapter top page and function description page. The chapter top page also gives the list of detailed contents.

### Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Mail

i-mode/Full Browser

Internet/Concier

### Voice/Videophone Calls

#### When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately

Respond and Hold 62

Using public mode ..... 63

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

Record message 64

Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos ..... 65

#### Videophone call settings

Using Chara-den ..... 65

Setting image during a videophone call ..... 66

Changing videophone settings ..... Operation 67

..... call during a call

**Function name**  
This name is listed in Index.

**Outline and supplementary description of the function**

**Typical operating procedure**

**Record message**

**Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call**

When Record message is activated, a greeting message is played and the caller can record message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- When using Zin1, messages of up to 4 incoming calls to Numbers A and B can be recorded to Record message in total. Display differs depending on mode.

**◆ Activating Record message**

1 [Phonebook & Logs] or

When "ON" is set, appears on the stand-by display.

■ **When there is an incoming call with Record message active**

1 **A call is received**

When the response time set in Greeting msg resp time elapses, the greeting message recording Set message

Voice/Videophone Calls

**2 The other party's message is recorded**

- A beep announces the other party at the start and the end. And when approximately 25 seconds elapsed since the start, 2 short beeps are heard to warn that the end is approaching.

**3 When the recording is completed, the call is terminated**

**◆ Responding with quick message recorder <Quick message recorder>**

Even when Record message is not active, you can activate it only once by pressing for 1 second or more while receiving a call. This operation does not set Record message to active.

**✓ INFORMATION**

- Even during the greeting message or recording to Record message, a call can be answered by pressing . For a videophone call, press to send your image, or to send the substitute image. In this case, message before the call was answered is not recorded.
- Record message does not operate when FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned OFF. Use Voice Mail service.
- When Messages are recorded, appears on stand-by display and Record message

**Index related to thumb index**

\* The page shown here represents an example. Images may differ from actual page in this manual.

**Supplementary description of the operation**

**Detailed description and convenient information about the function**

- In this manual, operation by pressing keys is represented by graphic symbols.→P26 "Part names and functions"
- The representations and meanings of operating procedures are as shown below.

Representation example	Meaning
(1 sec. or more)	Press  for 1 second or more.
[Settings & NW services] -	On the stand-by display, , move the cursor to [Settings & NW services] and press . Successively, press   , then press any of  - .

- In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with (Multi-cursor key) and pressing (Enter key) is referred to as "select". Regarding an operation to enter characters in the entry field, the final step of pressing [OK] is omitted.
- This manual uses the default settings to describe operations. If the settings are changed, the displays or operations of FOMA terminal may differ from the ones described in this manual. For the default settings, see Menu List.→P344

# Easy Search

Functions which you want to know can be searched for using friendly words.



## Convenient functions for calls

Showing/Hiding your phone number .....	<b>Caller ID notification</b>	49
Putting the call on hold .....	<b>On hold</b>	53
Changing the volume of the other party's voice .....	<b>Listen volume</b>	53
Switching from voice call to videophone call .....	<b>Switching to videophone call</b>	54



## When you cannot answer the call

Putting the call on hold when you cannot answer it immediately .....	<b>Respond and Hold</b>	62
Notifying the caller that you have to refrain from talking .....	<b>Public mode (Drive mode)</b>	63
.....	<b>Public mode (Power OFF)</b>	63
Recording the other party's voice or image .....	<b>Record message</b>	64



## Changing sound, lighting color and vibration

Setting different ring tone etc. for incoming calls from specific parties .....	<b>Alert by contact</b>	71
Changing ring alert .....	<b>Ring alert</b>	79
Changing loudness of ring tone .....	<b>Adjust volume</b>	80
Making vibration when there is an incoming call .....	<b>Vibrate alert/effect</b>	81

Muting keypad sound .....	<b>Keypad sound</b>	81
Setting silent mode .....	<b>Silent mode</b>	82
Changing the color of keypad light .....	<b>Keypad light</b>	88
Changing color such as light .....	<b>Light alert</b>	93



## Changing displays

Meanings of icons on display .....	<b>Viewing display</b>	29
Switching the menu display .....	<b>Selecting functions from menu</b>	35
Changing stand-by display .....	<b>Stand-by display</b>	84
Displaying a calendar on stand-by display .....	<b>Info/calendar layout</b>	85
Changing font size .....	<b>Font size</b>	95



## Safety and security

Hiding contents of phonebook .....	<b>Secret attribute</b>	75
Locking FOMA remotely in case of misplacement etc. ....	<b>Omakase Lock*<sup>1</sup></b>	101
Rejecting calls with no caller IDs .....	<b>Anonymous caller</b>	112
Rejecting calls from parties not saved in phonebook .....	<b>Unregistered caller</b>	113
Saving data such as phonebook in case of data loss .....	<b>Data Security Service*<sup>2</sup></b>	113



## Making full use of mail

Sending Deco-mail .....	<b>Deco-mail</b>	121
Sending images and/or melodies .....	<b>Attachment</b>	126
Automatically sorting mails .....	<b>Sort method</b>	140



## Making full use of camera

Saving shot still images to microSD card .....	<b>Save to</b>	182
Changing image size .....	<b>Image settings/Recording settings</b>	186
Viewing shot still images .....	<b>Displaying image</b>	256



## Making full use of 1Seg

Watching 1Seg .....	<b>Activate 1Seg</b>	196
Recording 1Seg .....	<b>1Seg recording</b>	201
Reserving watching/recording 1Seg .....	<b>Watching/Recording reservation</b>	203
Changing settings of images and sounds .....	<b>User setting</b>	205

\*1 A charged service.

\*2 A charged service requiring subscription.

- For procedures to search for other functions, see "Viewing/Searching this manual". → P1
- Quick Manual introduces you procedures for using convenient functions. → P408



## Other convenient functions

Reading QR and/or bar code .....	<b>Bar code reader</b>	190
Listening to music .....	<b>MUSIC Player</b>	212
Using microSD card .....	<b>microSD card</b>	269
Sending or receiving data via infrared communication .....	<b>Infrared communication</b>	280
Using alarm clock .....	<b>Alarm clock</b>	288
Using calculator .....	<b>Calculator</b>	302
Using a mobile phone overseas .....	<b>International Roaming</b>	328
Updating software .....	<b>Software update</b>	383
Keeping security software updated .....	<b>Scanning function</b>	387

# Contents

■ Before using your FOMA terminal .....	Inside front cover
■ Viewing/Searching this manual .....	1
■ Easy Search .....	4
■ Main functions of F-08A .....	8
■ Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS) .....	10
■ Handling precautions .....	17
■ Waterproofness .....	19
■ Basic package and main options .....	24

## Before Using the Handset ..... 25

Part names and functions Viewing display Selecting menu Motion sensor Using UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/Removing battery pack Charging battery Battery level Power ON/OFF Select language Date & time Caller ID notification User information etc.

## Voice/Videophone Calls ..... 51

Making a call Redial/Received calls Chakumoji 186/184 Touch-tone signal (DTMF) Call option WORLD CALL Receiving a call Any key answer Close settings Respond and Hold Public mode Recorded messages Using Chara-den Videophone settings Notify of switchable mode etc.

## Phonebook ..... 69

Phonebook new entry Alert by contact Group settings Search/Edit/Delete phonebook Secret attribute Quick dial etc.

## Sound/Screen/Light Settings .....

### ..... 77

Ring alerts & Sounds Adjust volume Vibrate alert/effect Silent mode Timed theme Stand-by display Call image Mail image Power saving mode Select startup menu Display Machi-chara Kisekae Tool Light alert Clock display format etc.

## Security Settings..... 97

Security code Terminal security code change PIN code All lock Omakase Lock Self mode Personal data lock Keypad dial lock Privacy mode Side key hold Lock on close Lock when immobile Accept/Reject call Data Security Service Reset Delete all data Initializing remotely Remote customization etc.

## Mail ..... 119

Composing/Sending i-mode mail Deco-mail Decome-Anime Attachment Saving i-mode mail Quick mail Receiving i-mode mail Check new message Operating mailbox Mail settings MessageR/F Area Mail Composing/Sending SMS etc.

## i-mode/Full Browser ..... 153

Site display Change i-mode password Internet connection Bookmark Screen memo Downloading from site Uploading to site i-mode settings Operating certificate etc.

## i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier ..... 171

i-motion Movie i-Channel i-Channel setting i-concier etc.

## Camera..... 177

Still camera Movie camera Sound recorder Advanced settings Setting for shooting Bar code reader etc.

## **1Seg.....193**

Setting channels 1Seg watching Program guide i-appli Data broadcasting TVlink Multi window Recording Reserving Remote controller with microphone etc.

## **Music.....207**

Setting program Operating Music&Video Channel Saving music data Playing/Managing music data BGM play Remote controller with microphone etc.

## **i-αappli/i-Widget.....221**

Downloading Starting i-αappli i-αappli call i-αappli To i-αappli stand-by display Managing i-αappli i-Widget etc.

## **Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa.....245**

iC transfer service Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αappli IC card lock Receiving ToruCa etc.

## **Data Management.....255**

Displaying/Editing image Playing/Editing moving pictures/i-motion Displaying Machi-chara Displaying Chara-den Playing melody Displaying recorded 1Seg data microSD card Managing data Infrared communication/iC transmission etc.

## **Convenient Functions.....285**

Multiaccess Multitask Quick search Auto power ON/OFF Countdown timer Alarm clock High-pitched alarm Scheduler Shortcut icons Custom menu Side key shortcut Toy's world Fake call Voice memo/Movie memo Call duration/Call cost Calculator Notepad Dictionaries Pedometer/ACT monitor Earphone/Microphone with switch etc.

## **Character Entry.....307**

5-touch input method Save phrase Copying/Cutting characters KUTEN code input Save word Password manager DL dictionary 2-touch input method Text input method etc.

## **Network Services.....317**

Voice Mail Service Call Waiting Call Forwarding Service Nuisance Call Blocking Service Caller ID Request Service Dual Network Service English guidance Service numbers Arrival call act Remote control Multi Number 2in1 OFFICEED Additional service etc.

## **Overseas use.....327**

Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING) Services available Preparing and checking for overseas use Making/Receiving a call Network search mode PLMN setting 3G/GSM setting Area service status Roaming guidance Bar calls at roaming Network services etc.

## **PC Connection.....337**

Data communication DOCOMO keitai datalink etc.

## **Appendix/Troubleshooting ... 343**

Menu list Combination of Multiaccess/Multitask functions Services available Introduction of options and related devices Error messages Warranty and After-Sales Service Software update Scanning function SAR certification information Intellectual Property Right etc.

## **Index/Quick Manual.....399**

Index Quick Manual in English version (Domestic use/Overseas use)

# Main functions of F-08A

## i-concier

i-concier is a service to use FOMA terminal conveniently in which a character on the stand-by display (Machi-chara) notifies you of useful information and you can download schedules/i-schedule from a site.

With i-concier, downloaded schedule or ToruCa is automatically updated with the latest information, and address information etc. of stores and companies are automatically added to the phonebook. →P175

## i-αpli call

i-αpli call is a function allows a third party or content providers to prompt predetermined i-αpli to be activated and it is used for activating other party's applications to play a versus game etc. →P237

## i-Widget

i-Widget is a function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (Widget Appli) such as calculator, clock, a TV program guide and stock price information. You can also check the latest information at a glance by activating i-Widget screen. →P242

## 1Seg

You can watch "1Seg", a terrestrial digital TV broadcast for mobile devices. You can also shoot still images and record video while watching 1Seg. Dubbing+10 (→P272) is supported for recording video. →P194

## i-mode

In addition to the higher operability and more convenient use of website information, you can enjoy a greater variety of video contents now that Flash<sup>®</sup> Video and Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Video are supported. →P154, 172

## International Roaming

While staying overseas, you can use the same FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address as those used in Japan (3G/GSM Areas are supported). →P328

And, "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)", which interprets your Japanese into English or your English into Japanese, is preinstalled. →P227

## Waterproofness

Waterproofness of IPX5 and IPX8 (a standard higher than IPX7) is provided by firmly closing the external connection jack cap and installing the back cover in a locked state. →P19

You can call or send/receive mail in the rain, bathroom, etc. You can also shoot still images and moving pictures in the water of a swimming pool. If soiled, hand wash the terminal under tap water.

## Toy's world

Animation changes according to the orientation of FOMA terminal or sounds. You can enjoy character's cute motions and expressions, effects of light and images. →P299

## Lock when immobile

In addition to Lock on close that locks keys every time FOMA terminal is closed, Lock when immobile, which locks key operations when no operation is performed for the specified time, is provided. →P109

## High-performance camera

FOMA terminal is equipped with a camera with approximately 5.2 million pixels (effective pixels) that offers functions such as auto scene detection to select the appropriate shooting mode by detecting scenes or people, smile finder to release a shutter by detecting people's smiles, skin tone enhancer to beautifully shoot people's skins. →P178

## Quick search

On the stand-by display or while performing a function, search functions of i-mode, Full Browser, Map, dictionaries, phonebook or mail can be used by pressing the search key. →P286

## Shortcut icons

Only by selecting the icon pasted on the stand-by display for function, file or mail being created, you can start the target operation quickly. And, icon on the stand-by display can be changed freely. →P295

## Pedometer/ACT monitor

You can check the number of steps, walking distance, consumed calories and burned fat on FOMA terminal. You can also measure "Brisk walk" that is a measure of your aerobic exercise and "Activity amount" that is calculated by exercise duration and exercise intensity of your physical activity. →P304  
You can enjoy using the preinstalled stand-by display (Flash graphics) such as "スペースジム (Space gym)" and "ウォーキング×フラワー (Walking × Flower)" that work with the activity monitor and pedometer.

\* In this manual, they are described as "Pedometer/ACT monitor" according to the menu name of FOMA terminal.

## ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker)

You can view graphs of steps, activity amounts, pulse rates, blood pressure and weight, and automatically send them via mail. Also, you can measure your pulse rates and use "からだカルテ (medical record)" that offers you health advice. →P231

## High-pitched alarm

High-pitched alarm allows you to sound an alarm at very loud volume by simple side key operations and inform people around you of your location. →P290

## Fake call

Fake call is a function that imitates a call from someone to let you pretend you are calling. You can have a natural conversation with the help of voice guidance. →P299

## Other functions

- Videophone call →P52
  - Chaku-moji →P56
  - Kisekai Tool →P90
  - Security Settings →P98
  - i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram →P120
  - Chaku-uta full<sup>®\*1</sup>/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel<sup>\*2</sup>/MUSIC Player →P208
  - i-appli/Mega i-appli/Chokkan Game →P222
  - Osai-fu/Keitai/ToruCa →P246
  - Network services →P318
  - High-speed communication compatibility →P338
- \*1 "Chaku-uta full" is registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.  
\*2 A charged service requiring subscription.

## Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

- Before using your FOMA terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling. After reading this manual, keep it carefully.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the product or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the product is not used within the specified guidelines.

 <b>DANGER</b>	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may directly result from improper use.
 <b>WARNING</b>	This sign denotes that death or serious injury may result from improper use.
 <b>CAUTION</b>	This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may result from improper use.

- The symbols below show specific directions.

 Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
 No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.
 No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
 No liquids	This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed.
 Do	This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.
 Unplug	This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

### ■ Precautions contain the description below.

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and UIM (common)	11
Handling FOMA terminal .....	12
Handling battery pack.....	14
Handling adapter .....	14
Handling UIM .....	15
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment .....	16

## ◆ Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and UIM (common)

### DANGER



Don't

**Do not use, store, or leave the equipment in hot areas such as near flames or in areas under strong direct sunlight such as inside a vehicle.**

May cause the equipment to be deformed or malfunction, and battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the capability or life to be reduced or shortened. Overheating on parts of the case may cause burns or injuries.



No disassembly

**Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. Do not solder items onto the equipment.**

May cause fire, injuries, electric shock, or malfunction. It may also cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



No liquids

**Do not let the equipment get wet.**

Contact with water or other liquids can cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injuries. Take care of the place for use and treatment of the equipment.



Do

**Use the battery pack and adapter specified by NTT DOCOMO for your FOMA terminal.**

Use of equipment not specified by DOCOMO can cause FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

### WARNING



Don't

**Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter or UIM in microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, FOMA terminal or adapter to heat, smoke, ignite, or damage circuits.



Don't

**Do not throw the equipment or give hard shock to it.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



Don't

**Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging jack or external connection jack. Do not put those materials inside the terminal.**

May be subject to electrical short and could cause fire or malfunction.



Do

**Turn FOMA terminal OFF before entering a place such as a gas station where flammable gases are generated. Do not charge the battery. The gas may catch fire.**

When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place as a gas station, turn OFF the terminal before using it. (When IC card lock is activated, deactivate it before turning OFF the terminal.)



Do

**If the equipment starts giving off a strange smell, overheats, becomes discolored or deformed during use, charging or in storage, immediately perform the following operations.**

1. Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn FOMA terminal OFF.
3. Remove the battery pack from FOMA terminal.

May cause the equipment to heat, burst or ignite or the battery pack to leak if you keep using the equipment.

### CAUTION



Don't

**Do not leave the equipment on unstable or sloping surfaces.**

May cause malfunction or injuries.



Don't

**Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.**

May cause malfunction.



Do

**Children using the equipment should be instructed in proper operation by an adult. Do not allow them to use the equipment without adult supervision.**

May cause injuries.



Do

**Store the equipment out of reach of small children.**

May be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.



Do

**Be careful especially when using FOMA terminal connected to the adapter continuously for a long time.**

If you use i-appli, a videophone call or watch 1Seg for a long time while charging the battery pack, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter may become hot.

Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition.

**◆ Handling FOMA terminal****⚠ WARNING**

Don't

**Do not direct the infrared data port toward your eye and transmit signals.**

May affect your eyes. Faulty operation could result from directing the infrared data port toward other infrared equipment and transmitting signals.



Don't

**Do not put FOMA terminal in the place such as the dashboard near the air-bag, where the influence of air-bag explosion is expected.**

When the air-bag explodes, FOMA terminal may hit yourself or others and could cause injury, equipment malfunction or damage.



Don't

**When you use electronic medical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket.**

Using your FOMA terminal near medical electronic equipment could cause equipment failure.



Don't

**Do not put foreign objects such as liquid like water, metal pieces or burnable things into UIM or microSD card slot.**

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

**Do not turn on the light aiming directly at the driver of the car etc.**

May disturb driving and cause an accident.



Do

**Turn FOMA terminal OFF in areas where use is prohibited, such as in airplanes and hospitals.**

May cause electronic equipment or electronic medical equipment to fail or malfunction. If the function which automatically turns the power ON is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.

When using the phone in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility. If you do prohibited act such as using the phone in an airplane, you may be punished according to law.



Do

**When you talk by setting handsfree, always keep FOMA terminal away from your ear.**

**And, when connecting the earphone/microphone to FOMA terminal and play a game or music, adjust the volume moderately.**

Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss. And, if you cannot hear the sound around you clearly, it may cause an accident.



Do

**If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the Vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.**  
Could affect heart function.

Do

**If it starts thunder while using the terminal outdoors, turn the power OFF immediately, and move to a safe location.**

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Do

**Turn FOMA terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.**

May cause the equipment to fail or malfunction.

\* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid.

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control equipment.

Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.



Do

**When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of broken glass or exposed internal parts of FOMA terminal.**

Surfaces of display and camera lens are made of plastic panels and they are structured for the glass not to scatter, however, if you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may be injured.



Do

**To sound the high-pitched alarm, always keep FOMA terminal away from your ears.**

May cause hearing loss.

### CAUTION



Don't

**Do not swing FOMA terminal by its strap.**

May cause the terminal damage or failure, or injury to yourself or others.



Don't

**When using the motion tracking or motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold FOMA terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.**

The motion tracking and motion sensor are functions to operate by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal. There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing a serious accident or damage.



Don't

**If you put a metal strap or the like to FOMA terminal, be careful not to let the strap hit people or objects around you when performing motion tracking or using motion sensor.**

Accidents such as injury, malfunction or damage may result.



Don't

**If the display part is accidentally broken and liquid crystal leaks out, do not put the liquid in your mouth, inhale, or make contact with your skin. If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse it with clean water and see a doctor immediately.**

**And, if the liquid adheres to skin or clothing, use alcohol etc. to wipe it off, then wash with soap.**

May cause loss of sight or skin problems.



Don't

**Do not bring the speaker close to your ear when the ring alert is sounding or you are playing a melody with FOMA terminal.**

May cause hearing loss.



Do

**In rare cases, using the phone in some vehicle models can cause the vehicle's electronic equipment to malfunction or fail.**

In this case, do not use the phone because it may hamper safe driving.



Do

**Mobile phones can give some users skin problems such as itching, allergic reactions or rashes. If you develop skin problems, stop using the phone immediately, and see a doctor.**

**FOMA terminal contains metal in the parts below.**

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Plate of back cover	SUS	None
Rear side of back cover		
Screw		
Charging jack	SUS	Gold plating
External connection jack		
Nameplate attach place	PC board	
Connector jack of battery pack	Beryllium copper	



Do

**When opening or closing FOMA terminal, take care not to have your fingers or strap caught by the terminal.**

May cause injuries or damages.



Do

**When watching 1Seg, take a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.**

May cause your eyesight to be impaired.

## ◆ Handling battery pack

- Check that the battery type matches the type displayed on the battery pack label.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

### ⚠ DANGER



Don't

**Do not connect a wire or other metal objects to the jack. And, do not carry or store FOMA terminal with objects like a metal necklace.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Don't

**Do not try to force the battery pack onto FOMA terminal if you are having trouble installing it. Always install it after checking that it is correctly oriented.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Don't

**Do not throw the battery pack into the fire.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Don't

**Do not nail the battery pack, hit with a hammer or step on it.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do

**If the battery pack's fluid contacts eyes, immediately flush the eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away. Do not rub the eyes.**

May cause loss of sight.

### ⚠ WARNING



Don't

**If the battery pack seems to have abnormalities such as deformation or scratches due to an external impact or falling, stop using it immediately.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.



Do

**If the battery pack does not have a full charge after being charged for the specified time, stop charging it.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite.



Do

**If the battery pack leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove it from the vicinity of open flames.**

The vapors from leaking battery pack fluid may ignite or explode.



Do

**Be careful not to let your pet bite the battery pack.**

May cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the equipment to malfunction or catch fire.

### ⚠ CAUTION



Don't

**Do not discard old battery packs together with other garbage.**

May cause igniting or environmental destruction. Tape the terminals of old battery packs to insulate them, and then bring them into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a battery recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.



Don't

**Do not charge a wet battery pack.**

May cause heat generation, ignition or rupture of the battery pack.



Do

**If the battery pack's fluid contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area thoroughly with clean water.**

May hurt the skin.

## ◆ Handling adapter

### ⚠ WARNING



Don't

**Do not use the adapter cord or power cord if it gets damaged.**

May cause electric shock, heat or fire.



Don't

**Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.**

May cause electric shock.



Don't

**Always use the DC adapter with a negative-ground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positive-ground vehicle.**

May cause fire.



Don't

**When it starts to thunder, do not touch FOMA terminal and an adapter.**

May be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Don't

**Do not short the charging jack while it is connected to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the charging jack with a part of your body such as your hand or finger.**

May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injuries.



Don't

**Place an adapter and desktop holder in a stable location while charging. Do not cover or wrap an adapter and desktop holder with a cloth, blanket, etc.**

May cause FOMA terminal to be removed or the optional devices to be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.



Don't

**Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord or power cord.**

May cause electric shock or fire.



No wet hands

**Do not touch the adapter cord or outlet with wet hands.**

May cause electric shock.



Do

**Only use with the specified power source and voltage.**

If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire or failure. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use AC Adapter for global use.  
AC adapter : AC100V

DC adapter : 12 or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for global use : Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use)



Do

**If the DC adapter's fuse blows, replace it only with the specified fuse.**

Using other fuses may cause fire or equipment failure. For the specified fuse, see the instructions that come with the DC adapter.



Do

**Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plug.**

May cause fire.



Do

**When you connect the AC adapter to an outlet, make sure not to touch with metal such as metal straps and firmly connect to the outlet.**

May cause electric shock, electrical short or fire.



Do

**When you disconnect the adapter from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the adapter cord or power cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the power plug to disconnect.**

Pulling the cord could damage it, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.



Unplug

**Always remove the power plug from the outlet when not using the adapter for an extended period.**

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Unplug

**Immediately remove the power plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if water or other fluids get into the adapter.**

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Unplug

**Always remove the power plug from the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the equipment.**

May cause electric shock.

## ◆ Handling UIM



### CAUTION



Do

**Be careful of the cut surface when removing UIM (ICs).**

May hurt hands or fingers.

## ◆ Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

- These precautions are based on the guidelines produced at the **Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan**, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

### WARNING

#### Obey the following rules inside medical facilities.

Do

- Do not bring FOMA terminal into operating rooms (ORs), intensive care units (ICUs) or coronary care units (CCUs).
- Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital wards.
- Turn FOMA terminal OFF in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical equipment could be nearby.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, obey those instructions.
- If the function to automatically turn ON the power is set, cancel the setting before turning the power OFF.



Do

**Turn FOMA terminal OFF in crowded trains or other public places where pacemaker or defibrillator wearers could be nearby.**

FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.



Do

**Wearers of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the implanted device.**

FOMA terminal's signals may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, and other devices.



Do

**When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.**

FOMA terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

## Handling precautions

### ◆ General

- F-08A is waterproof, however, do not allow water to seep into FOMA terminal and do not allow accessories or optional devices to get wet.
  - FOMA terminal is provided with waterproofness of IPX5 and IPX8 (a standard higher than IPX7) by firmly closing the external connection jack cap and installing the back cover in a locked state, however, it is not complete waterproofness. Do not install/remove the battery pack or do not open/close the external connection jack cap and back cover in the rain or with waterdrop adhered to them. Water may seep inside and cause corrosion. Also, accessories and optional devices are not waterproof. Malfunctions, which are determined to be caused by water as result of inspections, are not covered by the warranty. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, is charged.
- Clean FOMA terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
  - The display of FOMA terminal may have been applied special coating to improve clearness of the color LCD. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth can scratch the display. Take care when handling the unit, and clean it with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display can cause stains or remove the coating.
  - If FOMA terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may fade.
- Clean the jack occasionally with a dry cotton swab etc.
  - If the jack is soiled, connection gets worse and it may cause power to be turned off or insufficient battery charge, so clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc. Also, be careful never to damage the jack when cleaning it.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.
  - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation, causing internal corrosion and malfunction.
- When using, be careful not to subject excessive force to FOMA terminal or the battery.
  - If FOMA terminal is crammed into a brimming bag or placed in a pocket and sat on, display, internal PCBs or battery pack may be damaged or malfunction. And, if external devices are plugged into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack), the breakage of the connector or malfunction may result.

- Carefully read the separate instructions that come with FOMA terminal, adapter and desktop holder.
- Do not rub or scrape the display with a metal piece etc.
  - It may scratch the display, causing malfunction or damage.

### ◆ FOMA terminal

- Avoid extreme temperature.
  - Use FOMA terminal where the temperature ranges between 5 and 40°C (limited to the temporary use in a bathroom etc. when temperature is above 36°C) and humidity ranges between 45 and 85%.
- FOMA terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in your FOMA terminal.
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- Do not drop FOMA terminal or subject it to shocks.
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not plug external devices into the external connection jack (earphone/microphone jack) at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- Do not close FOMA terminal with the strap etc. held inside.
  - May cause malfunction or damage.
- It is normal for FOMA terminal to become warm during use or charging. Continue to use it.
- Do not leave FOMA terminal with the camera in areas under strong direct sunlight.
  - May cause discoloring or burn-in of materials.
- FOMA terminal should normally be used with the external connection jack cap closed.
  - Dust and/or water brought into FOMA terminal cause troubles.
- Do not use FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.
  - It may cause the battery to come off, or may cause a malfunction or damage.
- Do not put extremely thick stickers on the display or the key side.
  - May cause malfunction.

- While microSD card is being accessed, do not take the card out and do not turn off FOMA terminal.
  - It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not place magnetic disks or cards with magnetic stripes near FOMA terminal or place inside and close the terminal.
  - Data stored on media such as cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be erased if the storage medium is placed near the phone.
- Do not bring magnetized objects close to FOMA terminal.
  - Bringing strong magnetism close may cause a malfunction.

## ◆ Battery pack

---

- The battery pack is a consumable part.
  - Replace the battery pack if FOMA terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge, though it may vary by operating conditions. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35 ℃).
- Always charge before using it for the first time or after extended disuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- Be careful especially about the following points when preserving or leaving the battery pack for a long time.
  - Keeping under the state of the full charge (right after charging ends)
  - Keeping under the state of the empty charge (too exhausted to turn on FOMA terminal)They may cause the battery pack performance to be degraded or its lifetime to be shortened.  
An appropriate battery level for long term storage is that the battery icon is displayed with approximately 2 cells.

## ◆ Adapter

---

- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35 ℃).
- Do not charge the battery in the areas below.
  - In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
  - Near land-line phones or TVs/radios
- It is normal for the adapter to become warm while charging. Continue to use it.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
  - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not give strong shock. Do not deform the charging jack.
  - May cause malfunction.

## ◆ UIM

---

- Do not use excessive force to install/remove UIM.
- It is normal for UIM to become warm during use. Continue to use it.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using a UIM with another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep UIM ICs clean.
- Clean UIM with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
- Maintain a separate record of the data you saved in UIM.
  - If the data is deleted, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the old UIM to a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.
- Avoid extreme temperature.
- Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.
  - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop UIM or subject it to shocks.
  - May cause malfunction.
- Do not bend UIM or place heavy objects on it.
  - May cause malfunction.
- Do not install UIM into FOMA terminal with a label or sticker put on UIM.
  - May cause malfunction.

## ◆ FeliCa reader/writer

- FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal uses weak waves requiring no licenses for radio stations.
- It uses 13.56 MHz frequency band. When using other reader/writers in your surroundings, keep FOMA terminal away sufficiently from them. Before using the FeliCa reader/writer, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

## ◆ CAUTION

- Do not use a remodeled FOMA terminal. Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio Law.  
FOMA terminal is certified according to technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment based on the Radio Law, and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark (TCM)" is depicted on the engraved sticker of FOMA terminal.  
If you remodel FOMA terminal by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid.  
Do not use FOMA terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law.
- Be careful when you use FOMA terminal while driving a car etc.  
Using a mobile phone while driving is subject to penal regulations.  
If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.
- Use FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.  
FeliCa reader/writer function of FOMA terminal conforms to Japanese radio standards.  
If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

## Waterproofness

**F-08A is provided with the following waterproofness by firmly closing the external connection jack cap, installing the back cover and locking the cover.**

- **IPX5 (former JIS protection code 5)\*<sup>1</sup>**
  - **IPX8\*<sup>3</sup> that is a higher standard than IPX7 (former JIS protection code 7)\*<sup>2</sup>**
- \*1 Code IPX5 means that the mobile phone keeps functioning after directly applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min. for at least 3 minutes from a distance of 2.5-3 m on a rotating turntable.
- \*2 Code IPX7 means that the mobile phone keeps functioning after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out.
- \*3 Code IPX8 means that it provides waterproofness of which exceeds of IPX7 standard.

F-08A provides the following waterproof performances of IPX8.

- The mobile phone keeps functioning after it is slowly submerged to depth of 1.5 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out.
- The mobile phone keeps shooting still images or moving pictures in 30 minutes in static tap water at room temperature.

## ◆ Advantages in actual operation

- You can talk or watch 1Seg programs without using an umbrella in the rain (for rainfall of 20 mm or less per hour).
  - \* When your hands or FOMA terminal are wet, avoid installing/removing the back cover or opening/closing the external connection jack cap.
- You can wash the FOMA terminal by submerging and moving it forth and back in still water in a basin etc.
  - \* When washing, use only your hands, not a brush or sponge, with FOMA terminal locked, the back cover installed and the external connection jack cap held in position.
- You can use the FOMA terminal in a swimming pool. You can also shoot still images and moving pictures in the pool depth of 1.5 m.
  - \* If FOMA terminal gets wet with water from the swimming pool or put in water of swimming pool, wash it as described above, wipe off water with a dry cloth, drain, and dry naturally.
  - \* If you put the terminal in water of swimming pool, be sure to have it within 30minutes.

- You can use FOMA terminal in a bathroom. Do not put the terminal in the bathtub.
  - \* Never put FOMA terminal in hot spring water or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder.
  - \* Do not use FOMA terminal in hot water. May cause malfunction.

## ◆ Important precautions

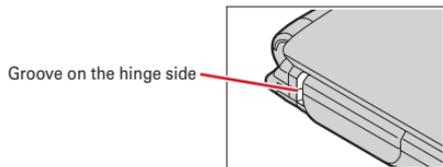
To keep the FOMA terminal waterproof, be sure to observe the points below.

- Securely close the external connection jack cap and back cover.
- Make sure that the cap and back cover are completely closed without floating.
- Before using, make sure that the back cover lever is at the LOCK position.

## ◆ Opening/Closing external connection jack cap

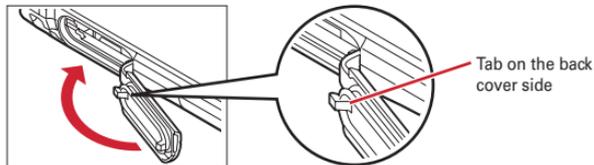
### ■ Opening

Place your finger at groove on the hinge side to open the cap.



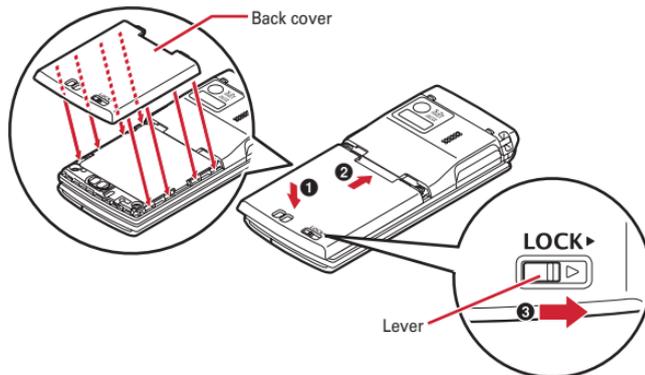
### ■ Closing

Close with the tab for the back cover at the rear side of the cap fitted into the concave of this terminal.



## ◆ Installing back cover

Align 8 tabs of the back cover with concaves of FOMA terminal. While pressing the back cover in the direction of ① so that there is no gap between FOMA terminal and back cover, slide the back cover in the direction of ② to install, then slide the back cover lever in the direction of ③ to lock.



- Do not perform other operations underwater than shooting still images and moving pictures.
- Do not let FOMA terminal get wet with liquids other than water at room temperature.

### <Example>



Soap/Detergent/Bath powder



Ocean water



Hot spring



Sand/Mud

To keep the FOMA terminal waterproof, replacement of parts is required every 2 years regardless of whether FOMA terminal appears normal or abnormal. DOCOMO replaces the parts as a chargeable service. Bring FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.

## ◆ Precautions

- Securely lock the back cover and firmly close the external connection jack cap. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) put between contact surfaces may allow water to enter.
- If FOMA terminal gets wet with water or other liquids with the external connection jack cap or back cover open, the liquid may get inside the terminal causing electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using FOMA terminal, turn the power OFF, remove the battery pack and contact a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- The external connection jack cap and the rubber packing of the inner lid play an important role for keeping waterproof. Do not remove or scratch them. Also, prevent dust from adhering to them.

If rubber gasket on the external connection jack cap or inner lid is damaged or deformed, replace it at DOCOMO-specified repair office.

- Do not leave water on FOMA terminal. In a cold region, water may freeze causing malfunction.
- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (e.g., such water flow that gives you pain when applied to your skin directly from a faucet or shower). May cause malfunction though F-08A provides waterproof performance of IPX5.
- Do not wash FOMA terminal in a washing machine etc.
- Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof.
- When watching 1Seg etc. with FOMA terminal installed in the desktop holder, do not use it in a bath room, shower room, kitchen or lavatory even if it is not connected to the AC adapter.
- Do not put FOMA terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Never try to charge the battery pack when FOMA terminal is wet.
- Do not poke the microphone, earpiece or speaker with a swab or sharp object. May damage the waterproof performance.
- Do not leave FOMA terminal wet. May short-circuit the power jacks.
- FOMA terminal does not float on water.
- Do not let FOMA terminal fall. It may become scratched causing the waterproof performance to degrade.
- If the back cover is damaged, replace it. Water may enter inside from a damaged section causing troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the battery.
- Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece or speaker. Such water may interfere with talking.
- Don't move in the water or slam the terminal against the surface of water with FOMA terminal opened.
- If you put the terminal in tap water or in water of swimming pool, be sure to have it within 30 minutes.
- When you use the terminal in a swimming pool, obey rules of the facility.

DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

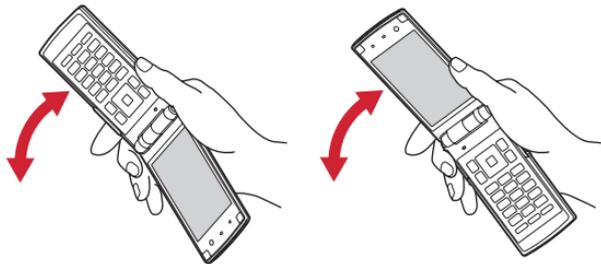
## ◆ Draining water when the FOMA terminal gets wet

When FOMA terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off; drain the water in the following steps.

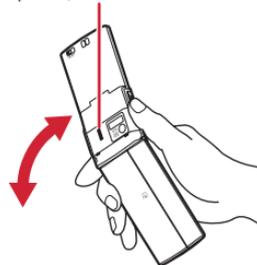
- ① Wipe FOMA terminal surface with dry, clean cloth etc.



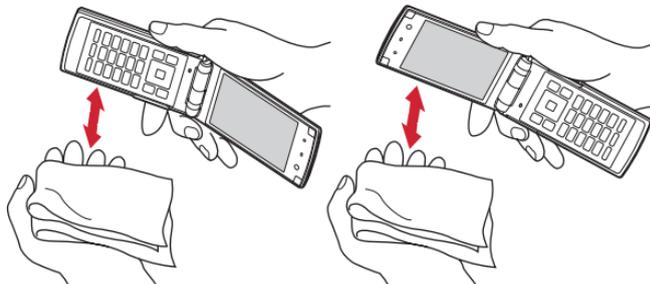
- ② Shake FOMA terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding its hinge section, until there is no more water splattering.



To drain water off the speaker, shake FOMA terminal with the speaker upward



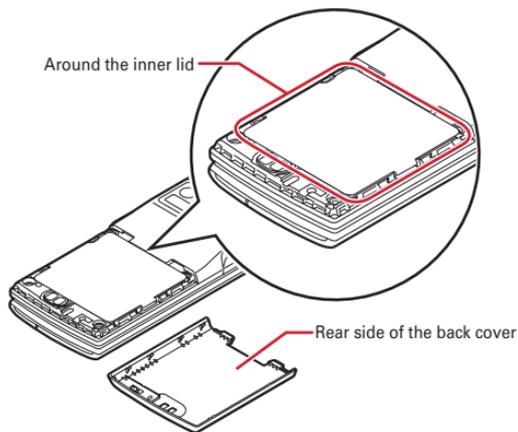
- ③ Softly press dry, clean cloth etc., against FOMA terminal to wipe off water remaining in the microphone, earpiece, speaker, keys or hinges.



- ④ Remove the back cover and wipe off any drops of water around the inner lid and the rear side of the back cover. After wiping off the water, install and lock the back cover.

Removing back cover→P42 ■Attaching ① in "Attaching/Removing battery pack"

\* Never open the inner lid.



- ⑤ Wipe off water drained from FOMA terminal with dry, clean cloth etc.

\* Water, if any, remaining in FOMA terminal may ooze up after wiping off.

\* Do not wipe off water remaining in concaves directly with a cotton swab etc.

## ◆ Charging

Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof. Check the following before and after charging.

- Check that FOMA terminal is not wet. If wet, adequately drain FOMA terminal and wipe off water with dry, clean cloth etc. before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection jack cap.
- When charging the battery after FOMA terminal is wet, adequately drain it and wipe off water with a dry, clean cloth etc., before connecting a desktop holder or opening the external connection jack cap.
- When the external connection jack cap is opened for charging, close the cap firmly after charging.

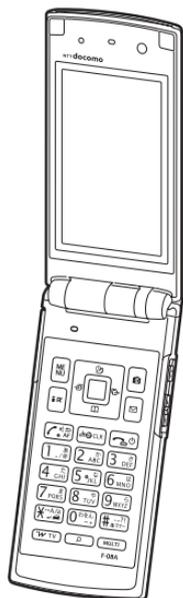
It is recommended that the desktop holder be used for charging to prevent water from seeping inside from the external connection jack.

- \* Never try to charge the battery pack when FOMA terminal is wet.
- \* Do not touch the AC adapter or desktop holder with wet hands. May cause electric shock.
- \* Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a place subject to water. May cause fire or electric shock.
- \* Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in a bathroom, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. May cause fire or electric shock.

## Basic package and main options

### <Basic package>

**F-08A**  
(including Back Cover F39 and the written warranty)



**Battery Pack F09**



**Instruction manual**



\* Quick Manual is appended  
on P408.

**CD-ROM for F-08A**



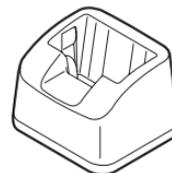
\* The PDF version of "Manual for PC Connection" and  
"Kuten Code List" are contained in the CD-ROM.

### <Main options>

**FOMA AC Adapter 01/02**  
(including written warranty and  
operation manual)



**Desktop Holder F30**  
(including operation manual)



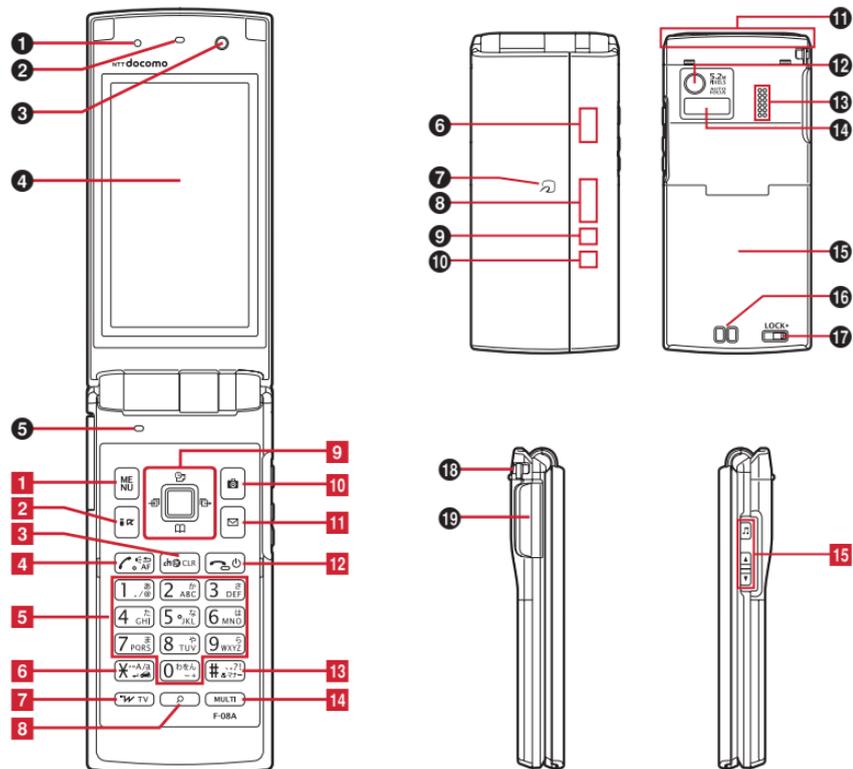
Other options→P372

# Before Using the Handset

---

Part names and functions .....	26
Viewing display .....	29
Viewing sub-display/light .....	33
Selecting functions from menu .....	35
Using motion sensor .....	39
Using UIM (FOMA card) .....	40
Attaching/Removing battery pack .....	42
Charging .....	44
Checking battery level .....	<b>Remaining battery level</b> 47
Turning power ON/OFF .....	<b>Power ON/OFF</b> 47
Changing screen display to English .....	<b>Select language</b> 48
Setting date and time .....	<b>Date &amp; time</b> 49
Notifying the other party of your phone number .....	<b>Caller ID notification</b> 49
Checking your own phone number .....	<b>User information</b> 50

## Part names and functions

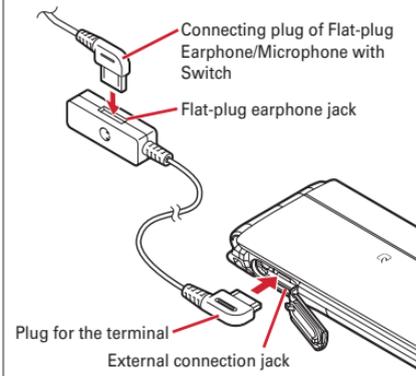


### <Using Earphone>

Connect an optional external connection jack compatible earphone.

When using an earphone that is non-compliant to external connection jack, connect an optional plug adapter to use it.

#### Example of connecting Flat-Plug Earphone/ Microphone with Switch (optional)



### <1Seg antenna>

The terminal has a built-in 1Seg antenna, and an entire body of the terminal can work as an antenna. To receive signals, minimize the covered part of FOMA terminal when holding it with your hands to watch 1Seg in better conditions. →P195

## <Functions of parts>

### 1 Light sensor

Sense the ambient luminance (automatic adjustment of the brightness of the display).

\* Blocking the light sensor may disable correct adjustment of the brightness.

### 2 Earpiece

Hear other party's voice from here.

### 3 In-camera

Shoot your own image, or send your image via videophone.

### 4 Display → P29

### 5 Microphone

Send your voice from here.

\* Do not cover the microphone during a call or sound recording.

### 6 Sub-display → P33

### 7 Mark → P246, 281

Installation of IC card

\* You can use Osaifu-Keitai by placing Mark over IC card reader or send/receive data by iC transmission. The IC card cannot be detached.

### 8 Light → P35

### 9 Call light → P35

### 10 Mail light → P35

### 11 FOMA Built-in antenna

\* The terminal has a built-in FOMA antenna. For better voice quality, do not cover the antenna with your hand.

### 12 Out-camera

Shoot still images or moving pictures, send images over a videophone call.

### 13 Speaker

Hear ring alert or voice of the caller using the speakerphone etc. from here.

### 14 Infrared data port → P280, 284

Infrared communication, Infrared remote control.

### 15 Back cover

\* Remove a back cover, open an inner lid, then remove a battery pack to access a microSD card slot. → P269

### 16 Charging jack

### 17 Back cover lever → P42

### 18 Strap opening

### 19 External connection jack

An integrated connection jack for charging or connecting earphone etc.

\* Available to connect an optional AC adapter, DC adapter, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function, Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal etc.

## <Functions of keys>

The functions available by pressing keys are as follows.

● : Press ■ : Press for 1 second or more

### 1 MENU key

● Display menus, perform the operation shown at the upper left of the guide area.

■ Start/Cancel Side key hold.

### 2 i-mode/Character/i-αppli/Scroll (▲) key

● Establish i-mode connection and display iMenu.

● Scroll upward the mail screen by pages.

● Back the page while displaying Browser screen.

● Perform the operation shown in the lower-left corner of the guide area, switch character entry modes.

■ Display i-αppli folder list.

### 3 CLR/α/Clear key

● Display i-Channel list, switch i-αppli stand-by display and i-αppli activation.

● Delete characters or return to previous screen.

■ Start/Cancel Self mode.

### 4 Start a voice call / Speakerphone/AF key

● Make/Receive a voice call, return to the previous character while entering characters.

● Switching the speakerphone function, start/cancel auto-focus.

■ Make a voice call using the speakerphone function.

■ Restore the character string to its previous state.

### 5 Keypads

1 - 9

● Enter phone numbers (1-9) or characters, select menu/items.

■ Perform the function registered in Custom menu.

0

- Enter phone number (0) or characters, select menu/items.
- Use Auto switch of Int'l call assist when making international calls.

**6**  \* /A/a/Line feed/Public mode (Drive mode) key

- Enter " \* ", " / ", " A ", " a ", etc., switch upper/lower case.
- Line feed while entering characters, select menu/items.
- Switch display/hide of guide area when shooting a still image.
- Switch display while playing moving picture/i-motion or Music&Video Channel.
- Start/Cancel Public mode (Drive mode).

**7**  i-Widget/TV key

- Start/Exit i-Widget
- Watch 1Seg or switch Multi windows.

**8**  Search key

- Enter the target word, place or name and search. →P286

**9** Multi-cursor key

- Enter key
- Perform the operation, activate Focus mode.
- Start i-αppli registered for one-key shortcut.
-  Schedule/ ↑ key
- Display Scheduler.
- Adjust volume, move the cursor upward.
- Display alarm list
-  Phonebook/ ↓ key
- Display phonebook.
- Adjust volume, move the cursor downward.
- Add to the phonebook.

 Received calls/← (previous) key

- Display Received calls, switch displays, move the cursor leftward.
- Start/Cancel privacy mode when "Activate/Deactivate" of Activation option is set to "Hold L-cursor key".

 Redial/ →(next) key

- Display Redial, switch displays, move the cursor rightward.
- Start/Cancel IC card lock.
- \* May be described as   .

**10**  Camera key

- Start still image shooting, perform the operation shown at the upper right of the guide area.
- Start moving picture shooting.

**11**  Mail/Scroll (▼) key

- Display mail menu, perform the operation shown at the lower right of the guide area.
- Scroll downward the mail screen by pages.
- Go to the next page while displaying Browser screen.
- Pressing twice : Check new message
- Display mail creation screen

**12**  (Power)/End key

- Terminate on-hold, calling/operating function, display/hide calendar layout.
- Press for 2 seconds or more : Turn power ON/OFF.

**13**  #/Macro shooting/Silent mode key

- Enter " # ", " \* ", " / ", " ° ", " ? ", " ! ", " · ", select menu/items.
- Turn Macro mode on or off while using the camera.
- Start/Cancel Silent mode.

**14**  Multitask key

- Perform another function while talking or operating (Multiaccess/Multitask).

**15** Side key

 Music key

- Operate MUSIC Player or Music&Video Channel player.
- Activate MUSIC player\*<sup>1</sup>.
-  Alarm key
- Stop ring alert, alarm sound or vibrator.
- Adjust volume, turn up volume during a call.
- Turn on the light or switch displays of the sub-display when FOMA terminal is closed.
- Activate quick message recorder while receiving a call, activate/stop voice memo or moving picture memo during a call.
- Start/Cancel Silent mode\*<sup>1</sup> or activate high-pitched alarm\*<sup>2</sup> when FOMA terminal is closed. Activate Record msg.&Voice memo on the stand-by display when it is opened.

 Volume key

- Adjust volume, turn down volume during a call.
- Turn on the light or switch displays of the sub-display when FOMA terminal is closed.
- Check new message\*<sup>1</sup> or activate high-pitched alarm\*<sup>2</sup> when FOMA terminal is closed. Mute sound of 1Seg watching or video playback, check new message on the stand-by display when it is opened.

\*1 Side key shortcut is the operation in the default state.

\*2 Operation when High-pitched alarm is "ON".

## Viewing display

The current state can be checked by the icon appearing on the screen.



- ① : Battery icon→P47
- ② : Antenna icon→P47
- : Out of service area→P47
- : Self mode ON→P102
- : Data transfer mode ON\*1→P108, 269, 280
- ③ : In i-mode (during i-mode connection)/during packet communication)→P154
- \*2 ④ : Infrared communication in operation→P280
- : Infrared remote control in operation→P284
- : The total calls cost exceeds the limit→P301

- \*2 ⑤ : Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress→P60
- : Speakerphone function in use→P53
- (blue)/ (red)/ : Network in use→P330
- : Power saving mode activated→P89
- ⑥ : High-pitched alarm is set to "ON"
- \*2 ⑦ : Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated
- : A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute→P75, 295
- \*2 ⑧ : Unread Area Mail, mail, i-concier information or MessageR/F state→P128, 145, 147, 149, 175
- : Unread Area Mail
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS storage space is full
- : SMS storage space is full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist
- : Unread i-mode mail exists
- : Unread SMS exists
- : Arrival i-concier information exists
- (red)/ (blue) : Unread MessageR storage space is full or unread MessageR exists
- : Unread mail and unread i-concier information exist
- (red)/ (green) : Unread MessageF storage space is full or unread MessageF exists
- \*2 ⑨ : Storage state in i-mode Center, browser screen display→P128, 145, 157, 166
- : i-mode mail and MessageR/F storage are full or one of these spaces is full and unreceived mails exist in Data Center

- / / : i-mode mail or MessageR/F storage space is full in Data Center
- : Unreceived i-mode mail and MessageR/F exist in Data Center
- / / : Unreceived i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF exists in Data Center
- : Scrolling the browser screen by tilting the terminal
- : Browser screen is displayed (Keitai mode)
- : Browser screen is displayed (PC layout mode)
- \*2 ⑩ : Displaying SSL/TLS page/Executing SSL/TLS session with i-appli, using i-appli downloaded from SSL/TLS page→P155
- : Frame of SSL/TLS page is enlarged→P159
- : Mail failed to Auto-send exists→P127
- : Auto-send mail exists→P127
- : Frame is enlarged→P159
- : Music&Video Channel program obtaining reservation exists→P209
- ⑪ : i-appli/i-appli DX/i-appli call state→P223, 238, 239
- : During i-appli operation
- (gray) : i-appli stand-by display ON
- (orange) : i-appli is being started from the i-appli stand-by display
- : i-appli DX is running
- (gray) : i-appli DX stand-by display ON
- (orange) : i-appli is being started from the i-appli DX stand-by display
- : i-appli call received while i-appli is running
- (gray) : i-appli call received while displaying i-appli stand-by display

-  (orange) : i-αppli call received while i-αppli is being started from i-αppli stand-by display
-  : i-αppli call received while i-αppli DX is running
-  (gray) : i-αppli call received while displaying i-αppli DX stand-by display
-  (orange) : i-αppli call received while i-αppli is being started from i-αppli DX stand-by display
-  : i-αppli call received
- <sup>\*3</sup>  
 : Alarm clock ON→P288
-  : 1Seg watching/recording reservation, schedule reminder ON→P203, 292
-  : Schedule reminder or 1Seg watching/recording reservation and alarm clock are simultaneously ON→P203, 288, 292
- <sup>\*3</sup>  
 : Inside OFFICEED area→P325
-  : Arrival information→P38
-  : Shortcut icons→P295
-  : Silent mode ON→P82
-  : Personalized silent mode ON→P83

- <sup>\*1</sup>  
 : Call alert volume is Silent→P80
-  : Vibrator for voice call ON→P81
-  : Call alert volume is Silent and vibrator for voice call ON→P81
- <sup>\*1</sup>  
 : In Public mode (Drive mode)→P63
-  : Record message ON/recorded messages full→P64
- <sup>\*2</sup>  
 : Keypad dial lock ON→P103
-  : Side key hold→P109
- <sup>\*2</sup>  
 : Personal data lock ON→P102
-  : Music&Video Channel obtaining failure/success→P209
-  : 1Seg recording reservation completed/failed→P205
- <sup>\*2</sup>  
 : Reading UIM→P40, 47
-  (key is yellow) : IC card lock ON→P248
-  : Individual IC card lock→P248
-  : Displaying available multi-cursor key in Focus mode→P38
-  : Remote customization ON→P116

-  : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)→P202, 204
-  : i-αppli Auto start failed→P237
-  : State of USB mode settings and microSD card→P269, 275
-  : microSD card installed during Communication mode
-  (blue)/ (gray) : microSD card installed or not during microSD mode
-  (blue)/ (gray) : microSD card installed or not during MTP mode
- <sup>\*2</sup>  
 : Connected to external device using USB cable→P68, 276
-  : Pedometer/ACT monitor is set→P304
- <sup>\*2</sup>  
 : Software update notice→P384
-  : Software update pre-specified→P385
-  : Update notification icon→P384
-  : Auto-update of the latest pattern definition failed/succeeded→P387

\*1 When data transfer mode is activated, the terminal is in the same state as out of service area and Multitask becomes unavailable.

\*2 The current highest-priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in descending order of the priority from the top.

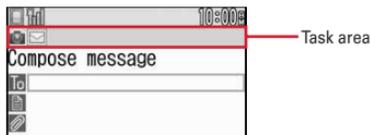
\*3 Time appears on a screen other than the stand-by display.

## ✓INFORMATION

- Depending on the displayed function, an icon may be displayed at a different position, or some or all icons may not be displayed.

## ◆ Task area

The icon indicating the function (task) in progress appears in the task area. During Multiaccess or Multitasks, the icons show which functions are running.



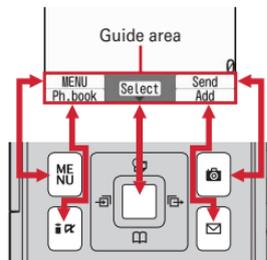
## ◆ Icons indicated on the task area

- : Voice call
- : Received calls
- : Redial
- : Record message/Voice memo
- : Videophone call
- : Videophone using an external device
- : Call (switching)
- : Call (disconnecting)
- : FOMA terminal phonebook
- : Contact setting of Privacy mode
- : Kisekai Tool
- : Mail/MessageR/F
- : Area Mail
- : Receiving i-mode mail
- : Checking new message/SMS
- : Sent msg. log/Received msg. log
- : Receiving SMS
- : i-mode (including when Last URL or Screen memo is displayed)
- : Full Browser
- : Displaying Bookmark/Access shortcuts of i-mode or Full Browser
- : i-concier
- : Still camera
- : Movie camera
- : Bar code reader
- : 1Seg

- : Activating Music&Video Channel
- : Music&Video Channel program obtaining
- : MUSIC Player
- : i-appli
- : ToruCa
- : My Picture
- : Moving picture/i-motion
- : Chara-den
- : Melody
- : Accessing microSD card/Standing by for accessing
- : Sound recorder
- : Adjusting volume by Multitask
- : Countdown timer
- : Alarm clock
- : High-pitched alarm
- : Scheduler/Schedule reminder ringing (including activation notification of 1Seg)
- : Fake call
- : Toy's world
- : User information
- : Calculator
- : Pedometer/ACT monitor
- : Search engine
- : Notepad
- : Dictionaries
- : Accessing Data Center
- : Displaying synchronization log
- : Network services set
- : Calling or communicating packets via USB/Sending or receiving packets via USB
- : 64K data communication
- : Accessing external data
- : Updating software/Software update notified
- : Updating pattern definition/Displaying version
- : Each function set or on hold

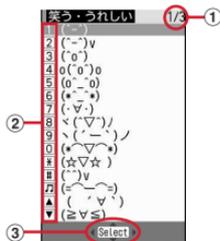
## ◆ Guide area

Operations that can be performed by pressing , , and are displayed in the guide area. Displayed operations vary by the screen. Display locations and keys correspond as shown in the figure.



- on the guide area corresponds to multi-cursor keys (It may be different depending on the function you are using or how the site or website is made).

## ◆ List screen



- ① When a list extends to multiple pages, the currently displayed page number and the total number of pages appear.

- ② Items that are associated with displayed numbers, symbols or side key icons can also be selected by pressing the corresponding keys ( , , , , , ).
- ③ indicates that there are items that can be selected above and below the cursor position. Press to move the cursor. When is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, when is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.  
 indicates that there are items that can be selected over the multiple pages. Press to change the page. Some screens such as an icon selection screen cannot be switched.

## ◆ i-Widget screen



e.g.: i-Widget screen

- While i-Widget is running, operations that correspond to , , , and are displayed on the screen as in the guide area. Displayed operations differ depending on screens.
- Using i-Widget→P243

## Viewing sub-display/light

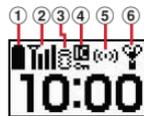
With sub-display or light of FOMA terminal, various information or states can be checked.

### ◆ Displaying sub-display

When FOMA terminal is closed, icons or messages appear on the sub-display.

- When FOMA terminal is closed, the sub-display light turns on, animation is displayed, then a clock appears. When no operation is performed for approximately 8 seconds, the light turns off.
- When the sub-display light is turned off, pressing or or setting time notification on the hour in Time tone turns on the light. When there is arrival information, press to operate the vibrator once. When you pick up and tilt FOMA terminal with S-disp auto light on set to "ON", the light turns on in a second. If you move FOMA terminal just before the light turns on, the light may not turn on.
- When opening FOMA terminal with information displayed on the sub-display, the information disappears.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock or Side key hold, pressing or shows a message indicating the lock is set, and after a period of time, the clock display screen appears.
- When Motion sensor is "ON", display turns according to the orientation of FOMA terminal. →P40

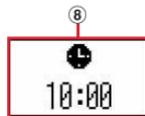
### ◆ Icons or states displayed



Icon and clock



Pedometer/ACT monitor



State display (e.g.: While Alarm clock is sounding)

- ① : Battery icon
- ② : Antenna icon  
 : Out of service area  
 : Self mode ON  
 : In data transfer mode
- ③ : In i-mode communication (i-mode site)/(packet communication)
- ④ : IC card lock ON
- ⑤ : Unread Area Mail exists  
 : Unread i-mode mail/SMS exists  
 : Unread MessageR/F exists  
 : Arrival i-concier information exists  
 : i-mode mail or MessageR/F storage space is full in Data Center  
 : i-mode mail or MessageR/F exists in Data Center

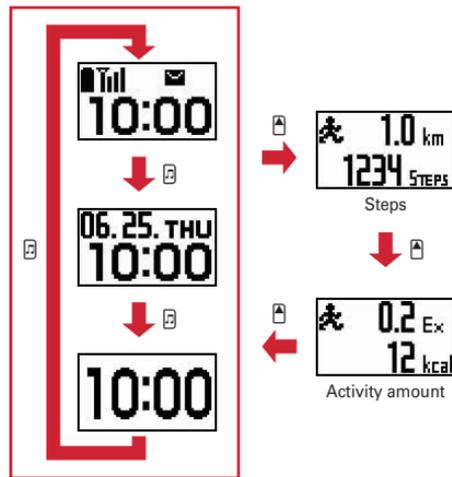
- ⑥ : Silent mode ON
- : Personalized silent mode ON
- : High-pitched alarm is set to "ON"
- ⑦ : Pedometer/ACT monitor is set
- ⑧ The following status are notified by message or image.
  - Status display of a voice call, videophone call (including Chaku-moji), voice memo, moving picture memo and recorded message
  - While checking/receiving i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F, while receiving Area Mail or i-concier information
  - While watching 1Seg, recording 1Seg (only while watching), playing video, playing a melody, playing movie/i-motion (playlist play and continuous play), using Music&Video Channel player, using Music player or using the microSD card
  - While alarm clock or schedule reminder (including activation notification of 1Seg) is sounding, Countdown timer is operating/sounding
  - Status display of packet communication, 64K communication, communication via USB, infrared communication or iC transmission
  - When the battery is exhausted, in Side key hold, All lock, Omakase lock, activating Lock on close or Lock when immobile, starting/canceling Silent mode or setting secret attribute

\* The current highest-priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in descending order of the priority from the top.

### ❖ Switching displays

When a clock is displayed, press to switch displays in the order of icons and a clock → a date → a big clock. When Set Pedometer/Activity monitor is "Use", press to switch displays in the order of steps → amounts of activity → a clock.

- Restored to the clock display when no operation is performed for a certain period of time.



### ❖ Displaying arrival information

When there are voice messages in Missed call, Recorded messages, Unread messages, Unread MessageR/F or Voice Mail Service, you can check the number or detail information on the sub-display.

- The detail information of voice messages in Voice Mail Service is not displayed.

**<Example> Viewing the number and detail information of Missed call**

#### 1 When the clock is displayed,

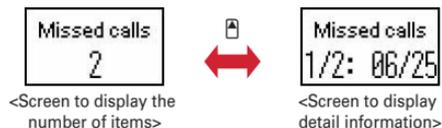
The vibrator operates once and the number is displayed.

- If there is not other arrival information, press to switch to the clock display. When there are the multiple types of arrival information, each time you press , the number is displayed in the order of Missed call → Recorded message → Unread messages or unread MessageR/F → Voice messages in Voice Mail Service.

#### 2 While displaying the number,

Reception date/time and the arrival information of the other party are scrolled.

- If there are multiple each information, when the detail is displayed, press  to check up to 10 items.



- Restored to the clock display when no operation is performed for a certain period of time.
- During the clock display, detail information can be displayed by double-tapping the side of FOMA terminal. If there are multiple items, each time you double-tap, the next information is displayed.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Because of the characteristics of surface panel, sub-display may not be seen clearly at places in the sunlight. In this case, check the display in the shade, or make a shadow with your hand to check the display.

### ◆ Displaying light

Light consists of 1 color light and 3 white lights. Depending on functions, only color light turns on or blinks, or color light and white lights synchronize.

- Turn on or blink in the following cases.

- When receiving a call or mail/i-concier information, during a call, when obtaining ToruCa, accessing IC card or performing Check new message
  - When opening/closing FOMA terminal or notifying time on the hour by Time tone
  - When activating Lock on close or Lock when immobile, shooting a still image, recording a movie, operating Music&Video Channel player or Music player
  - When alarm clock, schedule reminder (including activation notification of 1Seg) or countdown timer is sounding
  - During iC transmission
  - While charging
- For some functions, operation is performed according to Light alert setting.

### ◆ Displaying call light and mail light

When Indicator light is set to "ON", a missed call or unread mail, if any, is notified with the blink of the light.

 (call light) : Unchecked missed calls exist

 (mail light) : Unread mail (including SMS) exists

- After the missed call or unread mail (including SMS) is checked, the blink stops.
- The light blinks when a call or mail is received regardless of the setting of Indicator light.

### Selecting functions from menu

- This manual mainly gives descriptions assuming that Kisekae Tool is set to "Purple".
- Menus are categorized by function.→P344

### ◆ Menu screen and switching method

#### ◆ Menu screen

The following menu screens are available.

**Kisekae menu** : A menu that you can change the design using Kisekae tool.

- In addition to menus compatible with moving pictures, "拡大メニュー (enlarged menu)" that is easy to view with large font and "Simple Menu" are available. A Kisekae menu matched with the color of FOMA terminal is set by default.
- Some Kisekae menu changes the menu structure according to usage frequency. In the Kisekae Tool stored by default, "切替メニュー (Switch menu)" and "ダイレクトメニュー (Direct menu)" in the "Preinstalled" folder support this function.
- Some Kisekae menu does not support English display when バイリンガル (Select language) is set to "English".

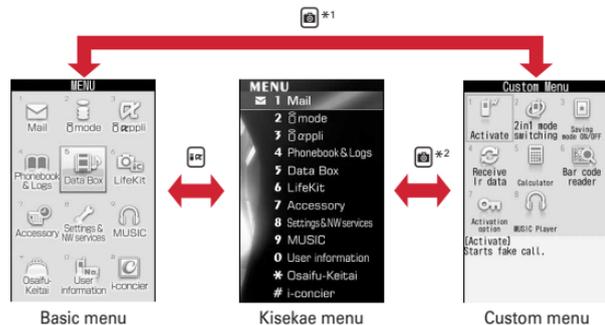
**Basic menu** : A basic menu that the menu structure and menu numbers are fixed.

- Menu icons or background design can be changed by customizing Kisekae Tool or menu.→P90, 92
- The font size of the menu changes synchronized with Kisekae Tool.

**Custom menu** : A menu that menu items can be freely registered.→P297

## ◆ To switch the menu screen temporarily

In each menu screen, you can temporarily switch to a different menu screen by the following operations. You can also set which menu to display when pressing **[MENU]** on the stand-by display.→P89



- \*1 Cannot be switched when Kisekai menu or Shortcut menu is set as Select startup menu.
- \*2 Cannot be switched when Basic menu is set as Select startup menu.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Some types of Kisekai menus change the menu structure according to usage frequency. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applied.

## ◆ Selecting a function

Press **[MENU]** in stand-by and select and perform the functions from the menu displayed. There are 2 ways. One method involves using the keypad corresponding to the menu items (Shortcut operation). In the other method, the multi-cursor key is used to select from among the menu items.

- If any function is restricted by lock functions or no UIM is installed, **[LOCK]** icon appears or the font color changes indicating that the function is disabled. Note that the display does not change for Kisekai menu. When a function is selected, the reason that the function cannot be performed etc. is displayed.
- Function description about the menu item at the cursor position may appear for some types or levels of the menu. The current setting may also displayed in some menu items.

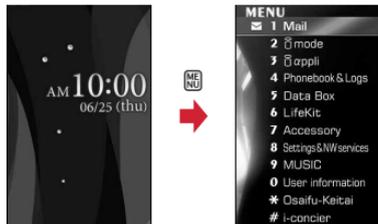
## ◆ Selecting menu items by keypad (Shortcut operations)

When numbers (item number) are assigned to menu items, a menu item can be selected by pressing the corresponding keypad (**[1]-[9]**, **[0]**, **[\*]**, **[#]**).

- Press the item number displayed with the preferred menu item.
- Item numbers differ when "Simple Menu" is set by Kisekai Tool.→P356
- Item number of the menu→P344

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

1 **[MENU]** **[7]** **[4]**



## ◆ Selecting menu items by multi-cursor key

<Example> Selecting "Calculator"

1 **ME** **NU** ▶ Move the cursor to "Accessory" ▶ **□**



Kisekai menu

Basic menu

- If you press **□** to move the cursor, the color and/or design of the cursor position change. Moving by **□** is unavailable for some menus.
- When "Simple Menu" is set for Kisekai menu, you can also move the cursor and press **□** to select a menu (second level or upper).

2 Move the cursor to "Calculator" ▶ **□**

## ◆ Returning to stand-by display or previous menu

After selecting a menu item, you can return to the stand-by display or previous menu by pressing the following keys.

**□** : Return to the stand-by display.

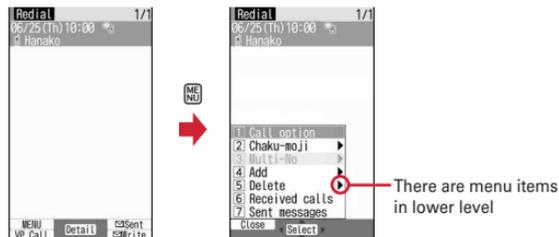
**CL** : Return to the previous menu. Depending on the menu, you can return to the previous menu also by pressing **□**.

## ◆ Selecting method of submenu

When "MENU" is displayed at upper-left of the guide area, various operations can be performed with submenus.

<Example> Selecting the redial submenu

1 On the redial list screen, **ME** **NU** ▶ Press a keypad for the submenu item number

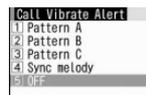


- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to and pressing **□** or **□**.
- Item numbers of the submenu with the same functions may vary by the operating screen.
- Pressing **ME** or **CL** closes the submenu.

## ◆ Operating procedure of each item

### ■ Selection of an item

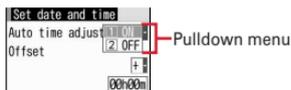
When numbers or **\* #** **♪** **▲** **▼** is displayed, press the corresponding keys. You can also select an item by moving the cursor with **□** and press **□**. When moving the cursor, the item at the cursor may be framed or change in color.



- Depending on the function, you can check vibration pattern of the vibrator, color or lighting pattern of light alert, the color scheme of screen settings or brightness of the display by moving the cursor to an item.

### ■ Pulldown menu operation

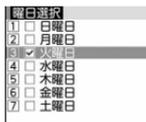
Move the cursor to the item to set and press , and then press the keypads corresponding to the item number.



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing .

### ■ Check box operation

Press the keypads corresponding to the item number.



- You can also select an item by moving the cursor to it and pressing .
- Pressing keypad for the item number or pressing  after placing the cursor, the check box switches  (Select) and  (Cancel).
- For some functions, you can select or cancel all items by pressing .

### ■ Confirmation screen operation

If a confirmation screen for performing functions appears while deleting, setting data, etc., move the cursor to "Yes" or "No" and press .



- For some functions, items other than "Yes" or "No" may appear.

## ◆ Displaying information quickly <Focus mode>

When  is pressed on the stand-by display with arrival information icon or i-concier information displayed, or with Info/calendar layout or Shortcut icons set, the display is changed to Focus mode that allows you to quickly display the related information.

- i-concier information → P175
- Shortcut icons → P295
- When i-concier information is displayed with Info/calendar layout set, the cursor cannot be moved to Info/calendar layout.

### 1 ▶ Move the cursor to an icon ▶



An icon at the cursor position is surrounded with a red frame.

The direction is indicated that it can be moved to by using multi-cursor key.

- A screen matched for the selected icon appears.
  -   (Missed calls) : Received call list appears. With 2in1 in Dual mode,   appears when there is a missed call only to Number B and   appears when there are missed calls to both Number A and B.
  -   (Recorded messages) : The recorded message list appears.
  -   (Voice messages in Voice Mail service) : A confirmation screen for playing message appears. With 2in1 in Dual mode,   appears when there is a message only to Number B and   appears when there are messages to both Number A and B.
  -   (Unread messages) : The folder list of Inbox appears.
  -   (Unread ToruCa) : The ToruCa list of the folder containing the latest unread ToruCa appears.
  -  (i-appli call) : i-appli call log appears.
- You can perform the same operations when following icons appear.
  -  : Connect to external device using USB cable
  -  /  : Software update advance notice/notification
  -  /  : Auto-update of latest pattern definition success/failure
  -  /  : Music&Video Channel program obtaining success/failure

-  /  : 1Seg recording reservation completion/failure
-  : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)
-  : Pedometer/ACT monitor

**Canceling Focus mode :**  or 

### ✓INFORMATION

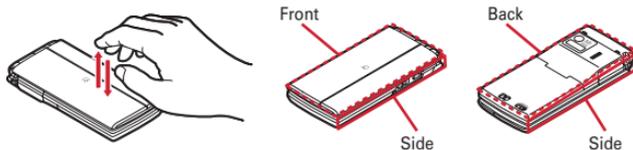
- When moving the cursor to the icon for arrival information and press  for 1 second or more, the icon disappears temporarily. For a voice message icon of Voice Mail service, a confirmation screen appears asking you to delete the display. Select "Yes" to delete the display. It reappears when the number of items is changed by accumulating new information or viewing existing information.
- In Focus mode, you cannot display the menu by pressing .

## Using motion sensor

With the use of motion sensor, you can use various operations by double-tapping if tilting FOMA terminal.

### ❖ Double-tapping FOMA terminal

There are 2 kinds of effective areas for double-tapping (tapping twice) depending on functions : only the front side or back side, or only lateral sides of FOMA terminal.



#### ■ Stopping an alarm

When alarm clock, schedule reminder or Countdown timer sounds with FOMA terminal closed, double-tap the front or back side of FOMA terminal to stop the sound. Alarm clock stops or starts snooze.

#### ■ Displaying details of arrival information

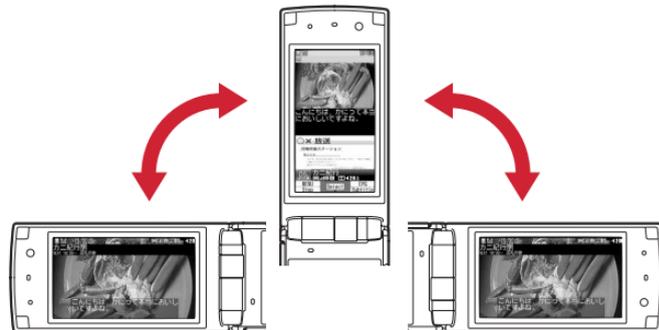
Double-tap the lateral side of FOMA terminal with a clock displayed on the sub-display to display details of arrival information. →P34

## ◆ Tilting FOMA terminal

### ■ Auto rotation

While a browser screen is displayed or 1Seg video, moving pictures/i-motion (except continuous playback) or Music&Video Channel is played, tilt FOMA terminal 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise to display it in the horizontal display.

- When Auto rotation of Motion sensor is set to "ON", you can set individual functions to ON or OFF.
- While a JPEG image is displayed, the screen automatically switches to the vertical/horizontal display or change the display size by detecting the orientation of FOMA terminal regardless of rotation direction.



### ■ Flash graphics change

When setting Flash graphics compatible with motion sensor to stand-by display, image changes by moving FOMA terminal with the terminal opened.

### ■ Changing vertical/horizontal position or orientation of an image automatically when shooting a still image

The orientation of still image to be saved changes automatically according to the orientation of FOMA terminal. →P186

### ■ Scrolling a browser screen

You can scroll a browser screen up, down, to the right, left, or obliquely by tilting FOMA terminal while holding down  or . The more you tilt the terminal, the faster the scrolling speed becomes. For example, tilt the terminal forward to scroll down and backward to scroll up.

- The pointer does not move even after the screen scrolls.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- While walking or in the place with much vibration, scrolling a browser screen by tilting FOMA terminal may not work correctly. Also, do not walk while watching a screen because it is dangerous.

### ◆ Enabling Motion sensor <Motion sensor>

 [Settings & NW services]   ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Motion sensor** : Set whether to enable Motion sensor.

**Auto rotation** : When "OFF" is set, the auto rotation for all the functions is disabled. When "ON" is set, you can set whether to enable each function.

Press  to view the description of auto rotation of the function at the cursor position.

## Using UIM (FOMA card)

UIM (FOMA card) is a card for storing user information such as phone numbers.

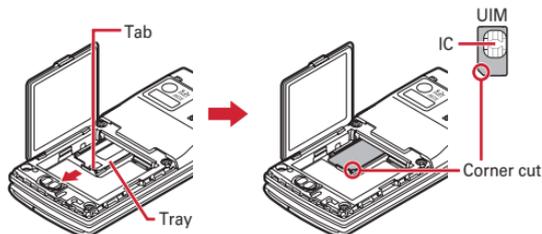
- If UIM is installed incorrectly or if there is a problem with UIM, you cannot make/receive a call or send/receive a mail.
- For details on handling UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

### ◆ Installing/Removing

- After turning the power OFF, close FOMA terminal and hold it with your hand.
- Take care not to touch or scratch the IC part.
- Attaching/Removing back cover and battery pack → P42

### ■ Installing

- ① Pull the tab and pull out the tray until it clicks.
- ② Put UIM to the tray with the IC side down and beveled corner fitted to the tray, and push the tray until it stops.



### ■ Removing

- ① Perform ① of installing operation.
- ② Take out UIM.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Note that forcible installing or removing UIM, or installing battery pack with the tray inserted at a slant may break UIM or the tray.
- If the tray is removed, press it straight along the guide rail inside the UIM slot with UIM left detached.

### ◆ Security code

Two security codes, "PIN code" and "PIN2 code", are set for UIM.

- You can change the security codes yourself. → P100

### ◆ UIM operation restriction

FOMA terminal is provided with UIM operation restriction for protecting your data/files or data/files copyrighted by a third party.

- When files or data are downloaded from websites or data attached to mails are obtained to your FOMA terminal with UIM equipped, UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.

- The data types subject to UIM operation restriction are as follows.
  - Videophone call message, Movie memo, Screen memo
  - i-mode mail attachment files (except ToruCa), images inserted to Deco-mail or signature, Decome-Anime template, MessageR/F, Deco-mail template containing data subject to UIM operation restriction
  - i-appli (including i-appli stand-by display), ToruCa (Details) image
  - Images (including GIF animations, Flash graphics and images downloaded from Data Center), i-motion, data compatible with contents transfer, melodies, Chara-den, Machi-chara
  - Kisekai Tool, Chaku-uta<sup>®</sup>/Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>, Uta-moji Lyrics, Music&Video Channel programs
- \* "Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
- Data or files with UIM operation restriction set cannot be transferred over infrared communication/iC transmission or copied/moved to microSD card.
- With UIM replaced or no UIM installed, data or files with UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played. For i-appli with UIM operation restriction set, no functions except deletion are available.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- When data subject to UIM operation restriction is set as stand-by display, incoming/outgoing image, ring alert, etc., replacing UIM with another one or using FOMA terminal without UIM installed causes the sound and image settings to be reset to the default state. In this case, sound or image actually generated or displayed may be different from those set. If UIM used when downloading the data is installed, UIM operation restriction of the data is canceled and the original settings are restored (when data is used for Set random image on stand-by display, settings may be canceled).
- UIM operation restriction is not set to data obtained via infrared communication, iC transmission, microSD card or DOCOMO keitai datalink or still images/moving pictures taken with the built-in camera.
- The following settings are saved to UIM.
  - My phone number
  - SMS settings (except "SMS report request")
  - DOCOMO Cert/User certificate of Manage certificate
  - バイリンガル (Select language), UIM, PLMN setting

## ◆ Settings when replacing UIM

If replacing the currently installed UIM with another UIM, the following settings are changed.

Setting	Changed contents
My phone number, バイリンガル (Select language), SMS settings (except "SMS report request"), "DOCOMO Cert"/"User certificate" of Manage certificate, PIN code and PIN2 code of UIM, PIN1 code ON/OFF, PLMN setting	Changed to the contents saved in the inserted UIM.
i-Channel setting, Reset call cost, i-Widget roaming set	Restored to the default settings.
FullBrowser usage	Set to "No" regardless of the setting before replacement.
Cookie setting of i-mode and Full Browser	Set to "Invalid" regardless of the setting before replacement. Cookie information is retained, but if setting to "Valid" again, a confirmation screen for deleting Cookie information appears.
Set program of Music&Video Channel	The setting before replacement is canceled. Set the program again if necessary.

## ◆ UIM types

When using UIM (blue) in FOMA terminal, note that it differs in the following items from UIM (green/white).

Item	UIM (blue)	UIM (green/white)	Page
<b>Number of savable digits of phone numbers in UIM phonebook</b>	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P70
<b>User certificate download to use FirstPass</b>	Unavailable	Available	P169
<b>WORLD WING service</b>	Unavailable	Available	P328
<b>Service Numbers</b>	Unavailable	Available	P321

## WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DOCOMO's FOMA international roaming service that allows you to make/receive calls with the same phone number overseas with UIM (green/white) and a terminal compatible with the service.

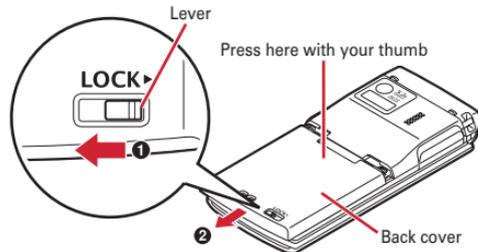
- \* If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. Note that, if you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription.
- \* If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005, but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- \* There are some charging plans unavailable.
- \* If UIM (green/white) is misplaced or stolen overseas, immediately contact DOCOMO and request for suspension of usage. Please see "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for contact information. Be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after misplacement or stealage.

## Attaching/Removing battery pack

- After turning power OFF, close FOMA terminal and hold it in your hand.
- Removing battery pack may cause reservation of Software update to be canceled. When the date and time are set with Auto time adjust set to "OFF" in Date & time, removing battery pack may delete date and time.
- Always lock the back cover lever. If you use the terminal without lock, the back cover may come off.

### ■ Attaching

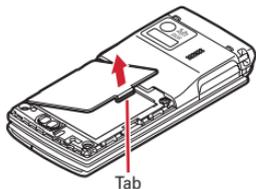
- ① Slide the back cover lever in the direction of ① to unlock, then slide the back cover in the direction of ② by 2 mm with a thumb to remove it.



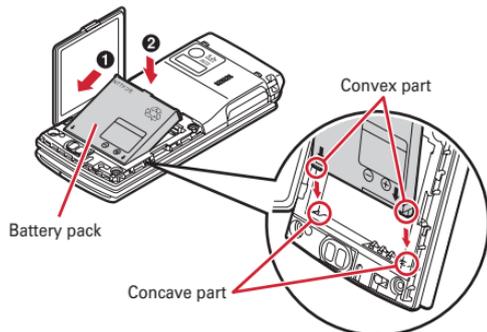
- \* When it is difficult to slide a back cover, hold FOMA terminal and slide the back cover with both of your thumbs.

- ② Pinch the tab of the inner lid and open it in the direction of an arrow.

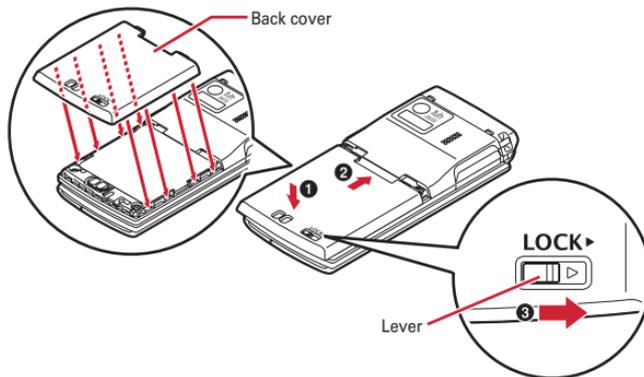
\* The inner lid is designed to be firmly closed to keep the waterproof performance. Note that your nails or fingers may be injured if you try to open it forcibly.



- ③ With the label side of the battery pack upward, align convex parts of the battery pack with concave parts of FOMA terminal and insert the battery pack in the direction of ①, press the battery pack in the direction of ② to set it in, then close the inner lid.

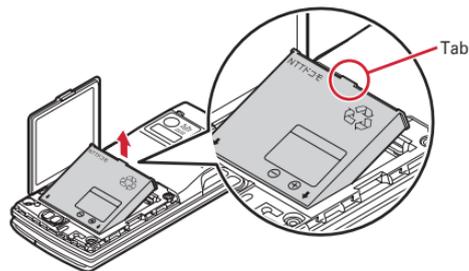


- ④ Place the 8 tabs of back cover to the notches, press back cover in the direction of ① to avoid forming any clearance between FOMA terminal and back cover, slide it in the direction of ② to install, then slide the back cover lever in the direction of ③ to lock.



#### ■ Removing

- ① Perform ①-② of installing operation.  
② Pinch the tab of battery pack and pick it up in the direction of the arrow to remove.



## ✓ INFORMATION

- Attaching battery pack forcibly into FOMA terminal may damage FOMA terminal jack.
- FOMA terminal or back cover may be damaged if you install or remove battery pack by a method except the procedures above or if you press too hard.
- Firmly install the back cover and lock it with the lever to avoid water seepage.
- The rubber packing of the inner lid play an important role for keeping waterproof performance. Do not remove or scratch it. Also, prevent dust from adhering to it.

## ❖ For better battery pack performance

- **Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with FOMA terminal turned ON.**

After charging has completed with FOMA terminal turned ON, the power is supplied to the terminal from the battery pack. If FOMA terminal is left in that state for a long time, the battery pack may run out causing the low battery alert to sound after using only a short period of time. In this case, remove FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter and then reconnect it and charge the battery again.

- **To promote environmental conservation, return your used battery pack to NTT DOCOMO sales outlets, our corporate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.**



Li-ion 00

## Charging

The battery pack does not have a full charge at time of purchase. Use AC/DC adapter for FOMA terminal to charge the battery before using FOMA terminal.

- To get the maximum performance from F-08A, always use battery pack F09.

## ❖ Charging time (approximate)

The following is the time for charging an empty battery pack with F-08A's power switched OFF. Charging with the terminal ON or under low temperature requires longer time.

AC adapter	Approx. 140 min.
DC adapter	Approx. 140 min.

## ❖ Operation time on full charge (approximate)

The following time varies by the charging method and operating environment.

Continuous stand-by time	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 560 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 330 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 360 H
	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 280 H
Continuous call time	FOMA/3G	Voice call : Approx. 200 min. Videophone call : Approx. 110 min.
	GSM	Approx. 200 min.
1Seg watching time		Approx. 280 min. (1Seg ECO mode : Approx. 320 min.)

- Continuous stand-by time indicates the approximate time that the phone can receive radio waves normally with F-08A closed.
- Continuous call time indicates the approximate time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.
- 1Seg watching time indicates the approximate watching time with receiving radio waves normally and using Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional).
- Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.
- Call, communication or stand-by time is reduced by performing i-mode communication. Also, even with no voice calls or i-mode communications made, continuous call/communication/stand-by time is reduced by creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-appli, using i-appli stand-by display, performing data communication or multiaccess, using camera, playing moving picture/i-motion, obtaining or playing Music&Video Channel programs, playing music with MUSIC Player, watching or recording 1Seg, etc.

## ❖ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces.
- When a time available with each charging is reduced to about a half from that of a new battery, replacement of the battery is recommended because it is near the end of life. The battery pack may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions, but it is not a problem.
- The battery pack's life may be reduced by using i-appli or videophone or watching 1Seg while charging.

## ❖ Battery charge

- For details, refer to the operation manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional) or FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 is applicable only to 100V AC. Though FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use is applicable to 100-240V AC.
- AC Adaptor has a plug dedicated to 100V AC (for domestic use). When using the AC adapter in the range of AC 100V and 240V overseas, a conversion plug adapter applicable to the country you are staying is required. Do not charge the battery using a transformer for overseas travel.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Some i-appli remains operating even when FOMA terminal is closed, consuming power. In this case, the call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced.
- During a call or communications, charging may not finish. Charging may not complete if you start battery charging while watching/recording 1Seg, playing moving picture/i-motion, obtaining Music&Video Channel program, activating Music&Video Channel player or MUSIC Player, running i-appli. In this case, it is recommended to end the operation, and then charge the battery.
- Charging may not be completed depending on the settings of Display & Key light or in some charging methods, for example, charging FOMA terminal in a open state with "Always on" set to Normal use in Display light time of Display & Key light.
- If you use the videophone or make packet communication or 64K data communication while charging, internal temperature of FOMA terminal may increase and the charging may not finish normally. In this case, wait until the temperature drops and try again.

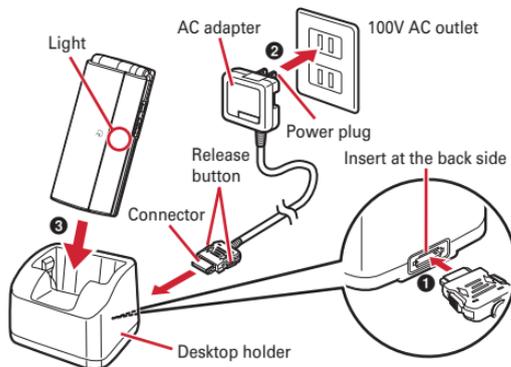
## ❖ Charging using AC adapter or Desktop holder

Read the respective instruction manual when using the optional FOMA AC adapter, DC adapter or Desktop Holder.

- When charging the battery pack, install it to FOMA terminal.

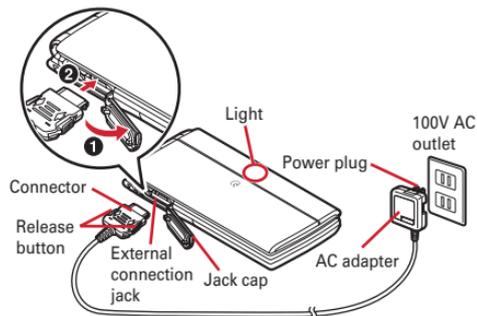
### ■ Using desktop holder and AC adapter in combination for charging

- ① Insert the AC adapter to the desktop holder, with the arrow on the AC adapter's connector upward.
- ② Unfold the AC adapter's power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ③ Insert FOMA terminal to the desktop holder with closed.
  - \* Check that the light turns on.
- ④ After charging is completed, hold the desktop holder and remove FOMA terminal.



### ■ Charging the battery using AC adapter only

- ① Open jack cap (1) of FOMA terminal, hold the connector horizontally with the arrow side upward and insert it to the jack. (2)
- ② Unfold the power plug and insert it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ③ When charging is over, pull out the power plug from the outlet, and pull out from FOMA terminal horizontally while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector.



### ❖ Charging in a car

By using FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional), charging is available in a car.

- For details, refer to the operation manual of DC adapter.
- When FOMA terminal is not used or you are leaving the car, disconnect the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket and disconnect the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal.
- The fuse (2A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Contact your nearest automotive supply store for a replacement.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Insertion or removal of the AC and DC adapter connectors should be done slowly and carefully so that they are not given excessive force. When disconnecting the connector, pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.

### ❖ Operations and precautions for charging

When charging starts, a charge start alert sounds, the light turns on and the battery icon on the display blinks. When charging is over, a charge completion alert sounds, the light turns off and the battery icon stops blinking.

- When starting the battery charging, the light turns on in red. In some environments, the light may not light immediately when charging starts; this is normal and not a malfunction. However, if the light does not turn on after a while, disconnect FOMA terminal from the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter then connect it again to start charging. Contact the sales outlet such as docomo Shop if the light does not turn on for a while after charging starts.
- If you receive mail or shoot an image while charging, the light turns on temporarily in a different color, but it is not a failure. It turns on in red after a while.
- When installing the fully charged battery pack to FOMA terminal and connecting it to the AC adapter, desktop holder or DC adapter, the light may turn on for a moment and turn off. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- During a call or communication, in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode) or when Charge alert is "OFF", the charge alert does not sound at the start or completion of charge.

## Remaining battery level

### Checking battery level

A battery icon appearing on the top of the display shows an approximate remaining battery level.

 (Battery level 3) : Ample charge.

 (Battery level 2) : Low charge.

 (Battery level 1) : Almost exhausted. Charge the battery.

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of FOMA terminal.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, you can check the battery level on the sub-display.

### ❖ When battery is almost exhausted

A message indicating the battery is almost exhausted appears. Pressing any one of , ,  keys with FOMA terminal opened deletes the message temporarily. After a while, a battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display blink. The power is turned off in approximately 1 minute. Although these operations stop when charging starts, press  to immediately stop the battery alarm.

- During a call, a message appears and a battery alarm sounds from the earpiece. After approximately 20 seconds, the call ends, the battery alarm sounds from the speaker and all icons on the top of the display blink.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, a message indicating the battery is almost exhausted appears.

### ❖ Checking battery level with sound and display <Battery level>

  [Settings & NW services]   

The battery level is displayed and the sound set for Keypad sound (→P81) is emitted according to the level. After a while, the screen returns to the menu list.  
Battery level 3 : 3 short beep sound  
Battery level 2 : 2 short beep sound  
Battery level 1 : 1 short beep sound

## Power ON/OFF

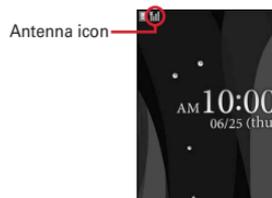
### Turning power ON/OFF

#### ❖ Turning power ON

 (2 sec. or more)

The wake-up screen appears and the stand-by display appears.  appears at the bottom of the display while reading UIM.

- An antenna icon appearing at the top of the display shows the approximate received signal level.



Stand-by display

Icon	   	
Received signal level	Strong ←→ Weak	Out of service area or where radio waves do not reach

- The battery icon set by default varies by the color of FOMA terminal.
- When you remove the battery pack while the power is ON and install it immediately, the power turns ON automatically and a message indicating it appears.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, you can check the received signal level on the sub-display.

#### ❖ Turning power OFF

 (2 sec. or more)

## ❖ Operations to perform after turning the power ON at the first time

When turning the power ON for the first time, operate in the order of "拡大メニューの設定 (enlarged menu setting)"→"Initial setting". The settings made can be changed later.

- When initialization is finished, a confirmation screen of software update function appears. Press  to display the stand-by screen.

## ❖ Enlarged menu setting

### 1 "Yes" or "No" on the confirmation screen

- When selecting "Yes", "拡大メニュー (enlarged menu)" of Kisekai Tool is set. If you cancel the confirmation screen by pressing  or , the confirmation screen reappears when the power is turned ON the next time.

## ❖ Default setting

- Always set Password. When  or ,  is pressed before setting terminal security code, a confirmation screen for exiting appears. If you exit by selecting "Yes", the initial setting screen reappears when the power is turned on next time.
- You can also display the initial setting screen by pressing  [Settings & NW services]    on the stand-by display.

### 1 Set required items on Initial setting screen ▶

**Date & time** : Set the date and time.→P49

**Password** : Change the terminal security code after performing authentication.  
→P99

**Keypad sound** : Set the confirmation sound when a key is pressed.→P81

**Text size** : Set size of characters for phonebook, mail, etc.→P95

## ❖ Checking Welcome mail

"Welcome  (DOCOMO moving picture)", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "オススメ  (Recommendation)" mail messages are saved by default.  appears on the stand-by display, and the light (blink) indicates that there is unread mail.

### 1 ▶

The next procedures→P133 Step 2 and the following steps in "Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox"

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When UIM is replaced, authentication is required after turning ON FOMA terminal. When authentication is succeeded, the stand-by display appears. If an incorrect terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned off (the power can be turned on again).
- If no operation is performed with something displayed on the screen, the display light is turned off automatically according to the settings in Light time-out or Power saving mode. It also applies while making a call. The display light turns on again if there is any operation or incoming call.

## Select language

### Changing screen display to English

### 1 [設定/NWサービス (Settings & NW services)]

   ▶  or 

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- This setting is also saved to UIM.
- Even if setting to "English", the displayed menu is not switched to English in some Kisekai Tool. Note that, when Kisekai Tool in "Preinstalled" folder is set, a menu dedicated to "English" is displayed.
- Even if changing this setting, the title of Shortcut icon is not changed from the language set when the shortcut icon was pasted.

## Setting date and time

You can set so that the time or time difference is automatically corrected or directly enter the date and time. With automatic correction set, the time is corrected when receiving the time information from DOCOMO's network in Japan or the time difference correction information from the telecommunications carrier used overseas.

 [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Auto time adjust** : Set whether time is corrected automatically.

- When "ON", Offset can be set.
- When "OFF", set the date and time. Time zone and Summer time may also be set.

**Offset** : When "+", the displayed time is always set forward the specified period of time from the corrected time. When "-", the displayed time is always set back the specified period of time from the corrected time.

**Date** : The date can be entered up between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2050.

**Time** : Enter the time in the 24-hour format.

**Time zone** : When moving to a place with time difference, set the time zone without changing the date and time settings.

- Time difference from the previously set time zone is calculated and displayed.
- Set "GMT+09:00" in Japan.

**Summer time** : When "ON", the displayed time is set forward one hour from the specified time.

### ✓INFORMATION

<When setting Auto time adjust to "ON">

- Time or time difference is corrected when FOMA terminal is turned ON. If not corrected for a while after turning FOMA terminal ON, once turn FOMA terminal OFF and then turn it ON again. Note that, when no UIM is installed or in some radio wave conditions, time is not corrected even if FOMA terminal is once turned OFF and turned ON again.
- When time difference is corrected, a message indicating it appears.

- After time or time difference is corrected overseas, the time displayed for call histories and sent mails is local time.
- Time difference is not corrected in some networks of overseas telecommunications carriers. In this case, set Time zone manually.
- The corrected time or time difference may have an error of several seconds.

<When the correction has never been performed and date and time are displayed with "-." or "?">

- Flash graphics, Machi-chara, etc. that use clock or date/time are not displayed correctly. Also, functions requiring date/time information such as Auto start, Reserve, downloading or playing data with Replay Restriction, operating a user certificate, etc., cannot be activated.

- Date and time of each data are not recorded and displayed as "----/--/--" or "-----". A segmental number furthermore (number to segmentalize) may be appended.

<When setting date/time with Auto time adjust set to "OFF">

- When the date/time are deleted because of removing of the battery pack or leaving the battery for a long time after the battery exhausted, set the date/time again after charging the battery.

## Caller ID notification

### Notifying the other party of your phone number

You can notify your phone number (caller ID) to the other party's terminal when making a voice call or videophone call.

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the phone of the other party can display the caller ID.
- Setting operations for this function is disabled from a location out of service area.

 [Settings & NW services]     ▶  or 

- Press  [Settings & NW services]     and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

## ❖ Priority of Caller ID notification

There are multiple methods to notify your phone number to the other party. If you set or perform these methods simultaneously, the caller ID operations are performed with the following priorities. The displayed setting and actual Notify/Not notify may differ.

- ① When setting a caller ID notification method in Call option for dialing→P57
- ② When "186" or "184" is prefixed to phone number to dial→P57
- ③ Caller ID settings of phonebook→P74
- ④ Activate/Deactivate of Caller ID notification

### ✓INFORMATION

- If an announcement of requesting caller ID is heard when making a call, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

## User information

### Checking your own phone number

You can check your phone number (My phone number), Name, Mail address, etc.

#### 1 [User information]

Checking during a call etc.:  

### ✓INFORMATION

- For details of how to check i-mode mail address, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, you can press  to switch User information between Number A and B.
- With 2in1 ON, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF then set it to ON again to obtain the correct Number B, or obtain Number B from User information.→P299  
Also, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 non-subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF to update to the correct user information.→P323

# Voice/Videophone Calls

## Making calls/videophone calls

Videophone calls .....	52
Making a call/videophone call .....	52
Switching a voice/videophone call during a call .....	54
Making a call using redial/received calls .....	<b>Redial/Received calls</b> 54
Using Chaku-moji .....	<b>Chaku-moji</b> 56
Setting caller ID to send/not to send for each call .....	<b>186/184</b> 57
Sending touch-tone signals (DTMF) .....	57
Making a call under set conditions .....	<b>Call option</b> 57
Making international calls .....	<b>WORLD CALL</b> 58
Registering prefix .....	<b>Prefix dialing</b> 59
Setting Sub address .....	<b>Sub address</b> 60
Reducing surrounding noise to make voice clear .....	<b>Noise reduction</b> 60
Talking hands-free while driving .....	<b>In-Car Hands-Free</b> 60

## Receiving calls/videophone calls

Receiving a call/videophone call .....	60
When the other party switches voice/videophone call .....	61
Pressing a dial key to answer call .....	<b>Any key answer</b> 61
Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed .....	<b>Close settings</b> 61
Setting the priority screen for an incoming call during another call .....	<b>Show PrioritySetting</b> 62

## When you can/could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately .....	<b>Respond and Hold</b> 62
Using public mode .....	63
Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call .....	<b>Record message</b> 64
Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos .....	65
<b>Videophone call settings</b>	
Using Chara-den .....	65
Setting image during a videophone call .....	66
Changing videophone settings .....	<b>Operation</b> 67
Setting for switching a voice/videophone call .....	<b>Notify switchable mode</b> 67
Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication .....	<b>DataSession arv. act</b> 67
Using videophone call by interfacing to external device .....	<b>External device</b> 68

## Videophone calls

Videophone function is available between terminals that support DCOMO videophone.

- Videophone calls are only available at 64 kbps.
- DCOMO videophone specifications conform to "3G-324M\*2, an international standard prepared by 3GPP\*1". The connection with the videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

\*1 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

\*2 3G-324M is an international standard for 3rd generation mobile videophone

### ◆ Reading screen during a videophone call



#### • Icon definitions

- : Zooming
- : Sending camera image : Sending Camera-Off images
- : Using Chara-den
- : Sending still image : On hold : Respond and Hold
- : Recording message : Recording moving picture memo
- / : Action mode (Full motion/Semi-motion)
- : Scene mode (Standard/Backlight/Monotone/Sepia)
- : Light:ON
- / : Sending image quality (Prefer motion speed/Prefer image quality)
- : Sending/Receiving audio : Sending/Receiving video
- : Sending/Receiving audio/video

- : Adjusting Listen volume
- : Macro shooting ON
- : Videophone call switch available

## Making a call/videophone call

### 1 Enter a phone number (up to 80 digits)

- Always enter area code even when calling from the same city.

: Delete 1 digit

### 2 Select a call type

Making a voice call :

Making a videophone call :

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.

- The charging begins when "Connected to videophone." appears on the screen.

### 3 When ending the call,

#### ✓INFORMATION

<For both voice and videophone calls>

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the caller ID selection screen is displayed. Select "Number A" or "Number B".
- If an announcement requesting caller ID is heard, make a call again after setting your caller ID to be notified.

<Voice call>

- You can make a call by entering a phone number after pressing . In this case, a call is made approximately 5 seconds after the phone number is entered.

<Videophone call>

- The charges are based on the rate for digital communication not for voice calls even when substitute image is sent instead of the camera image.
- If videophone call was not connected, a message appears indicating the reason and stand-by display reappears. Displayed messages may not reflect the state of the other party correctly depending on the type of terminal and/or usage of the network service by the other party. Main messages are as follows.
  - **Busy** : The line of the other party is busy (may appear during packet communication on some types of the other party's terminal)

- **Set Caller ID to ON :** Caller ID is not sent (such as when connecting to visualnet)
- **Redial using voice call :** The other party is set for Call Forwarding Service but forwarding destination does not support videophone calls
- **Busy with packet transmission :** The other party is performing packet transmission
- **Make call from i-mode web page :** You are not making videophone call after connecting to site provided by IP (Information Provider)
- **Upper limit exceeded. Connection failed. :** Upper limit of a charging plan with a limiting function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) is exceeded
- If a videophone call accompanied with Chaku-moji is made when Auto redial as voice in Operation is set to "ON", Chaku-moji accompanies when redialing.
- Any videophone call from FOMA terminal to emergency call (110, 119 or 118) with Auto redial as voice in Operation set to "ON" is automatically switched to a voice call.
- The speakerphone function switches according to Speakerphone in Operation.

### ◆ On hold

- The caller is charged for time spent on hold.

#### 1 During a call,

The call is put on hold, light blinks in green, and a melody is played. For a videophone call, the videophone on-hold image is displayed on the phone of the other party and yourself.

- To clear voice call on hold, press  or .
- To clear videophone call on hold, perform any of the following operations.
  -  : Redisplay the image sent before the call is put on hold
  -  /  : Camera image is sent
  -  : Substitute image is sent
- While on hold, FOMA terminal vibrates every 3 minutes, up to 5 times. However, it does not vibrate in Public mode (Drive mode) or while Vibrate alert in Personalized silent mode is set to "OFF".

### ◆ Using speakerphone function

#### 1 Enter a phone number (1 sec. or more) or

-  appears at the top of the display.
- For operating from phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages or Voice memos, press  (1sec. or more) or .
- Press  for 1 second or more to use speakerphone while Speakerphone in Operation is set to "OFF".

- While making a call, ringing or talking on the phone, you can switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF each time you press .

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- If you switch to speakerphone, the volume may suddenly increase. Use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- Talk to FOMA terminal within approximately 50 cm. If a call is hard to hear from the speaker due to loud noise around you or the other party, turn the speakerphone function OFF.
- This function can be used in Silent mode.

### ◆ Adjusting Listen volume during a call

- This setting applies to Listen volume in Adjust volume.
- Volume of the speakerphone function is retained even after a call but not applied to Listen volume.

#### 1 During a call,

### ◆ Using Voice clear/Voice slowing

#### ◆ Switching Voice clear ON/OFF

This function detects ambient noise and optimizes the other party's voice during a voice call by limited vocal range to make the voice be heard clearly. And, the volume is automatically increased also when your or other party's voice is small.

- This function does not operate while using speakerphone function or in overseas GSM/GPRS network.
- The settings are retained after a call.
- This function is not for adjusting Listen volume. Change the volume of the other party's voice with Listen volume.

#### 1 During a voice call,

When setting to "ON",   appears. When this does not operate with ON, it is displayed in gray.

## ❖ Switching Voice slowing ON/OFF

During a voice call, adjust the other party's voice to be heard slowly by using the silence at intervals, to make it easier to be heard. When the other party speaks without intervals, the voice is heard at the normal speed.

- If you set Voice slowing to ON, the quality of the other party's voice, music or time tone may change. In this case, set Voice slowing to OFF.
- This function does not operate in overseas GSM/GPRS network.
- The settings are canceled after a call.

### 1 During a call,

When setting to "ON", **ゆっくりボイス** appears. When this does not operate with ON, it is displayed in gray.

## Switching a voice/videophone call during a call

- Switchable only from the caller.
- This function is available among the models which support switching voice call and videophone call.
- To switch the call, the other party needs to set Notify switchable mode to ON. → P67

<Example> Switching to videophone call during a voice call

### 1 During a voice call, ▶ "Yes"

- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.

**Switching to voice call during a videophone call** : During a videophone call,

 **1** ▶ "Yes"

- Speakerphone is deactivated when the call is switched to voice call.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- It takes approximately 5 seconds to switch. It may take longer depending on radio wave conditions.
- Voice calls and videophone calls are charged individually depending on their respective times. The time for switching calls is not counted in the call duration thus not charged.
- Under some radio wave conditions, switching calls is unavailable, resulting in disconnection of the call.

- During voice call using Call Waiting or while the other party is performing packet communication, switching to videophone call is unavailable.
- When packet communications are made during a voice call, packet communications are disconnected before switching to a videophone call.
- Settings such as camera image sending etc., made during a videophone call are canceled each time you switch voice call and videophone call. → P66

## Redial/Received calls

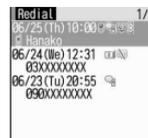
### Making a call using redial/received calls

- Up to 30 items are recorded in each of Redial and Received calls. When exceeding the savable number, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 30 items for each of Number A and B are recorded in Redial and Received calls.
- When calls are made to the same phone number, the latest call is recorded in Redial as "Unspecified", "Notify" or "Not notify" of Caller ID.

### 1 (Redial) or (Received calls) ▶ Move the cursor to a party

- Select the party to display details screen.

<Example> Redial screen



Redial list screen



Redial details screen

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 /  : Making/Receiving of voice call/international voice call\*1

 /  : Making/Receiving of videophone call/international videophone call\*1

 /  : Receiving of 64K data communications/international 64K data communications

 /  : Missed call/Unchecked missed call

 /  : Recorded message/Unchecked recorded message\*2

 : Received call with Chaku-moji

-  /  : Missed call with Chaku-moji/ Unchecked missed call
-  /  : Recorded message with Chaku-moji/Unchecked recorded message\*2
-  /  : Calling of show/hide of Caller ID set in Call option or Caller ID settings of phonebook
-  : Making/Receiving call while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)\*3
-  : Making/Receiving a call from/to Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
-  : Ringing time of missed call

\*1 If you directly enter "010" or dial from "010" saved in phonebook, the international call icon and "+" do not appear.

\*2 If recorded message is deleted, this icon changes to missed call icon.

\*3 May not appear when the call making/receiving date and time is not recorded etc.

## 2 or

- Pressing  on the details screen makes a call in the same way as the call type of incoming/outgoing calls.
- Press   to make a call specifying conditions.→P57
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, a call is made from the number specified for incoming/outgoing calls.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

#### <Redial/Received calls common>

- If voice and videophone calls are switched during the call, the type at the time of making/receiving the call is recorded.
- For international call, "+" appears before phone number. It is not displayed when dialing with "010" prefixed.
- If you press  during a voice call, Redial/Received calls appear.
- When an image is saved to phonebook, details screen is displayed according to View preference.

#### <Redial>

- When you subscribe to Multi Number, name of a call dialed by specifying Multi Number from submenu is displayed on details screen.

#### <Received calls>

- When caller ID of the other party is not shown, the reason for hiding caller ID appears.
- When you subscribe to Multi Number, name of Multi Number used for incoming call appears on details screen.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in an office etc. may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number (Dial-in service allows you to have multiple incoming phone numbers for one telephone line).

- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in received calls.
- To display all received call logs including missed calls within the delay time set in Ring alert delay, press    on Received calls list. To return to original Received call list, press   .
- To display the number of unchecked missed calls, press   on Received call list.
- When you receive a call from the phone number that is in Redial and not saved in phonebook, "Callback" appears.

### ❖Using Redial/Received calls

**Adding to phonebook : Move the cursor to a party** ▶   ▶  or  ▶   
or 

Phonebook new entry→P70

Phonebook entry to update the entry.

**Creating i-mode mail : Move the cursor to the destination party** ▶ 

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, sender address is set according to the number information specified for incoming/outgoing calls.

**Creating SMS : Move the cursor to the destination party** ▶  (1 sec. or more)

**Switching Redial/Received calls :**  

**Displaying Sent msg. log/Received msg. log :** 

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When using 2in1, you cannot create SMS from Redial/Received calls for Number B.

### ❖Switching details screen display <View preference>

**1 On details screen,**   ▶  - 

### ❖When you missed calls <Missed calls>

  (The digit indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display. The incoming calls are recorded as missed calls in Received calls.

- When a missed call from an unknown phone number exists, the ring time enables you to check whether it is a malicious ("One-ring phone scam" etc.) call for the sole purpose of recording the phone number in the received call list.

## ◆ Deleting Redial/Received calls

1 (Redial) or (Received calls) ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ **5** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the redial/received calls.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

### Chaku-moji

#### Using Chaku-moji

When making a voice or videophone call, a message can be sent in a ring time to inform the receiver of the purpose and urgency of the call.

- For details of Chaku-moji or supported models, refer to NTT DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".



## ◆ Editing or Setting Message

1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **3**

### 2 Operate Chaku-moji

Adding message : **1** ▶ "<New message>" ▶ Enter Chaku-moji (up to 10 characters) ▶

- Up to 10 items can be saved.
- Select the existing Chaku-moji to edit it. In this case, a confirmation screen for adding appears.
- To quote Chaku-moji from Sent messages, press **1** and select Chaku-moji.
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a message and press **2**. To delete all items, press **3** and select "Yes".

Setting display for incoming message <Message display settings> :

**2** ▶ **1** - **4**

- If "Hide all" is set, no Chaku-moji is received.

## ◆ Making a call accompanied by message

Chaku-moji appears on the incoming call screen of the other party.

- Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji are saved to Sent messages. When exceeding the savable number, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When using 2in1, up to 10 sent Chaku-moji are saved to Sent messages for each of Numbers A and B. Display differs depending on mode.

1 Enter a phone number ▶ **3** **1** ▶ Enter Chaku-moji (up to 10 characters) ▶ or **6**

When the other party receives the message, "Transmission:success" appears on the calling screen and message transmission is charged.

- You can also select from saved or Sent messages.

### ✓INFORMATION

- The sender is charged for communication fee, but the receiver is not.
- Message cannot be sent if the terminal of the other party is not compatible with this function, when Message display settings is set to "Hide all", or while the terminal is overseas. In these cases, "Transmission:failure" appears and no message transmission fee is charged. Also, if the terminal of other party is not turned on, is out of service area, in public mode (drive mode) or if Greeting msg resp time is set to "0 Sec.", a message cannot be sent and the transmission result is not displayed.
- Chaku-moji is sent even within the delay time in Ring alert delay set on the terminal of the other party, and transmission is charged.
- Depending on radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not appear even when Chaku-moji arrives to the terminal of the other party, and transmission is charged.
- Chaku-moji cannot be sent/received overseas.
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, appears in Sent messages of Number B.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock or Personal data lock, Chaku-moji can be received but not displayed on the incoming call screen. It is displayed in Received calls when the lock is canceled.

## Setting caller ID to send/not to send for each call

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether you want to include caller ID information when making a call.
- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID→P50

**Notifying your caller ID :** ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ or

**Not notifying your caller ID :** ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ or

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on connecting phone companies even when "186" is prefixed.
- When making a call by prefixing "186" or "184", the phone number prefixed with that number is recorded in the redial list.

## Sending touch-tone signals (DTMF)

- Pause and timed pause are effective only for voice calls.

### ❖ Sending pause "P"

This function allows you to operate Voice mail at home, to reserve tickets or to check the balance of a bank account, etc.

**1 Enter a phone number ▶ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Enter a number ▶**

When pressing after the call is connected, the digits after the pause ("P") are sent.

### ❖ Sending timed pause "T"

Timed pause ("T") is used to dial outside line number followed by an extension. When timed pause ("T") is entered between the phone and extension numbers, the extension number is dialed with a pause of the predetermined seconds after the phone number is dialed.

**1 Enter a phone number ▶ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Enter an extension number ▶**

- Timed pauses ("T") can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause ("T") is followed by an interval of approximately 1 second.

### ❖ Sending touch-tone signals (DTMF) during a videophone call

**1 During a call, ▶ Enter a number**

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

: Cancel sending

- While sending camera image or Camera off image, tone signals can be sent only by pressing numeric keys without pressing .
- A still image being sent is canceled.
- During Chara-den call, actions by pressing numeric keys are not available.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold, by entering a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T").

## Call option

### Making a call under set conditions

You can set calling conditions each time you make a call.

- Priority of the method to notify a caller ID→P50

**1 Enter a phone number ▶ ▶ Set required items**

**Chaku-moji :** Creating/selecting Chaku-moji→P56

**Multi-No/Own number :** Select a number from which a call is dialed

Call type of Multi Number→P322

- Own number is displayed when 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode. Select "Number A" or "Number B" when in Dual mode→P322

**Call type :** Select call type

**Caller ID** : Set Notify/Not notify caller ID

- When "Unspecified" is set, it operates according to Activate/Deactivate setting.

**Prefix** : Select Prefix to be added at the beginning

**Int'l call** : Set Int'l call→P59

**Int'l prefix** : Select international prefix number when making an international call

**Country code** : Select country code to dial for international call

**2**  or 

- If "V.phone" is selected for Call type, Chara-den to display during a call can be set by pressing .
- When operating from the received message/sent message details screen, or when using Phone To (AV Phone To) function, a confirmation screen for calling may appear. When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made with the settings other than Chaku-moji and Call type canceled.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- "SMS" of Call type can be selected in cases like using SMS To function.
- Even when sending/receiving a call with Caller ID notification set, Caller ID may not be notified or incorrect Caller ID may be displayed depending on telecommunications carriers used. In this case, you cannot make a call from Received calls.

## WORLD CALL

### Making international calls

- Overseas use→P328
- "WORLD CALL" is the international call service available from DOCOMO mobile phones.
- You can call approximately 240 countries and regions in the world.
- "WORLD CALL" charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.
- No subscription charges apply. No monthly fee is required.
  - \* You are subscribed to "WORLD CALL" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (Unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- There are some unavailable charging plans.

- Contact the numbers for General Inquiries on the back of this manual for details of "WORLD CALL".

\* To use international call services except DOCOMO service, contact the carrier for details.

You can make and receive international videophone calls to/from parties using certain overseas 3G telecommunications carriers or those using FOMA terminals overseas.

- For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the other party's terminal connected through the international videophone line.

**1**    ▶ **Country code** ▶ **Area code (City code)** ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶ 

- Omit the leading "0" in area (city) code (The leading "0" is required for certain countries and regions including Italy).
- The above phone number can be saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can also call by 009130 ▶ 010 ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ phone number

### ❖ Making international call entering "+"

Entered "+" is converted to the international prefix number "009130010 (WORLD CALL)".

- When a call is made by entering Japanese country code "81" succeeding "+", international prefix number is not converted.

**1**  (1 sec. or more) ▶ **Country code** ▶ **Area code (City code)** ▶ **Enter a phone number** ▶  ▶ **"Yes"**

- Press  for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit the leading "0" in area (city) code (The leading "0" is required for certain countries and regions including Italy).

## ❖ Making international call by selecting international prefix number and country code

You can select international prefix number or country code registered in Int'l call assist.

- 1 **Area code (City code)** ▶ Enter a phone number ▶  2 ▶ Select Int'l call field ▶ 2 ▶ Select Int'l prefix field ▶ Select the name of int'l prefix number ▶ Select Country code field ▶ Select Country code ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

- When "No, use original" is selected, a call is made.

## ◆ Setting Int'l call assist

### ❖ Setting Auto switch

You can set whether entered "+" is automatically converted to international prefix number. Also, you can set whether country code is added for a call made from overseas.

- 1  [Settings & NW services] 9 3 1 ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Country code** : Select "ON" then country code

- These settings are useful when making a call overseas.

**Int'l prefix** : Select "ON" and select Intn'l prefix number

### ❖ Editing country code <Country code setting>

Up to 22 country codes that are required for making international calls can be saved.

- 1  [Settings & NW services] 9 3 2

## 2 Select a country code

**Setting auto conversion** : Move the cursor to country code ▶ 

- ✓ is added to the selected number.

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to a country code ▶  3 ▶ "Yes"

## 3 Set required items ▶

**Country name** : Enter up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters

**Country code** : Enter up to 5 digits

### ❖ Setting Auto assist setting

You can save up to 3 items to be prefixed to a phone number when making international calls.

- 1  [Settings & NW services] 9 3 3

## 2 "<Not recorded>"

**Setting auto conversion** : Move the cursor to Int'l prefix No. ▶ 

- ✓ is added to the selected name.

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to Int'l prefix number ▶  3 ▶ "Yes"

## 3 Set required items ▶

**Name** : Enter up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters

**Int'l prefix No.** : Enter up to 10 digits

## Prefix dialing

### Registering prefix

You can set a number (prefix) such as an international prefix number to be prefixed to a phone number.

- Up to 3 items can be set.
- Making a call with registered prefix → P57

- 1  [Settings & NW services] 5 6 2 ▶ Enter the number in the entry field (up to 10 digits) ▶ 

- If you register a number (prefix) including a pause ("P") or timed pause ("T"), you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

## Sub address

### Setting Sub address

You can set whether you can call a specific phone or communication device by specifying a sub address.

- A sub address is a number used to call a specific device out of multiple telephone sets and/or communication devices assigned the same phone number (e.g. when multiple devices with sub addresses are connected to an ISDN line). It is also used to select contents in a graphics download service "V-live".

1 [Settings & NW services] 5 6 3 ▶ 1 or 2

#### ◆ Making a call specifying a sub-address

1 Enter a phone number ▶ ▶ Enter a sub address ▶ or

#### ✓INFORMATION

- If "\*" is entered after the pause ("P") or timed pause ("T") is entered, it is not recognized as the separator of sub address and is sent as tone signals containing "\*" even if Sub address is "ON".

## Noise reduction

### Reducing surrounding noise to make voice clear

- It is recommended that this function be used set to "ON" normally.

1 [Settings & NW services] 5 7 1 ▶ 1 or 2

## In-Car Hands-Free

### Talking hands-free while driving

When FOMA terminal is connected to a handsfree-compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system, voice calls can be made or received using the handsfree-compatible device.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the operation manual for the respective devices. FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When a handsfree device is set to sound, the ring alert for incoming calls sounds from a handsfree device regardless of settings of Silent mode or ring alert setting on FOMA terminal.
- When a handsfree device is set to sound, a call continues even when FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of settings in Close settings.
- When Record message is set, incoming operation is made according to the settings of Record message.

## Receiving a call/videophone call

### 1 A call is received

A ring alert sounds and the light turns on or blinks.

: Adjust the ring alert volume : Stop the ring tone or vibration

#### Display while receiving a call

When caller ID is sent, the phone number appears, and when phone number is saved in phonebook, saved name appears. → P70

- When caller ID is not sent, the reason for hiding caller ID appears.
  - **User Unset** : When the caller selected not to send caller ID
  - **Payphone** : When the call was made from payphone etc.
  - **Unavailable** : The call was made when sending the caller ID was not available; e.g. a call from overseas or land-line phone via forwarding services (caller ID may be sent depending on the carrier)

#### Operations from submenu while receiving a call

- The following operations can be performed.
  - **Reject call** : Disconnect without receiving a call
  - **Voice mail** : Connect voice call to Voice Mail service center
  - **Call forwarding** : Forward a call to the specified phone number

### 2 Select call reception type

Receiving a voice call :

Receiving videophone calls : or

Your own image is displayed while the videophone call is connected.

- Press instead of or to receive a videophone call using the substitute image.

### 3 When ending the call,

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- If you subscribe to Voice Mail service, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, and set Arrival call act to "Answer", you hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when receiving another incoming voice call during voice call. If you activated Voice Mail service, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, the services operate.
- When Chaku-moji is received, Chaku-moji appears on the incoming screen. Chaku-moji disappears when you answer the call. →P56
- When a forwarded call from FOMA terminal arrives, name appears as a normal incoming call. However, a phone number or a name may not appear depending on forwarder.
- When sub address is notified, "\*" and the sub address is displayed at the end of the caller ID.
- For an international call, a plus sign "+" appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- When you receive a call from the phone number that is in Redial and not saved in phonebook, "Callback" appears.

### When the other party switches voice/videophone call

- Switchable only from the caller.
- To accept switching, you need to set Notify switchable mode to ON in advance. → P67

#### 1 Receiving a request for switching during videophone call

- During call switching, a message indicating to switch the call is played.
- When the request to switch to a videophone call is received, a confirmation message for sending the camera image appears. When "Yes" is selected, the camera image is sent to the other party, and when "No" is selected, Default image specified in Substitute image of Videophone image is sent.

#### Any key answer

### Pressing a dial key to answer call

You can set whether you answer a call by pressing , , , ,  in addition to .

- This function is available for voice calls. However, it is unavailable for an incoming call during another call.

1  [Settings & NW services]   ▶  or 

#### Close settings

### Setting operations when FOMA terminal is closed

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication, packet communication.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  - 

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- In the following cases, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.
  - When Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
  - When a device that is connected to handsfree is set to sound
  - When message is being recorded by Record message.
- When a call is placed "On-hold", On-hold is deactivated when FOMA terminal is opened again.
- If "Continue(mute)" is set, your voice is not heard by the other party but you hear the other party's voice from the earpiece or speaker. When sending camera image during videophone call, substitute image is sent.
- Operations during voice call :  

## Setting the priority screen for an incoming call during another call

You can select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when data is received via packet communication from a connected PC during a voice call or when a voice call is received during i-mode communication.

- A screen change caused by this function does not suspend the call or packet communication.
- When i-mode mail or MessageR/F is received during voice call, voice call screen appears by priority.
- When a voice call is received while accessing data broadcasting site, Call alert image appears by priority. → P199 "Time shift function"

**1** [Settings & NW services] ▶ -

- When this is set to "No Set Up", the incoming screen for the newest call appears. However, voice call screen appears when packet transmission is received during voice call.
- When "Packet" is set, packet communication screen appears during voice call, and i-mode screen appears during i-mode session. You can switch to the call screen by pressing from Switch Task menu.

## Putting a call on hold when you cannot answer immediately

- The caller is charged for time spent in Respond hold.

**1** While receiving a call,

The call is put on hold, and the other party hears a status message. For videophone call, response hold image for videophone is displayed to you and the other party.

**2** When you are ready to answer the call, or

- Press to send the substitute image for a videophone call.

### ◆ Setting Status message

- You can record a status message up to approximately 10 seconds in your own voice.

**1** [Settings & NW services] ▶ Select On-hold tone field ▶

- Press and to restore the standard guidance.

**2** "Record" in Edit message field ▶ Record the greeting message after the beep ▶

- A message appears, and recording starts. After approximately 10 seconds, the end tone sounds.
- Press to stop recording halfway.
- When a recorded status message is deleted, the preinstalled message is reset.
- Select "Play" to check a status message.

## Using public mode

**Public mode is an automatic answering service putting emphasis on manners in a highly public place. When a call is received with Public mode activated, a status message or a message indicating that you cannot answer the call is played, and the call is disconnected.**

- When a call is received in Public mode (Drive mode), an announcement "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later." is played.
- When a call is received in Public mode (Power OFF), an announcement "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later" is played.
- When videophone call is received, Public mode status message image is displayed on the caller's terminal.

### ■ Incoming operations while using network services in Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)

- Voice Mail Service<sup>\*1</sup>, Call Forwarding Service<sup>\*1</sup>, and Caller ID Request Service<sup>\*2</sup> take precedence over Public mode.

\*1 For voice call with ring time set to other than "0 second", a service starts after the status message for Public mode is played.

\*2 When caller ID is sent, Public mode activates.

- When a call is sent from a caller whose calls are set to be rejected in Nuisance Call Blocking Service, Public mode does not activate.

### ◆ Using public mode (Drive mode)

- Public mode can be set or canceled only in stand-by. You cannot set this option out of service area.
- Even in Public mode, calls can be made normally.
- Public mode precedes even in Silent mode or Record message.
- Making an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode.

1 (1 sec. or more)

Public mode is set and appears on the stand-by display.

Canceling : (1 sec. or more)

### ■ When public mode (Drive mode) is activated

Your FOMA terminal does not perform receiving actions, and (the number of incoming calls) appears on stand-by display and the call is recorded as a missed call.

- The following sound does not ring. The vibrator, light and sub-display are not activated.
  - Ring alert of phone/mail/i-concier
  - Time tone, sound of countdown timer, alarm clock, schedule reminder
  - i-appli sounds, i-Widget sound effect
  - Call cost limit alert (even when Alert is set to "ON", no messages appear)
  - Sounds for starting/completing battery charge, battery alarm
- If Early warning "Area Mail" setting is set to emit sound in Public mode, the buzzer alarm and Area Mail ring tone are emitted when receiving Area Mail.
- Picking up FOMA terminal does not turn on the sub-display light automatically.
- i-Channel ticker does not appear.

### ◆ Using public mode (Power OFF)

1 2 5 2 5 1 >

Public mode (Power OFF) is set (No change on the stand-by display).

Canceling : 2 5 2 5 0 >

Checking the settings : 2 5 2 5 9 >

### ■ When public mode (Power OFF) is activated

- The settings continue until Public mode (Power OFF) is canceled by dialing " \* 25250". The settings are not canceled by simply turning the power ON.
- The Public mode (Power OFF) announcement is played also when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

## Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer the call

When Record message is activated, a greeting message is played and the caller can record message when you cannot answer the call.

- You can record up to 4 voice and videophone calls in total, approximately 30 seconds for each call.
- When using 2in1, messages of up to 4 incoming calls to Numbers A and B can be recorded to Record message in total. Display differs depending on mode.

### ◆ Activating Record message

1 [Phonebook & Logs] 7 1 ▶ 1 or 2

When "ON" is set, appears on the stand-by display.

■ When there is an incoming call with Record message active

#### 1 A call is received

When the response time set in Greeting msg resp time elapses, the greeting message is played according to setting of Set greeting message.

#### 2 The other party's message is recorded

- A beep announces the other party at the start and the end. And when approximately 25 seconds elapsed since the start, 2 short beeps are heard to warn that the end is approaching.

#### 3 When the recording is completed, the call is terminated

◆ Responding with quick message recorder <Quick message recorder>

Even when Record message is not active, you can activate it only once by pressing for 1 second or more while receiving a call. This operation does not set Record message to active.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even during the greeting message or recording to Record message, a call can be answered by pressing . For a videophone call, press to send your image, or to send the substitute image. In this case, message before the call was answered is not recorded.
- Record message does not operate when FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned OFF. Use Voice Mail service.
- When 4 messages are recorded, appears on stand-by display and Record message or quick message recorder does not operate. Delete unnecessary recorded messages. If you activated Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service, the services operate.
- In Personalized silent mode, "Answer machine" setting for Personalized silent mode is applied.

### ◆ Setting the time before the greeting message starts <Greeting msg resp time>

1 [Phonebook & Logs] 7 1 3 ▶ Enter time

### ◆ Setting the greeting message

- You can record a greeting message up to approximately 10 seconds in your own voice.

1 [Phonebook & Logs] 7 1 4 ▶ Select Greeting message field ▶ 2

- Press 1 and to restore the preinstalled greeting message.

### 2 "Record" in Edit message field ▶ Record the greeting message after the beep ▶

Supplementary description of recording message→P62 Step 2 in "Setting Status message"

## Playing/Deleting record messages/voice memos

### ◆ Playing recorded message/voice memo

1 [Phonebook & Logs] ▶ (Recorded messages) or (Voice memos)

<Example> Recorded messages screen



• Icon definitions are as follows.

- / : Recorded message/Played recorded message
  - / : Recorded message of videophone call/Played recorded message
  - /No icon : Voice memo while talking/Voice memo in stand-by
  - : Making/Receiving call from/to Number B (with 2in1 in Dual mode)
  - : While staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)\*
  - : Recorded message of international call or voice memo while talking
- \* May not appear when receiving or recording date/time is not recorded etc.

### 2 Select the recorded message/voice memo

- While playing, elapsed playing time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- While playing, the following operations are available.
  - , : Adjust volume
  - : Stop
  - : Switch the speakerphone function ON/OFF
- Videophone call message is always played with speakerphone activated. You cannot turn off the speakerphone.
- When videophone call message is played in Silent mode, a sound playing confirmation screen appears. Select "No" to play the message without sound.

**Making calls :** Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ or ▶

- To make a call specifying conditions, press .→P57

**Adding to phonebook :** Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ ▶ or ▶ or

Phonebook new entry→P70

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

### 3 Select whether to delete

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When recording voice memo in stand-by, "Voice memos" is displayed.

### ◆ Deleting recorded message/voice memo

1 [Phonebook & Logs] ▶ (Recorded messages) or (Voice memos) ▶ Move the cursor to message/memo ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the message/memo.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

## Using Chara-den

You can change the character sent during a videophone call.

- Displaying Chara-den→P265

1 During a call, ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select Chara-den



- The following operations are available during a videophone call.

- , : Action : Stop the action
- : List actions
- (1 sec. or more) : Switch Action/Action of Parts

## Setting image during a videophone call

- The following cannot be set as still image or substitute image to send.
  - A still image larger than 176×144
  - Animation, created animation
  - A still image except in JPEG or GIF format
  - Images that inhibited to output from FOMA terminal →P278 "File restriction" in "List of display items and changeability"

### ◆ Setting image to send

#### I Perform necessary operations during a call

##### Switching your own image and substitute image :

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, Chara-den may not appear and the default image may be sent.

##### Switching in-camera/out-camera\*1 :

- Even when the camera is switched, the shooting mode and the settings for image brightness and Adjust flicker are retained.

##### Switching to Light\*2 : (1 sec. or more)

When "ON" is set, the light turns on.

##### Switching display magnification <Zoom>\*1 :

- Each time you press , the zoom scale switches in the following order, and each time you press , it switches in the reverse order. Zoom is canceled when the camera is switched.

In-camera : Standard→2×

Out-camera : Standard→2×→4×→6×→8×→10×→12×→16×

##### Applying special effects to image <Scene mode/effect>\*1 :

You can shoot a subject against the light, or in monochrome or sepia mode.

##### Adjusting brightness of image\*1, 3 :

##### Adjusting flicker\*1, 3 :

The flicker may be reduced by selecting the settings that match the power supply frequency of your area.

- It also applies to the flicker adjustment settings of Camera and Bar code reader.

##### Sending Camera-Off image :

A substitute image selected in Substitute image in Videophone image is sent.

- When Chara-den is set as substitute image, Default image is sent.

##### Sending a still image : ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a still image

- Press  to cancel.

##### Switching to macro shooting\*2 :

You can adjust the focus when sending very close images approximately 7-10 cm away.

- Perform the same operation to cancel macro shooting.

##### Setting quality of sending/receiving images : ▶ or ▶

- When "Prefer motion spd" is selected, motion becomes smoother in a lower-definition image. When "Prefer img qual" is selected, motion becomes slower in a higher-definition image.

- When Receive image is changed, it applies to the image quality sent from the other party.

\*1 Can be set only while sending camera image.

\*2 Available only for out-camera.

\*3 The settings are retained after a call.

### ◆ Setting display during a call

- The settings are retained after a call.

#### I Perform necessary operations during a call

##### Switching the main screen and the sub screen :

##### Changing the main screen size : (1 sec. or more)

- Each time you press, the display size switches in the order of Large→Standard→Small→Large.

##### Setting display : ▶ Set required items ▶

Setting items→P67 "Changing videophone settings"

### ◆ Setting substitute or on-hold image <Image setting>

#### I [Settings & NW services] ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

Image : Set image type

**List images :** Select when Image is "Selected Chara-den" (only for Substitute image) or "Selected image"

#### ✓INFORMATION

- If Chara-den set for the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to the default Chara-den. If the still image or Default Chara-den is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default image.
- If the still image set as Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image or Movie memo image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to Default.

### Operation

## Changing videophone settings

You can set actions to be performed when videophone call fails, or set the screen to appear during a videophone call.

- Auto redial as voice is provided to ensure access to the other party. When this is set to "ON", the number is re-dialed as voice call if a call cannot be answered because the other party's terminal does not support videophone, or the other party is using the mova service via Dual Network Service. However, this option may not work properly if you dialed ISDN-sync 64K access point, ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of May, 2009), or a wrong number, etc. Note that you may be charged for these calls.

1  [Settings & NW services] 6 3 ▶ Set required items 

**Auto redial as voice :** Set whether to redial as voice call for unsuccessful videophone attempt

**Display setting :** Set the screen

**Sub screen :** Set Sub screen

- This setting is available when Display setting is "Both sides".

**Screen size :** Set the main screen view size

**Visual preference :** Set the incoming image quality of the other party

**Display light :** When "Terminal settings" is selected, this option depends on Brightness of Display & Key light

**Speakerphone :** Set whether to use speakerphone when connected

#### ✓INFORMATION

- During a voice call or 64K data communication, no videophone calls can be made even if Auto redial as voice is set to "ON". However, during packet communication connected to a PC, dialed videophone call is re-dialed as voice call.

- If you redial voice calls with Auto redial as voice set to "ON", the voice call rate is applied instead of digital communication rate.

### Notify switchable mode

## Setting for switching a voice/videophone call

You can notify the network that your terminal is available for switching voice and videophone calls.

- This option is not available during a call.
- You cannot set this option out of service area. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave conditions.
- Notify switchable mode is ON by default.

1  [Settings & NW services] 6 7

2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

### DataSession arv. act

## Setting actions for incoming calls during packet communication

You can set how to react to an incoming videophone call received during i-mode, data broadcasting site display or downloading Music&Video Channel program.

1  [Settings & NW services] 6 4 ▶ 1 - 4

- When "V.phone priority" is selected, displaying the incoming call screen has precedence, and packet communication is disconnected when a videophone call is answered. After videophone call is terminated, i-mode screen reappears and download of Music&Video Channel program resumes. While accessing data broadcasting site, Time shift of 1Seg is activated.
- When "Packet DL priority" is set, an incoming call is disconnected without incoming call screen being displayed, and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- When "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is selected, the service starts.

### ✓INFORMATION

- If you do not subscribe to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service, actions for "Packet DL priority" are performed even with "V.phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding" set.
- If Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ring time is set to "0 sec.", each service starts. The call is not recorded in Received calls.

### External device

## Using videophone call by interfacing to external device

Videophone calls can be sent/received through external devices by connecting FOMA terminal to external devices such as PC using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional).

If you want to use this function, prepare an approved external device or a PC, that videophone application is installed in, and devices (commercial) such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera.

- Refer to the instructions manual of external devices for hardware requirements, setting or operating instructions of videophone applications.
- You can use "DOCOMO Videophone Software" as an application supporting this function. DOCOMO Videophone Software can be downloaded from DOCOMO website.

**1**   [Settings & NW services]   ▶  or 

### ✓INFORMATION

- Videophone calls cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.
- If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during voice call is recorded as a missed call in Received calls. An incoming voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during videophone call from external device is recorded as a missed call.

Phonebook available for the FOMA terminal .....		70
Adding entries to phonebook .....	<b>Phonebook new entry</b>	70
Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry .....	<b>Alert by contact</b>	71
Setting group .....	<b>Group setting</b>	72
Making a call from phonebook .....	<b>Phonebook search</b>	72
Editing phonebook entries .....	<b>Edit phonebook</b>	74
Copying phonebook entries .....		75
Deleting phonebook entries .....	<b>Delete phonebook</b>	75
Making phonebook entries secret .....	<b>Secret attribute</b>	75
Checking number of phonebook entries .....	<b>No. of items</b>	76
Making a call with a few key operations .....	<b>Quick dial</b>	76

## Phonebook available for the FOMA terminal

F-08A supports FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

○ : Supported × : Not supported

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 1,000 entries* <sup>1</sup>	Up to 50 entries
Phonebook No.	No.000 - 999	×
Name	16 two-byte (32 one-byte) characters	10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters* <sup>2</sup>
Reading	32 one-byte characters	12 two-byte (25 one-byte) characters* <sup>3</sup>
Image, Moving picture	○	×
Group	30 groups in addition to "グループなし (No group)"	10 groups in addition to "グループなし (No group)"
Phone number	5 numbers per item, up to 3,005 numbers in total in phonebook* <sup>1</sup>	1 number per item
Phone number icon	○	×
Mail address	5 addresses per item, up to 3,005 addresses in total in phonebook* <sup>1</sup>	1 address per item
Mail address icon	○	×
Other items* <sup>4</sup>	○	×

\*<sup>1</sup> The number of savable items may be decreased depending on saved data.

\*<sup>2</sup> Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

\*<sup>3</sup> Up to 12 characters can be entered when both one- and two-byte characters are used.

\*<sup>4</sup> Items that can be set are Birthday, Note, Postal Code/Address, Company name, Job title and URL. i-concier information (note, address, URL) is automatically updated (when subscribed to i-concier).

- Phonebook saved in your UIM is available even when the UIM is installed to another FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminal phonebook can be stored in Data Center. Stored phonebook can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.→P113

- FOMA terminal phonebook list and UIM phonebook list can be switched with .

### ◆ Displaying name

#### ■ Voice call/Videophone call

Name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the screen while dialing/receiving, calling or voice call talking.

#### ■ i-mode mail/SMS

Name and phone number saved in the phonebook are displayed on the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list screens and mail details screen.

When a mail is received from a sender with mail address that completely matches with that saved in the phonebook including the domain name succeeding @, the name in the phonebook appears. However, for a sender with i-mode terminal, the name in the phonebook appears even when the domain name (@docomo.ne.jp) is omitted in the mail address and saved in the phonebook. If the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", add it to the phonebook omitting "@docomo.ne.jp".

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- With 2in1 in A mode, a name of phonebook set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting and with 2in1 in B mode, the name set to "A" in Ph.book 2in1 setting are not displayed.
- When different names with the same phone number/mail address are saved in FOMA terminal phonebook, the name saved earlier is displayed.
- When different names with the same phone number/mail address are separately saved in FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks, the name saved in FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- Saved names are also displayed in other functions using phonebook.

### Phonebook new entry

## Adding entries to phonebook

You can add to FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- Note that, when changing the models at a sales outlet such as docomo Shop, data saved in FOMA terminal may not be copied to a new model terminal due to its specifications.
- Priority of Call image→P86, 87
- Savable number→P70

## 1 (1 sec. or more)

Adding to UIM phonebook :  [Phonebook & Logs]  4

## 2 Enter a name

## 3 Set required items

**Phonebook number** : The smallest phonebook number available between 10-999 is assigned. If they are all assigned, 0-9 is assigned.

- When the phonebook number overlaps with an existing number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears. Not to overwrite, select "New entry" and enter the other number.
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.

**Reading** : Reading of the entered name is entered.

- Even if you correct the name, the reading does not reflect the change.

**Select/Shoot image** : Set an image or moving picture/i-motion that is displayed when receiving/making a call or checking the phonebook. You can also set an avatar created with iavatar maker.

**Setting image** :  1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Reading folders and lists of images→P256

- If a still image whose vertical to horizontal size (or vice versa) is larger than 854×480 dots is selected, the confirmation screen for zooming out the image appears.
- Created animations or the video data of Flash graphics including video data cannot be operated.

**Shooting and setting a still image** :  2 ▶ Shoot a still image ▶ 

- The still image is shot only in the size of QCIF (176×144).

**Setting a moving picture/i-motion** :  3 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion

Reading folders and lists of moving picture/i-motion→P259

- Moving picture/i-motion of only image can be set.→P262
- This function is not available when dialing.

**Shooting and setting a moving picture** :  4 ▶ Shoot a moving picture ▶ 

- Sounds are not recorded.→P184

**Setting an avatar** :  5 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an avatar

**Restoring the default image** :  6

 **Group** : "グループなし (No group)" is set.

- For FOMA terminal phonebook, press  to add a group.→P72

 **Phone number** : Up to 26 digits can be entered.→P41

- When entering 1 item, an item for additional entry is displayed.
- Pause ("P"), Timed pause ("T"), "+", "# and sub-address delimiter (" \* ") can be saved. Timed pause ("T") cannot be saved in UIM phonebook.
- If a phone number prefixed with "186" or "184" is added in phonebook, SMS cannot be sent even when the number is selected as the address.

 **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When entering 1 item, an item for additional entry is displayed.  
Secret code→P74

 **Birth day** : Set Set birthday to "ON" and enter the birthday. An entered birthday is displayed in Scheduler.→P290

 **Note** : Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **Postal Code/Address** : Up to 7 digits for a postal code and up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters for an address can be entered.

 **Company name** : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **Job title** : Up to 50 two-byte (100 one-byte) characters can be entered.

 **URL** : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

## Alert by contact

### Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry

You can set receiving actions for each phone number or mail address in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- "Terminal setting" is displayed for all items that are set to "グループなし (No group)", and "Group setting" is displayed for the items that are set to a certain group ("Terminal setting" is displayed only for Substitute image).
- Priority of a receiving action→P80, 81, 87, 94

1  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶  3  2 ▶ Set required items ▶ 

 : Switch Call/Mail screens.

 **Ring alert** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Ring alerts & Sounds.

- Only when setting Ring alert of the detail information to "Available", moving pictures/i-motion and Music can be set as ring alert.  
Setting Music→P79

**Vibrate alert** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect.

**Light alert** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Light alert.

• When "Sync melody" is set, Light color operates in "Rainbow".

**Light color** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Light alert.

**Substitute image (Call only)** : When set to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Substitute image in Image setting.

## Group setting

### Setting group

- You cannot change a group name or set calling/receiving actions to "グループなし (No group)". When deleting the group, only the entries in the group are deleted.
- For UIM phonebook, only renaming group name is available.

1 **[Phonebook & Logs]** **1** **2**

### 2 Perform necessary operation

**Adding** : **2** ▶ Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ **OK**

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to a group ▶ **3** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Yes**  
The group and the phonebook entries in the group are deleted.

• It is deleted even when secret attribute is set in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").

**Changing a group name** : Move the cursor to a group ▶ **4** ▶ Enter a group name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ **OK**

• For UIM phonebook, move the cursor to a group and press **2**, then enter a group name within 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters. Up to 10 characters can be entered when one- and two-byte characters are both used or one-byte katakana is included.

**Setting calling/receiving actions** : Move the cursor to the group ▶ **5**  
▶ **Set required items** ▶ **OK**

Setting Call image → P71 Step 3 in "Adding entries to phonebook"

• An avatar cannot be set for the group call image.

Setting other items → P71 "Setting receiving actions for each phonebook entry"

**Changing the order** : Move the cursor to the group ▶ **ME** **6** or **7**

## Phonebook search

### Making a call from phonebook

You can call up the phonebook entry from FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook for the party to call.

- When searching phonebook, the previously used phonebook (FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.
- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute cannot be searched. The same applies to Quick dial, Quick mail, Headset quick-dial and Search message.

### 1 **Q** ▶ Search the phonebook



Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting

Phonebook list (Show all names)

- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the following icons appear.  
**A** : Phonebook entries in A mode **B** : Phonebook entries in B mode  
**AB** : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes
- When i-concier information is registered, **IC** appears.

### 2 Move the cursor to the party ▶ **↔** or **↵**

- To make a call specifying conditions by pressing **1** **1** → P57
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, Number B is used to make a call to a party set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, and Number A is used for other parties.

### ❖ Using phonebook entries

**Creating an i-mode mail** : Move the cursor to a party ▶ **✉**

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, sender address is set to Address A for parties set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, and Address B for parties set to "B".

### Creating SMS : Move the cursor to a party (1 sec. or more)

- When only the phone number for the party is saved, pressing  can also create SMS.

### Attaching a phonebook entry to i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a party

### Searching a sent/received mail : Move the cursor to a party or

- For UIM phonebook, move the cursor to the party and press   , and press  or .

### Displaying a site : Move the cursor to a party ▶ "i-mode" or "Full Browser"

### Displaying a map from an address : Move the cursor to a party

- A map application that is set in Select map is activated.

### Checking location of a party : Move the cursor to a party ▶ "Yes"

- The phone number is targeted and you are connected to "imadocokantan search".
- For details of imadocokantan search, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

## ◆ Searching by specified method

- When there are multiple pages in the phonebook list, you can switch pages with . When Show all names is selected, you can change by the line.

### 1 [Phonebook & Logs]

#### 2 Specify the search method

##### Show all names : ▶ to select the line to show

- Each time you enter 1 character in reading, the phone number with the closest reading is searched (Name search).

##### Group search : ▶ Select a group

- Entries in the same group are displayed in the order of the reading (Japanese syllabary order→Alphabets→Numbers→Reading starting with blanks→Symbols→No reading).
- When one of the keypads of - is pressed, the line assigned to each keypad is displayed.→P358
- Entries are displayed in the order of alphabets→numbers→symbols by pressing  or .

##### Search by freq\* : ▶ or

Displayed in the order of number of calls or number of mails.

- Counted up to 9,999 times. To reset the counting, move the cursor to a party, press    and select "Yes".

### Ph book No. search\* : ▶ Enter phonebook number

- Zeros before single- or double-digit phonebook numbers can be omitted.
- You can display the phonebook list in phonebook number order by pressing  with no entry.

### Number search : ▶ Enter part of a phone number

Search the phone numbers containing the entered numbers, and phonebook data list of FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed in the order of the phonebook number, and the phonebook data list of UIM phonebook is displayed in the order of reading.

- You can display the phonebook data list in the order of phonebook number or reading by pressing  with no entry.

### Secrecy search\* :

The phonebook entries with secret attribute are displayed in the order of phonebook number.

\* Unavailable for UIM phonebook.

## ❖ Searching by Rocket search

Search from the characters assigned to keypads -.

<Example> Searching for "携帯電話子"(Keitai Hanako)

### 1 (か (ka) line)

The phonebook list of the Show all names is displayed.

## ◆ Setting preferred search method <Default search setting>

Set the search method displayed when pressing  on the stand-by display.

### 1 [Phonebook & Logs] ▶ Move the cursor to the search method

- Check mark  appears after the specified search method.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Even when Search by freq or Ph book No. search is set by priority, if the UIM phonebook is searched last time, the UIM phonebook list is displayed based on Show all names.

## ◆ Checking phonebook details

### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry



FOMA terminal phonebook details screen (Phone number)

- 1 **Phonebook No.**
- 2 **Name and reading**
- 3 **Group icon, Group name**
- 4 **Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting (with 2in1 in Dual mode)**  
A : Phonebook entries in A mode B : Phonebook entries in B mode  
AB : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes
- 5 **Setting conditions of Accept/Reject call, Caller ID Settings and Secret code**
- 6 **Setting condition of Alert by contact (call/mail)**

- / : Ring alert
- / : Vibrate alert
- / : Ring alert and Vibrate alert
- / : Light alert
- / : Light color
- / : Light alert and Light color
- : Substitute image (call only)

- 7 **Image (displayed according to the settings of View preference)**
- 8 **Saved icon, Icon type**

- : Display the previous/next phonebook entry.
- : Display the set items.

#### Viewing history information : On the phone number or mail address details screen, .

- The cumulative number and the date and time of last call appear. Cumulative information of calls and mail messages can be reset at once by pressing  and selecting "Yes".

#### Check User information :

Name, reading, group name and the first phone number/mail address are displayed in full.

## ◆ Switching details screen display <View preference>

- View preference of phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Mail logs and User information apply to each of them.

### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ ▶ -

- When operating from UIM phonebook, press   and  - .

## Edit phonebook

### Editing phonebook entries

### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry

### 2 Perform necessary operations

#### Editing contents : ▶ Set required items ▶

Set required items → P71 Step 2-3 in "Adding entries to phonebook"

- When operating from UIM phonebook, press .

#### Changing the phone number order : ▶ Select a phone number to be set as the first one

#### Changing the mail address order : ▶ Select a mail address to be set as the first one

#### Changing the phonebook number order : ▶ Select a phonebook entry to change the phonebook number

#### Setting Caller ID notification to each phone number <Caller ID settings> :

   ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select a phone number ▶  - 

- When "No setting" is set, it operates according to Activate/Deactivate.

#### Setting secret code to mail address <Secret code> :

   ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select a mail address ▶ Enter 4-digit secret code

- To cancel, delete all the secret codes entered and press .
- A secret code you set is displayed on this screen only.
- You cannot send a mail to the party whose address is saved as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp".

## ✓ INFORMATION

- In UIM phonebook, a phone number containing "\*" may not be overwritten.
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved and the phone number or mail address in the first entry is deleted, the second or subsequent entry moves forward.

## Copying phonebook entries

- FOMA terminal phonebook can also be copied to microSD card.→P271

### ◆ Copying between FOMA terminal and UIM

- When there is the same group in the copying destination, it is copied to the group.
- When copying from FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook, the first phone number and mail address are copied. However, a part that exceeds savable character number and timed pause ("T") of phone number are deleted.
- Icons of phone number and mail address are replaced.

#### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ (7) (1) ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶

- When copying from UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook, press  (7) to select a phonebook entry, and press .

### ◆ Copying each data

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF, and it can be pasted to anywhere any number of times.

#### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry to copy ▶ (6) ▶ (1)-(8)

- The first phone number and mail address are copied.
- When copying the second or subsequent item, display the phone number or mail address on the details screen, press  (6) and press (2) or (3).
- When operating from UIM phonebook, press  (6) and (1)-(3).

## 2 Display the character entry screen to paste ▶ Paste the characters

Pasting method of characters→P313

### Delete phonebook

## Deleting phonebook entries

- When deleting all, all of the created groups are deleted.
- For entries in UIM phonebook, "All contacts" cannot be performed.

#### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ (4) ▶ (1) or (2) ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.
- When operating from UIM phonebook, press  (4) and select "Yes".

### Secret attribute

## Making phonebook entries secret

In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the phonebook entries or groups with secret attribute are not displayed.

- Setting for UIM phonebook is unavailable.
- If you change secrecy, a confirmation screen appears for performing Apply secret attribute when ending the phonebook and returning to the stand-by display.
- Flow of using Privacy mode→P104

### ◆ Setting secret attribute to phonebook entry

#### 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶ (3) (4) (1)

- When secret attribute is set,  blinks.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

## ◆ Setting secret attribute to group

- Secret attribute is not set to each phonebook entry in the group.
- Secret attribute cannot be set for "グループなし (No group)".

1  [Phonebook & Logs]   ▶ Move the cursor to the group ▶  

- When secret attribute is set,  blinks.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

### No. of items

## Checking number of phonebook entries

- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), the number of phonebook entries with secret attribute is not displayed.

1  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶   

### Quick dial

## Making a call with a few key operations

You can make calls by a simple operation to parties with phonebook numbers 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The phone number saved first is used for calling.

1 Enter a phonebook number ▶  or 

# Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages .....	78	Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving .....	Mail image	88
<b>Sounds settings</b>		Setting display and key lighting .....	Display & Key light	88
Changing sounds of ring alert, alarm sound, etc. ....		Saving battery consumption .....	Power saving mode	89
..... Ring alerts & Sounds	79	Setting whether to turn on sub-display light automatically .....	S-disp auto light on	89
Setting volume of ring alert, alarm sound, etc. ....	80	Changing display colors .....	Color scheme	89
Setting Stereo/3D sound or Dolby Mobile .....	80	Changing startup menu .....	Select startup menu	89
Informing you of incoming calls and alarms by vibration .....		Setting Machi-chara .....	Display Machi-chara	89
..... Vibrate alert/effect	81	Using Kisekai Tool .....		90
Changing ring tone .....	81	Customizing the menu .....		92
Setting System sound .....	81	Customizing FOMA terminal screen .....	Style theme	93
Setting confirmation tone for charging .....	82	Changing battery icon .....	Battery icon	93
Setting on hold tone .....	82	Changing antenna icon .....	Antenna icon	93
Sounding alarm when a line is likely to be disconnected .....		Indicating arrival information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting .....	Indicator light	93
..... Quality alarm	82	Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or while talking .....	Light alert	93
Setting alarm for reconnecting interrupted call .....	82	Setting time tone .....	Time tone	94
Informing you by alarm that the battery is almost exhausted .....		Displaying animated arrival image for arrival information .....	Animated-notice	94
..... Low Battery alert	82	Changing font style .....	Font style	95
Muting ring tone from the FOMA terminal .....	82	Changing font size .....	Font size	95
..... Silent mode	82	Setting clock display .....	Clock display format	95
<b>Displays/Lights settings</b>				
Switching stand-by display, Silent mode, etc. by lifestyles .....				
..... Timed theme	84			
Changing stand-by display .....	84			
Changing image for outgoing voice/videophone call .....				
..... Outgoing call image	86			
Changing image for incoming voice/videophone call .....				
..... Incoming call image	87			
Decorating titles to display for incoming/outgoing calls or while talking .....				
..... Identification mark	87			
Setting Contact image display from phonebook at incoming/outgoing call .....				
..... Contact image	87			

## Setting operations for incoming calls and mail/messages

- This setting also applies to Call ring alert, Mail/Msg. ring alert, Incoming call/Videophone receiving in Call image, Vibrate alert/effect and Light alert.
- Music or moving picture/i-motion that can be set as Ring alert, moving picture/i-motion that can be set as Show image→P218, 262

### ◆ Call alert

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Ring alert** : Set the ring alert.

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P79)", select the ring alert.

**Show image** : Set an incoming call image.

- When "Select image" is selected, select an image from List images field. When "i-motion" is selected, select moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data is set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

**Vibrate alert** : Set the operation pattern of vibrator.

- Even if setting to "Sync melody", some melodies are not synchronized.

**Light alert** : Set a lighting pattern and color of the light.

- When "Sync melody" is set, the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. And, some melodies are not synchronized.

### ◆ Videophone alert

1  [Settings & NW services]   ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- Items to be set are the same as those for Call alert.

### ◆ Mail alert

1     ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Ring alert** : Set the ring alert.

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P79)", select the ring alert.

**Light alert/Vibrate alert** : Set the same items as those for Call alert.

**Ring time (sec)** : Set the duration of sounding of ring alert or operation of vibrator within the range of 1-30 seconds.

### ◆ MessageR alert/MessageF alert

1    ▶  or  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- Items to be set are the same as those for Mail alert.

### ❖ Ring alert and incoming image of voice/videophone call/mail

- When setting a moving picture/i-motion with sound and image for ring alert, Display image is set to "Sync ring alert".
- In the following cases, Display image is set to "Standard image". However, the setting can be changed.
  - When moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds is set as Ring alert with Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images set as Show image
  - When Ring alert is changed from moving picture/i-motion containing sounds and images to melody, moving picture/i-motion containing only sounds, or music
- In the following cases, ring alert is restored to the default setting. However, the setting can be changed.
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images is set as Show image with moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds or music set as Ring alert
  - When Show image is changed from "Sync ring alert" to other than "Sync ring alert"
- \* Display image of mail can be set in Image message alert.

## Changing sounds of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

- When a moving picture/i-motion is set as ring alert, a moving picture and/or sound is played when receiving a call or mail (Movie ringtone).
- This setting also applies to alert settings of voice/videophone calls, mail and MessageR/F.
- Music or moving picture/i-motion that can be set as ring alert→P218, 262
- Ring alert and incoming call image→P78
- Melodies for ring alert stored by default→P356
- When moving picture/i-motion is set for ring alert, it may operate according to the default setting if there is an incoming call while using a camera.

### ◆ Call ring alert

1 [Settings & NW services] 1 1 1 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P79)", select the ring alert.

### ◆ Mail/Msg. ring alert

1 [Settings & NW services] 1 1 2 ▶ 1-3 ▶ Set required items ▶

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P79)", select the ring alert.
- Set Ring time (sec) in the range of 1-30 seconds.

### ◆ i-concier ring alert

1 [Settings & NW services] 1 1 3 ▶ Set required items ▶

- When selecting any of "Melody", "Movie ringtone" or "Music (→P79)", select the ring alert.

- Set Ring time (sec) in the range of 1-30 seconds.

### ◆ Alarm sound

You can set Alarm clock sound and Schedule reminder.

1 [Settings & NW services] 1 1 4

2 1 or 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

- When selecting any of "Melody", "i-motion" or "Music (→P79)", select alarm clock sound or alarm sound. When moving picture/i-motion containing sound and image is set for "i-motion", the image of the moving picture/i-motion is displayed.

### ◆ Setting music

You can select "Full song ring tone" to set whole music data as a ring alert or "Point ring tone" to set a part of it.

<Example> Setting Full song ring tone

1 Select "Music" at each setting ▶ Select a folder

2 Select music to set

- When music in microSD card is selected, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to move the music to the terminal and set to a ring alert.

**Setting Point ring tone :** Move the cursor to music ▶ ▶ Select the item

- When Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> in microSD card available to nonmember is selected, a confirmation screen for cutting out the part to set as the ring alert and saving it in the i-motion folder appears. Select "Yes", enter a display name and press . The cut out music is saved in "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie as i-motion compatible with contents transfer.

When exceeding the savable number/area→P280

## ❖ Ring alert priority

When setting ring alerts for multiple functions, they sound in order of the following priority.

- ① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
  - ② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
  - ③ Call ring alert/V.phone ring alert/Mail ring alert, Call alert (Incoming call)/ Videophone alert (Videophone receiving)/Mail alert, Incoming calls melody setting in Multi Number, Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting
- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the ring alert of voice call operates according to Anonymous caller. Ring alert for videophone call operates according to V.phone ring alert/Videophone alert/Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting.

## Adjust volume

### Setting volume of ring alert, alarm sound, etc.

 [Settings & NW services]   ▶  - 

- When Alert/Call volume is selected, additionally select  or .
- When Alarm volume is selected, additionally select  - .
- "Silent" and "Steptone" cannot be set for Listen volume. "Steptone" cannot be set for i-appli effect sound, ToruCa receive alert, Operation sound, Melody effect sound or 1Seg alarm sound.

**Alert/Call volume** : Set alert volume or listen volume for a voice call and videophone call.

- Alarm volume of Call cost limit operates according to the setting of Call alert volume, and the volume of play sound for Recorded messages or Voice memos and sound effect for pasting stamp or text to an image operates according to the setting of Listen volume.
- Changing Listen volume during a call → P53

**Mail/Msg. alert vol.** : Set alert volume for mail and MessageR/F.

**i-concier ring alert** : Set volume when receiving information.

**Alarm volume** : Set volume for alarm clock (when Volume is set to "Phone setting" from the Set sound screen), 1Seg alarm (when 1Seg volume is set to "Phone setting") and schedule reminder.

- The volume of Countdown timer applies to Alarm clock sound, and the alarm volume of 1Seg watching reservation applies to Schedule reminder.

**i-appli effect sound** : Set volume of the sound emitted from i-appli.

**ToruCa receive alert** : Set the volume of the alert activated when receiving ToruCa has completed. This setting also applies to Receive alert volume of ToruCa alert.

**Operation sound** : Set the volume of Keypad sound and Open/Close sound.

- When "Silent" is set, the confirmation sound is not emitted when reading a code.

**Melody effect sound** : Set the volume for playing melody (including melody attached to mail or MessageR/F). This setting also applies to the volume of Settings of Melody.

2  or  ▶ 

- If setting Call alert volume to "Silent",  appears on the stand-by display.  appears when a vibrator for Call vibrate alert is also set.

## Stereo sound effect

### Setting Stereo/3D sound or Dolby Mobile

- Stereo/3D sound is enabled when the earphone/microphone (optional) etc. are used.
- This setting also applies to Stereo/3D sound of Settings of Melody, Dolby Mobile of moving picture/i-motion (Settings), MUSIC Player (Settings), 1Seg (Sound setting of User setting) and Music&Video Channel (submenu).

1  [Settings & NW services]   ▶  -  ▶  or 

### ✓ INFORMATION

- The 3D sound function is a function to create sound that seems to have 3-dimensional spread or move spatially. Using the 3D sound function, you can enjoy realistic i-appli games, ring tone, i-motion, etc.
- There are differences in how the 3D sound effect is felt among individuals.

## Vibrate alert/effect

### Informing you of incoming calls and alarms by vibration

- The vibrator for receiving 64K data communication operates according to the setting of incoming voice call.
- This setting also applies to alert settings of voice/videophone calls, mail and MessageR/F, Vibrate effect of i-αppli settings.
- If FOMA terminal is on the desk etc. when the vibrator operates, it may fall off because of the vibration.

<Example> Setting vibrator for incoming voice and videophone calls

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 3

2 1 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting vibrator when receiving mail and MessageR/F : 2 ▶ 1 - 3

Setting vibrator when receiving i-concier : 3

Setting vibrator when an alarm clock or schedule reminder sounds :

4 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting vibrator when using i-αppli : 5 ▶ 1 or 2

- Omit Step 3.

3 1 - 5

- If you move the cursor to "Pattern A", "Pattern B" or "Pattern C", it vibrates in the pattern at the cursor position.
- When setting to "Sync melody", the vibrator operates along with the melody set for ring alert etc. Note that some melodies are not synchronized.
- If the vibrator for incoming calls is set,  appears on the stand-by display if the Call alert volume is more than "Level 1".  appears when Call alert volume is set to "Silent".

### ◆ Vibrate alert priority

When setting vibrator for receiving in multiple functions, it operates in order of the following priority.

- ① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Vibrate alert/effect/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

## ✓ INFORMATION

- It does not vibrate when receiving a call/mail during a call.
- Even with "OFF", the vibrator may operate when Flash graphics operate.

## Melody Call

### Changing ring tone

This is a service to let the caller to FOMA terminal hear melody instead of ring alert.

- A communication fee is free for connecting to the setting site. Note that packet communication fees are charged for connecting to IP site, i-mode menu site or Free Melody Corner.
- Melody Call is valid only when a voice call is received.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 8 ▶ "Yes"

The melody call site is connected.

- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

## Setting System sound

### ◆ Keypad sound

- Even if setting a sound, no sound is made while i-αppli is activated.
- When setting to "OFF", the confirmation sound is not emitted when reading a code.
- When the sound of Battery level and End alert of Data exchange settings are set to "ON", sounds are emitted according to these settings.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 5 1 ▶ 1 - 5

### ◆ Open/Close sound

Set a sound to be emitted when opening/closing FOMA terminal.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 5 2 ▶ 1 - 4

## ◆ Shutter sound for still image/moving picture

Set a shutter sound for still image shooting and moving picture shooting (recording with Sound recorder).

- This setting also applies to Shutter sound of Recording settings and Image settings.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 5 ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ 1-5

## Charge alert

### Setting confirmation tone for charging

You can set if you activate the battery charging sound at the start and end of charging.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 6 ▶ 1 or 2

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Even when "ON" is set, the charge alert does not sound during a call or communication, in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode).

## On-hold tone

### Setting on hold tone

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 7 2 ▶ 1-3

## Quality alarm

### Sounding alarm when a line is likely to be disconnected

- The call may be interrupted without sounding the alarm depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 7 3 ▶ 1-3

- You can set it during a voice call by pressing  4.

## Reconnect alarm

### Setting alarm for reconnecting interrupted call

- While the call is interrupted, the other party hears no sound.
- The time required for reconnection differs depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions. It normally takes 10 seconds at most.
- You are charged for the time used for reconnection (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be interrupted without sounding the alarm depending on the call conditions or radio wave conditions.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 7 4 ▶ 1-3

- You can set it during a voice call by pressing  4.

## Low Battery alert

### Informing you by alarm that the battery is almost exhausted

- Regardless of this setting, an alarm sounds from the earpiece when the battery is almost exhausted during a call.

1  [Settings & NW services] 1 1 7 5 ▶ 1 or 2

## Silent mode

### Muting ring tone from the FOMA terminal

You can set FOMA terminal not to emit a sound by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

## ◆ Starting/Canceling Silent mode

### 1 (1 sec. or more)

Silent mode is started/canceled. When started,  (in General silent mode) or  (in Personalized silent mode) appears on the stand-by display.

- Silent mode can also be started/canceled by pressing  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal closed by default. Note that, if you press  for 1 second or more when high-pitched alarm can be activated, Silent mode is not started but the high-pitched alarm sounds.

### ❖ When General silent mode is activated

This function cancels the sound emitted from FOMA terminal such as ring alert, keypad sound, open/close sound, alarm, buzzer or the sound for reading a code, and an incoming call is notified with vibrator (vibration). Also, microphone is sensitized, and you can call in a small voice.

- In the following cases, the operation of vibrate alert is "Pattern A".
  - When receiving voice call, videophone call, mail, during 64K data communication or when receiving i-concier
  - When the time specified in Countdown timer elapses
  - When the date and time specified in schedule come
- The vibrator operation for receiving Area Mail is "Sync melody".
- When the time specified in Alarm clock comes, vibrate operates according to the setting of Alarm clock.
- Melody is not played automatically even when sent/received mail or Message/F is displayed with "Auto play" set for Attachment auto-play.
- When playing Melody, Music&Video Channel program or Music, a confirmation screen for playing appears. Select "Yes" to play.
- When playing moving picture/i-motion with sound or program recorded from 1Seg, a confirmation screen for playing a sound appears. Select "No" to play moving picture only.
- When activating 1Seg, a sound emission confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to adjust the volume. Select "No" not to emit a sound. Note that a sound is emitted if 1Seg activation is set to "Auto start" in Set notify alarm of watching reservation.
- High-pitched alarm does not sound even when   is operated when High-pitched alarm is set to "ON". It operates according to Side key shortcut.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Shutter sound is emitted even in Silent mode.
- If you have changed Area Mail setting so that an alarm can sound in Silent mode, the buzzer alarm or the Area Mail ring tone sounds when Area Mail is received.

## ◆ Silent mode

### <Example> Setting Personalized silent mode

#### 1 [Settings & NW services]

#### 2

Setting General silent mode : 

- Omit Step 3.

#### 3 Set required items

- When Vibrate alert is set to "ON", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect. Items set to "OFF" in Vibrate alert/effect vibrate in "Pattern A".
- When Vibrate alert is set to "Contact setting", it operates according to Vibrate alert/effect.
- Regardless of the setting of Vibrate alert, when receiving Area Mail, the vibrator operates in "Sync melody".
- When Call alert volume is set other than "Silent", an alarm for Call cost limit also sounds.
- Even when Mail alert volume is set to "Silent", if you set sound to be emitted in other settings, the buzzer alarm sounds when Area Mail is received. Also, if you set sound to be emitted in Silent mode in Early warning "Area Mail" setting, the buzzer alarm or Area Mail ring tone sounds.
- When Alarm sound, Schedule reminder or i-appli sound is set to "ON", the sound is emitted according to each setting.
- When Alarm sound is set to "ON", sound of countdown timer or 1Seg alarm is also emitted.
- For Record message, it operates according to this setting regardless of the setting of Record message.

## Switching stand-by display, Silent mode, etc. by lifestyles

This function allows you to change the stand-by display or activate Silent or Privacy mode at the specified time. Timed theme can be added up to 18 items.

1  [Settings & NW services] 3 3

2 Select a title ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Time** : Enter the time to switch the theme in the 24-hour format.

**Repeat** : Set repetitive operation.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

**Title** : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Style theme** : Set if you change style theme.

- When "Change" is selected, select a style theme.

**Silent mode** : Set if you start/cancel Silent mode.

- When "ON" is set, Silent mode set from Silent mode starts.

**Privacy mode** : Set if you start Privacy mode.

- When "ON" is set, Privacy mode set from Privacy mode setting starts.

**Setting/Canceling** : Move the cursor to the title ▶ 

-  is displayed at the left of the title for Timed theme set to ON.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When Style theme is set to "Change", the image or moving picture/i-motion set to the stand-by display is canceled at the specified time. Note that Show ticker of i-Channel is not canceled.
- When i-appli stand-by display is set, this function is unavailable.
- If multiple items are set and the operating time for them are the same, the item on the top of the list of Timed theme operates.
- When Repeat is set to "Day of week", the setting remains even after the specified day. To change the setting, register multiple time themes.
- When Timed theme and alarm are set to start at the same time, Timed theme starts after the alarm operates.
- This function does not operate if FOMA terminal is turned OFF, All lock or Omakase Lock is ON or other function is operating at the specified time. If you turn FOMA terminal ON, cancel the lock or display the stand-by display, Timed theme that passed the specified time operates in order.

## Changing stand-by display

- For some images, moving pictures/i-motion or i-appli, stand-by display settings are disabled if UIM used for downloading them is not installed (UIM operation restriction).

### ◆ Setting image or moving picture/i-motion to stand-by display

- Moving picture/i-motion that can be set for stand-by display → P262

1  [Settings & NW services] 2 1 1

2 1 or 3

Switching still images in a folder to display <Set random image> : 2 ▶ Set required items ▶  ▶ "Yes"

- Set Change image: to "Every 30 mins" to change images at minutes 00 and 30 every hour. Set it to "Every 60 mins" to change images at minutes 00 every hour. Set it to "Everytime opened" to change images each time FOMA terminal is opened.
- No more operation is required.

Using stand-by display of Kisekae Tool : 5

- No more operation is required.

3 Select a folder ▶ Select an image or moving picture/i-motion

4 "Yes"

- In some sizes of images or moving picture/i-motion, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)". Select "Yes (Large size)" to enlarge them to fit the screen size.
- If i-appli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking if you terminate the i-appli stand-by display. When selecting "Yes", the i-appli stand-by display is canceled.
- If moving picture/i-motion is set, Show ticker of i-Channel setting and Information display are set to "No" and "Not display", respectively. When moving picture/i-motion is canceled with i-appli stand-by display not set, Show ticker is set to "Yes", and Information display restores the previous setting.

## ◆ Playing moving picture/i-motion or animation set to the stand-by display

- The following operations are available for moving picture/i-motion.  
/Open FOMA terminal : Play / : Stop : Adjust volume
- The following operations are available for animation or created animation.  
/Open FOMA terminal/Return to the stand-by display/Turn power ON : Play : Pause
- It is not played during All lock etc.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Even if Flash graphics including video data is set for stand-by display, the video data is not played.
- When the stand-by display is displayed, Flash graphics and/or GIF animation plays for a predetermined period of time and stops. If a clock is stopped when Flash graphics with clock function is specified, you can restart it by playing Flash graphics.
- By some Machi-chara on stand-by display, playing speed of Flash graphics is reduced.
- When setting GIF animation to be enlarged, the display may be distorted.
- When setting Flash graphics in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture, displayed images may change according to time or season. Also, some images change by tilting, opening or closing FOMA terminal.
- If Set Pedometer/Activity monitor is set to "Use", the number of Steps appears when you choose "ウォーキング×フラワー (Walking × Flower)" in the "Preinstalled" folder of "My Picture", and the number of steps, activity amount, etc. appears when you set "スペースジム (Space gym)". Also, some images change according to the number of steps and some others.
- When there is no image to be displayed since the folder selected in Set random image is deleted, still images in the folder are moved or deleted or animation is created, the default setting is restored. Note that, right after the still image displayed on the stand-by display is moved or animation is created, the image is temporarily displayed until the next image appears.

## ◆ Setting i-appli stand-by display

- Only i-appli compatible with the i-appli stand-by display can be set.
- The i-appli stand-by display precedes other stand-by display settings.
- Operating i-appli stand-by display → P239

1 [Settings & NW services]

## 2 Select i-appli ▶ "Yes"

- or is displayed when the i-appli stand-by display is set.
- Show ticker of i-Channel setting and Information display are set to "No" and "Not display", respectively. When i-appli stand-by display is canceled with moving picture/i-motion not set, Show ticker is set to "Yes", and Information display restores the previous setting.

## ◆ Info/calendar layout

You can divide the stand-by display to several and make settings to display arrival information such as unread mail or missed call, schedule, calendar, list of notes or contents of a note in individual areas.

- When an image is set to the stand-by display, the set information is displayed over the image. It is not displayed if moving picture/i-motion or i-appli stand-by display is set to the stand-by display.

1 [Settings & NW services]

2

Canceling :

- No more operation is required.

3 to switch patterns ▶ Select an area

4 , or

- Press and select "Yes" to cancel all area settings.

Setting arrival information : ▶ Select information ▶

- "When selecting " Unread messages", reception date/time and titles of unread mails appear.
- When selecting " MessageR"/" MessageF", reception date/time and titles of MessageR/F appear.
- When selecting " Missed calls", reception date/time and the phone number of the caller (or name if saved in phonebook) appear.
- When selecting " Recorded messages", recording date/time and the phone number of the caller (or name if saved in phonebook) appear.

Setting Calendar : ▶ -

- The number of months that calendar can be displayed varies by the area size. And, if the area is small, calendar cannot be set.

Setting Note content :  ▶ Select a note

**5**  ▶ "Yes"

## ❖ Checking information on the stand-by display

**1** 

- When no information is shown, press  to display an area and press .

**2** Move the cursor with  ▶ 

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Each time you press  on the stand-by display, information is displayed/hidden in turn.
- When animation or created animation is set to the stand-by display, after the playing is stopped or paused, press  to display information.
- While information is displayed, the area set in Info/calendar layout cannot be selected.

## ❖ Displayed contents of various information

- Since the numbers of information entries and lines displayed differ by the area size, some part of the information may not be displayed.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for others.
- In Personal data lock, only the setting of Missed calls for New arrival can be changed. Schedule, List of notes or Note cannot be selected.

### ■ New arrival

The information is displayed from the latest one. Select an area to check the top information.

 : Unread mail  /  : MessageR/F  : Missed call  : Recorded message

### ■ Schedule

Icon, Start time, contents/program name appear in the order of the date and time of schedule or watching reservation/recording reservation of 1Seg that start date/time have not come yet. If an area is selected, the schedule or watching reservation/recording reservation of the first item can be checked.

-  appears on the schedule that has different Start date and time and End date and time.
- If the schedule with All day set to ON is the current day, "AllDay" is displayed.
- Schedules in i-schedule are not displayed.

### ■ Calendar

The calendar for 1 month/2 months/4 months/6 months are displayed. Select an area to display the Calendar of Scheduler.

- The current day is displayed in yellow, days off and holidays in red and Saturdays in blue. The color changes by Days off, Day off of week and Holiday settings of Scheduler.
- When a schedule or 1Seg watching reservation/recording reservation is set, a red mark appears on the upper-right side of the date.

### ■ List of notes

The list of notes saved in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the list of notes.

### ■ Note

The beginning of a note set in Notepad is displayed. Select an area to display the details of a note.

## Outgoing call image

### Changing image for outgoing voice/videophone call

**1**  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When "Select image" is selected, select List image field to select an image.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data is set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

## ❖ Outgoing call image priority

When setting outgoing images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the following priority.

- ① Image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook\*
- ② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Outgoing call/Videophone dialing (V.phone dialing img.)

\* Effective when Contact image is set to "ON".

## Incoming call image

### Changing image for incoming voice/videophone call

- This setting also applies to Call alert of Call & Answer or Videophone alert of Videophone.
- Moving picture/i-motion that can be set for Show image→P262
- Ring alert and incoming call image→P78

**I**  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When "Select image" is selected, select an image from List images field. When "i-motion" is selected, select a moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data is set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.

### ◆ Incoming call image priority

When setting incoming images in multiple functions, they are displayed in order of the following priority.

- ① Image saved in FOMA terminal phonebook\*1
- ② Alert/Image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Call ring alert\*2/V.phone ring alert\*2/Call alert (Incoming call)/Videophone alert (Videophone receiving)/Incoming calls melody setting for Multi Number/Ring alert for No.B in 2in1 setting\*2

\*1 Effective when Contact image is set to "ON".

\*2 Effective when setting to "Movie ringtone" and moving picture/i-motion containing a sound and image.

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image of voice call operates according to Anonymous caller. An incoming image for videophone call operates according to the settings of Videophone alert.
- When setting moving picture/i-motion (including the case of setting to "Terminal setting" and setting moving picture/i-motion for Incoming call) for the ring alert of Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook, the image or moving picture/i-motion set in phonebook does not appear, and the moving picture/i-motion set for the ring alert appears. Note that, when setting moving picture/i-motion containing only sound for the ring alert of Alert by contact etc., it operates as follows.

- When setting a still image to phonebook, the still image is displayed.
- When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion is set to phonebook, the image of the phonebook does not appear, but the image set for Alert/Image by group or Call alert appears.
- When setting ring alert to "Terminal setting" in Alert/image by group of phonebook and setting moving picture/i-motion in Call alert etc., the image or moving picture/i-motion set in phonebook by group does not appear, and the moving picture/i-motion set for Ring alert appears. Note that, when setting moving picture/i-motion containing only sound in Call alert etc., it operates as follows.
  - When a still image is set for Alert/Image by group, the still image appears.
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion is set for Alert/Image by group, the image set for Call alert etc. appears.

## Identification mark

### Decorating titles to display for incoming/outgoing calls or while talking

- This setting also applies to Number A of Identification mark of 2in1.
- An identification mark is not displayed when using Multi Number.

**I**  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When setting Identify No. to "ON", Mark can be set.

## Contact image

### Setting Contact image display from phonebook at incoming/outgoing call

You can set if you display images etc. saved in FOMA terminal phonebook for incoming/outgoing voice/videophone calls.

- The image saved in phonebook is displayed when the caller notifies the phone number.
- This setting also applies to determine whether an avatar set for a phonebook entry is displayed as an animated arrival image when Animated-notice is set to "Avatar".

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 3 6 ▶ 1 or 2

## Mail image

### Changing displays for incoming/outgoing messages and retrieving

You can set images to appear when sending mails, receiving mails (including MessageR/F) or received mails, or checking new messages.

- Moving picture/i-motion that can be set for Display image of Image message alert → P262

- Ring alert for Mail alert and an incoming call image for Image message alert → P78

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 3 3 ▶ 1 - 4 ▶ Set required items ▶

- When "Select image" is selected, select Image list field to select an image.
- Even if Flash graphics including video data is set, the video data is not played.
- When created animation is set, the first image is displayed.
- When "i-motion" is set in Image message alert, select a moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.

## Display & Key light

### Setting display and key lighting

#### ◆ Display light time

You can set the lighting time to turn on the light on the display.

- This setting also applies to i-mode settings (Common Setting), Display light time of i-appli settings, Display light time of Image settings, Recording settings and Settings of i-motion. Also, i-motion setting also applies to Display light time of Music&Video Channel.

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 4 1 ▶ 1 - 7

2 1 or 2 (for Normal use, 1 - 7)

- When setting to "Terminal setting", the light turns on according to the lighting time set in Normal use.

- When "Always on" is set, the light always turns on with brightness set in Brightness. Note that, when an AC/DC adapter is connected, the light turns on in "Brightness 5" regardless of the settings in Brightness.
- When "Software" is set for i-appli, the light turns on according to the i-appli settings. The light does not turn off for i-appli set to Always on.

#### ◆ Light time-out

You can set the duration to show display.

- This setting is unavailable for the function to which Display light time is set to "Always on".
- Display remains shown while receiving a call or mail, making a videophone call, operating camera, watching 1Seg, playing 1Seg video, alarm is sounding, etc. Display disappears when specified time elapses after those operations.
- Display light turns on by operating keypads or receiving calls/mails when nothing is displayed on the display.

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 4 2 ▶ 1 - 7

#### ◆ Brightness

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 4 3 ▶ 1 - 6

- When setting to "Auto adjust", the brightness of the display lights is automatically adjusted according to the ambient light. In a well-lighted area, Keypad light does not turn on.

#### ◆ Keypad light

1 [Settings & NW services] 2 4 4 ▶ Set required items ▶

**Keypad light** : When setting to "ON", Keypad light turns on when opening FOMA terminal or pressing a key.

**Light color** : When "Rainbow (Key press)" is set, the light color changes each time you press a key. When "Rainbow (Open/Close)" is set, the light color changes each time FOMA terminal is opened.

**Call/Mail light alert** : When "ON" is set, the light blinks in the color set in Light alert for incoming calls or mail. When "OFF" is set, the light turns on in Keypad light color.

- When "ON" is set, if Light pattern of Light alert is "Sync melody" or Light color of Light alert is "Color 30-50", it blinks in "Rainbow (Key press)". When Light pattern of Light alert is set to "OFF", the light turns on in Keypad light color.

## Power saving mode

### Saving battery consumption

#### ◆ Saving mode ON/OFF

1   [Settings & NW services] 2 9 1

#### ◆ Saving mode options

1   [Settings & NW services] 2 9 2 ▶ 1 or 2

#### ❖ When power saving mode is set

- When setting to Standard saving, it operates as follows.
  - Keypad light of Display & Key light, Indicator light, Call session light, IC card light, Open/Close light of Light alert, and Time tone are set to "OFF".
  - "0 sec" is set for Normal use of Display light time in Display & Key light, "Terminal setting" is set for others, "15 sec" is set for Light time-out, and "Brightness 1" is set for Brightness.
  - 1Seg ECO mode is set to ON
- When setting to Full saving, it operates with the operation of Standard saving as follows.
  - Motion sensor, Immobile sensor of Lock when immobile and S-disp auto light on are set to "OFF".
  - "Not use" is set to Set Pedometer/Activity monitor.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- In the following cases, power saving mode is set to OFF and Power saving mode is restored to default.
  - When an item set in Power saving mode is separately changed
  - When Kisekae Tool is reset or Kisekae Tool that includes brightness except "Brightness 1" is set
  - When Style theme is set or Timed theme for which Style theme is set to "Change" operates

## S-disp auto light on

### Setting whether to turn on sub-display light automatically

You can set whether to turn on the sub-display light automatically when you pick up and tilt FOMA terminal.

- The sub-display light may turn on automatically while walking or when FOMA terminal is left tilted in the place with much vibration.

1   [Settings & NW services] 2 7 ▶ 1 or 2

## Color scheme

### Changing display colors

1   [Settings & NW services] 2 3 1 ▶ Select the color scheme

## Select startup menu

### Changing startup menu

Set the menu displayed when pressing  on the stand-by display.

1   [Settings & NW services] 2 2 1 ▶ 1-3

## Display Machi-chara

### Setting Machi-chara

You can display a character on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

1   [Settings & NW services] 2 8 ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When Display is set to "ON", you can select Machi-chara.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Machi-chara does not appear when moving picture/i-motion or i-appli is set for the stand-by display.
- Some Machi-chara change its actions according to time, arrival information, call duration, etc.

## Using Kisekai Tool

You can collectively set a stand-by display image, menu, incoming/outgoing call images, etc. by using Kisekai Tool.

- Kisekai Tool in "Preinstalled" folder cannot be moved or deleted. Also, the file name cannot be changed.
- Using Kisekai Tool, the following items can be set (combinations of items that can be set vary by Kisekai Tool).
  - Stand-by display, Kisekai menu \*1, Basic menu, Basic menu BG, Mail menu BG, i-mode menu BG, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Outgoing call img., Call alert image, V.phone call image, V.phone alert img., Outgoing msg img., Mail alert image, Image msg alert, Message retrieving \*2, Call ring alert, V.phone ring alert, Mail ring alert, MsgR ring alert, MsgF ring alert, Alarm clock sound, i-concier ring alert, Color theme, Font, Brightness, Keypad light color, Clock style, Time format, Clock layout, Date format, StandBy Ani-notice, Open/Close light
- \*1 Some Kisekai Tool does not support English display when setting **バイリンガル** (Select language) to "English". Also, operation by pressing **[M]** or **[C]** on the stand-by display may cause different actions from ordinary ones or short-cut operations may be unavailable.
- \*2 Set the image to display when setting Check new message/SMS.
- Some types of Kisekai menus change the menu structure according to usage frequency. Also, the number assigned to menu item (item number) may not be applied.
- With 2in1 ON, no Kisekai Tool items are set on the stand-by display in Dual and B modes, and for Call/V.phone/Mail ring alert of Number B.

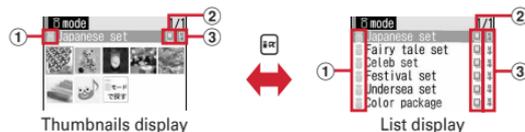
## ◆ Changing Kisekai Tool

### 1 [Data Box] 6

- i-mode** : Kisekai Tool downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled** : Preinstalled Kisekai Tool
- My folder** : Kisekai Tool moved from other folders
  - Appears if a folder is added. →P276
- Search by i-mode** : Searching Kisekai Tool on i-mode site →P164

## 2 Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to Kisekai Tool

The display name of the file at the cursor position and an icon indicating details are shown.



### ① Originated

- : i-mode
- / : i-mode (compatible with Standard font)/(compatible with Large font)
- / : Preinstalled (compatible with Standard font)/(compatible with Large font)
- : Searching Kisekai Tool on i-mode site →P164

### ② File types

- : Set
- : Previously used setting whose items are valid because the current Kisekai Tool does not have the items
- (the back card is gray) : Not set
- (upper half is gray) : Partially saved
- : i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.

### ③ File restriction

- : File restricted
- For thumbnail screen, the display name of the Kisekai Tool at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appear at the bottom of the display. Also, when thumbnail display is unavailable, it is displayed as follows.
  - (the back card is pink) : No preview image
  - : i-appli unavailable due to UIM operation restriction.
  - (upper half is gray) : Partially downloaded

**Resetting :** **6** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Reset all" or "Reset menu"**

- Selecting "Reset all" resets items that can be set in Kisekae Tool to the default state.
- Selecting "Reset menu" resets settings of Kisekae menu, Basic menu, Basic menu BG, Mail menu BG and i-mode menu BG to the default state.

**Checking memory :** **4** ▶ **Move the cursor to a data type**

### 3 ▶ "Yes"

Data of Kisekae Tool is collectively set.

- When a large font setting is included in Kisekae Tool, a confirmation screen for changing the font of mail, phonebook, call logs, etc. appears. And, when changing to a Kisekae Tool not containing large font while setting in a large font, a confirmation screen for changing the font of mail, phonebook, call logs, etc. appears. Follow the instruction of this screen and set.
- Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool partially downloaded ▶ Press one of , , , then a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining data appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. When downloading is unavailable, Kisekae Tool partially saved may be deleted.

**Viewing/Changing detail information :** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

Detail information → P278

**Canceling setting :** **3** ▶ **1**-**3** ▶ **"Yes"**

- To cancel selected items, select them ▶ .

**Moving/Restoring :** **4** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ **1**-**3**

Moving/Restoring → P277

**Deleting :** **5** ▶ **1**-**3**

Deleting → P279

**Sorting :** **6** ▶ **Set required items** ▶

Sorting → P280

**Checking memory :** **7**

Checking memory → P280

**Setting list screen operations :** **8** ▶ **1** or **2**

- Set to "Yes" for thumbnail display.

## ❖ Using Special mode

If you set Special mode, "Moimoi" is added to "Preinstalled" folder, and automatically set for Kisekae Tool.

### 1 ▶ **1** **3** ▶ Enter "モイモイ (Moimoi)" in the group name field ▶

- The following items are set.

- Stand-by display, Kisekae menu, Battery icon, Antenna icon, Outgoing call img., Call alert image, V.phone call image, V.phone alert image, Outgoing msg img., Mail alert image, Image msg alert, Message retrieving, Color theme, Clock style, Time format, Clock layout, Date format, StandBy Ani-notice
- If you perform the same operations as the setting procedure, "Moimoi" is deleted from "Preinstalled" folder, and the set items are restored to the default state.
- For information on Special mode, refer to "裏技紹介 (Tricks)" of "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" website. → P280

## ❖ Checking Kisekae Tool content

### 1 [Data Box] **6** ▶ Select a folder

### 2 Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool ▶

- For the item currently set, a red check mark is added on the icon on the left of item name.

- For some items, the icon indicating file format appears on the right of item name. Icon definitions

: Image in JPEG format : Image in GIF format : SWF (Flash graphics)

: Kisekae menu : Moving picture in MP4 format : Melody in MFI format

: Melody in SMF format

**Displaying an image :** Select Kisekae Tool

**Displaying images or setting for each item :** Move the cursor to Kisekae Tool ▶ ▶ Select an item

## ✓INFORMATION

- パイリンガル (Select language) cannot be set when using "Simple Menu".
- For items set to "Kisekai Tool" in each setting screen, when selecting other than "Kisekai Tool", a confirmation screen for canceling Kisekai Tool appears. If you select "Yes", only corresponding items are canceled. To restore the setting of Kisekai Tool, set Kisekai Tool again.
- When Kisekai Tool contains data that cannot be displayed or played, only that data is not set.
- A ring alert or incoming call image that is included in Kisekai Tool may not be set depending on the combination with the current settings of incoming call image or ring alert. Also, even when "Kisekai Tool" is set, the default ring alert may sound or "Standard image" may appear.

## Customizing the menu

### ◆ Customizing menu items for Kisekai menu

- This operation is available only when you download and set Kisekai Tool that can change or replace menu items or when you set "切替メニュー (Switch menu)" of Kisekai menu. For "切替メニュー (Switch menu)", press  on the menu screen to use "お気に入り (Favorite)" menu.

### ◆ Changing menu item

- 1   ▶ Move the cursor to a menu item ▶   2 ▶ Move the cursor to a function to register ▶ 

- You can select till second level.

### ◆ Replacing menu items

- 1   ▶ Move the cursor to a menu item ▶   3 ▶ Select the destination item to replace

### ◆ Changing icon and background of Basic menu

- 1   ▶ 
  - When the display menu is Basic menu, you do not need to press .

- 2  2
- 3 Select a function ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Menu icons of other functions can be set successively in the same way.

Canceling 1 item : Move the cursor to an icon ▶  1 ▶ "Yes"

Canceling all items :  2 ▶ "Yes"

- 4  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Background is set.

Canceling background :  4 ▶ "Yes"

- 5  ▶ "Yes"

- When the display menu is Basic menu, you do not need to select "Yes".

## ✓INFORMATION

- Created animations, Flash graphics or images in "Item" folder cannot be selected. If a GIF animation is selected, first image is displayed.
- Depending on the image size to set, the icon is displayed by 192×192, and the background image is enlarged/shrunk to 480×704.
- The icon and background of Basic menu cannot be changed while using Kisekai Tool including "Basic menu", "Basic menu BG" or during Personal data lock.

### ◆ Resetting menu

- 1   [Settings & NW services] 2 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

- Authentication is required for Menu design.
- Select Operation history to delete the information about how many times and when you used the menu. Select Menu design to restore the menu (including Custom menu) to default state.

- 2 "Yes"

## Style theme

### Customizing FOMA terminal screen

You can create 3 types of original coordinates by changing the screen designs such as stand-by display, menu, clock, battery icon or antenna icon.

- When Style theme is set, Brightness of Display & Key light, i-mode of Font size, Mail view, Text input, Font style, power saving mode and Subtitle size of User setting of 1Seg are restored to default settings. Also, when Normal use of Display light time in Display & Key light is set to "0 sec", the previous setting is restored.

1  [Settings & NW services]  

2  -  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Title** : Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Menu design** : Select a preinstalled Kisekae Tool.

**Color scheme** : Select the display color scheme.

**Stand-by image** : Select an image to be displayed on the stand-by display from a still image, GIF animation, created animation or Flash graphics.

**Clock display format/Time format/Clock layout/Day** : Select if you display a clock on the stand-by display, clock design to be displayed, time format, clock layout, and display type of the day of the week.

Items of Clock display format→P95 "Setting clock display"

**Battery icon** : Select the battery icon type.

**Antenna icon** : Select the antenna icon type.

**Open/Close light** : Select whether to set Open/Close light.

- When setting "ON", you can select Light color.

**Animated-notice Stand-by Ani-notice** : Select the stand-by animated notice.

**Keypad light color** : Select the color of Keypad light.

## Battery icon

### Changing battery icon

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  -  (  -  when Special mode is set)

## Antenna icon

### Changing antenna icon

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶  -  (  -  when Special mode is set)

## Indicator light

### Indicating arrival information such as missed calls and unread mails with lighting

This function informs you of missed calls, unread mail (including SMS) and arrival information with the blink of light when FOMA terminal is closed.

- The light blinks in the light color for incoming calls or mail at intervals of approximately 6 seconds. Call light blinks for a missed call, and mail light blinks for unread mail.

1  [Settings & NW services]     ▶  or 

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- If there are multiple arrival information when FOMA terminal is opened/closed, the light blinks in order of the following priority. Light color operates according to Light color of Light alert.  
① Missed call ② Unread mail (including SMS) ③ Arrival information
- When approximately 6 hours elapse since the last information was received or you delete    (the number indicates the number of items) from the stand-by display, the light stops blinking.

## Light alert

### Setting the lighting patterns and colors used for an incoming call/mail or while talking

- This setting also applies to Light alert of Call alert, Videophone alert, Mail alert, MessageR/F alert and Light alert/Light color of ToruCa alert.
- Brightness and color of light→P376

## [Settings & NW services] - ▶ Set required items ▶

- When Light pattern is set to "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. And, some melodies are not synchronized.
- When Light pattern of Light alert is set to "Sync melody", Indicator light turns on in the color according to Light color.
- To set light for receiving ToruCa, Call session light, IC card light and Open/Close light, set Light to "ON" and select a light color.

### Light alert priority

When Light pattern and Light color of Light alert is set for multiple functions, light turns on in order of the following priority.

- ① Alert by contact of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/image by group of FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Light alert/Call alert/Videophone alert/Mail alert

## Time tone

### Setting time tone

This function informs you of the specified time on the hour by the indication on the sub-display or light. You can also set sound to be emitted.

- It does not operate when FOMA terminal is opened, information is displayed on the sub-display, in Public mode (Drive mode) or Omakase Lock.
- The light color changes according to time.

## [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

- When "Specified time" is set, start time (hour) and end time (hour) can be selected. When other than "OFF" is set, Time tone can be selected.
- When Time tone is set to other than "OFF", Volume can be set. Select the volume field and use or to adjust volume.

## Animated-notice

### Displaying animated arrival image for arrival information

You can display an animated arrival image or avatar when there is a missed call, recorded message or unread mail (including SMS). Up to 16 items can be set.

## [Settings & NW services]

/ : Phonebook entry (phone)/(UIM)

/ : Group (phone)/(UIM)

: Phonebook entry (UIM) with the UIM that is used for the setting not installed

: Group (UIM) with the UIM that is used for the setting not installed

: All saved contacts : All incomings : Setting OFF

## ▶ -

- Select a phonebook entry when "Phonebook entry" is selected, and select a group when "Group" is selected.

**Deleting :** Move the cursor a setting and ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to data.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

**Changing a setting :** Select a setting to change ▶ Set Stand-by Ani-notice ▶

## Set Stand-by Ani-notice ▶

- When "Avatar" is set, an avatar that is set for a phonebook entry is displayed as an animated arrival image. When an avatar is not set for a phonebook entry or Contact image is "OFF", the default avatar is displayed.

### INFORMATION -----

- It does not operate when i-appli stand-by is set.
- When there are multiple arrival information, it operates according to the setting of the latest arrival information. When corresponding to multiple settings, it operates in the order of the following priority.  
① Phonebook entry (phone) ② Phonebook entry (UIM) ③ Group (phone) ④ Group (UIM) ⑤ All saved contacts ⑥ All incomings

- An animated arrival image or avatar changes its display patterns randomly when the stand-by display is displayed. Also, a special animation or avatar may appear according to the accumulation status of arrival information of the current day.
- When a phonebook entry or phonebook group for which an animated arrival image is set is deleted or when UIM that is set for UIM phonebook is replaced, settings are deleted.

## Font style

### Changing font style

You can change the font type to be used for i-mode site, Full Browser, character entry screen, etc.

- In addition to "プリティー桃" stored by default, you can use other kana fonts downloaded.
- This setting does not apply to some functions such as camera, i-appli or i-motion.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Select Kanji/Alphameric field ▶  - 

2 Select Hiragana/Katakana field ▶ Select a font

Deleting downloaded fonts : Select Hiragana/Katakana field ▶ Move the cursor to a font ▶  ▶ "Yes"

- Preinstalled fonts or fonts currently used cannot be deleted.

3 

## Font size

### Changing font size

1  [Settings & NW services]   

2  -  ▶ Select a font size

- When Text input is set, the font size used for creating a mail or Full-screen entry is changed.

- When P.book/Log/Accessory is set, the font size for Phonebook, Received calls, Redial, Notepad, alarm clock list screen, dictionaries, etc. are changed.

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- Font sizes to be selected differ depending on items. When the items do not support the font size that is selected in All listed, the closest font size is set.
- For some font sizes selected in All listed, a confirmation screen for changing the font size for menu appears. When selecting "Yes", Kisekai Tool applicable to the selected font size can be selected.
- The font size can also be changed from the mail details screen. →P144

## Clock display format

### Setting clock display

Whether to display clock, the design, size or layout of clock display on the stand-by display can be set. The language to use to display the day of the week or the display format can also be set.

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Style** : Set if you display clock. When setting to "ON", select a clock style.

- When setting to "World time clock", Japan time appears on the left side and the time/name of the specified time zone appears on the right side, respectively.

**Time format** : Set the clock display format to either "24 hour" or "12 hour".

**Clock layout** : Set the position to display the clock.

- In All lock or Omakase Lock, the clock is displayed at the "Top" regardless of this setting.

**Day** : Set if you use Japanese or English to display the day of the week.

- When setting to "Terminal settings", it is displayed according to the setting of バイリンガル (Select language).

**World time clock** : Set the time zone to be displayed or set if you enable summer time when "World time clock" is selected in Style.

- When Summer time is "ON", the displayed time is set forward one hour from the time of the specified time zone.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- On a screen other than the stand-by display, the clock appears in the upper-right corner of the display. This display depends on Time format ("24 hour" or "12 hour").
- When moving picture/i-motion or i-appli is set to the stand-by display, a clock is displayed with Style set to "Digital 1", Clock layout set to "Top" regardless of this setting.
- Two time zone clocks are used when using FOMA terminal overseas. → P334

# Security Settings

## Security code

Security codes used on the FOMA terminal .....		98
Changing terminal security code .....	Terminal security code change	99
Setting PIN code .....		99
Unlocking PIN/PIN2 code .....		100

## Restricting operations and functions on mobile phone

Restricting others from using .....	All lock	100
Using Omakase Lock .....	Omakase Lock	101
Restricting making/receiving calls .....	Self mode	102
Disabling to use personal information .....	Personal data lock	102
Prohibiting keypad dial .....	Keypad dial lock	103
Setting operations for using or displaying personal information .....	Privacy mode	103
Setting display contents for receiving call/mail .....	Receive display option	109
Preventing inadvertent operation of side keys .....	Side key hold	109
Locking keys .....	Lock on close/Lock when immobile	109

## Restricting outgoing/incoming calls and messages

Accepting/Rejecting calls from specified phone numbers .....		111
Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID .....	Anonymous caller	112
Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook .....	Ring alert delay	112
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook .....	Unregistered caller	113

## Other security settings

Using Data Security Service .....		113
Resetting various functions .....	Reset	115
Deleting saved data all at once .....	Delete all data	115
Resetting data by remote control .....	Initializing remotely	116
Restricting each function by remote control .....	Remote customization	116
Other security settings .....		118

## Security codes used on the FOMA terminal

Some of the convenient FOMA terminal functions require entry of security code. In addition to the terminal security code for using some terminal functions, there are several types of security codes such as network security code for network services and i-mode password. Use these codes appropriately for FOMA terminal.

- The terminal security code, network security code or i-mode password entered is masked with "\*".

### Precautions related to security codes

- When setting a security code, do not use a number that can be easily known to others, such as "birthday", "a part of a phone number", "street address or room number", "1111" or "1234". Keep a separate note of the set security code.
- Be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If a security code is known to and misused by others, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for damages resulted from it.
- If you forget your security codes, you need to bring a document (a driver's license etc.) to identify your subscription, FOMA terminal and UIM to the docomo Shop.

For details, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

### ❖ Terminal security code

- The default security code is "0000", which you can change by yourself. → P99
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned OFF.

### ❖ Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number used when DOCOMO identifies the subscriber to accept orders at docomo Shop, docomo Information Center or "お客様サポート (Support)" or when you use a variety of Network Services. You can set any number at subscription and optionally change it later.

If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo" that is a total support site for a PC, you can change your network security code from a PC.

From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing "各種設定 (確認・変更・利用) (Settings (Check/Change/Use))" in お客様サポート (Support).

- For "My docomo" and "お客様サポート (Support)", see the reverse side of the back cover of this manual.

### ❖ i-mode password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required to save to/delete from マイメニュー (My Menu) or subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode charged services. The password is set to "0000" by default, however, you can change it by yourself. → P155  
There may be passwords required by individual IPs (Information Providers).

### ❖ PIN code/PIN2 code

2 security codes which are the PIN code and PIN2 code can be set for UIM. Their security codes are set to "0000" by default, which you can change by yourself. → P100

PIN code is a number (code) to be entered each time UIM is installed or FOMA terminal is powered ON to confirm the user and to prevent unauthorized use of FOMA terminal. Making/Receiving calls and terminal operations are enabled by entering PIN code.

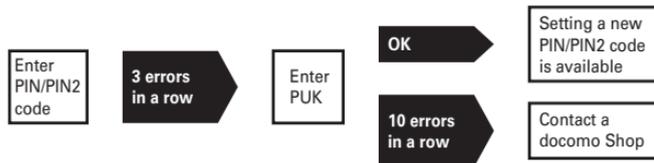
The PIN2 code is the security code to be used when requesting the issuance of a user certificate, resetting Total calls cost or changing settings of Reset call cost.

- When installing UIM that has been used with another FOMA terminal, the PIN code and PIN2 code should be the same ones set previously. If no changes have been made to PIN code and PIN2 code, your codes are "0000".

## ❖ PUK (PIN Unlocking Key)

PUK is a number of 8-digit code used to unblock PIN or PIN2 lock. You cannot change PUK by yourself.

- If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, UIM is locked.



### ✓INFORMATION

- Password manager is not available until you change the terminal security code to other than "0000". For the new terminal security code, avoid use of an easily-guessed number such as the low-order 4 digits of the phone number and take care not to let others know the terminal security code. Keep a separate note of the set security codes.

\* Note that DOCOMO is not liable for any damages caused through incorrect use of the data by a third party.

## Terminal security code change

### Changing terminal security code

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter the new terminal security code
- 2 Enter the new terminal security code in New security code-check field ▶

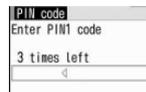
## Setting PIN code

### ❖ Setting whether to require entry of PIN code when turning power ON <PIN1 code ON/OFF>

If a wrong PIN code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press and enter PUK.

- The PIN code entry screen is displayed only when the current setting is changed.

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ or ▶ Enter PIN code



### ❖ When PIN1 code ON/OFF is set to "ON"

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. The stand-by display appears when correct PIN code is entered, but all operations are unavailable when not.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When the date/time specified in Alarm clock or schedule has come with Alarm auto power ON is "ON", the power is turned ON and the alarm starts sounding before the PIN code entry screen is displayed. When is pressed to stop the alarm, the PIN code entry screen is displayed. Even if a downloaded melody, i-motion or music is set as an alarm, operations are carried out as specified in the default settings.

## ◆ Changing PIN/PIN2 code

- To change the PIN code, you need to set PIN1 code ON/OFF to "ON".

1  [Settings & NW services] 4 5 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Authenticate

2 Enter the current PIN/PIN2 code ▶ Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code entry field ▶ Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code - check field ▶ 

- If the PIN/PIN2 code was not correctly entered, a screen indicating the failure of authentication appears. Press  and enter the correct PIN/PIN2 code. If a wrong code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN code is locked. Press  and enter the PUK.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even if PIN2 code is locked by entering incorrect PIN2 code 3 times consecutively, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available; if PIN code is locked by entering incorrect PIN code 3 times consecutively, these operations are unavailable.

## Unblocking PIN/PIN2 code

If a wrong PIN/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN code entry screen, lock is set. If this happens, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

1 On the confirmation screen of the PUK, "OK" ▶ Enter the PUK  
2 Enter a new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code field ▶ Enter the new PIN/PIN2 code in New PIN/PIN2 code - check field ▶ 

## All lock

### Restricting others from using

When All lock is activated, menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use by third parties.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in All lock, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press .

- \* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is marked with "⌘".

- Even when All lock is activated, IC card lock is not activated. To start both IC card lock and All lock, start IC card lock → All lock in sequence. → P248
- The UIM and microSD card are not locked.

1  [Settings & NW services] 4 1 3 ▶ Authenticate

"All locked." appears on the stand-by display.

**Canceled :** Enter the terminal security code

### ✓INFORMATION

- A call is received regardless of the settings of Specified caller.
- Even if a stand-by display or Machi-chara is set, only the image set by default is displayed.
- All lock precedes even when Lock on close or Lock when immobile is set to "ON".
- An animated arrival image does not operate even when All lock is canceled and arrival information is displayed on the stand-by display.
- Alarm clock and schedule reminder do not operate even when the specified date and time arrive. Activation by watching reservation or recording reservation of 1Seg does not occur.
- Even when the specified date/time comes, Timed theme is not switched. When canceling All lock, Timed theme not in operation start in order.
- The following functions are available.
  - Receiving voice/videophone calls<sup>\*1</sup>, making emergency call (110, 119, 118)
  - Automatic update of Data Center
  - Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F, SMS<sup>\*2</sup>
  - Receiving Area Mail, activating Omakase Lock
  - Receiving i-appli call<sup>\*3</sup>

- Functions of Osaifu-Keitai which allows you to pay money by holding FOMA terminal over the IC card reader or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader<sup>\*4</sup>
  - High-pitched alarm
  - Updating software, auto-updating pattern definitions.
- \*1 Only a phone number is displayed, but the other party's name and image saved in phonebook are not. The incoming image, ring alert, etc. are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image.
- \*2 No receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are taken.
- \*3 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.
- \*4 The alert does not sound when receiving ToruCa has completed.

## Omakase Lock

### Using Omakase Lock

**This service allows you to lock the personal data of phonebook etc. or IC card function of Osaifu-Keitai only by contacting DOCOMO in case FOMA terminal is misplaced etc. You can protect your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai with this service. And, when Omakase Lock is unavailable at your application and communication becomes available within one year, Omakase Lock is activated automatically. However, if a new UIM is issued because you cancel/suspend your subscription, change a phone number, lose the terminal, etc. (for number-specified lock), the automatic lock is not activated even if it is within one year. FOMA terminal can be unlocked upon your request, etc.**

\* If you are the member of docomo Premier Club, you can use the service any number of times with no commission. If you are not the member of docomo Premier Club, you are charged for the service (however, you are not charged if you subscribe to this service at the same time as service interruption or during interruption). Also, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use the service within the fixed charge of Keitai Anshin Pack.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock

 **0120-524-360 Office hours : 24hours**

\* Omakase Lock can be set/canceled from My docomo site using a PC etc.

- For details of Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### ❖ When Omakase Lock is activated

"Omakase Lock active." appears on the stand-by display.

- Keypad operations other than turning power ON/OFF and receiving a voice/ videophone call are disabled, and IC card functions become unavailable. However, the UIM and microSD card are not locked.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Voice calls or videophone calls are received, displaying the callers phone number instead of the name or image saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. The setting you made is restored when Omakase lock is canceled.
- i-appli call can be received automatically, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken. It is displayed in i-appli call log after Omakase Lock is canceled.
- The received mails are stored in i-mode Center.
- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are active, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even with various lock functions set, Omakase Lock precedes them.
- Lock or unlock operation is unavailable when FOMA terminal is turned OFF, out of service area, in Self mode or used overseas. Besides, FOMA terminal may not be locked depending on your usage etc.
- You can turn ON/OFF the power, however, lock is not canceled even if you turn OFF the power.
- If you are a subscriber to Dual Network Service and use mova service, Omakase Lock is unavailable.
- Even when the holder of FOMA terminal is different from the subscriber, Omakase Lock is activated on the request from the subscriber.
- Omakase Lock can be canceled only when UIM with the same phone number as the one used when activating Omakase Lock is installed. If the lock cannot be canceled, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

## Self mode

### Restricting making/receiving calls

You can make all functions requiring communication unavailable.

- Self mode is canceled after an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) is dialed.

**1** [CLR] (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

SELF appears at the top of the display.

Canceling : [CLR] (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- The following functions are not available.
  - Making/Receiving a call
  - i-mode, sending or receiving mail
  - Receiving i-appli call or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader
  - Infrared communication/iC transmission or infrared remote control
  - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC
- When a call is received, a message is played for the caller indicating that the terminal is out of service area or turned OFF.
- Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding Service are available, but the call is not recorded as a missed call. Also, even if Self mode is canceled, an icon that notifies of the recorded message in Voice Mail service center does not appear.
- i-mode mail and MessageR/F are stored in i-mode Center and SMS in SMS Center when they are received. To receive messages, perform i-mode/SMS inquiry after canceling Self mode.

## Personal data lock

### Disabling to use personal information

You can temporarily restrict use of i-mode, mail, personal information, etc.

- This function cannot be activated when Unregistered caller is "ON".
- Calls made or received in Personal data lock are recorded. Making calls from Redial or Received calls is available

**1** [MENU] [Settings & NW services] [4] [1] [4] ▶ Authenticate ▶ **1**  
or **2**

When "ON" is set,  appears on the stand-by display.

#### ❖ When Personal data lock is ON

All or a part of the following operations is restricted. However, the UIM and microSD card are not locked.

- Mail\*<sup>1</sup>, Check new message, SMS\*<sup>1</sup>
- i-mode, MessageR/F\*<sup>1</sup>, i-Channel, Full Browser
- i-appli, receiving i-appli call\*<sup>2</sup>, i-Widget
- Phonebook, Record msg.&Voice memo (Movie memo), Mail logs\*<sup>3</sup>
- Data Box (All functions)
- Bar code reader, Ir/iC/PC connection\*<sup>4</sup>, microSD, Camera, Sound recorder, Data Center, Map, Pedometer/ACT monitor, 1Seg (except a part of User setting)
- Quick search\*<sup>5</sup>, Scheduler\*<sup>6</sup>, Notepad, Alarm clock, Alert&Time settings
- Call ring alert, Mail/Msg. ring alert, i-concier ring alert, Alarm sound, Image/i-appli, i-Channel setting, Shortcut icons, Animated-notice, Reset in Menu preference, Call image (except Contact image), Mail image, Kisekae Tool, Display Machi-chara, Kisekae/Themes, Sound & Image, Anonymous caller, Headset key control (Headset quick-dial), Reject/Accept call, V.phone dialing img., Videophone alert, Image setting\*<sup>7</sup>, Call cost limit, Reset, Delete all data, Tone/Vibration message notification, Chaku-moji, 2in1 setting, Melody Call, Number Setting/Incoming calls melody setting in Multi number
- MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel\*<sup>8</sup>
- IC card content, DCMX, ToruCa, Search by i-mode
- User information
- i-concier

- \*1 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken. Mail creation from mail logs is also unavailable.
- \*2 Automatic reception is available, but none of receiving actions such as displaying a confirmation screen for responding, emitting ring alert are not taken.
- \*3 Only a mail address is displayed, but the other party's name or image saved in phonebook does not.
- \*4 Data transfer in infrared communication/iC transmission or using USB connection is unavailable.

- \*5 Search by function with restriction is unavailable with Personal data lock ON.
- \*6 The information of the Scheduler is not displayed on the calendar set for stand-by display.
- \*7 The default image is displayed as videophone substitute image.
- \*8 When program downloading starts, the program downloading screen appears, but the downloading result screen does not appear.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in phonebook, neither name nor image saved is displayed and only the phone number is displayed.
-  does not appear on the stand-by display even when Record message is activated, and an icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed.
- When data to which Personal data lock applies is set as the stand-by display or ring alert, the default setting becomes active in Personal data lock (when menu is a Kisekae menu except the one set by default, Basic menu is displayed). The setting you made is restored when canceled. When data saved in "Preinstalled" folder is set, however, the setting does not change even in Personal data lock.
- On Basic menu or Custom menu, icons of functions and parties with activation restricted are changed to  and person names appear as " \* \* \* ". For Kisekae menu, the font color is displayed in gray or the reason is displayed why activation cannot be performed.

### Keypad dial lock

#### Prohibiting keypad dial

You can set so that calls can be made only by using phonebook.

- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even if Keypad dial lock is activated.

 [Settings & NW services] 4 1 6 ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1  
or 2

When "ON" is set,  appears on the stand-by display.

### ❖When Keypad dial lock is ON

The following operations cannot be performed.

- Making call from Redial or Received calls<sup>\*1</sup>
- Editing, registering/adding, deleting and setting a group or entry in phonebook
- Editing and resetting recorded user information data
- Phone To (AV Phone To), SMS To and Mail To functions
- Exchanging phonebook data or user information transfer with external devices
- Sending Mail/SMS<sup>\*1</sup>, sending from mail logs<sup>\*1</sup>
- Reading template on the mail creation screen, creating mail from the mail template list screen or the mail template details screen<sup>\*2</sup>
- Saving a phonebook entry temporarily stored in INBOX and User information
- Backing up/Restoring microSD card, displaying phonebook in microSD card
- Using network services by the dial up operation
- Packet communication<sup>\*1</sup> or 64K data communication<sup>\*1</sup> with a PC
- \*1 Calls/Messages can be made or sent to parties saved in phonebook.
- \*2 A mail can be created from a template that a mail address saved in the phonebook is entered as the destination.

### Privacy mode

#### Setting operations for using or displaying personal information

You can make settings to perform authentication for using personal information, to hide phonebook entries/schedules with secret attribute, incoming calls/sent mail/received mail from a party with secret attribute.

- You can also set the operation for incoming calls or mail from a party with secret attribute.
- You can also set the method to activate/cancel Privacy mode.

## ◆ Flow of Privacy mode setting

### ❖ Displaying personal information after authentication

<Example> Mail

#### Step 1

Setting Privacy mode to "Authorized access"→P105

Set Mail & Logs to "Authorized access" in the setting of Privacy mode.

#### Step 2

Setting activation method for Privacy mode→P106

Set activation method to "Hold L-cursor key".

#### Step 3

Activating Privacy mode→P106

Press  for 1 second or more on the stand-by display to activate Privacy mode.

#### Step 4

Using mail

Authentication is required.

### ❖ Hiding personal information

<Example> Phonebook entry

#### Step 1

Setting secret attribute for a phonebook entry→P75

Set secret attribute for a phonebook entry to hide.



Secret attribute is set

- Set secret attribute for each data.  
Phonebook→P75, Bookmark→P161, Mail→P136, My Picture, i-motion→P276, Schedule→P295
- When you set secret attribute and return to the stand-by display, a confirmation screen for reflecting secret attribute in phonebook on mail or a message that confirms Activation option appears.  
Contact setting→P108

#### Step 2

Setting Privacy mode to "Hide set contact"→P105

Set Call & Logs to "Hide set contact" in the setting of Privacy mode.

#### Step 3

Setting activation method for Privacy mode→P106

Set activation method to "Hold L-cursor key".

#### Step 4

Activating Privacy mode→P106

Press  for 1 second or more on the stand-by display to activate Privacy mode.

#### Step 5

Searching for phonebook entries

Phonebook entries with secret attribute are hidden.



- Even in Privacy mode, hidden information can be displayed by temporary cancellation.→P108
- \* You can switch orders of Step 1 and Step 2.

## ◆ Setting Privacy mode operation

### ❖ Setting operation of phonebook or mail

#### 1 [Settings & NW services] 4 2 1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ ▶

##### Call & Logs :

- If "Authorized access" is set, authentication is required to search for mail by using phonebook, Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages, Voice memos or quick search.
- With "Hide set contact" set, phonebook entries or groups (including phonebook entries in those groups) with secret attribute, redial, received calls, mail or SMS for parties with secret attribute are not displayed. Also, reception operation is made according to the setting of Private call act.

##### Mail & Logs :

- If setting to "Authorized access", authentication is required when using mail or mail logs.
- With "Hide secrecy fldrs" set, folders with secret attribute are not displayed. The reception operation when a mail is received from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute is made according to the setting of Private mail act.

**Private call act.** : Set incoming actions for an incoming call from a party with secret attribute set in Privacy mode (when Phonebook & Logs is set to "Hide set contact").

- If setting to "Alert+Show No.", it is treated as a call from a party not registered in phonebook.
- If setting to "Silent receive", notification by ring alert, vibrate alert or light alert is not performed. And, the display operates according to the setting of the Silent receive act.
- If setting to "Alert+Show name.", it is treated as a call from a party that secret attribute is not set.

**Silent receive act.** : Set the incoming operation when setting Private call act. to "Silent receive". Even when these functions are set, notification by ring alert, vibrate alert or light alert is not performed.

- If setting to "Keep receiving", when there is an incoming call, only the phone number is displayed on the incoming call screen.

- If setting to "Start Ans. Machine", when there is an incoming call, answer machine is activated. Only the phone number is displayed on the incoming call screen.
- If setting to "Fwd to Voice Mail", the received call is connected to voice mail. Note that the incoming screen is not displayed.

**Private mail act.** : Set the display or notification when a mail comes from a party that secret attribute is set or from a party whose mail is set to be sorted to folders that secret attribute is set in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact" or when Mail & Logs is "Hide secrecy fldrs").

- If setting to "No alert/name/no.", mails are received but the receiving operation is not performed.
- If setting to "Alert+Show name", even if receiving a mail from a party that secret attribute is set, ticker, name or subject is displayed and the receiving operation is performed.

**Incoming: privacy mode** : Set if you are notified, with a changed battery icon type, of incoming calls or mail from a phonebook entry with secret attribute, or mail from a party whose mail is set to be filtered to a folder with secret attribute. Select a battery icon to display or select "OFF".

### ❖ Setting operations for Other item privacy

You can set whether to use authentication for using My Picture, i-motion, Schedule, Notepad, i-appli, Bookmark and Screen memo.

#### 1 [Settings & NW services] 4 2 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ ▶

- If "Authorized access" is selected, authentication is required to use a set function.
- When "Hide secrecy album", "Hide secrecy fldrs" or "Hide set schedule" is selected, albums, folders or schedule with secret attribute set are not displayed.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- Also when Shortcut icons are set on stand-by display, data or folders with secret attribute are hidden.
- If Schedule is set to "Authorized access", watching 1Seg/recording reservation are also included.
- If i-motion is set to "Hide secrecy album", titles in playlist are not displayed when moving pictures/i-motion in album with secret attribute are saved in playlist.

## ◆ Setting start/cancel method of Privacy mode <Activation option>

**I**  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Activate/Deactivate** : Set the activation/cancellation method of Privacy mode.

- When setting to "No activation", Privacy mode is activated only when Auto start is set.
- When setting to "Key+Authorize", the operation of authentication screen for activation/cancellation is not displayed. When selecting this item, press  to display the detailed explanation screen of this operation.

**Auto start** : Set the time period till Privacy mode automatically starts when doing nothing on stand-by display.

## ◆ Activating/Deactivating Privacy mode

### ❖ When start/cancel method is "Hold L-cursor key"

**I**  (1 sec. or more)

**Canceling** :  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

### ❖ When start/cancel method is "Key+Authorize"

**I**  ▶  ▶ Authenticate ▶ 

- Authentication screen is not displayed. When authentication is failed, press  and authenticate again. The power is not turned OFF even if authentication is failed 5 times in succession.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When Auto start of Activation option is other than "OFF", Privacy mode is activated when the set time elapses while the stand-by display is displayed.
- For Timed theme, when Privacy mode is set to "ON", even if Activate/Deactivate of Activation option is set to "No activation" and Auto start is set to "OFF", Privacy mode is activated.

## ❖ When Privacy mode is activated

There are restrictions as follows depending on the contents set by the items of Privacy mode.

**<Except i-αppli : "Authorized access">**

- There is unavailable i-αppli (except when Mail & Logs is "Authorized access") or i-αppli DX.

**<Call & Logs or Mail & Logs : Except "Show all">**

- To display mail groups or sort mail, authentication is required.

**<Call & Logs : Except "Show all">**

- When sending mail with a still image shot during a call, even if a mail address of the party you are talking over a call is saved in the phonebook, that mail address is not entered as a destination.

**<Call & Logs : "Authorized access" or "Hide set contact">**

- When receiving i-αppli call, only a phone number is displayed but the other party's name saved in phonebook is not.

**<Call & Logs : "Authorized access">**

- When making a call by pressing the dial, only a phone number appears, but the name or image saved in phonebook does not. When sending a mail by directly entering mail address, a phone number or mail address is displayed. When receiving, receiving operation is performed according to the setting saved in phonebook.
- Missed calls or Recorded messages do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- A mail address appears, but the name saved in phonebook from mail or mail logs does not.
- Birthdays or contacts saved in Scheduler is not displayed.
- Persons saved to Custom menu cannot be selected. The icon changes to  and a person's name appears as " \* \* \* \*".
- You cannot make a call by using Headset quick-dial.

**<Call & Logs : "Hide set contact">**

- Arrival information for parties with secret attribute does not appear. Also, records in Redial, Received calls, Recorded messages, voice memo while talking, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list or Mail logs are hidden.

- When Private call act. is set to "Silent receive", if there is an incoming call from a party that secret attribute is set, Chaku-moji is not displayed on the reception screen. Note that the call is recorded in received calls.
- If Private call act. is set to "Silent receive" and Silent receive act. is set to "Start Ans. Machine", Record message starts even if it is not activated. However, if 4 messages are recorded in Record message, the setting in "Keep receiving" is used to receive calls.
- If setting Private call act. to "Silent receive" and setting Silent receive act. to "Start Ans. Machine", if Personal data lock is activated, Record message does not operate, and incoming operation is performed as "Keep receiving" setting.
- Even if setting Silent receive act. to "Fwd to Voice Mail", if Voice Mail is not subscribed, incoming operation is performed as "Start Ans. Machine" setting in Silent receive act. Note that, when 4 items are already recorded in Recorded messages, incoming operation is performed as "Keep receiving" setting.
- Unread messages, Missed calls or Recorded messages for parties with secret attribute do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Display of name, or images, moving pictures/i-motion and vibrator saved in a phonebook entry with secret attribute operates for incoming calls according to the settings of Privacy call act.
- In Scheduler, birthdays or contacts of a phonebook entry with secret attribute set are not displayed.
- On Custom menu, parties in phonebook entries with secret attribute do not appear.
- If secret attribute is set for a phonebook entry or group from which you call, you cannot make a call by using Headset quick-dial.

#### <Mail & Logs : "Authorized access">

- Unread messages do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout.
- Authentication is required when searching mail using phonebook or scheduler, searching mail by quick search, displaying mail logs, downloading , upgrading or deleting Message i-appli.

#### <Mail & Logs : "Hide secrecy fldrs">

- When a mail is sent or received to/from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute, it is not notified with arrival information or mail logs.
- Mail from a party to be sorted to a folder with secret attribute do not appear in the arrival information area of Info/calendar layout or Unread messages.

- When a received mail compatible with Message i-appli is saved in a folder with secret attribute, even if a Message i-appli is downloaded, they are not automatically sorted to the folder for Message i-appli.

#### <My Picture or i-motion : "Authorized access">

- When using data in My picture or i-motion in settings for various functions, an authentication is required. A screen appears indicating that an item for some functions set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

#### <My Picture : "Authorized access">

- Still images or moving pictures with frames cannot be shot.
- Images except those in "Deco-mail picture" and "Deco-mail pict" saved by default do not appear in Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pict list currently used for mail creation.

#### <Schedule : Except "Show all">

- Even if a schedule is set on Calendar in Info/calendar layout, a red mark does not appear.

#### <Schedule : "Authorized access">

- Schedule area is not display for Info/calendar layout. On the Calendar set in Info/calendar layout, the display by the color indicating that the day off is set by Days off setting or Day off of week setting for the schedule is reset to default display.
- Schedule reminder (including Notify start of 1Seg) does not sound even when the specified time comes. Note that the recording reservation of 1Seg operates.
- When Alarm auto power ON is set to "ON" with the power turned OFF, the power is not turned ON even when the specified date and time come.

#### <Schedule : "Hide set schedule">

- Schedule reminder for a schedule with secret attribute does not sound even when the specified date and time arrive.
- Schedules with secret attribute do not appear in the schedule area for Info/calendar layout and it is not included in the number in No. of items.

#### <Notepad : "Authorized access">

- List of notes and Note in Info/Calendar layout are not displayed.

#### <i-appli : "Authorized access">

- Authentication is required to select a folder for Message i-appli or to download i-appli.
- When setting i-appli on the stand-by display with Stand-by display, an authentication is required. A message appears indicating that an item set for hiding is reflected after Privacy mode is canceled.

### <Screen memo : "Authorized access">

- When overwriting a screen memo, an authentication is required.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- For URL entries of i-mode and Full Browser, only entries made during Privacy mode are displayed, and the last URL entry during Privacy mode is displayed. Also, for Entry URL log and Last URL, only entries of Entry URL log and Last URL made during Privacy mode are displayed.
- If all items except Incoming: privacy mode and Auto start are "Show all", Privacy mode is not activated. If Privacy mode is already activated, it is canceled.
- Deleting all data or perform "Delete all items" with the following functions also deletes the data hidden in Privacy mode.
  - Redial/Dialed calls, Record message, phonebook
  - Mail\*, Mail logs, Schedule, Voice memo
- \* Deleting operations other than "One item" or "Selected items" also delete hidden mail.
- When Call & Logs of Privacy mode setting is changed from "Show all" or "Authorized access" to "Hide set contact" in Privacy mode, a message appears indicating that Contact setting is to be made to reflect the privacy to mail.
- Depending on the settings of Privacy mode, when using mail or schedule (including 1Seg watching/recording reservation) from i-appli in Privacy mode or save data in My Picture, a message may appear indicating that the specified function cannot be performed.
- Once authentication is performed to use the function set to "Authorized access" in Privacy mode, no more authentication is required before returning to the stand-by display. The same situation occurs when using multiple functions set to "Authorized access".

<Example> When sending an image saved in My Picture by mail in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs and My Picture is "Authorized access"), authentication is not required to display phonebook on a mail creation screen because it is carried out when displaying My Picture.

### ◆ Canceling Privacy mode temporarily

On a list screen containing hidden data etc., you can temporarily cancel the privacy state to display hidden data.

- The temporary cancellation is active until the stand-by display reappears. You may not be able to perform temporary cancellation depending on the screen.

**I** On the screen containing hidden data, **CLR** (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

### ◆ Hiding mail whose senders/receivers with secret attribute set in phonebook <Contact setting>

When performing Contact setting after secret attribute of a phonebook entry is changed or mail received via data communications is saved to FOMA terminal, secret attribute can be set to sent or received mail and SMS in correspondence with phone numbers or mail addresses in phonebook with secret attribute.

- In Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact"), mail or SMS with secret attribute does not appear.

**I** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **4** **2** **4** ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

### ✓ INFORMATION

- If Contact setting is not performed after changing a phonebook entry secret attribute or editing a phonebook entry, activating Privacy mode does not hide mail or SMS of the changed/edited phonebook entry.
- Mail and SMS to have secret attribute are as follows.
  - Sent/Unsent mail or SMS whose destination address (TO, CC, BCC) has secret attribute set in a phonebook entry
  - Received mail or SMS sent from phonebook entries with secret attribute set
- While setting secret attribute, the terminal is in data transfer mode (same as out of service area).
- When returning to stand-by display after receiving an external phonebook entry with secret attribute or setting secret attribute for phonebook entry, a confirmation screen appears asking if you want to reflect the secret attribute of phonebook entry to mail. Select "Yes" to apply secret attribute. When Privacy mode is not activated, message for confirming Activation of Privacy mode appears.
- When using 2in1, secret attribute is set regardless of 2in1 mode and Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- Performing Contact setting in the following cases causes cancellation of secret attribute for the related mail and/or SMS.
  - When secret attribute of a phonebook entry is canceled
  - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is edited (for a phone number or mail address before editing)
  - When a phonebook entry with secret attribute is deleted (including deletion of a phone number or mail address of phonebook entry)

## Setting display contents for receiving call/mail

You can set items to be displayed (name, phone number, etc.) on the display or sub-display when receiving a call or mail from a party saved in phonebook.

- For the displaying contents when receiving a call or mail in Privacy mode, the setting of Privacy mode precedes this setting.

**1**  [Settings & NW services]   ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**Main display info (At call received)** : Set the screen display when receiving a voice call or videophone call.

- If "Name+Phone No." is set, the name and phone number are displayed when you receive a voice call or videophone call.

**Main display info (Ticker at mail rcvd)** : Set the ticker display of mail reception result.

- If setting to "Name+Subject", when receiving a mail, the name and subject are displayed on the reception result ticker.
- If setting to "Incoming notice", only the message indicating the mail reception is displayed on the reception result ticker.
- If setting to "No ticker", reception result ticker is not displayed.

**Sub-display info (At call received)** : Set the display of sub-display when receiving a voice call or videophone call.

- When "Incoming notice" is set, only the missed call notification is displayed.

**Sub-display info (At mail received)** : Set the display of sub-display when receiving mail.

- If "Incoming notice" is set, only the message indicating the mail reception is displayed.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Even if setting a name to be displayed in All lock, Omakase Lock or Personal data lock, only a phone number is displayed on the stand-by display. Also, even if setting the reception result ticker to be displayed in All lock, Personal data lock, Lock on close or Lock when immobile, the reception result ticker is not displayed.

## Preventing inadvertent operation of side keys

This function disables operations using  and  while FOMA terminal is closed so that malfunctions can be prevented when you carry the terminal in a bag etc.

**1**  (1 sec. or more)

 appears on the stand-by display.

**Canceling** :  (1 sec. or more)

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Even in Side key hold, you can activate sub-display/Quick answer machine or stop ring alert/the vibrator during reception. Also, when high-pitched alarm can be activated, press  or  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal closed to activate high-pitched alarm.

## Locking keys

You can set **Lock on close** that locks keys when the terminal is closed, or **Lock when immobile** that locks keys automatically when no operation is performed until the specified time elapses. Because authentication is required to unlock, you can prevent unauthorized use by others.

To make an emergency call (110, 119 or 118) in **Lock on close**, enter the emergency phone number on the terminal security code entry screen, stand-by display or **Lock on close ON** screen and press .

\* The emergency call number entered on the terminal security code entry screen is masked with "\*".

- Lock on close cannot be activated when FOMA terminal is as follows.
  - While dialing<sup>\*1, 2</sup>, receiving<sup>\*2</sup>, calling<sup>\*1, 2</sup>, holding a call<sup>\*1, 2</sup>, disconnecting a call<sup>\*1, 2</sup>
  - While recording movie (including pausing)<sup>\*3</sup>, recording with Sound recorder (including pausing)<sup>\*3</sup>

- While receiving Area Mail (including while contents are displayed)\*2
- While playing melody \*2 or i-motion (including when displaying play screen)
- Infrared communication (including when displaying INBOX)\*2, iC transmission (including when displaying INBOX)\*2
- While schedule reminder, alarm clock (including snooze), high-pitched alarm, Countdown timer (including pause and countdown) is sounding, using Fake call\*4, playing Toy's world
- Software update (including while updating software)
- While 1Seg watching, 1Seg recording (only while watching), Notify start of 1Seg, playing video from 1Seg folder list or recorded by 1Seg, displaying still image, displaying data list
- Activating Music&Video Channel (except program downloading), Music player\*2
- Repeat playing movie saved in microSD card
- 64 K data communication with a PC\*2, data transfer using DOCOMO keitai datalink\*2

\*1 Actions when Close setting is set to other than "End the call" or Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) is connected.

\*2 When FOMA terminal is closed, Lock on close or Lock when immobile with shorter activation time takes precedence for locking. Lock when immobile is activated if FOMA terminal is open after the operation is completed.

\*3 Not locked only with Lock when immobile. However, Lock when immobile becomes active with FOMA terminal closed or is activated with another function.

\*4 Lock on close is disabled only while Fake call is received (including countdown).

• The following functions are available even in the locked state.

- Turning power ON/OFF
- Receiving voice/videophone calls, making emergency call (110, 119, 118)
- Recording of recorded messages
- Automatic update of Data Center
- Switching displaying/hiding calendar layout
- Receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F\* or SMS\*
- Receiving Area Mail, activating Omakase Lock
- Functions of Osaifu-Keitai which allows you to pay money by holding FOMA terminal over the IC card reader or obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader
- Operations for settings of alarm clock and schedule reminder
- Activating high-pitched alarm
- Activating 1Seg watching by alarm clock
- Activating recording by 1Seg recording reservation or Timer reception
- Headset quick dial by Headset key control
- Updating software, auto-updating pattern definitions.

\* When receiving with FOMA terminal open, none of receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are not taken.

## ◆ Setting Lock on close to "ON"

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 1 1 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

**Lock on close** : Set whether to activate Lock on close.

**Lock after phone close** : Lock on close is activated when the specified time elapses after FOMA terminal is closed.

## ◆ Setting Lock when immobile to "ON"

1 [Settings & NW services] 4 1 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

**Auto-keypad lock** : Set whether Lock when immobile is activated automatically

**Time to lock** : Set time to lock after the last operations of opening/closing FOMA terminal or keypad operation.

**Immobile sensor** : When "ON" is set, both two conditions trigger the Lock when immobile activation: no operations to the terminal and no movements\* on the terminal.

\* Indicates that you do not walk with the terminal or no strong vibration is momentarily given to the terminal.

## ◆ When lock is activated

When Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated, all keys except and are locked. Note that, even if is pressed (1 sec. or more), the recorded message/voice memo list screen is not displayed.

- Lock on close is activated after set Lock after phone close time elapses every time FOMA terminal is closed.
- Lock when immobile is activated and locks key operations automatically if no operation was performed for the time set in Time to lock after the last operation.
- When Lock on close/Auto-keypad lock is activated on the stand-by display, appears at the top of the display. When Lock on close/Auto-keypad lock is activated except on the stand-by display, the locked screen appears.
- To cancel Lock on close, open FOMA terminal and perform authentication. If the locked screen appears, directly enter terminal security code or perform authentication by pressing or .

## ✓ INFORMATION

- When Lock on close/Lock when immobile is "ON", Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated after the power is turned OFF and ON. Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated after Omakase Lock is canceled if active.
- If Lock on close is already activated, Lock when immobile is not activated even if it is set. Also, if Lock when immobile is already activated, Lock on close is not activated even if it is set.

## ◆ Indicating activation of lock with light <Security indicator>

You can set whether the state of Lock on close/Lock when immobile is shown with a light.

1  [Settings & NW services] 4 3 ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1 or 2

### ◆ When security indicator is set

If FOMA terminal is closed and Lock on close is activated, the light blinks in blue for approximately 3 seconds. When set to other than "Right after", if the specified time elapses, the light blinks in blue for approximately 3 seconds to indicate that Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated. Note that, when the light blinks in red for approximately 3 seconds, it indicates that Lock on close/Lock when immobile is not activated.

## Accepting/Rejecting calls from specified phone numbers

Accepting/Rejecting incoming call can be set for each phone number saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, specifying Accept/Reject call for each phone number and Specified caller setting are required. The settings and the operations of Accept/Reject call are as follows.

Setting		Accept/Reject call for each phone number		
		Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Specified caller	Cancel settings	Accepted	Accepted	Accepted
	Reject call	Accepted	Rejected*	Accepted
	Accept call	Accepted	Rejected*	Rejected*

\* The call from a specified phone number is disconnected with no ring alert and the caller hears a busy tone.

- This function is activated only when the other party sends caller ID.
- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls.
- If Ring time is set to "0 Sec." for Voice Mail or Call forwarding, Voice Mail or Call forwarding is activated and the call is not stored as a received call.
- Combination of Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous caller is recommended when used.

## ◆ Specifying phone numbers to accept/reject calls <Accept/Reject call>

Accepting/Rejecting incoming call is set for phone numbers saved in FOMA terminal phonebook.

1  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶  3 4 3 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select a phone number ▶ 1 - 3

- To accept/reject calls from specified phone numbers, activate settings of Specified caller in succession to the above step.
- If a phone number with Accept/Reject call set is edited or deleted, this setting is canceled. Set Accept/Reject call again for the new number.

## ◆ Enabling Accept/Reject call from specified numbers <Specified caller>

- This setting applies to all phone numbers with Accept/Reject call set.
- Reject call and Accept call are not enabled simultaneously.

**1** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **5** **5** **1** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **1** - **3**

#### ✓INFORMATION

- If a call without caller ID is received from a party you set Reject call, the FOMA terminals response is according to the setting in Anonymous caller regardless of this setting.
- When Accept call is selected with no phonebook entry set to Accept call, a message appears indicating to reject all incoming calls. Select "Yes" to reject all incoming calls.
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

### Anonymous caller

## Setting operations for incoming calls not to notify caller ID

For each reason for hiding caller ID, you can set a receiving operation for incoming calls notifying no caller ID.

- For the ring alert and incoming call image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this setting precedes the settings of Call alert.

**1** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **5** **2** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**(Incoming operation)** : Set operations for incoming calls with no caller ID notification.

- When "Disable settings" is specified, the ring tone sounds according to setting.
- When setting to "Ring alert off", ring alert does not sound. Set an image in "Show image".
- When setting to "Melody", select a melody and set an image in "Show image".
- When setting to "Movie ringtone", select a moving picture/i-motion. When setting a moving picture/i-motion with sound and image, Show image is set to "Sync ring alert".
- When setting to "Music", select a music data and set an image in "Show image".  
Setting Music→P79

**Show image** : Set an image for incoming calls without caller ID.

- When "i-motion" is selected, select a moving picture/i-motion from the moving picture list.

**List images** : When "Select image" is selected in Show image, select List images field and set an image.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When "Call Rejection" is set, incoming calls are rejected. Rejected calls are recorded as Missed call.
- When there is an incoming videophone call with no caller ID notification, the operations are performed only when "Call Rejection" is set. For other settings, ring tone and incoming image operate according to each ring tone or incoming call image setting.
- In the following cases, receiving action may use "着信音1 (Tone 1)" in "Melody", or Show image may be set to "Standard image". The settings can be changed.
  - When moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds is set as receiving action with Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images set as Show image
  - When ring alert is changed from moving picture/i-motion containing sounds and images to melody, music or moving picture/i-motion containing only sounds
  - When Flash graphics or moving picture/i-motion containing only images is set as Show image with moving picture/i-motion or music containing only sounds or music set as receiving action
  - When Show image is changed from "Sync ring alert" to other than "Sync ring alert"
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

### Ring alert delay

## Setting not to answer calls from the party not saved in phonebook

- Effective to "One-ring phone scam".
- This option cannot be set when Unregistered caller is set to "ON".

**1** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **1** **5** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**Delayed ring alert** : Set whether to enable Delayed ring alert.

**Delay time (sec)** : Set the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing. (1-99 seconds)

**Missed call** : Set whether to display a missed call that was terminated before the time set in Delay time in Received calls.

## ❖ When Delayed ring alert is set

When an incoming voice or videophone call is received from a party not saved in phonebook or such call is received with no caller ID notification, the reception is notified only with screen display for the specified period of time. After the specified time elapses, normal ring alert action starts.

- Before the specified time elapses, ordinary call receiving operation such as answering an incoming call or replying it with Record message can be performed.
- In Personal data lock, this function operates even for an incoming call from a party saved in the phonebook.
- This option also starts when a call arrives from a party that secret attribute is set with Private call act. set to "Alert+Show No." in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Regardless of this function, when the following functions or services are set, they precede.
  - Public mode, Record message
  - Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service
- When there is an incoming call from a party to be rejected according to the settings of Specified caller or Anonymous caller, those rejective operations precede this function.
- When Delay time has been set to the same seconds as that for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

## Unregistered caller

### Rejecting calls from phone numbers not saved in phonebook

- It is available only when the other party sends caller ID. Combination of Caller ID Request Service and setting of Anonymous caller is recommended when used.
- This function cannot be set when Personal data lock is activated or when Delayed ring alert of Ring alert delay is "ON".

1  [Settings & NW services]    ▶ Authenticate ▶   
or 

## ❖ When Unregistered caller is set

The voice or videophone call from a caller who is not saved in phonebook is disconnected with no ring alert, and the caller hears a busy tone.

- Rejected calls are recorded as missed calls. It also applies to Callback.
- This option also starts when a call arrives from a party that secret attribute is set with Private call act. set to "Alert+Show No." in Privacy mode (when Call & Logs is "Hide set contact").
- Regardless of this setting, i-mode mail and SMS are received.

## Using Data Security Service

This service allows you to store phonebook, images, mail, ToruCa and schedule (hereinafter referred to as "saved data") saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center, and you can restore the saved data to FOMA terminal in case of misplacement, changing model, etc. You can also send broadcast notice to notify you changed your mail address. No packet communication fee is charged for the broadcast mail. With a PC (My docomo), more convenient uses are available.

- For details about Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Data Security Service is a charged service requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).

## ❖ Storing (updating or restoring) phonebook in Data Center

### ■ Updating

1  [LifeKit]  

Operating from FOMA terminal phonebook :  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶   

2 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

-  : Cancel save

### 3 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

#### ■ Restoring

- You can restore phonebook, set auto-update, etc. from Data Security Service site of i-mode.

iMenu→English→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)\*

\* When you subscribed to i-concier, "お預かり/i コンシェル (Data Security Service/i-concier)" is displayed.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Entries saved in UIM phonebook cannot be saved in Data Center.
- If automatic update is performed after deleting entries of FOMA terminal phonebook, the entries of phonebook saved in Data Center are also deleted.
- If you deleted entries from FOMA terminal phonebook, you can download phonebook entries from Data Security Service site of i-mode.  
iMenu→English→My Menu→電話帳お預かり (Data Security Service)\*→お預かりデータ確認 (Check stored data)→Enter i-mode password→電話帳・ケータイへダウンロード (Download to phonebook/mobile phone)→OK→Return to stand-by display  
\* When you subscribed to i-concier, "お預かり/i コンシェル (Data Security Service/i-concier)" is displayed.
- When any other functions are running at the specified time of phonebook automatic update, automatic update is executed after returning to stand-by display. Automatic update is not executed when FOMA terminal is turned OFF or out of FOMA service area or if UIM is not installed.
- When the automatic update of phonebook fails, no icon etc. appears on stand-by display. You can check update result using Synchronization log.
- The order by which phonebook groups are saved may not be returned to their original order by restoration.

### ◆ Setting to send saved image in phonebook <Sync setting>

- 1  [LifeKit]   ▶ Select Contact image sending field ▶   
or  ▶ 

### ◆ Storing (updating or restoring) data in Data Center

You can save images, mail, ToruCa and schedule saved in FOMA terminal to Data Center.

- Up to 10 images or mails can be stored in one operation.
- i-mode mail attachments are deleted when the mail is saved. Note that, images or melodies in message text or Flash graphics in Decome-Anime message text (except files prohibited to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal) are not deleted.
- SMS report request cannot be stored.
- ToruCa (Details) containing images may be saved without details.

#### 1 Select data to save

Saving mail :   or  -  ▶ Select a folder ▶   

▶ Select a mail ▶ 

- To save unsent mail, select a folder and press   , then select mail to save.

Saving an image :  [Data Box]  ▶ Select a folder ▶   

▶ Select an image ▶ 

Updating ToruCa :  [Osaifu-Keitai]  ▶  

Updating Scheduler :  ▶   

#### 2 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

-  : Cancel save

#### 3 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears automatically in approximately 5 seconds.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Saved data can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.
- An image whose size exceeds 100 Kbytes cannot be saved or restored.
- Images in "Item" folder or "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture cannot be selected.
- For details about restoration, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- Restored mail is protected except for the following cases.
  - When received mail or SMS saved in Data Center is unread
  - When the number of protected saved mail has reached the maximum
- When ToruCa is automatically updated from Data Center and viewed for the first time, a confirmation screen for saving ToruCa appears. Select "Yes" to save it, but the viewed ToruCa is deleted when "No" is selected.

## ◆ Storing (updating or restoring) data in Data Center from i-concier

- You can save phonebook entries, ToruCa and schedule saved in FOMA terminal from i-concier menu to Data Center. Saved phonebook entries, ToruCa and schedule can be updated/restored to FOMA terminal by connecting to Data Center.
- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription. For details about notes and use, refer to "Mobile Phone Users Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- 1 [i-concier]
- 2 ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Update storage data" ▶ Select data ▶
- 3 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- : Cancel saving

### 4 Check the communication result

- The communication result disappears in approximately 5 seconds.

## ◆ Checking used log <Synchronization log>

- Logs saved in Data Center can be checked.
- Up to 30 synchronization logs can be recorded. When the maximum is exceeded, older logs are overwritten first.

- 1 [LifeKit] ▶ Select logs

## Reset

### Resetting various functions

You can restore functions in **red characters** on the menu list to default settings. → P344

- 1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select an item to reset ▶ ▶ "Yes"

### ✓INFORMATION

- When i-mode preferences is reset, i-Channel ticker does not appear on stand-by display. Displaying i-Channel list by pressing on stand-by display starts receiving the latest information and displaying a ticker on stand-by display.
- You can reset the counted number of steps by resetting Pedometer/ACT monitor.

## Delete all data

### Deleting saved data all at once

Delete the saved or registered data, and restore the settings of each function to default.

- The protected data is also deleted.
- All settings or data are deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- The following data are not deleted. Also, default settings are not restored.
  - Data stored by default
  - Data saved, registered or set in FOMA terminal and the microSD card
  - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that data is saved
  - Data communication settings set from a PC
  - Network search mode
  - 3G/GSM setting
- i-appli saved by default are as follows.
  - "iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)" is restored to the default when no data is saved in IC card.
  - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli other than "iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)" is deleted when no data is saved in IC card.
  - i-appli other than Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is restored to the default, however, upgraded i-appli is deleted.

- When data is saved in IC card, IC owner is not reset.
- If mails of "Welcome" (ドコモ動画 (DOCOMO moving picture)), "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "オススメBEST" (Recommendation)", saved in "Inbox" folder are deleted, they are saved again.

**[Settings & NW services] [7] [4] [7] ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"**

Delete all data is performed while restarting.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- When restarting after this function is performed, the same screen as that for the first activation of the terminal appears (拡大メニューの設定 (enlarged menu setting) appears only when the confirmation screen is closed without any settings).→P48
- When deleting a large size of data, restarting may take approximately 1 minute. Be careful not to turn the power OFF before deletion completes.
- Execution of this function disables automatic reception of Music&Video Channel programs. To enable automatic reception of programs again, perform Set program of Music&Video Channel.

### Initializing remotely

#### Resetting data by remote control

With subscription to use this function (Business mopera anshin manager), this service allows an administrator to request to initialize data (memory in phone/microSD card/UIIM) in the target FOMA terminal.

#### ■ Inquiries

DOCOMO business website  
docomo Business Online

- From a PC  
<http://www.docomo.biz>

\* May be unavailable for system maintenance.

### ◆ When data is reset by remote control

When remote initialization is activated, a message indicating remote setting starts appears. During setting or remote initialization, a message indicating operations are unavailable appears.

- All keypad operations are disabled during remote initialization.
- One of the following initializations is performed.
  - Initializing data in FOMA terminal (deleting all data at once)
  - Initializing data in UIM (for UIM phonebook and SMS settings)
  - Quick format for data in microSD card

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- Even in Omakase Lock, the remote initialization precedes.
- The following settings are retained even when resetting by remote control is completed.
  - All lock
  - Omakase Lock
  - Remote customization

### Remote customization

#### Restricting each function by remote control

With subscription to use this function (Business mopera anshin manager), this service allows an administrator to request to remotely restrict or set ON/OFF to functions (camera function, lock setting, etc.) in the target FOMA terminal.

#### ■ Inquiries

DOCOMO business website  
docomo Business Online

- From a PC  
<http://www.docomo.biz>

\* May be unavailable for system maintenance.

## ◆ When data is customized by remote control

When remote customization is activated, a message indicating remote setting starts appears. During setting, a message indicating operations are unavailable appears, and a completion message appears when the remote customization is complete.  appears at the bottom of the display.

- If a function restricted or set to "ON" is accessed, the following message appears on stand-by display.
  - "This function is restricted by remote setting. Unable to use."
- The following functions may be restricted.
  - Music/Moving picture player (including i-motion, MUSIC Player, Music&Video Channel, playing moving picture file or preview operation on Full Browser screen, downloading/playing music data)
  - ISeg (including ISeg watching, ISeg recording, playing video recorded by ISeg, displaying a still image, Notify start of ISeg)
  - i-αppli, i-αppli auto start (setting to "Auto start")
  - Browser (including activation of i-mode or Full Browser, screen memos)
  - Mail (including view of Outbox/Inbox/Unsent of i-mode mail, SMS and MessageR/F, creation of a new mail, mail logs, Mail settings)
  - Phonebook (including UIM phonebook)
  - Camera (including Still camera/Movie camera, Sound recorder)
  - Data exchange (including infrared remote control, infrared communication/iC transmission, data communication using USB connection)
  - Data Box (including view of Data Box, usage of images)
  - microSD use (including moving/copying to microSD card, backing up data)
  - Moving/Copying data between the terminal and UIM
- The following functions may be set to "ON" regardless of the settings. The settings cannot be changed.
  - Lock on close/Lock when immobile
  - IC card lock
  - Keypad dial lock
  - Unregistered caller
  - Silent mode (setting to General silent mode)

## ◆ Checking data customized remotely <Check remote setting>

  [Settings & NW services]   

Each function that is restricted or set to "ON" is listed.

- For the items customized remotely by an administrator, you cannot change the setting or initialize (initializing remotely) them from FOMA terminal.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Restricted function cannot be newly set to Shortcut icon.
- Even lock functions already set to "ON" may be changed to "OFF" by remote customization. When the remote customization is canceled, the previous setting is restored.
- When remote customization is activated while running other functions, those functions are terminated (data being edited, if any, may not be saved before the termination).
- Even in Omakase Lock, remote customization precedes.
- Remote customization is unavailable if FOMA terminal is misplaced with its power OFF, out of service area, or in Self mode.
- You can turn the power ON/OFF, however, remote customization is not canceled even if you turn the power OFF, perform Reset or Delete all data.
- While mail function is restricted, mail can be received automatically, but no receiving actions such as displaying the receiving or reception result screen, emitting ring alert are taken.
- When phonebook is restricted, it operates as follows.
  - When making/receiving a call to/from the party saved in phonebook, neither name nor image saved is displayed and only the phone number is displayed.
  - Voice calls or videophone calls are received, display the caller's phone number instead of the name or image saved in the phonebook. The incoming image, ring alert and other settings are reset to default settings, and the default image is displayed as videophone substitute image. The settings you made are restored when canceled.
- If i-αppli is restricted, even when i-αppli call is received, it is discarded and not displayed in i-αppli call log.
- Even when Data Box is restricted, data subject to restriction can be downloaded and saved. When the memory space is not enough, delete data and save. Note that preview operation is unavailable on the saving screen.

## Other security settings

In addition to those introduced in this chapter, you can use the following functions and services related to Security settings.

Function/Service	Aim	Page
IC card lock	Prevent unauthorized use of IC card function.	P248
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Reject "Nuisance Call" such as a prank call and malicious telemarketing call.	P320
Caller ID Display Request Service	Reject a call with no Caller ID.	P320
FirstPass	Perform secure and reliable data communication with the electronic authentication service. *Limited only for FirstPass compatible sites.	P155 P169
Software update	Update the software on FOMA terminal as necessary.	P383
Scanning function	Protect FOMA terminal from harmful data.	P387
Receive option	Receive only necessary mail from a large amount of mail.	P142
"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version"	
Change Mail Address		
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL) (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ( <i>かんたんメール設定</i> (Simple mail setting)) (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders) (SMS Rejection Settings) (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail) (Confirm Settings)		
Suspend/Resume Mail		
Limit Mail Size		
ケータイお探しサービス (Keitai-Osagashi Service)		
imadocokantan search		

i-mode mail .....	120
<b>Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail</b>	
Composing and sending i-mode mail .....	<b>Compose message</b> 120
Creating and sending Deco-mail .....	<b>Deco-mail</b> 121
Creating and sending Decome-Anime .....	<b>Decome-Anime</b> 123
Using mail templates .....	124
Attaching a file .....	<b>Attachment (sending)</b> 126
Saving i-mode mail, then sending later .....	<b>Save i-mode mail</b> 127
Composing i-mode mail quickly .....	<b>Quick mail</b> 128
<b>Receiving and operating i-mode mail</b>	
When you receive i-mode mail .....	<b>Mail auto receive</b> 128
Receiving mail selectively .....	<b>Receive option</b> 129
Checking new i-mode mail .....	<b>Check new message</b> 130
Replying to i-mode mail .....	<b>Replying to i-mode mail</b> 130
Forwarding i-mode mail to other address .....	<b>Forwarding i-mode mail</b> 131
Downloading Receive option attachment file .....	131
Operating attachments .....	132
<b>Operating mailbox</b>	
Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox .....	133

## Useful functions of Mail

Using mail history .....	<b>Mail logs</b> 138
Useful functions of Mail .....	139

## Configuring mail settings

Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal .....	<b>Mail settings</b> 140
---	--------------------------

## Using message services

When MessageR/F is received .....	<b>Receive MessageR/F</b> 145
Displaying MessageR/F stored in the FOMA terminal .....	<b>MessageR / MessageF</b> 146

## Using early warning "Area Mail"

Early warning "Area Mail" .....	147
When receiving early warning "Area Mail" .....	<b>Receive Area Mail</b> 147
Setting early warning "Area Mail" ....	<b>Early warning "Area Mail" setting</b> 148

## Using SMS

Composing and sending SMS .....	<b>Composing and sending SMS</b> 148
When SMS is received .....	<b>Receive SMS</b> 149
Checking for SMS .....	<b>Check new SMS</b> 150
Setting SMS .....	<b>SMS settings</b> 150
Saving SMS at UIM (FOMA card) .....	<b>SMS saved to UIM</b> 151

## i-mode mail

Only by subscribing to i-mode, i-mode mails can be exchanged not only with i-mode terminals but also via Internet.

In addition to message text, you can attach up to 10 files (images, moving picture files, etc.) of up to 2 Mbytes in total to a mail. Moreover, you can change a font color, size and background color of message text with Deco-mail, and you can also send expressive mails easily with Deco-mail pictogram.

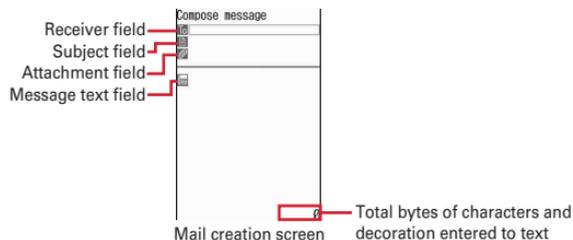
In addition, Decome-Anime that has messages and images in a Flash graphic format is supported.

- For details of i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## Compose message

### Composing and sending i-mode mail

#### 1 (1 sec. or more)



- When 2in1 is used, Address A in A mode or Address B in B mode is applied for a sender's address. Note that it cannot be changed.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, the following icons that indicate the sender's address appear at the bottom of the display.  
 : Unspecified  : Address B No display : Address A

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, press   to switch Address A/Address B of the sender.

#### 2 Select the receiver field

#### 3 Select entry method ▶ Enter the address

**Entering mail address from mail logs :** Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select mail logs to send mail

**Entering by searching phonebook :** "View phonebook" ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail

**Entering mail address from mail group :** "Mail group" ▶ Select a mail group

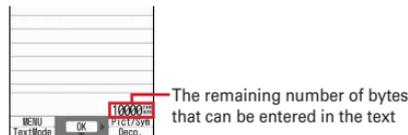
**Entering directly :** "Direct input" ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- To send mail to another i-mode terminal, "@docomo.ne.jp" can be omitted.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set depending on the entry method as follows.
  - Entering from mail logs : Set according to Address A/B information in the log.
  - Entering the address that is set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting by using phonebook or direct entry : Set Address A.
  - Entering the address that is set to "B" in Ph.book 2in1 setting by using phonebook or direct entry : Set Address B.
  - Entering multiple addresses such as a mail group : Set according to Ph.book 2in1 setting of the last receiver.

#### 4 Select the subject field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters)

- The whole title may not be received depending on the receiving terminal.

#### 5 Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text (up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters)



### Inserting signature : Select the message text field

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting which signature to insert appears.

## 6



- To stop transmission, press  on the connecting screen or press  on the sending screen. Note that i-mode mail may be sent depending on the operation timing. Even if the i-mode mail is sent, it is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a mode of receiver that is set in Ph.book 2in1 setting is different from the mode of sender's address, a confirmation screen for sending mail appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a sender's address is not specified, a screen for selecting a sender's address appears.
- When you are out of service area, a message indicating out of service area appears. If you press the key other than , when the number of Auto-send mails is fewer than 5, the setting confirmation screen for Auto-send appears. When "Yes" is selected, i-mode mail with Auto-send set is saved in "Unsent" folder.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- When Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is used, the mail is sent as Deco-mail.
- Some pictograms may not be displayed correctly depending on the other party's i-mode terminal model.
- When i-mode mail containing pictograms is sent to other company's mobile phones, the pictograms are automatically converted to similar pictograms on the receiver's terminal. Note that the pictograms may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal depending on the models and/or functions of the receiver's terminals and they may be converted to characters or  if there are no applicable pictograms.
- Under some radio wave conditions, characters are not displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even when i-mode mail is sent correctly, an error message "Transmission failed." may appear depending on the signal quality.
- i-mode mail that failed to be sent is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- Error messages for address unknown etc. may not be received when mails are sent to addresses other than DOCOMO.

- When the memory space of Outbox/Unsent messages is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, i-mode mail cannot be created or sent. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder of Unsent messages.
- When a mail exceeding 10,000 bytes in process of creation is automatically saved due to other functions being started etc., some part of it may not be saved.

## ◆ Adding address

i-mode mail can be sent to up to 5 addresses at the same time (Simultaneous sending).

- There are 3 address types of receivers as follows.

**To** : Main receiver

**Cc** : Other receiver(s) than the main receiver to inform the contents of the mail

**Bcc** : The receiver(s) to inform the contents of the mail without making the mail address displayed on other receivers' terminals

- When no receiver addresses are entered in **To**, the mail cannot be sent.
- The mail addresses entered in address fields of **To** and **Cc** are displayed on the receiving side. However, they may not be displayed depending on receivers' terminals, devices, mail software, etc.

### 1 On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the receiver field ▶ Select an entry method

- When "Mail group" is selected, select a mail group.

**Changing address type** : On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the address    ▶ Select an address type

**Deleting an added address** : On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the address    ▶ "Yes"

### 2 Select an address type ▶ Enter an address

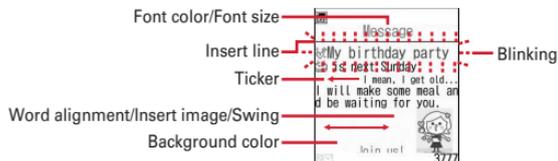
Entering an address → P120 Step 3 in "Composing and sending i-mode mail"

## Deco-mail

### Creating and sending Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by changing the text font size or background color, inserting a still image shot, Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail pictogram stored by default in i-mode mail text.

## ■ Decoration example



- Deco-mail can be created in two ways : entering decorated characters (→P122) and decorating entered characters (→P123).
- Deco-mail of 100 Kbytes or less in size can be sent. Images up to 20 types or up to 90 Kbytes in total can be attached to the text out of 100 Kbytes. Note that Flash graphics are up to 2 items.
- Deco-mail received on an incompatible terminal becomes mail containing a URL for viewing or mail with only message text depending on the receiver's terminal.

## ◆ Entering characters after specifying decoration

### 1 Select the message text field on the mail creation screen

### 2 Select a decoration icon ▶ Decorate



Operating procedure of decoration→P122 "Operating procedures of decoration icons"

- When a decoration icon such as a blink, ticker, swing icon is selected, select it again to cancel the selection.
- When setting multiple decorations, select the decoration icons successively. Ticker, Swing and Word alignment cannot be set at the same time.

**Canceling the decoration at the cursor position and entering characters :** Move the cursor to the character entry position ▶   ▶ Enter characters

- Decorations that can be canceled are Font color, Font size, Blink, Ticker, Swing and Word alignment.

## Changing decorations : ▶ Select the start position

The next procedure→P123 Step 2 and the following steps in "Specifying decoration after entering characters"

### 3 ▶ Check the decoration

You can check the decoration set to the text and the accurate bytes of the remaining data amount you can enter on the lower-right screen.

- When Flash graphics with sound effect is attached to the text, the sound effect is played. When a melody is attached, only the melody is played.

### 4 ▶ Edit a mail ▶

Editing mail→P120

## ◆ Operating procedures of decoration icons

Function	Operating procedure/supplement
 Insert image	① Select the insertion source <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than Stand-by (480×854) in size can be shot and inserted.</li> <li>• By pressing  instead of , you can display Deco-mail picture list.</li> <li>• Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also in the procedure for entering pictogram.→P311</li> </ul> ② Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ 
 Font color	<b>Select a Font color ▶ Enter characters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color".</li> <li>• The pictogram font colors can also be changed (except for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D)).</li> <li>• Can be restored to the original color by specifying the range.→P123</li> </ul>
 Font size	<b>Select a Font size ▶ Enter characters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be changed.</li> </ul>
 Background color	<b>Select Background color ▶ </b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select from 20 default colors or 64 colors of "Other color".</li> </ul>
 Blink	<b>Enter characters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) cannot be set.</li> </ul>
 Ticker	<b>Enter characters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter characters between  and .</li> </ul>
 Swing	<b>Enter characters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter characters between  and .</li> </ul>

Function	Operating procedure/supplement
<b>Word alignment</b>	<b>Selecting word alignment ▶ Enter characters</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If characters are already entered at the cursor position, a line feed occurs.</li> </ul>
<b>Insert line</b>	Lines (ruled lines) are inserted in the color specified with   (Font color).
<b>Reset all</b>	All decorations are canceled.
<b>Undo</b>	Last set decoration or character entry is canceled.

### ◆ Specifying decoration after entering characters

- Operating procedure of Insert line, Insert image and Background color and checking/canceling method of decoration→P122 "Entering characters after specifying decoration"

**1** Select the message text field on the mail creation screen ▶ Move the cursor to the start point of decoration ▶ (1 sec. or more)

**2** Select the end point

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence :

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence :

Selecting the whole sentence :

**3** Select the decoration

**Changing font color :** ▶ Select a font color

- The color of separating line (ruled line) is also changed.
- To change the color back to the default, select "Default".

**Changing font size :** ▶ -

**Setting/Canceling blinking of characters :** ▶ or

**Setting/Canceling Show ticker of characters or images :** ▶ or

**Setting/Canceling Swing display of characters or images :** ▶ or

**Changing the display position of characters or images :** ▶ -

**Canceling all decorations in a selected range :**

**Copying :**

**Cutting :**

**Returning to the previous state :**

- Last set decoration or character entry is canceled.
- Press to continue specifying decorations.

**4** ▶ ▶ **Edit a mail** ▶

Editing mail→P120

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Even when the decorated characters are deleted, only decoration data remains and the number of characters permitted may be fewer. Cancel decoration first and then delete them. To delete characters including decoration data after the cursor position, press for 1 second or more.
- On the mail creation screen or the preview screen, the operation such as blink, ticker, swing and animation is automatically stopped after a certain period.
- When mails are exchanged with other than FOMA terminal supporting Deco-mail such as a PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

## Decome-Anime

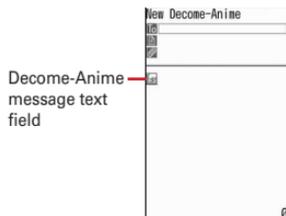
### Creating and sending Decome-Anime

Decome-Anime is an expressive mail service using Decome-Anime template, and using Flash graphics with messages or images inserted.

Default mail templates or those purchased from IP (Information Provider) can be used.

- Decome-Anime text of 90 Kbytes or less can be sent.
- Decome-Anime received on an incompatible terminal becomes mail containing a URL for viewing or mail with only message text depending on the receiver's terminal.

**1** **3**



Decome-Anime creation screen

- Icon definitions → P120 Step 1 in "Composing and sending i-mode mail"

## 2 Select Decome-Anime message text field

- Icon definitions are as follows.  
 / : File restricted/unrestricted  
 Icon definitions except the above → P124 Step 1 in "Reading Deco-mail template for creating mail"
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and list display switch.
- Go to Step 4 if you already set Decome-Anime template.

## 3 Move the cursor to Decome-Anime template

The list of components of text or image that can be edited are displayed.

- Icon definitions are as follows.  
 : Text component : Image component
- : Display preview  
 For Decome-Anime with sound effect, the sound effect is played. When a melody is attached, only the melody is played.

## 4 Select text component ▶ Enter characters

- The number of characters, number of lines, or position that can be entered differ by Decome-Anime template.
- Entering of Deco-mail pict (Pictogram D), decorating such as changing of the font size or color and inserting of signature are unavailable.

### Editing image component :

- The image insert position differs depending on Decome-Anime template.
- Even an image smaller than a size of number of characters (bytes) that can be entered may not be inserted.

- When inserting an image, the number of characters (bytes) that can be entered becomes smaller than the inserted image.

### ① Select an image component ▶ Select the insertion source

- If you select "Use still camera", a still image smaller than Stand-by (480×854) in size can be shot and inserted.

### ② Select a folder ▶ Select an image

Reading other Decome-Anime template : ▶ "Yes" ▶ Move the cursor to Decome-Anime template ▶

Deleting an image : Move the cursor to the image

component ▶ ▶ "Yes"

Restoring to default : Move the cursor to a component ▶ ▶ "Yes"

## 5 ▶ Edit the mail

Editing mail → P120

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When inserting an image or text, some extra bytes are added after the composition. Therefore, Decome-Anime may not be previewed or sent due to being oversized.
- The message text of Decome-Anime that failed to be sent and is saved in "Unsent" folder cannot be re-edited.

## Using mail templates

A mail template is a predefined form of i-mode mail. Deco-mail/Decome-Anime can be created easily by modifying this form.

In addition to the mail templates stored by default, mail templates created by yourself or downloaded from sites are available.

- Checking memory space → P280

### ◆ Reading Deco-mail template for creating mail

#### 1 On the mail creation screen, ▶ or

- If the text already exceeds 10,000 bytes, "Load & Insert" cannot be selected.
- When selecting "Load & Overwrite", a confirmation screen for discarding entered contents to load appears.

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 : Mail template unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

 : Mail template that an incorrect image is used

 : Find Deco-mail template from i-mode site→P125

Icon definitions except the above→P134 "Mail list screen"

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and list display switch.

## 2 Move the cursor to a mail template

- When selecting "Load & Insert" in Step 1, if there are characters already entered in the text, select the insert position and select "Yes".

## 3 Edit the mail

Editing mail→P120, 121

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Operation from submenu of message text entry screen :  

## ◆ Viewing mail template for creating mail

### 1 ▶ or ▶ Select a mail template

### 2 ▶ Edit the mail

Editing mail→P120, 121, 123

**Changing detail information of Deco-mail template :**   

The next procedure→P125 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating and saving mail template"

**Changing detail information of Decome-Anime template :**    ▶ Enter the display name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

## ◆ Creating and saving mail template

You can save created or sent/received i-mode mail as a Deco-mail template.

- Saving as a Deco-mail template is unavailable in the following cases.
  - When total size of text and decoration data exceeds 10,000 bytes
  - When the total size of text, decoration and attached file exceeds 100 Kbytes
- Sent/Received i-mode mail without text cannot be saved. Address and title are not saved.
- You cannot use this function for Decome-Anime.

### 1 On the mail creation screen, ▶ "Yes"

**Saving sent/received i-mode mail :** On the mail details screen,   

### 2 Set required items

**Display name :** Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**File name :** Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, and ".", "-", "\_" can be entered. "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

### 3 or

It is saved to "Decome" of Template.

- To overwrite and save, select an item ▶ "Yes".

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- If attempting to save a Deco-mail template containing an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image may be deleted.

## ◆ Downloading a mail template

- The maximum savable size per template is as follows.
  - Deco-mail template : 200 Kbytes
  - Decome-Anime template : 100 Kbytes

### 1 Display a site ▶ Select a mail template

- Pressing  while downloading : Stopping download

### 2 "Save" ▶ Set required items

**Display name :** Up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**File name (only for Deco-mail template) :** Up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, and ".", "-", "\_" can be entered. "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

**Displaying : "Preview"**

**Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"**

**Displaying detail info (only for Decome-Anime template) : "Detail info"**  
Detail information→P278

### 3 or

Deco-mail templates are saved to "Decome" in Template, and Decome-Anime templates to "Decome-Anime".

- To overwrite and save, select an item ▶ "Yes".
- A confirmation screen for creating mail appears after saving.
- When an unavailable file is attached, a confirmation screen for deleting the attachment file before saving appears.

## ◆ Deleting mail template

1   ▶ 1 or 2

2 Move the cursor to mail template ▶  2 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a mail template.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When a mail template stored by default is deleted (except attached melody), it can be downloaded from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.→P280

## Attachment (sending)

### Attaching a file

You can send i-mode mail with files attached.

- Up to 10 files of up to 2 Mbytes in total can be attached.
- Files prohibited to be attached to mail and outputting from FOMA terminal (except files with "File restricted" set for File restriction with your terminal or data of "Data transfer" folder) or files unavailable due to UIM operation restriction cannot be attached.
- File types that can be attached are as follows.

File type	Condition of attachment
Image <sup>*1</sup>	• Only JPEG/GIF format images, GIF animation and Flash graphics can be attached (except created animation)
Moving picture/ i-motion/ Sound <sup>*2</sup>	• Only MP4 format moving picture/i-motion can be attached (except ASF format or partially downloaded moving picture/i-motion) • Moving picture/i-motion with replay restriction set cannot be attached <sup>*3</sup>
Melody	• Only melodies in SMF or MFi format can be attached

File type	Condition of attachment
ToruCa <sup>*4</sup>	• ToruCa in the "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be attached • Attachment is unavailable depending on settings of IP (Information Provider)
Phonebook	—
Schedule	—
Bookmark	—
Other	• Only the "Other" folder in a microSD card can be attached.

\*1 When sending a JPEG image larger than 10,000 bytes to a 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, it is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that the receiving terminal supports. To an i-mode terminal with mova service, only one JPEG image can be sent. Note that i-mode mail with URL for image viewing is received by the terminal of the receiver's side.

\*2 Moving picture/i-motion with images may be converted to continuous still images and played depending on receiver's terminals or devices.

When sending to 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, a moving picture recorded in Compatible mode is recommended.→P190

When the receiver's terminal is 2M incompatible i-mode terminal, moving pictures/i-motion are saved in i-motion mail Center and the terminal receives i-mode mail containing URL for i-motion viewing.

Sound recorded with the Sound recorder or Record voice is attached as moving picture/i-motion containing only sound. i-mode terminals with mova service cannot receive moving pictures/i-motion containing only sound.

\*3 Files may not be attached to the mail even when replay restriction is not set.

\*4 ToruCa (Details) may not be received even if the receiver's device is compatible with ToruCa.

## 1 On the mail creation screen, select the attachment field ▶ Select a file to attach

- The selected file is displayed in the attachment field of the mail creation screen.
- If microSD card is installed, a screen appears asking to select an attachment source from "Phone memory" or "microSD".

### Selecting an image ("1 Image")

- For a JPEG image with size larger than 240×320 (or vice versa), a conversion to QVGA size confirmation screen appears.
- For a JPEG format image exceeding 2 Mbytes in size, it is converted to a size available for mail attachment.

- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a still image.→P180

#### Selecting a moving picture/i-motion ("2] i-motion")

- When "Activate camera" is selected as an attachment source, you can shoot and attach a moving picture.→P184

#### Selecting "3] Melody"

- Melodies are saved in "Mail attach melody" folder by default.→P357

#### Selecting "4] ToruCa"

- When ToruCa (Details) can be attached, a confirmation screen for attaching ToruCa with the detail information to mail appears.
- When ToruCa (Details) cannot be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking if you attach ToruCa to mail without the detail information.

#### Selecting "5] Schedule"

- When a schedule in i-schedule is selected, it is attached as an ordinary schedule.

#### Selecting voice ("8] Record voice")

- Sound data can be recorded and attached to mails.  
Method of recording sound→P184 Step 2 and the following steps in "Shooting moving pictures with Camera"

## 2 Edit the mail ▶

Editing mail→P120, 121, 123

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Attachments not supported by the receivers' terminals may be deleted or may not be displayed/played correctly.
- Sending an attachment file of a certain size may take time.

## ◆ Changing/Removing attachments

<Example> Canceling

1 On the mail creation screen, move the cursor to the attachment field

2  ▶ "Yes"

Changing :  ▶ Retry attaching files→P126

### Save i-mode mail

## Saving i-mode mail, then sending later

## ◆ Saving i-mode mail

1 On the mail creation screen,  3

i-mode mail is saved in "Unsent" folder, and a confirmation screen for pasting Shortcut icons appears.

- When saving Decome-Anime whose message text was edited, a confirmation screen for saving appears. Note that, if saved, the message text cannot be edited.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a sender's address is not specified, a screen for selecting a sender's address appears.

## ◆ Automatically sending mail from a place where radio waves reach <Auto-send>

You can set so that i-mode mail created out of service area is automatically sent when moving to a place where radio waves reach.

- Up to 5 mails can be registered.

1 On the mail creation screen,  2

Mail is saved in "Unsent" folder and  appears at the top of the display.

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a mode of receiver that is set in Ph.book 2in1 setting is different from the mode of sender's address, a confirmation screen for sending mail appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a sender's address is not specified, a screen for selecting a sender's address appears.

## ❖ When moving to a place where radio waves reach

Automatically sent. During automatic sending,  blinks. When transmission is complete correctly, the i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Outbox and  disappears.

- When transmission is interrupted or fails,  changes to  and blinks, and the i-mode mail remains in "Unsent" folder.

Move the cursor to i-mode mail failed in automatic sending in Unsent messages and press    to display the reason for unsending.

-  disappears after all mail that failed to Auto-send are edited, canceled or deleted.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When failed to be sent because of out of service area, it is resent up to 2 times.
- A mail is not automatically sent while using mail functions such as creating a mail or editing signature or while using Full Browser.

## ❖ Canceling Auto-send setting

- 1   ▶ **Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-mode mail ▶  ▶ "Yes"**

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Auto-send setting is canceled also in the following cases.
  - When the mail creation screen appears by selecting unsent Auto-send mail
  - When an unsent Auto-send mail is moved to a folder for Message i-αpli
  - When UIM is replaced
  - When Host number or Host address is changed in Host selection

## ❖ Editing sent/unsent mail

- 1  ▶  or  ▶ **Select a folder**
- 2 **Select a mail**

**Re-editing the sent mail :** Move the cursor to mail ▶ 

- 3 **Edit the mail ▶ **

Editing mail → P120, 121

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set for the mail creation screen according to the sender's address of sent/unsent mail.

## Quick mail

### Composing i-mode mail quickly

**i-mode mail and SMS can be sent by simple operation to the parties with phonebook number 0-99 in FOMA terminal phonebook.**

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in a phonebook, the destination is the first mail address for i-mode mail and the first phone number for SMS.

#### 1 Enter a phonebook number ▶

i-mode mail creation screen appears with the mail address saved in the phonebook entry of the entered phonebook number as the destination.

**Creating SMS :** Enter a phonebook number ▶  (1 sec. or more)

SMS creation screen appears with the phone number saved in the phonebook entry of the entered phonebook number as the destination.

## Mail auto receive

### When you receive i-mode mail

#### 1 Receive an i-mode mail

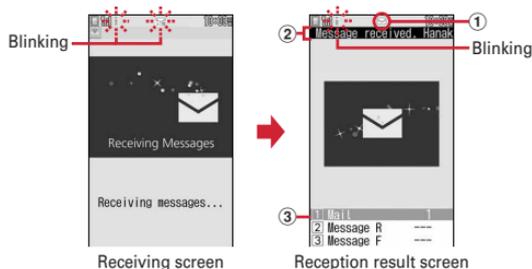
 and  blink and "Receiving messages..." appears.

Mail ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received i-mode mail is saved in a folder of Inbox.

-  : Cancel receiving

The mail may be received depending on the radio wave conditions.



### ① Icon

✉ : Unread i-mode mail exists    ✉✉ : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist

### ② Reception result ticker

### ③ Number of received i-mode mails

- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

#### When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Mail" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform i-mode inquiry.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- Up to 100 Kbytes of i-mode mail including its attachments can be received automatically. Attachments larger than 100 Kbytes can be downloaded manually from i-mode Center. →P131
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically. A large number of existing mails may be deleted depending on the size of the received mail.
- In the following cases, received i-mode mail is stored in the i-mode Center.
  - When the power is OFF or out of i-mode service area
  - During a videophone call
  - Accessing Data Center
  - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
  - During FirstPass center connection

- When reception has failed
- When receiving SMS
- When Receive option setting is "ON"
- During infrared communication/iC transmission
- When storage area is filled with mail unread or protected
- If there is not enough memory space available because memory is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of i-mode mail is stopped, ✉ and ✉✉ appear on the screen. To receive, you need to display the contents of unread mail, delete or unprotect unnecessary mail.
- If there are remaining i-mode mail in the i-mode Center, ✉ or ✉✉ appears. It may not appear even when there is i-mode mail. When exceeding the savable number in the i-mode Center, the icon changes to ✉✉ or ✉✉✉.

## ◆ Displaying newly-received i-mode mail

### 1 On the reception result screen, ①

- MessageR/F can be displayed by pressing ② or ③.

### 2 Select a folder ▶ Select a mail

- Playing Flash graphics with a melody or sound effect → P144
- Reading received mail details screen → P135

## Receive option

### Receiving mail selectively

You can check the subject of i-mode mail stored in the i-mode Center to select if you receive or delete i-mode mail without receiving it.

When mail arrives at i-mode Center, a message "You have mail at i-mode center." appears on the display.

- To use Receive option, Receive option setting must be set to "ON" in advance.

### 1 ✉ 8

You are connected to the i-mode Center and can view the list of i-mode mail stored.

- For details about i-mode Center operations, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## ✓INFORMATION

- When you press keys except , or , the message disappears.
- No messages appear in All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Lock on close or Lock when immobile.
- Perform Check new message to receive all the mail. Not to receive mail, uncheck "Mail" in the list of Check msg. option.
- Area Mail, SMS and MessageR/F are received automatically even when Receive option setting set to "ON".

## Check new message

### Checking new i-mode mail

You can make inquiry for any i-mode mail delivered while you were out of service area or the power was turned OFF.

When you set MessageR/F to be retrieved in Check msg. option, MessageR/F is retrieved at the same time.

- Under some radio wave conditions, you may not be able to perform Check new message.

#### 1

- While Check new message is being performed, the light blinks in yellow. When there are no newly received i-mode mail after checking, the light blinks in red. When Check new message fails, the light blinks in yellow.
- You can also operate by pressing for 1 second or more (for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal closed by default).

## Replying to i-mode mail

### Replying to i-mode mail

You can reply to the received i-mode mail or SMS.

- You may not reply to some received mails.
- You cannot reply to received SMS sent from "User unset", "Payphone" or "Not support".

#### 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to mail ▶ ▶ -

Reply format screen appears.

- For a mail sent to multiple addresses, the selection screen of the addresses to reply to appears.
- Reply format screen does not appear in the following cases. Go to Step 3.
  - When Activate quick reply is "OFF"
  - When no quick reply format is registered
  - When "Use Decome-Anime" is selected
  - When replying to SMS
- You can also create the reply mail by pressing in the received mail list.

#### 2

Using Quick reply : - .

Selected quick reply format is inserted.

#### 3 Edit the mail ▶

Editing mail → P120, 121, 123

The sender of the received mail is entered in the receiver field, the subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "REX:" (X is the number of replies except "1") prefixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail).

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set for the mail creation screen according to the information of Address A/B of received mail.
- The status icon of received mail changes from to , or from to .

## ✓INFORMATION

- You can set quote method and quick reply that is applied when you press on the received mail list or details screen. → P143
- Reply with quote is unavailable for Decome-Anime.
- Only message text, decoration and images (File restriction is not set) attached to the text are quoted by Reply with quote. When the total size of images in text exceeds 20 types and 90 Kbytes after quotation, a screen showing the deletion of excessive images appears.
- If a subject or reply mail exceeds the limited size, exceeded characters are deleted from the end of the subject, and a message indicating the deletion appears.

## Forwarding i-mode mail to other address

You can forward received i-mode mail or SMS to other addresses. i-mode mail is forwarded as i-mode mail and SMS is as SMS.

### 1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to mail ▶ 1 4

The subject of the received mail is entered in the subject field with "FWX:" (X is the number of forwarding except "1") prefixed at the beginning (only i-mode mail) and the text of the received mail is entered in the message text field.

- When receiving a mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set. Note that Receive option attachment files that have not yet been downloaded or are being downloaded is not set.

### 2 Edit the mail ▶

Editing mail → P120, 121

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set for the mail creation screen according to the information of Address A/B of received mail.
- The status icon of received mail changes from  to , or from  to .

### ✓INFORMATION

- When the link item that can activate the melody or i-appli attached in the received message text, it is not set to forwarded mail and is not quoted as characters.
- Files prohibited to be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarded mail. When forwarding the received mail from microSD card, all attached files are canceled.
- When forwarding Decome-Anime, the message text cannot be edited. And, Decome-Anime that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal is canceled, and the mail creation screen appears.
- When the images in received message text to be forwarded exceeds 90 Kbytes, a screen showing the deleting of excessive images appears.
- If a subject or forward mail exceeds the limited size, exceeded characters are deleted from the end of the subject, and a message indicating the deletion appears.

## Downloading Receive option attachment file

You can download the receive option attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, attached to the received i-mode mail.

- When the total size of text and attachment file exceeds 100 Kbytes, a part or all of attachment file is received as a Receive option attachment file.
- When there is an attachment file which is being or not yet downloaded, its storage period in the i-mode Center is displayed on the received message details screen.
- The maximum size of each file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.

### 1 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-mode mail with an attachment file

File icon, file name and file size  
Storage period in the i-mode Center



This is my new mobile phone e-mail address. I'll keep in touch. Good-bye.  
File icon, file name and file size  
Storage period in the i-mode Center  
Exp. Date: 2009/07/05  
- END

Icon definitions → P135 "Mail details screen"

### 2 Select a file name

- If you press  and select "No" while downloading, downloading is terminated and the downloaded part is saved.
- Operations after downloading are the same as those of an attachment file automatically received. → P132

### ✓INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough for the receive option attachment file to be downloaded, downloading is unavailable. Try to download again after deleting i-mode mail attachments already received, viewing unread mail, canceling protection, deleting unnecessary mail, etc.
- Read mails may be deleted when downloading a Receive option attachment file of a certain size.
- When downloading interrupts because of out of service area etc., resuming confirmation screen appears. When "No" is selected, the downloaded part is saved and  appears as attachment icon.

## Operating attachments

You can display/save the file attached to an i-mode mail.

- Melody or ToruCa (Details) that is larger than 100 Kbytes, ToruCa that is larger than 1 Kbytes, and Flash graphics that are larger than 500 Kbytes can be saved only in the microSD card, however, they cannot be displayed/played.
- Multiple phonebook entries, Schedule and Bookmark still attached to i-mode mail cannot be displayed. Check the contents after saving.

<Example> i-mode mail with an image attached



Icon definitions→P135 "Mail details screen"

### ◆ Displaying/Playing

- The files not compatible with this FOMA terminal cannot be displayed or played.

1 [Envelope icon] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Select the file name

- For an image, display/not display is switched.
- If there is detail information in ToruCa, Select "詳細 (Details)" button to download it from a site (ToruCa (Details)).

### ✓ INFORMATION

- An image that the width is larger than the display size is displayed being scaled down.
- Select the file name of the image to display the image attached to Deco-mail.
- Displaying/Playing is not available for some receiver's terminal or the received file.
- If the character in the text is mistakenly recognized as the melody data, move the cursor to the melody and press [NUM] [7] [5] to display it as characters. Press [Enter] on the first line of the data-displayed melody to redisplay the melody.
- The same operation is available from sent mail details screen.
- Playing i-motion attached to a mail on a PC requires i-motion compatible software. For details, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

### ◆ Saving

- Savable file types and saving destinations are as follows.

File type	Save to	
	FOMA terminal	microSD card
Image	Folder of My Picture	Any of "My Picture", "Other images" or "Deco-mail pict"
i-motion	"i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie	For no file restriction, "Movie" folder (for i-motion with voice only, "Other movie" folder) For file restriction, a folder selected in "Movie" folder
Melody	"i-mode" folder of Melody	"Melody" folder
ToruCa	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content	"ToruCa" folder
Phonebook entry	FOMA terminal phonebook	"Phonebook" folder
Schedule data	Scheduler	"Schedule" folder
Bookmark data	"Bookmark" folder in Bookmark	"Bookmark" folder
Various files*	—	"Other" folder

\* File not supported by this FOMA terminal. Only saving and transfer to microSD card are available. Note that the file name may be changed while saving.

<Example> Saving ToruCa

1 [Envelope icon] [1] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Move the cursor to a file name ▶ [NUM] [7] [3]

Saving an image in the message text : [NUM] [6] ▶ [1] - [3]

- To save 1 item, select an image. To save selected items, select them ▶ [Enter] ▶ "Yes". To save all items, "Yes" is required.

The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

Saving melody : Move the cursor to the melody ▶ [NUM] [7] [2]

The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

### 3 1 or 2

- For some ToruCa, only one of the saving destinations can be selected.

**Saving an image** : The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

**Saving i-motion** : The next procedure→P173 Step 3 in "Downloading i-motion/movie"

**Saving phonebook entries, schedule data and bookmark data** : 

- Up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters can be entered to edit the title of bookmark data.
- If you register the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.
- If pressing  when microSD card is installed, it is saved to microSD card.
- For multiple numbers of data, a saving destination selection screen appears.

**Saving other files** : "Yes"

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Images larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal. Also, images in some JPEG types cannot be saved.
- Some ToruCa can be saved only once.
- The file can be saved in the same way from sent mail details screen.

### ◆ Checking file name

1  1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Move the cursor to a file name ▶  7 2

**Checking the title of the attached melody** : Move the cursor to the melody ▶  7 5

**Checking the title of the attached melody in message text** : Move the cursor to the melody ▶  7 4

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation to check the file name from the sent mail details screen : Move the cursor to the file name→ 7 →"Check title" or "Display file name"

### ◆ Deleting

- An image or melody attached in the message text, or links to activate i-appli cannot be deleted.

1  1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an i-mode mail

2 Move the cursor to the file name ▶  7 ▶ 4 or 5 ▶ "Yes"

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in gray and cannot be selected.

**Deleting melodies or Receive option attachment files** : Move the cursor to file name ▶  7 ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ "Yes"

#### ✓INFORMATION

- File attached to a sent mail can be operated in the same way.

## Displaying mail in inbox/outbox/unsent mailbox

Received/Sent/Unsent i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F can be checked.

- Mails of "Welcomeドコモ動画 (DOCOMO moving picture)動画", "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Early warning "Area Mail" information)", "オススメ◇BEST5◇(Recommendation)" are saved in Inbox by default. Communication charges are free for receiving these mails. And, you cannot reply to these mails.

<Example> Displaying received mails

1  1

Displaying sent mail folder list :  5

Displaying unsent mail folder list :  4

2 Select a folder

The received mail list is displayed.

- Select a folder for Message i-appli to activate the corresponding i-appli. To display a mail without starting i-appli, move the cursor to the folder for Message i-appli and press  1.

### 3 Select a mail to display

- Display preview in the mail list and the mail details screen can be zoomed in/out at 15 levels (Quick zoom).

**ME** **NU** ▶ "Display" ▶ Press "Key function help" to display Key function help.  
- Key operation is available while displaying. Press **□** to return to the original screen.  
- Decome-Anime cannot be zoomed in/out.

### ◆ Folder list screen



Inbox folder list screen



Outbox folder list screen

#### ① Usage rate of the memory space

#### ② Page/Total pages

#### ③ Folder

##### Received mail

- ☐ (gray) : No mail ☐ (blue) : No unread mail
- ☐ : No unread mail or no mail (Secret attribute ON)
- ☐ : No unread mail or no mail (used in Message i-appli)
- ☐ : Unread mail exist ☐ : Unread mail exist (Secret attribute ON)
- ☐ : Unread mail exist (used in Message i-appli)

##### Sent/Unsent mails

- ☐ (gray) : No mail ☐ (blue) : Mail exist
- ☐ : Secret attribute ON ☐ : Message i-appli

### ◆ Mail list screen



Inbox message list screen



Outbox message list screen

#### ① Page/Total pages

#### ② Status icon

##### Received mail

- ☐ : Unread (unable to reply) ☐ : Read \*☐ : Read (unable to reply)
- ☐ : Read (replied) ☐ : Read (forwarded) ☐ : Protected
- \*☐ : Protected (unable to reply) ☐ : Protected (replied)
- ☐ : Protected (forwarded)

\* For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.

##### Sent/Unsent mails

- No icon : Unprotected
- ☐ : Protected ☐ : Auto-send set ☐ : Failed in Auto-send
- ☐ : Protected + Auto-send set ☐ : Protected + failed in Auto-send

#### ③ Type of attachment/SMS/Notification/Message i-appli/Area Mail

- ☐ : Image ☐ : i-motion 🎵 : Melody 📍 : ToruCa
- ☐ : Phonebook entry ☐ : Schedule 📌 : Bookmark
- ☐ : Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal
- ☐ : Multiple files are attached ☐ : SMS ☐ : SMS report request, Notify missed call
- ☐ : Mail to be used in Message i-appli ☐ : i-appli To exists
- ☐ : Area Mail ☐ : Area Mail to be used in Message i-appli
- ☐ : Invalid data attached

\* For sent/unsent mails, when icon is not displayed at the position of ②, the icon of ③ is displayed at the position of ②.

\* For received/sent mail lists, when List style of Message list is "Display 1 row", the following icon appears at the end of date and time.

: A file is attached : Area Mail

: Area Mail to be used in Message i-appli

#### ④ Sender/Receiver

When saved in phonebook, the name is displayed.

For Area Mail, "Area Mail" appears.

#### ⑤ Received/Sent/Saved date & time

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

#### ⑥ Subject

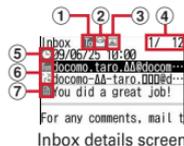
It may not be displayed depending on the i-mode mail. For Area Mail and SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed.

#### ⑦ Message text

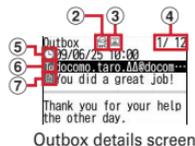
The message of the mail at the cursor position is displayed.

- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For i-mode mail or SMS sent/received/saved while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of date and time.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, appears at the top of the subject for i-mode mail for Address B/Number B, and at the top of the message text for SMS. For the mail list that was copied all or backed up from microSD card, is displayed at the end.

## ◆ Mail details screen



Inbox details screen



Outbox details screen

#### ① Address type icon

: Receiver and only for i-mode mail

For i-mode mail, you can check which address type is applied to you as a receiver.

#### ② Status/Notification icon

##### Received mail

: Read : Read (unable to reply) : Read (replied)

: Read (forwarded) : Protected : Protected (unable to reply)

: Protected (replied) : Protected (forwarded)

: SMS report request, : Notify missed call

\* For replied and forwarded, indication priority is given to the last operation icon.

##### Sent mail

No icon : Unprotected : Protected

#### ③ Type of attachment/SMS/Area Mail

: Image : i-motion : Melody : ToruCa

: Phonebook entry : Schedule : Bookmark

: Files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal

: Multiple attachments exist : SMS : i-appli (i-appli To)

: Area Mail : Area Mail to be used in Message i-appli

: Invalid data attached

\* Depending on the conditions of attachment files, following icons appear below the message text with the icon above.

: Copyrighted (Mail attachment or output from FOMA terminal unavailable)

/ : Data error/Data exceeded : Receive option attachment file not yet downloaded

: Downloading of the receive option attachment file being downloaded

: Downloading of the receive option attachment file unavailable

#### ④ Mail number/number of items

#### ⑤ Sent/Received date and time

#### ⑥ Address type of sender's/receiver's/broadcast address

: Sender : Sender (unable to reply) : Receiver

: Receiver (unable to reply) (only for i-mode mail)

#### ⑦ Subject

• For i-mode mail or SMS sent/received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of date and time.

• When 2in1 is in Dual mode, appears at the end of date and time for i-mode mail or SMS of Address B/Number B.

## Viewing Decome-Anime

If selecting Decome-Anime from received/sent mail list, Flash graphics of Decome-Anime text are played.

- While displaying Decome-Anime, the following operations are available.
  -  : Play from the beginning
  -  : Stop playing
  -  : Return to the mail details screen/Display Decome-Anime
- For Decome-Anime with sound effect, the sound effect set by Melody volume of Adjust volume is played.

## ✓INFORMATION

- Characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with " - " etc.
- When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.
- When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, "/" or "/" is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.
- When the file attached to the received mail is larger than the data size that can be received (the data size that can be attached→P126) or for some files, it is deleted at the i-mode Center and [添付ファイル削除 (attachment files deleted)] is displayed below the subject.
- Only one melody or link item to start i-appli attached in the text of message, is valid. If multiple melodies or link items are attached, those attached data become invalid and  or  is displayed on the received message list screen or details screen.
- Even when mail to which video data including Flash graphics is attached is displayed, the video data is not played.
- If the message text includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.
- "Received SMS" appears as a subject of received SMS, and the phone number or the name saved in a phonebook appears as a sender. For SMS sent, "Sent SMS" appears as a subject.

When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field.

"User unset" (Message was sent with setting not to notify the caller ID)

"Payphone" (Message was sent from a payphone)

"Not support" (Message was sent using a procedure that does not provide caller ID information)

- You can save mail using Data Security Service.→P113

## ◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Except for the folders stored by default and the folder for Message i-appli, up to 40 folders can be created in Inbox and up to 20 folders in Outbox/Unsent messages each.
- Folder settings of the folders stored by default and the folder for Message i-appli cannot be changed.
- Folders cannot be deleted in the following cases.
  - Folders stored by default
  - When protected mails are in the folder
  - When corresponding i-appli is in the folder for Message i-appli

### <Example> Creating folders

1  ▶  or  - 

2  

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a folder ▶   ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes"

**Changing folder setting :** Move the cursor to a folder ▶  

**Changing the order :** Move the cursor to a folder ▶  ▶  or 

3 **Set required items** ▶ 

**Folder name :** Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Secret attribute :** Set if you display a folder in Privacy mode (when Mail & Logs is "Hide secrecy fldrs").

## ◆ Checking number of mail items <Check No. of msgs>

The number of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages are checked for each folder.

1  ▶  or  -  ▶ **Move the cursor to a folder** ▶  

## ◆ Displaying mail address <Display address>

1  ▶  or  -  ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to a mail** ▶   

**Displaying a mail address of unsent mail :**   

## ✓INFORMATION

- You can check also by selecting a sender or an address to check on the sent/received mail details screen. Note that it cannot be checked from the unsent mail details screen.
- Operations from the Deco-mail template details screen : **4** **2**

## ◆ Moving mail to another folder <Move message>

- ▶ **1** or **4** - **5** ▶ Select a folder
- 4** **1** ▶ **1** - **3**
  - To move selected items, select them .
- ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"

## ◆ Searching for mail

You can search sent or received mail.

- ▶ **1** or **5**
  - 9** ▶ Set required items
    - Description of mail search is displayed on the first activation. Press to display the search screen.

**Subject/Body** : Up to 35 two-byte (70 one-byte) characters can be entered. To search with multiple key words, insert a blank space between words.
  - After selecting the item below Subject/Body field, select "All words" or "Include any words".

**Sender (Inbox)/Receiver (Outbox)** : Select from sent/received mail logs or phonebook.

**Date range** : Select date range from the calendar.  - Press to display search records (up to 5). After a record is selected, the conditions of record are entered and the search screen appears
- Mails that match the search criteria are listed.
    - During search : Cancel search
    - On the search result screen, press to search again.
    - From the search result screen, the same operations as on the normal mail list are available.

## ✓INFORMATION

- Operations from the received/sent mail list : **0**  
In this case, only the mails in the folder are searched.

## ◆ Sorting received/sent mail <Sort>

The sorting order of the mail list in Inbox and Outbox can be changed temporarily.

- ▶ **1** or **5** ▶ Select a folder
- 7** **4**

Sorting sent mails : **5**
- 3** **1** - **4**

## ✓INFORMATION

- For sorting "By sender" or "By address", even when the mail address is added to the phonebook, mails are not sorted by the name saved in the phonebook but in the mail address order.
- When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of mails, the sort result "By title" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- If SMS or Area Mail is included, as the beginnings of message are displayed in the list screen, the result of sorting by "By title" does not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.

## ◆ Changing read/unread state of received mail

- Read/Unread state of received mails protected cannot be changed.

- 1** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the mail ▶ **5** ▶ **1** - **6**
  - To change selected items, select them ▶ "Yes". To change all items "Yes" is required.

## ◆ Protecting/Unprotecting mail <Protect mail>

By protecting received/sent/unsent mails, they are protected from erroneous deletion or overwriting due to the lack of the memory space etc.

- Unread mail cannot be protected.
- Operation for protecting/unprotecting selected Area Mails is unavailable.

- ▶ **1** or **4** - **5** ▶ Select a folder

## 2 Move the cursor to a mail ▶ 3 ▶ 1 - 6

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ .
- The status icon changes to one of the followings.  
Inbox : (Read), (Unable to reply), (Replied), (Forwarded)  
Sent/Unsent mails :

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When "Protect all" is selected, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

## ◆ Deleting mail

### 1 ▶ 1 or 4 - 5

- To delete all items, 4 6 or 4 2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select "Yes".

### 2 Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to mail ▶ 2

### 3 1 - 7 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to mail.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

Deleting sent/unsent mail : 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

## Mail logs

### Using mail history

This function is used to record the destination, sender's address of sent/received mail as mail logs. You can use the log to create a mail or add to the phonebook.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded for each of sent mails and received mails. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When 2in1 is used, up to 30 items for Address A/Number A and up to 30 items for Address B/Number B are recorded in each of the sent message log and received message log. Only logs for Address A/Number A are displayed in A mode and only those for Address B/Number B are displayed in B mode. In Dual mode, all sent/received message logs are displayed.

- When multiple mails are sent to the same destination, only the latest item is recorded in Sent msg. log.
- Received mail logs of i-mode mails or SMS that cannot be replied to are not recorded.

## ◆ Displaying mail logs

### <Example> Displaying Sent msg logs



- Select the party to display details screen.



Sent msg. log list



Sent msg. log details

- Icon definitions
  - : i-mode mail logs
  - : SMS logs
  - : Sent/Received message logs for Address B/Number B (when 2in1 is in Dual mode)
  - : Sent/Received message log\* recorded while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00)

\* May not be displayed when sent/received date and time are not recorded etc.

### Displaying received message logs :

## ❖ Using mail history

### Creating an i-mode mail : Move the cursor to a log ▶

- For SMS log, the mail creation screen with a mail address set as destination appears if the mail address is saved in the phonebook, and the mail creation screen with a phone number set as destination appears if the mail address is not saved.

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set for the mail creation screen according to the information of Address A/B in logs.

**Creating SMS : Move the cursor to a log** ▶  (1 sec. or more)

- For i-mode mail log, SMS cannot be created unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook.

**Adding to phonebook :** Move the cursor to a log ▶  ▶ **4** or **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

Phonebook new entry → P70

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

**Making calls :**  or 

- For i-mode mail logs, a call cannot be made unless a phone number is saved with mail address in the phonebook.

**Displaying redial/received call logs :** 

## ◆ Switching mail logs details screens <View preference>

**1** On the mail logs details screen,  **9** ▶ **1** - **3**

## ◆ Deleting mail logs

**1** Display the mail logs list

**2** Move the cursor to the mail logs ▶  **6** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a mail log.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

## Useful functions of Mail

### ◆ Copying texts

You can copy characters in mail. Copied characters can be pasted in entry fields in the mail creation screen or phonebook data entry screen.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF and they can be pasted any number of times.

**1**  ▶ **1** or **5** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail ▶  **2**

## 2 Select a copy option

**Copy text :** Copy a specified range of characters.

Copying method → P313 Step 2 and the following steps in "Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters"

**Copy title :** Copy the title.

**Copy selected item :** Copy an item at the cursor position (mail address, phone number, etc.).

Pasting method → P313

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Operation from the details screen of Deco-mail template or the details screen of SMS in UIM :  → "Copy" or "Move/Copy"
- For SMS stored in UIM, you can copy the message body, address or sender.
- For Deco-mail, only text is copied and decorations are not copied.
- For Decome-Anime, the message text cannot be copied.
- Text in the Date To format can be saved as schedule after being pasted to Notepad.

## ◆ Making call from mail <Phone call>

If the sender of a received mail or mail address of sent/unsent mails are saved with phone number in phonebook, calls can be made (for SMS or mail that the address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", a call can be made without saving).

**1**  ▶ **1** or **4** - **5** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail ▶  **6**

- When the mail has multiple destinations, select a mail address of the party to be called.
- When operating from the received/sent mail details screen, move the cursor to the sender, receiver or phone number and press  **8**.

**2** Set a condition for dialing ▶ 

Making a call under set conditions → P57

## ◆ Adding phone number, mail address and URL

You can add the phone number, mail address and URL that you can move the cursor to the phonebook entry from mail. URL can also be registered as bookmark.

<Example> Adding a phone number

- 1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail
- 2 Move the cursor to a phone number ▶ [ME] [NUM] [4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

Phonebook new entry → P70

• Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

**Adding URL to phonebook :** Move the cursor to a URL ▶ [ME] [NUM] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

Phonebook new entry → P70

• Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

**Registering URL in bookmark :** Move the cursor to a URL ▶ [NUM] [4] [3]  
The next procedure → P160 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Operation from Message R/F details screen : [NUM] [3] → [1] - [3]
- You can operate also from SMS details screen of UIM.
- Operations from the mail details screen of microSD card : [ME] [4]
- Registering from Deco-mail may be unavailable.
- When multiple addresses are listed in the mail text, you may not be able to add them.

## Mail settings

### Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal

#### ◆ Sorting mail automatically <Sort method>

You can set sort methods and automatically sort received/sent mail to specified folders.

- Up to 30 methods for received/sent mail can be registered.
- When 2in1 is used, up to 30 sort methods common to each mode can be registered for each of received/sent mail. In Dual mode, in addition to the common sort method, up to 30 methods of Address A/B can be registered for each of received/sent mail. Note that all mails that match the registered sort methods are sorted regardless of a mode of 2in1.
- Ordinary mails can also be sorted to the folder for Message i-αplli, but message i-αplli sorting method precedes.
- Sent/Received mails are not sorted.

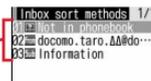
#### ◆ Setting whether to sort automatically

- 1 [Envelope] [9] [2] ▶ [1] ▶ Set required items ▶ [Envelope]

#### ◆ Setting sort methods

- 1 [Envelope] [9] [2] ▶ [2] or [3]

Registered sort methods  
(in the order of priority)



• Icon definitions :

- [To] : Mail address (Outbox sorting)
- [From] : Mail address (Inbox sorting)
- [Sub] : Subject [NA] : Ph.book number [G] : Ph.book group
- [?] : Not in phonebook [ ] : No method
- With 2in1 in Dual mode, the following icons appear.
  - [A] : Address A [B] : Address B [AB] : Common

#### 2 [Envelope] ▶ Set a sort method

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting a setting appears.

**Specifying a mail address :** [1] ▶ [1] - [4]

Sort mails from specified mail addresses. The mail address specifies the entire address including the character succeeding symbol @.

- For [1] - [3], operate for selecting and for [4], enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters) ▶ [Envelope].
- If you add and specify the same mail address in FOMA terminal and UIM phonebooks, it is sorted as the mail address of FOMA terminal phonebook.
- If the specified mail address is i-mode terminal, it is sorted even if it is specified with the domain (@docomo.ne.jp) omitted. However, if the address is "Phone number @docomo.ne.jp", add only the mobile phone number excluding the domain (@docomo.ne.jp).
- When specifying phone numbers, you can sort SMS as well.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a receiver whose mode in Ph.book 2in1 setting is different from the mode of Address A/B to set is specified, a confirmation screen for setting appears.

**Specifying a subject :**  ▶ Enter the subject (up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

Mail containing the specified characters is sorted.

- You cannot sort SMS by subject.
- When 2in1 is used, titles of Area Mail are not sorted according to modes.

**Specifying phonebook entry (phonebook number) :**  ▶ Enter the phonebook number ▶  ▶ 

Sort mail by mail address or phone number of the specified phonebook number in FOMA terminal phonebook. i-mode mail are sorted by checking mail address with that in the phonebook as sort method. SMS are sorted by checking phone numbers with that in the phonebook.

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, if a receiver whose mode in Ph.book 2in1 setting is different from the mode of Address A/B to set is specified, a confirmation screen for setting appears.

**Specifying phonebook entry (phonebook group) :**  ▶  or  ▶ Select a group

Sort mail by mail address or phone number saved in the group of the phonebook.

**Specifying Not in phonebook :** 

Sort mail from mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook.

**Specifying No method :** 

Sort all mail without a sort method set.

### 3 Select the folder to sort

- When the folder for Message i-appli is selected, a screen appears notifying the mail is used for i-appli.

### 4 Select a priority

A new method is added to the selected row.

- To add the first method, select "Add last".
- Methods are sorted sequentially from the one with the highest priority level.
- When registered methods are changed, "Move to last" is displayed instead of "Add last".
- When Auto-sort ON/OFF is "OFF", a confirmation screen for setting to "ON" appears.

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- If multiple conditions are set, judgment is made from the condition with higher priority and sorted to the folder that matched for the condition first. A mail that was not matched for any condition is saved in the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

## ❖ Setting sort methods from sent/received mails

1  ▶  or  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a mail ▶    ▶  or  ▶ Check the saved contents ▶ 

The next procedure→P141 Step 3 and the following steps in "Setting sort methods"

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting a setting appears. Also, to use a mail address for a sort method, when a mail address that is set in Ph.book 2in1 setting to a different mode from Address A/B is specified, a confirmation screen for setting appears.

## ❖ Checking, changing or deleting sorting methods

<Example> Checking

1    ▶  or 

### 2 Select sorting rule

**Changing sort methods :**

- ① Move the cursor to a sort method ▶   ▶ Set a sort method  
Operations for setting sort method→P140 Step 2-4 in "Setting sort methods"
- ② "Yes"

**Changing sort priority :** Move the cursor to the sort method ▶  

▶ Select the position to move to

- To move to the end of the list, select "Move to last".

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a sort method ▶  ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a sort method.

- To delete all items, authentication is required.

## ❖ Setting mail signatures

- When 2in1 is used, signatures can be registered for each mode.

## ◆ Setting whether to insert signature automatically

You can set if you automatically insert the signature when composing, replying or forwarding mail.

1 **9** **3** **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

- When 2in1 is used and "Auto add" is set, a signature is inserted according to a mode in A/B mode or according to a sender's address in Dual mode. If a sender's address is not specified or to create SMS, a signature for Address A is inserted.

## ◆ Registering signature

1 **9** **3** **2** ▶ ▶ Enter a signature (up to 5,000 two-byte (10,000 one-byte) characters) ▶

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a confirmation screen for selecting a setting appears.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- The background color set for the signature is not applied when decorations and/or characters is already entered in the message text or when quoting the received mail to reply to or forward a mail.
- Signature is also counted as the number of characters of message text.
- Signature cannot be inserted in Decome-Anime.
- Signature cannot be inserted to SMS in the following cases.
  - When Font type is "English"
  - When a signature has been decorated
  - When the text exceeds 70 characters by inserting signature

## ◆ Setting Check new message

1 **9** **7** ▶ Select the items to check ▶

- You cannot save unless you select any of the items.

## ◆ Setting to select and receive only necessary mail <Receive option>

1 **9** **6** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

- When setting to "ON", a screen indicating mail cannot be automatically received appears.

## ◆ Adding mail group

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, i-mode mail can be sent to multiple receivers by a simple operation.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be added. Up to 5 mail addresses can be added for 1 mail group.

1 **9** **5**

2

**Creating a mail** : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set for the mail creation screen according to the phonebook 2in1 setting of the last receiver's address when the address is saved in the phonebook, or it is not set when the address is not saved.

**Editing a mail group name** : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ **2**

**Copying a mail group** : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ **3**

**Deleting a mail group** : Move the cursor to a mail group ▶ **4** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to mail group.
- Authentication is required for deleting all items.

**Operating mail address registered in a mail group** : Select a mail group ▶ Go to Step 5

3 Enter the mail group name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶

- Press to add other mail group continuously.

4 Select a mail group for registering a mail address

5 ▶ Set required items

**Address Type** : Set "TO", "CC" or "BCC".

**Address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- When entering from mail logs or phonebook, press , and press **1** - **3**, and select a destination.

**Editing a registered mail address :** Move the cursor to the mail address (or name) ►  1 ► Edit

**Deleting a registered mail address :** Move the cursor to a mail address (or name) ►  2 ► "Yes" ► Go to Step 7

**Displaying details of registered mail address :**  3 ► When finishing checking, 

6 

- To add another mail address, repeat the operation from Step 5.

7 

### ◆ Setting a quoting method in reply <Reply format>

You can set whether to quote the message text of the received mail when you create the reply mail by pressing  on the list screen or details screen of received mail/SMS. And, you can set the type of quote characters added to the beginning of the quoted message.

1  9 4 1 ► Set required items ► 

**Quote :** Set if you quote message when replying to a mail.

**Quote characters :** Up to 1 two-byte (2 one-byte) characters can be entered.

- The quote characters are included in the total character count for the body of the message.
- When a character that cannot be sent has been set, the default quote character is used.

### ◆ Setting quick reply

You can set if you use Quick reply to reply to i-mode mail.

1  9 4 2 ► 1 or 2

### ◆ Registering quick reply format

- Up to 5 items can be registered.

1  9 4 3

2 Select a format ► Enter a text (Up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters) ►  ► "Yes"

**Viewing the message text :** Move the cursor to the message text ► 

**Deleting the message text :** Move the cursor to the message text ►  1 ► "Yes"

**Resetting all formats :**  2 ► Authenticate ► "Yes"

**Adding new format :** "<New reply format>" ► Enter a text ► 

### ◆ Setting display style of mail list

You can set the style to display a list of Inbox/Outbox mails.

1  9 6 5 ► Set required items ► 

**List style :** Set display style.

**Display preview :** Set if you display message under the mail list.

**Auto status change :** When all texts are displayed under the received mail list, set if you change them to read.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- The list display style of Unsent messages and SMS of UIM are 2 rows regardless of this setting and Display preview is not displayed.
- For the display style of mail search result screen, Display preview is not displayed regardless of this setting.
- When setting Auto status change to "ON", selecting "Unread item only" from By display type and displaying the received mail list, the mail is not set to Read even if all the message text is displayed under the received mail list.

### ◆ Setting receiving method of attachments <Incoming msg. attach>

You can set by file types in advance if you receive files attached to i-mode mail at once when receiving i-mode mail.

- Files set not to be received automatically are the received as receive option attachment files. → P131
- Images or melodies attached to message text are automatically received regardless of this setting.

1  9 6 3 ► Select a file item to receive ► 

- "Tool data" indicates the data of phonebook, bookmark and schedule.
- "Other" indicates files that cannot be displayed on this FOMA terminal.

## ◆ Setting playing method of melodies or sound effects <Attachment auto-play>

You can set whether to play melody attached to message text or sound effect of Flash graphics automatically when displaying i-mode mail or MessageR/F.

1 [Envelope] [9] [6] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

### ✓INFORMATION

- When a received/sent mail, mail template or MessageR/F with an attached melody is displayed with "Auto play" set, the melody is played once with the volume set in Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. When multiple melodies are attached, they are played in turn. Press [Stop] to stop.
- When "Auto play" is set, if displaying Decome-Anime with sound effect, it is played at the volume set by Melody effect sound of Adjust volume. Press [Stop] to stop. If a melody is attached to the mail, only the melody is played.  
If displaying the preview screen for creating Decome-Anime with sound effect, the retry screen of sent/received Decome-Anime or Decome-Anime template details screen, sound effect is played regardless of this setting.
- When MessageR/F is automatically displayed, the melody is not automatically played even with "Auto play" set.

## ◆ Displaying mail by type <Display by type>

You can display only the mails of specified type in the received and sent mail lists temporarily. When the list display is closed, sorting is restored to "Display all items".

- You cannot select the display type for unsent messages and SMS of UIM.

1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ [MENU] [7] [2] ▶ [1] - [4]

- For sent mail, you can select only "Display all items" and "Protected item only".
- For "Read item", protected received mails are not displayed.

## ◆ Changing font size

You can select a font size from 5 types to display mails.

- The font size for Deco-mail pictogram (Pictogram D) is not changed.

1 [Envelope] ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail ▶ [MENU] [3] [1] ▶ [1] - [5]

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation from the details screen of Deco-mail template or SMS in UIM : [MENU] → "Display" → "Font size"
- Operation from the details screen of received/sent/unsent mail in microSD card : [MENU] [3]
- The changed font size remains until the setting is changed again.
- This setting also applies to Mail view in Font size.
- Font size for creating or editing a mail can be changed by Font size. → P95

## ◆ Setting mail reception notification for terminal in operation <Display priority>

You can set if you display a receiving screen, reception result screen or a screen during Auto-send by priority when i-mode mail, SMS or MessageR/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

1 [Envelope] [9] [6] [1] ▶ [1] - [3]

**Continue operation** : Display none of the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

**Show message** : Display the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen.

**Open:Cont/Close:Show** : Operations precedes when FOMA terminal is opened, and messages precedes when it is closed.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even if "Continue operation" is set, "Show message" takes precedence while the menu is displayed.
- Even if "Show message" is set, during a voice call or while camera is activated, streaming type i-motion is playing, i-appli is running, alarm is sounding, Area Mail is received, etc., "Continue operation" takes precedence.

## When MessageR/F is received

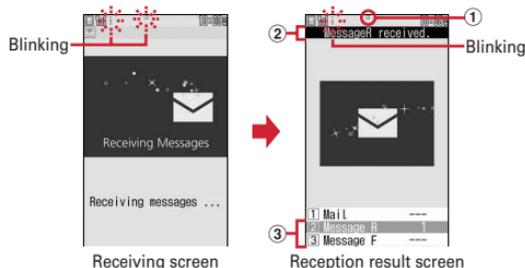
### Receive MessageR/F

 and  (blue) or  (green) blink and "Receiving messages..." appears. MessageR/F ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received MessageR is saved in "MessageR" folder. The received MessageF is saved in "MessageF" folder.

-  : Cancel receiving

May be received depending on the reception conditions.



#### ① Icon

 (blue) : Unread MessageR exist  (green) : Unread MessageF exist

#### ② Reception result ticker

#### ③ The number of received MessageR/F

- The contents of unread MessageR/F are displayed after the reception result screen appears, and if you do not press any key for about 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears.

#### When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Message R" or "Message F" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform Check new message.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When MessageR/F is received, the MessageR/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- In the following cases, received MessageR/F is stored in the i-mode Center.
  - When the power is OFF or out of i-mode service area
  - During a videophone call
  - Accessing Data Center
  - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
  - During FirstPass center connection
  - When reception has failed
  - When receiving SMS
  - Infrared communication/iC transmission
- When the memory space is filled with MessageR/F unread or protected
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, a new MessageR/F overwrites the chronologically oldest message except for unprotected unread messages.
- If there is not enough memory space available because the memory space is filled with unread and protected MessageR/F, reception of MessageR/F is stopped.  (red) or  (red) appears on the screen. To receive, displaying the contents of unread MessageR/F, deleting unnecessary MessageR/F or unprotecting is required.
- If there are remaining MessageR/F in the i-mode Center,  or  appears. It may not appear even when there are MessageR/F. When the i-mode Center reaches the maximum number of mail items that can be stored, the icon changes to  or .

### ◆ Displaying new MessageR/F

#### 1 On the reception result screen, or

- Press  to display i-mode mail.

#### 2 Select MessageR/F

Playing when a melody is attached→P144  
 Displaying MessageR/F→P146

## ◆ Displaying MessageR/F automatically <Auto-display>

You can set whether to automatically display the content of automatically received Message R/F (for approximately 15 seconds).

- When this option is set to automatically display, the content appears in the following timing.
  - In stand-by, while the menu is displayed : When returning to the operation before the message was received, from the reception result screen
  - During a voice call (except when using Multiaccess/Multitask) : After the call ends

1 [9] [6] [6] ▶ [1] - [5]

### ✓ INFORMATION

- If no key operations are made during automatic display, MessageR/F is saved under unread state.

## MessageR / MessageF

### Displaying MessageR/F stored in the FOMA terminal

1 [9] [1] ▶ "MessageR" or "MessageF"

2 Select MessageR/F to display

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to MessageR/F ▶ [9] [1] ▶ [1] - [4] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to MessageR/F.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [9]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

**Protecting/Unprotecting :** Move the cursor to MessageR/F ▶ [9] [2] ▶ [1] - [5]

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ [9].
- The status icon of protected/unprotected Message R/F changes to [unread] or [read].

**Displaying by type <Display by type> :** [9] [3] ▶ [1] - [4]

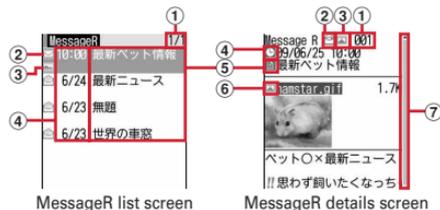
- Protected MessageR/F is not displayed when selecting "Display read only".

**Rearranging <Sort> :** [9] [4] ▶ [1] - [3]

- When a title contains one- and two-byte characters, alphabetic characters, kanji and those displayed with URLs, the sort result "By title" may not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.

**Changing font size :** Select MessageR/F ▶ [9] [6] ▶ [1] - [5]

## ◆ MessageR/F list/details screen



① Page/Total pages (list screen), MessageR/F No. (details screen)

② Status icon

List screen

[unread] : Unread [read] : Read [protected] : Protected

Details screen

[unread] : Read [protected] : Protected

③ Types of attachment

List screen

[image] : Image [melody] : Melody [toruca] : ToruCa [files] : Multiple files are attached

Details screen

[image] : Image [melody] : Melody [toruca] : ToruCa [files] : Multiple files are attached

④ Reception date and time

- For list screen, the time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on the other day.

⑤ Title

⑥ Types of attachment (details)

[image] : Image [image] : Image (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)

[x] : Image (Data error) [melody] : Melody

[melody] : Melody (Cannot be attached to mail nor output from FOMA terminal)

[melody] : Melody (Data error) [toruca] : ToruCa [toruca] : ToruCa (Data error)

⑦ Scroll bar

- If pressing [scroll] for 1 second or more when all the lines are not displayed, the current position relative to the whole display appears temporarily. If pressing [scroll] on MessageR/F details screen, you can switch display/hide.

## ◆ Displaying/Saving attachment

<Example> Saving

### 1 Display the list of MessageR/F

Icon definitions→P146 "MessageR/F list/details screen"

### 2 Select MessageR/F with an attached file

### 3 Move the cursor to a file name ▶ 5 2

The next procedure for image→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

The next procedure for melody→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

- For ToruCa, the selection screen of the saving destination appears. The save destination becomes "ToruCa" of ToruCa when  1 is pressed and "ToruCa" of microSD card when  2 is pressed. Only one of the destinations above is enabled for some ToruCa.

- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes can be saved only to microSD card.

**Displaying/Playing : Select a file name**

- For an image, the image is displayed/hidden.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbytes cannot be displayed.

**Displaying title : Move the cursor to a file ▶   5  3**

- An attached file of image cannot be operated.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Saving image in the message text or background image :  4 →  1 or  2 → Select the image to save
- For some ToruCa, saving is enabled only once.

## Early warning "Area Mail"

This is a service that you can receive emergency earthquake flash report etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency.

- Area Mail can be received even if you do not subscribe to i-mode.
- Area Mail that could not be received cannot be received later.

- It cannot be received in the following cases.
  - When the power is OFF or out of service area
  - During a voice/videophone call
  - In Omakase Lock or Self mode
  - During accessing Data Center
  - In data transfer mode such as Infrared communication/iC communication/using microSD, etc.
  - In International Roaming
  - While updating software
- It may not be received in the following cases.
  - In i-mode communication
  - Packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC
  - Updating pattern definitions
- While streaming type i-motion is played, the reception completion screen or contents display screen does not appear even after the reception.

## Receive Area Mail

### When receiving early warning "Area Mail"

#### ◆ When receiving Area Mail of Earthquake Early Warning

 turns on, the light blinks in red, the dedicated buzzer alarm sound is emitted, the vibrator operates and the contents display screen appears.

- The contents display screen is cleared by pressing any of , , .
- The volume of the buzzer alarm sound is set to "Level 6" in Mail/Msg. alert vol. It cannot be changed.
- The vibrator operates with the operating pattern of "Sync melody".
- The alarm sounds even in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode) by default. You can also set the alarm not to sound according to modes.→P148

#### ◆ When receiving Area Mail except Earthquake Early Warning

 turns on, the light blinks in red, the dedicated Area Mail ring alert sounds, the reception completion screen or contents display screen appears.

- It depends on the setting of the distributor which of the distribution completion screen or the contents display screen appears when receiving an Area Mail.

- The content display screen is cleared by pressing any of , , , and the reception completion screen is cleared by pressing any keys or performing no operation for approximately 15 seconds.
- The volume of the Area Mail ring tone operates according to Mail/Msg. alert vol. of Adjust volume, the ring time operates according to Ring time (sec) of Mail ring alert of Mail/Msg. ring alert of Ring alerts & Sounds, and the vibrator operates according to Mail vibrate alert of Mail/Msg. vibrate alert of Vibrate alert/effect. Note that the vibrator operates with the operating pattern of "Sync melody".
- The alarm sounds even in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode) by default. You can also set the alarm not to sound according to modes. →P148

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Area Mail is saved in the folder of Inbox. Regardless of the memory space of whole Inbox, when exceeding the savable number of Area Mail, the unprotected received Area Mail is overwritten chronologically.

### Early warning "Area Mail" setting

## Setting early warning "Area Mail"

### ◆ Setting if you use Area Mail <Receive setting>

- 1     ▶ Check "Notice" ▶ Select "Use Early warning "Area Mail" function?" field ▶  or  ▶ 

### ◆ Setting Beep time

- 1     ▶ Enter the time (1-30 seconds) ▶ 

### ◆ Setting alert method for Silent mode/Public mode <Manner/Public mode setting>

You can set the alert method when receiving Area Mail in Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode).

- 1     ▶  or 

### ◆ Checking ring tone

You can check dedicated buzzer alarm and Area Mail ring tone.

- 1     ▶  or 

### ◆ Adding/Deleting Area Mail to use <Receive entry>

- Up to 20 items can be added.
- Receive entry is not required for receiving emergency information (emergency earthquake flash report, disaster/evacuation information) only.

<Example> Save

- 1     

- 2  ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Area Mail name** : Enter any name in up to 15 two-byte (30 one-byte) characters.

**Message ID** : Enter ID of 4 digits provided by the service provider.

**Editing** : Select Area Mail name ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to an Area Mail name ▶   ▶ Authenticate

- "緊急地震情報 (Emergency earthquake flash report)" and "災害・避難情報 (Disaster/evacuation information)" saved by default cannot be edited or deleted.

### Composing and sending SMS

## Composing and sending SMS

You can send a character message to a mobile phone number as the destination.

- SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas telecommunications carriers except DOCOMO. For countries and overseas telecommunications carriers available, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.
- Reading received/sent/unsent SMS list/details screen →P134

<Example> Creating/Sending by entering address directly

- 1     ▶ Select the receiver field

## 2 "Direct input" ▶ Enter a phone number (up to 20 one-byte numeric characters)

- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DOCOMO, you can send SMS after entering 21 characters maximum including "+".
- For a destination using an overseas service provider except DOCOMO, enter "+" (Press  for 1 sec. or more), "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order or enter "010", "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order (Also enter "+" or "010" when replying to SMS from an overseas sender). Omit "0", if any, at the beginning of the mobile phone number.

**Entering from mail logs :** Select "Sent msg log" or "Received msg log" ▶ Select a log

**Entering by searching phonebook :** "View phonebook" ▶ Search phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry to send mail

## 3 Select the message text field ▶ Enter the message text

- The number of characters that can be entered differs depending on Font type in SMS settings.

**Inserting Signature :** Select the message text field ▶  4 

## 4

- To save SMS without sending it, if pressing  2, it is saved in "Unsent" folder and the confirmation screen for pasting Shortcut icon appears.

### ✓INFORMATION -----

- When sending is completed correctly, the SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox. When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unprotected sent mails are overwritten chronologically.
- Depending on the radio wave conditions, font type or the terminal of the other party, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Line feeds in message text may be replaced with spaces depending on the other party's terminal.
- When Font type is Japanese, if you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly. If you use pictograms,  is replaced with , and each of pictograms except  is replaced with a space.

- When Font type is English and symbols ( | ^ { } [ ] ~ ¥ ) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. Moreover, symbol ( ` ) can be entered and sent, but it is replaced with a space on the receiver's terminal.
- i-mode mail that failed to be sent is saved in "Unsent" folder.
- If setting SMS report request to "Request" and send SMS, you receive SMS report that notifies you that the other FOMA terminal received SMS. SMS report request is saved in the folder of Inbox.
- Even if Activate/Deactivate of caller ID notification is "Not notify", caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- When the memory space of Unsent messages is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, SMS cannot be created. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from the folder of Unsent messages.
- When using 2in1, you cannot send SMS for Number B.

## ❖Editing/Sending sent or saved SMS

Sent SMS and SMS saved before sending or failed to send can be edited or sent. → P128

## Receive SMS

### When SMS is received

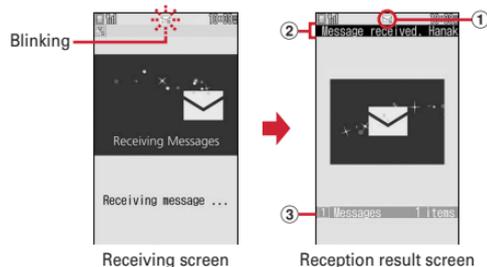
#### 1 Receive SMS

 blinks and "Receiving message..." appears.

Mail ring alert sounds, the light turns on or blinks, and the reception result screen appears.

The received SMS is saved in a folder of Inbox.

- While receiving SMS,  : Cancel receiving  
May be received depending on the reception conditions.



### ① Icon

: Unread SMS exists : Unread i-mode mail and SMS exist

### ② Reception result ticker

### ③ Number of received SMS

- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen appears, the previous screen automatically reappears.

**Reading received SMS immediately** : On the reception result screen,

**1** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select SMS

- You can reply to and/or forward received SMS. →P130

### When reception has failed

"X" appears on the right side of "Messages" on the reception result screen. To receive again, perform check new SMS.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When multiple mail and/or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the terminal operates depending on the conditions set for the mail or MessageR/F received last.
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, the unread or unprotected received mails are overwritten chronologically.
- While receiving i-mode mail, MessageR/F or Area Mail, automatic reception of SMS is unavailable. Perform Check new SMS.
- When SMS is received from parties of overseas service providers except DOCOMO, "+" is prefixed to the mail address of the sender. When the phone number with prefix "+" is saved in phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook entry is displayed.
- When Message scan of Set scan is "Valid", if you receive and try to display SMS with a phone number or URL, a warning message screen appears.

- If there is not enough memory space available because it is filled with unread and protected mails, reception of SMS is stopped and or appears on the screen. To receive, you need to display the contents of unread mail, delete or unprotect unnecessary mail.
- If received SMS specified to save to UIM, it is saved directly to UIM. Note that, when the number of SMS saved in UIM has reached 20 items, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary SMS and perform Check new SMS.

## Check new SMS

### Checking for SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while you were out of service area, the power was turned OFF or other cases.

- If it takes a time to receive or depending on the radio wave conditions, you may not be able to perform Check new SMS from SMS Center.



## SMS settings

### Setting SMS

It is usually not necessary to change SMS Center, Address and Type of Number settings.



**Font type** : Select the font type of the message to send. When "Japanese" is set, up to 70 characters can be entered. When "English" is set, up to 160 one-byte alphanumeric characters (except `、`、` `) can be entered.

**SMS report request** : Select if you request SMS report request of SMS to send.

**Keep in SMS center** : Select the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS center in cases the receiver cannot receive the SMS.

- When "0 day" is set, SMS is deleted from SMS center after resending of it is repeated for a certain period of time.

**SMS Center** : Select when using SMS services except DOCOMO.

- When setting to "Others", enter a mail address of up to 20 one-byte characters in Address field.

**Type of Number** : Select from "International" or "Unknown".

- If selecting "Others" in SMS Center field and setting numbers for Address field, Type of Number needs to be set to "Unknown".

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Operations from SMS creation screen :   

In this case, only SMS report request and Keep in SMS center can be set for SMS that is being created.

- Settings of Font type, Keep in SMS center, SMS Center and Type of Number are saved in UIM.

### SMS saved to UIM

## Saving SMS at UIM (FOMA card)

### ◆ Moving/Copying SMS to UIM

- Unsent SMS cannot be saved in UIM.
- When moving or copying sent SMS, if there are corresponding SMS report requests, they are moved or copied together.
- When protected SMS is moved/copied to UIM, its protection is canceled in the moving/copying destination.

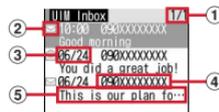
#### 1 or ▶ Select a folder

#### 2 Move the cursor to SMS ▶ or or or ▶ "Yes"

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .

### ◆ Displaying SMS of UIM

#### 1 ▶ or



#### 1 Page/Total pages

#### 2 Status icon

 : Unread (able to reply)  : Unread (unable to reply)  : Read (able to reply)

 : Read (unable to reply)  : SMS report request, Notify missed call

 : SMS error

#### 3 Sent/Received date and time

The time is displayed on the reception day and the date is displayed on other than the reception day.

Note that except for sent SMS with SMS report request set, the sent date and time are deleted.

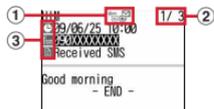
#### 4 Sender/Receiver

When saved in phonebook, the name is displayed.

#### 5 Top of the message

- Read/Unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS of UIM was displayed. The state of read/unread before moving or copying is also carried over.
- For SMS sent from an overseas sender, the sender address is preceded by "+".
- For SMS which contains error,  or  appears. For SMS with  displayed, the reception date/time appears as "--/--" (only on the day of reception), and the sender or the top of the message is not displayed. SMS that  is displayed is SMS that detail cannot be displayed.
- When SMS is received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00),  may appear at the end of the receiving date and time.

## 2 Select SMS to display



### ① Icon

: Received (able to reply)  
 : Received (unable to reply)  
 : Sent  
 : SMS report request, Notify missed call  
 : SMS of UIM

### ② Mail No./No. of msgs

### ③ Icon

: Date and time  
 : Receiver  
 : Sender  
 : Sender (unable to reply)  
 : Subject "Received SMS", "Sent SMS"

- When sent SMS is moved or copied to UIM, the sent date and time are deleted from sent SMS of UIM. Note that the sent date and time are displayed in sent SMS with SMS report request set.
- For SMS which contains error, appears instead of and except does not appear.
- When SMS is received while staying overseas (except GMT+09:00), may appear at the end of the receiving date and time.

### Moving/Copying SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal :

#### ① Move the cursor to SMS ▶ (3) ▶ (1)-(4)

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .

#### ② ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"

- When moving or copying sent SMS with SMS report request, the corresponding SMS report request is moved or copied to the folder of Inbox together.

#### Deleting SMS in UIM : Move the cursor to SMS ▶ (2) ▶ (1)-(4) ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to SMS.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items or all SMS report request, authentication is required.
- When deleting sent SMS, the corresponding SMS report request of UIM is deleted together.

### ✓INFORMATION

- From SMS of UIM, you can also reply to or forward, resend, change the font size, save in the phonebook, etc. The operation is the same as that of received/sent SMS.
- When performing reply/forward, resend, etc. from SMS of UIM, sent SMS is saved in a folder of Outbox of FOMA terminal.
- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, SMS cannot be moved or copied. Unprotected i-mode mail and/or SMS, if any, are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary i-mode mail and/or SMS from folders of Inbox/Outbox.

# i-mode/Full Browser

i-mode .....	154
<b>Displaying site/website</b>	
Displaying a site .....	<b>i-mode</b> 154
Displaying web pages designed for PC .....	156
Switching i-mode/Full Browser .....	156
Displaying by using log .....	156
Viewing and operating screen .....	157
Saving web pages or sites for quick access .....	<b>Bookmark</b> 160
Saving sites or websites contents .....	<b>Screen memo</b> 162
Using RSS reader .....	162
<b>Using i-mode/Full Browser</b>	
Downloading data (file) .....	163
Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion .....	164
Convenient Functions .....	165
<b>Making i-mode Browser/Full Browser Settings</b>	
Making i-mode Browser/Full Browser Settings .....	<b>i-mode settings</b> 165
Operating certificate .....	168

## i-mode

With i-mode, you can use online services such as site connection, Internet connection or i-mode mail by the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is a charged service requiring subscription.
- For details of i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### Before using i-mode

- The contents of sites and Internet websites are generally protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data imported to your i-mode terminal from a site or website cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- When installing a UIM except yours or you turn ON FOMA terminal without UIM, still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received by mail (still image, moving picture, melody, etc.), screen memos and MessageR/F for some models cannot be displayed or played.
- When data with UIM operation restriction is set for the stand-by display or ring alert, replacing UIM with another one or turning the power ON with no UIM installed changes the settings back to the default.

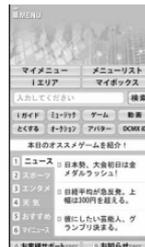
## i-mode

### Displaying a site

You can connect to i-mode to view various sites.



During i-mode communication,  blinks at the top of the display.



-  while starting communication : Stop connecting
-  or  while downloading a page : Stop downloading a page.
- Items with numbers such as  or  may be selected by pressing the keypads corresponding to the item (direct key function).

### 2 Select an item to view

Display the desired pages using the same procedure.

- For some selected items, a page is displayed with a new tab. →P157

### 3 When quitting viewing a site, "Yes"

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When i-mode button of Common Setting in i-mode settings is set to "Disp. i-mode menu", you can connect by pressing  (1). →P167
- When the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM is required from the website, a confirmation screen for sending appears. Select "Yes" to send the serial number. IP (Information Provider) uses the sent serial number for identifying you to provide you with customized information or judging whether the contents provided by IP are available on your mobile phone.  
Since the serial number is sent to the IP (Information Provider) via Internet, there is a possibility that it could be captured during transmission by third parties. This operation causes none of your phone number, address, age or gender to be informed to the IP (Information Provider).
- When information about the music played by your mobile phone is required from the website, a confirmation screen for sending music information appears. When "Yes" is selected, the information (title, artist name, play date/time) of the music played by your mobile phone is sent. The music information to be sent is used by the IP (Information Provider) to provide you with customized information etc.

## ◆ Changing i-mode password <Change i-mode password>

i-mode password is required to save to/delete My Menu, use Message Service, use Mail settings, etc.

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" at your subscription, however, please change the password to the unique 4-digit number for safety.
- Be careful never to reveal the i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, it is reset to "0000" at the docomo Shop after checking your official certification (e.g. a driver's license).

1  ▶ "English" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password" ▶ Select Current Password field ▶ Enter the current i-mode password

2 Select New Password field ▶ Enter a new i-mode password

3 Select New Password (Confirmation) field ▶ Enter the i-mode password entered in Step 2 ▶ "Select"

## ◆ Using My Menu <My Menu>

You can register your favorite sites in My Menu to easily access them from next time.

- Up to 45 i-mode sites can be registered. However, some sites cannot be registered.
- To register, i-mode password is required. →P155
- When you subscribe to a pay site, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.

## ◆ Subscribing to a site in My Menu

1 Display a site ▶ "マイメニュー登録 (registering in My Menu)" ▶ Select the i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter an i-mode password ▶ "決定 (OK)"

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.

## ◆ Displaying sites from My Menu

1  ▶ "English" ▶ "My Menu" ▶ Select a site to display

## ◆ Connecting to SSL/TLS page

You can display SSL/TLS compatible sites or websites (SSL/TLS page) using i-mode/Full Browser.

- SSL/TLS is a method for securing safe data communications with authentication/ encryption technologies. Encrypted data is sent/received on SSL/TLS pages, and it prevents wiretapping, masquerading and data alteration in the middle of communication so that you can more safely exchange your personal information such as your credit card number and address.
- You may not connect to some SSL/TLS pages when date and time are not set.
- Establishing SSL/TLS sessions may require electronic information called "Certificate" issued by the same certification organization for the connected site and FOMA terminal. →P168
- To connect to FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on UIM.

1 Select a compatible site or website ▶ A message indicating the start of SSL/TLS session appears

- While SSL/TLS pages are displayed,  is displayed at the top of the display.
- While SSL/TLS pages are displayed, press     to view the certificate.
- When proceeding from an SSL/TLS page to an ordinary page, a confirmation screen appears.

## ◆ Connecting to FirstPass compatible page

1 Select a user certificate to send while a compatible site or website is displayed ▶ Enter the PIN2 code

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page appears.

- When correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL/TLS session is disconnected.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When connecting to an SSL/TLS page, certificate selection screen may appear. In this case, select a certificate to send.
- Packet communication fee for connecting to the FirstPass compatible page is covered by the Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double.

## Displaying web pages designed for PC

You can connect to the Internet to display websites created for a PC.

- Communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing many images and downloading require high charges. For details of packet communication fees and charging plans, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

<Example> Connecting to a website at specified address (URL) with Full Browser

1   [i-mode] 5 1

2 Enter a URL (up to 2,048 one-byte characters)

3 Select Browser type field ▶  ▶ 

- To connect to a website using i-mode, select  in Browser type field.
- If you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen for Full Browser connection, the confirmation screen does not appear again. →P165
- When Full Browser usage setting is "利用しない (do not use)", a confirmation screen for using Full Browser appears. →P165
- From the second time, the URL previously entered or connected to appears.
-  while starting communication : Stop connecting
-  or  while downloading a page : Stop downloading a page.

4 After reading a website,  ▶ "Yes"

### ✓INFORMATION

- Full Browser can load up to 1,536 Kbytes per page.
- No plug-in is supported.
- Some websites may take extra time to be displayed or not be displayed correctly.

## Switching i-mode/Full Browser

- i-mode and Full Browser have different charging systems. It is recommended that you subscribe to Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double because a high packet communication fee is required to use Full Browser according to data communication volume.
- You cannot normally display some sites or websites when switching the browser.

<Example> Switching i-mode to Full Browser

1 While a site is displayed,   5 2

Switching Full Browser to i-mode : While a website is displayed,   7 2

- If you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen for Full Browser connection, the confirmation screen does not appear again. →P165

## Displaying by using log

- If you connect from a log while a site or website is displayed, the browser type used when the log was created is used for connection.

### ◆ Reconnecting to the page displayed before <Last URL>

You can use display logs of sites or websites for connection.

- Up to 10 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, older logs are overwritten first.

1   [i-mode] 4

2 Select a URL

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 : URL of i-mode  : URL of Full Browser

- If you select "Yes (default)" on the confirmation screen for Full Browser connection, the confirmation screen does not appear again. →P165

Deleting : Move the cursor to a URL ▶  3 ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a URL.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website :  3
- Some URL may not be accessed or a different website may be displayed.

## ◆ Displaying pages using Entry URL log <Entry URL log>

You can use URL entry logs of sites or websites for connection.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, older logs are overwritten first.

1  [i-mode] 5 2

### 2 Select a URL

The next procedure → P156 Step 3 and the following steps in "Displaying web pages designed for PC"

- If you change a browser type on the screen that appears after a URL is selected, a browser type different from a log can be used for connection.

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a URL ▶  3 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

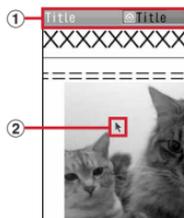
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a URL.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website :  7 2 /  6 2

## Viewing and operating screen

### ◆ Viewing screen



Full Browser screen (Vertical display)

### ① Status display/Title or URL

-  : While downloading
-  : Unread tab after the data is downloaded

### ② Pointer → P158

### ✓INFORMATION

- When displaying a site including an image, the following icons may appear instead of the image.
  -  : When Image display setting is "OFF"
  -  : When the image data is invalid or the image cannot be found, or when the image cannot be received because FOMA terminal goes out of service area during image reception
  -  : When displaying is disabled for an incorrect URL of the image etc.

## ◆ Operating screen

Scrolling : 

Scrolling up/down successively :  (1 sec. or more)

Going to previous/next page :  / 

Switching tabs :  or  ▶ 

- Also  can switch tabs.

Closing a tab/Ending a browser :  ▶ "Yes"

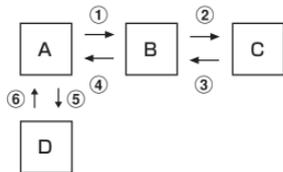
Selecting linked pages and items : The following operations are available.

- Linked page : Highlighted when the cursor is on. Go to the linked page.
- Character entry field : Enter characters.
- Radio button : Select 1 item from options.  indicates the selected state.
- Check box : Select multiple items from options.  indicates the selected state.
- Pulldown menu : Select items from the displayed menus.
- Button : Execute the assigned function.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When Motion sensor is "ON", you can scroll a screen by tilting the terminal. → P40
- You can press  for 1 second or more on the vertically long site or website to display PagePilot screen while pointer is displayed. → P167  
However, the PagePilot screen does not appear on some sites or websites.
- You can press keypad while Full Browser screen is displayed to use the assigned function. You can check functions assigned to each dial key by using Shortcut of Full Browser Settings of i-mode settings. → P165
- Some contents cannot be operated by pointer. In this case, perform an operation after setting Pointer Display of i-mode Browser Setting/Full Browser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF". → P165

- A display log is used for moving to other pages. Up to 50 display logs are temporarily saved in the place called "cache" in the terminal. You can change pages with no communication by using the saved log. However, when the terminal cache size is exceeded or when displaying a page which is set to forcibly read the latest information, communications are started.
- You cannot change pages while connecting to FirstPass center (→P169).
- When displaying Page A→B→C in that order (①, ②), return to Page A (③, ④), and proceed to Page D (⑤), the display history of Page A→B→C is erased. You can return to Page A from Page D (⑥) but cannot again return to Page B (①).



- Information such as entered characters or settings is not stored in the cache.
- Selected items or entered contents are not saved in Bookmark, Screen memo, etc.
- When terminating i-mode/Full Browser, all display logs are deleted.

## ◆ Convenient operations

Connecting to iMenu<sup>\*1</sup> or Full Browser Home<sup>\*2</sup>: ④

Reloading information: ⑥<sup>\*1</sup> or ⑤<sup>\*2</sup>

Displaying URL <URL reference>: ⑦<sup>\*1</sup> or ⑥<sup>\*2</sup> ▶ ③

- Press to copy the URL.

Displaying/Hiding the guide area: ⑧ ⑧

Switching vertical/horizontal screens: ⑧ ⑨ ▶ ①-③

Register the currently displayed website to Home<sup>\*2</sup>: ⑧ ▶ "Yes"

Sending a URL by i-mode mail: ⑨ ▶ ① or ②

- A URL is attached to the message text.

Opening a new tab, closing a tab, opening a link with a new tab, etc.:

① ▶ ①-④

Moving to other pages, zooming<sup>\*2</sup>, dragging, selecting/pasting text area, etc.:

② ▶ ①-⑨<sup>\*1</sup> or ①-①<sup>\*2</sup>

Changing font size: ③ ▶ ①-⑤

Displaying display log/tab list: ⑤

Displaying PagePilot screen (whole page): ⑥

Adding a phone number or mail address to phonebook <Add to phonebook>:

Move the cursor to a phone number or mail address ▶ ⑦ ▶ ① or ②

Phonebook new entry→P70

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

Displaying shortcut list<sup>\*2</sup>: ⑨

\*1 i-mode

\*2 Full Browser

## ◆ Displaying multiple sites/websites <Multi window>

You can view up to 5 sites/websites by switching them.

<Example> Displaying a link of site/website with a new tab

1 Move the cursor to a link while a site or website is displayed ▶ ① ②

Closing a tab: ① ③ ▶ Select a page

Switching tabs: ① ④ ▶ Select a page

- When you change the browser type of the currently displayed tab while displaying multiple tabs, other tabs disappear.

## ◆ Displaying/Hiding the pointer

1 While a site or website is displayed, ⑧ ⑤ ▶ ① or ②

- For websites containing frames, the range the pointer can move may be limited.
- While the pointer is displayed, it is displayed as follows according to operations.

: Displaying pointer : Selecting link

: Selecting text area / : Waiting for dragging/Currently dragging

## ◆ Operating by changing to drag mode

You can switch to drag mode while the pointer is displayed to operate corresponding contents.

- Operations available in drag mode vary by contents.

1 Move pointer onto contents ▶ (1 sec. or more) ▶

- Use to operate. Press to cancel.

## ❖ Displaying a frame compatible website

When you connect to a website that has frames, enlarge the individual frame to operate.

### I On the frame thumbnail screen, ▶ Select a frame

 appears at the top of the display.

- During enlarged display of current frame, press  to return to the frame thumbnail screen.

## ❖ Copying/Pasting character string on site or website

You can temporarily copy the character in the selected area or search for it by quick search while pointer is displayed. However, you cannot select characters on some sites or websites.

- The last copied item is recorded until the power is turned OFF, and it can be pasted to anywhere any number of times.

### <Example> Copying a character string

#### I While a site or website is displayed, ▶ or ▶ Select the start position ▶ Select the end position ▶ "Copy"

- Select "Quick search" to activate quick search or "Retry" to select an area to copy again. For i-mode, select "Read map" to activate a map application. → P242

**Pasting a character string**: Move the cursor to the position to paste characters while a site or website is displayed ▶   ▶  or 

## ❖ Searching for character string on site or website

- A search in the current page is unavailable on some websites.

### I While a site or website is displayed, ▶ Enter characters in the entry field of the character string search (up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters) ▶

- To discriminate between upper case and lower case, select Case-sensitive field and press .
- The search result is highlighted. Press  /  to move to the previous or next item.

- Press  to end searching.

## ❖ Displaying character correctly <Change character code>

When characters on sites or websites are not displayed correctly, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character code.

### I While a site or website is displayed,

- Each press changes the character code in the order of SJIS→EUC→JIS→UTF8.
- When a site or website is displayed, "SJIS" is set.

## ◆ Displaying Flash graphics

Flash graphics can be displayed on FOMA terminals. Flash graphics enhances the expressive power of the site.

- Flash<sup>®</sup>Video (FLV) is the video that can be played with Adobe Flash Player. The following 2 types can be played.

Type	Description
Progressive replay	Video data that is created separately from Flash graphics is downloaded from the distribution server and played.
Embedded replay	Video data is embedded in Flash graphics as a component.

- It cannot be played on some sites or websites.
- Progressive Flash<sup>®</sup>Video can be displayed up to 10 Mbytes per item. A large amount of data may be received. Note that communication of a large amount of data requires high charges.
- Flash<sup>®</sup>Video cannot be saved.
- Streaming replay is unavailable. Also, images or screen memos cannot be saved using the progressive replay.
- Progressive replay is available only on the browser screen and embedded replay is available on browser screen and screen memo.
- If Flash graphic including video data is saved and then played except on the Full Browser screen or Screen memo, the video data is not played.

- Replay specification of Flash<sup>®</sup> Video is as follows. However, some files cannot be downloaded or played even if the file format is supported.

Codec	Video : Sorenson Spark/On2VP6 Audio : MP3
Maximum bit rate	Video : 400 Kbps Audio : 96 Kbps
Video size	QVGA (horizontal 320×vertical 240)
Maximum frame rate	15 fps

- \* Indicates the maximum value in FOMA high-speed area and does not guarantee the actual traffic.
- Flash graphics up to the versions equivalent for Flash8 (partially Flash9) are supported. However, some of the corresponding versions cannot be displayed.
- Flash graphics are not displayed when Image display setting of i-mode Browser Settings/Full Browser Settings of i-mode settings is "OFF".
- When Flash graphics are not operated for 5 minutes or more, replay stops.
- While Flash graphics are displayed, operations on a site or website may differ from ordinary ones.
- Some Flash graphics have sound effects. The volume follows the setting of Melody effect sound in Adjust volume. To disable the sound effect, set Sound setting of i-mode Browser Settings/Full Browser Settings of i-mode settings to "OFF". Note that the sound effect of the Flash graphics set for the stand-by display or incoming call screen is not emitted.
- Note that FOMA terminal may be vibrated by some Flash graphics even when Vibrate alert/effect is set to "OFF".
- Some Flash graphics use the phone information. You can set whether to use the phone information in Phone information use setting of i-mode Browser Settings/Full Browser Settings of i-mode settings.
- If Flash graphics do not operate correctly or an error occurs during replay, the Flash graphics may not be saved correctly.
- When Flash graphics are saved in Data Box, Screen memo or microSD card, they may be visually different depending on the saving destination.
- To save a page that has Flash graphics to Screen memo, added data is also saved by automatic download type but not saved by manual download type.
- Flash graphics cannot be saved using Full Browser.

## Bookmark

### Saving web pages or sites for quick access

You can register frequently visited sites or websites in Bookmark and thereafter quickly display them.

#### ◆ Registering in Bookmark

- URLs can be registered in Bookmark in up to 256 characters for i-mode and up to 512 characters for Full Browser.
- Bookmarks of i-mode/Full Browser are registered in the same memory space. However, some pages cannot be registered.

- 1 While a site or website is displayed,  **1**  **2**
- 2 Enter the title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) 
  - When the same URL is already registered, the confirmation screen for overwriting appears.
  - If you register the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed on the bookmark list.
- 3 Select a folder where the bookmark is added.

#### ◆ Displaying site or website from Bookmark

- 1  **[i-mode]**  **2**  Select a folder
  - Icon definitions.
    -  (light blue) : Folder stored by default
    -  (dark blue) : Created folder
    -  (dark blue) : Created folder (Secrecy ON)
  - During thumbnail display, the number of registered bookmarks is displayed at the end of the folder name.
  - To delete all bookmarks, on the folder list,  **2**  **2**  Authenticate  "Yes".

## 2 Select a bookmark

The browser type that was used for registration is used for connection.

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 : Bookmark of i-mode  : Bookmark of Full Browser

**Editing a title** : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶  

The next procedure → P160 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶   ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a bookmark.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- If you delete a bookmark registered as Access shortcut, Access shortcut is also canceled.

**Displaying a URL** : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶  

- Press  to copy the URL.

**Adding URL to phonebook** : Move the cursor to a

bookmark ▶    ▶  or 

Phonebook new entry → P70

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

**Displaying registered number** :  

**Attaching to mail** : Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶  

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation from site or website :   
- Each time you press   on the folder list or    on the bookmark list, you can switch thumbnail display and list display. When the thumbnail is displayed,  may appear instead of images.

## ◆ Managing bookmark folders

- Up to 20 items can be registered. However, you cannot delete "Bookmark" folder nor change its settings.

<Example> Create

1   [i-mode] 

2    

**Changing a folder setting** : Move the cursor to a folder ▶   

**Sorting folders** :   

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to a folder ▶   ▶  or

 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a folder.

## 3 Set required items ▶

**folder name** : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Secrecy** : Set whether to display a folder in Privacy mode (when a Bookmark is set to "Hide secrecy fldrs").

### ✓INFORMATION

- If Secrecy of a folder containing a bookmark registered with Access shortcuts is set to "ON", a confirmation screen for canceling Access shortcuts appears.

## ◆ Moving bookmark

You can move saved bookmarks to another folder.

1   [i-mode]  ▶ **Select a folder**

2 **Move the cursor to a bookmark** ▶   ▶  - 

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

## 3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to

- If you attempt to move a bookmark registered with Access shortcuts to a folder with Secrecy set to "ON", a confirmation screen for canceling Access shortcuts appears.

## ◆ Connecting to sites or websites using simple key sequence <Access shortcuts>

You can quickly display a bookmark from the stand-by display by registering it in Access shortcuts.

### ❖ Registering Access shortcuts

- 1 dial key can register 1 shortcut, up to 10 items can be registered. However, a bookmark in a folder whose Secrecy is "ON" cannot be registered.

1   [i-mode] 

## 2 Move the cursor to Not recorded ▶

The icon numbers ( ) correspond to the keypads ( - ) used for Access shortcuts.

**Displaying sites or websites :** Select a bookmark

**Canceling :** Move the cursor to a bookmark ▶   ▶ "Yes"

## 3 Select a folder ▶ Select an bookmark

For the bookmark of Full Browser registered as access shortcut,  appears on the access shortcut list.

### ✓INFORMATION

- A bookmark of Full Browser can be displayed on Full Browser using Access shortcuts or connecting from Access shortcuts list.

## ❖ Displaying site or website using Access shortcuts

1  -  ▶ 

A site or website corresponding to the keypad appears.

### Screen memo

## Saving sites or websites contents

Currently displayed contents of a site or website can be saved as a screen memo or captured image.

## ◆ Saving screen memo

- You can save up to 500 Kbyte for i-mode and up to 1.5 Mbyte for Full Browser per item. However, some sites or websites cannot be registered.

1 While a site or website is displayed,   

2 "Yes"

**Saving only captured image :** "Only displayed"

**Setting a screen memo for Shortcut icon :** Move the cursor to "Yes" or "Only displayed" ▶ 

## ◆ Displaying screen memo

1   [i-mode] 

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 : Screen memo of i-mode  : Screen memo of Full Browser

 : Protected screen memo

## 2 Select screen memo

- When a linked page on a screen memo is selected, the browser type used when the screen memo was registered is used for connection.

**Protecting/Unprotecting :** Move the cursor to a screen memo ▶   ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

• To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ 

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a screen memo ▶   ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

• To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a screen memo.

• To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

**Displaying a URL :** Move the cursor to a screen memo ▶  

• Press  to copy the URL.

**Changing a title :** Move the cursor to a screen memo ▶   ▶ Enter a title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

• If you register with no title, "No title" is displayed in the screen memo list.

**Displaying registered number :**  

### ✓INFORMATION

• Operation from site or website :   

• Operating Flash graphics again on the screen memo display screen :   

### RSS reader

## Using RSS reader

You can register RSS that is provided by news sites or blogs in RSS reader and get the latest information of registered websites only by updating the RSS.

## ◆ Registering in RSS reader <RSS registration>

- Up to 20 items can be registered. You can register 100 items per RSS, and information of up to 1,000 items (2 Mbytes) can be saved.
- This function is unavailable in i-mode.

### 1 While a website is displayed, 0 2 ▶ Select RSS ▶ "Yes"

- A confirmation screen for updating may appear.
- When the RSS is already registered, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.
- RSS exceeding 2 Mbytes cannot be registered. Also, some websites cannot be registered.

## ◆ Displaying RSS information

### 1 [i-mode] 9

- Icon definitions are as follows.  
 : New item exists  : Unread item exists
- The number of unread items is displayed beside the title.

### 2 Select a channel

- Icon definitions are as follows.  
 : Unread item  : Protected item

**Updating RSS :** Move the cursor to a channel ▶  1 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To update selected items, select them ▶ 

**Changing a title :** Move the cursor to a channel ▶  2

The next procedure→P160 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a channel ▶  3 ▶ 1 -  
3 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a channel.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ 

**Displaying details of a channel :** Move the cursor to a channel ▶  4

### 3 Select an item

- The following operations can be performed on the overview screen.  
 /  ▶ "Yes" : Connect to a website  
 1 ▶ 1 - 5 : Change a font size
- If there is no item, "No summary" is displayed.

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to an item ▶  1 ▶ 1 - 4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to an item.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶  . To delete all read items or all items, authentication is required.

**Protecting/Unprotecting :** Move the cursor to an item ▶  2 ▶ 1 -  
4 ▶ "Yes"

- To protect/unprotect selected items, select them ▶ 

**Setting all to the read state :**  3 ▶ "Yes"

**Displaying the number of items :**  4

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Operation from a website :  0 1

## Downloading data (file)

- The data (file) and the maximum size of each data that can be saved are as follows.
  - Image (i-mode) : 500 Kbytes, Full Browser : 1.5 Mbytes
  - Melody, Chara-den, ToruCa (Details), Font : 100 Kbytes
  - Kisekai Tool, Machi-chara : 2 Mbytes
  - Dictionary : 32 Kbytes
  - ToruCa : 1 Kbytes
  - Schedule/i-schedule : 1 Mbytes
- Some data (files) can be saved to microSD card.
- Some data (files) cannot be correctly saved, displayed, played nor set.
- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box)→P280  
To save data (files) except those in Data Box, delete data (files) stored in FOMA terminal or microSD card.

## ◆ Downloading image

You can save JPEG/GIF/PNG/BMP images, GIF animation and Flash graphics. However, Flash graphics cannot be saved using Full Browser.

- Images larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.

## 1 While a site or website is displayed, 8 ▶

- When a confirmation screen for saving an image appears, select "Yes".
- To save an image or save background image,  ▶ Select an image. To save selected images, select them ▶ .
- With Save selected image, an image at the pointer position can be saved.
- Save all images and Save One Background Image are unavailable when images that cannot be saved are included.

## 2 Set required items ▶ ▶ Select the saving destination

### Saving multiple images : Select the saving destination

- Some items in an image cannot be selected or changed.
- Up to 36 characters for Display name, up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, and ".","-","\_" for File name and up to 100 characters for Comment can be entered. "." is not allowed for the first character of File name.
- For images that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, "File restricted" is displayed in File restriction. Also, you cannot change File restriction for images downloaded from sites.
- PNG/BMP images are saved in "Other" folder of microSD card, but they cannot be displayed.
- JPEG/GIF images that are 20×20 in size within 90 Kbytes and can be redistributed are saved in a folder under "Deco-mail pict" folder.
- Images with extension "ifm" are saved in "Item" folder.
- When " + " appears in the guide area, press  and  to save to microSD card. → P270
- To save to FOMA terminal, press  and  to set to stand-by display etc. → P257

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation from the screen memo display screen :  → 

### ◆ Downloading data

- You need to subscribe to i-concier to download schedule/i-schedule.
- You can enter up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters for Display name of Melody, up to 36 characters for Display name of Kisekae Tool/Machi-chara/Chara-den. Also, up to 100 characters can be entered for Comment of Chara-den.

## 1 Display a site or website ▶ Select data to download

- You can stop downloading by pressing  or  while downloading (the key to press varies by files).

## 2 "Save"

### Saving a dictionary/font : "Save" ▶

### Saving ToruCa : "Save" ▶

- For some data types, display name etc. are displayed on the save screen. Set required items and press  to save. When " + " appears in the guide area, press  and  to save to microSD card.
- For some data types, data can be checked by selecting "Display", "Play" or "Preview".
- To cancel saving, "Back" ▶ Select "No".

### ✓INFORMATION

- When downloading of Kisekae Tool or Machi-chara is stopped or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming it may appear. When selecting "No", a confirmation screen for partial saving appears when it is available. The rest of partially saved data can be downloaded from each saving destination.
- When saving melodies, Kisekae Tool or Machi-chara to FOMA terminal, press  on the save screen to set it as call alert etc. Note that the set data is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If stopping saving of i-schedule, it may be saved partially. To download it again, delete the partially saved i-schedule.
- You may not download Machi-chara when date and time are not set.

## Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion

- You can upload up to 2,048 Kbytes of JPEG/GIF images and moving pictures/i-motion in the MP4 format (when multiple images or character strings are included : up to 2,128 Kbytes).

## 1 Display a site or website ▶ "Browse"

- "View" appears when image or moving picture/i-motion can be uploaded. If browsing the same site or website with a PC etc, it is displayed in different icon.

## 2 Select File format ▶ Select a file

- When microSD card is installed, select "Phone memory" or "microSD".
- To change or cancel the selected image, press "View" again and select "Change" or "Cancel".

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Uploading method or files that can be uploaded vary by site or website.
- Data except still images, moving pictures/i-motion or character strings cannot be uploaded. And, images or moving pictures/i-motion prohibited to output from FOMA terminal cannot be uploaded.
- Moving pictures/i-motion of ASF format or those partially downloaded cannot be uploaded.

## Convenient Functions

- Some functions may not be used in certain sites or websites.

### ◆ Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/SMS To/Web To/Media To function

#### 1 Display a site or website ▶ Move the cursor to a phone number, mail address, URL or 1Seg watching information

- Only the information which the cursor can be placed on can be selected.

#### 2

##### Phone To (AV Phone To) :

You can make a call under set conditions. →P57

##### Mail To :

The i-mode mail to the selected mail address can be created and sent. →P120

- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a sender's address is set on the mail creation screen according to the phonebook 2in1 setting of the selected mail address when the address is saved in the phonebook, or it is not set when the address is not saved.

**SMS To : Select Call type** ▶  ▶  ▶ "Yes"

SMS to the selected phone number can be created and sent. →P148

##### Web To :

A site or website is connected.

- When a URL is selected from message text etc., a confirmation screen for connecting to a site appears.

##### Media To :

You can watch 1Seg or make watching/recording reservation. →P196, 203

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When multiple addresses are listed, Mail To function may not be used correctly.

### ◆ Using location information

You can select a link item of a location information on the current screen (site, website, screen memo or MessageR/F) to view a map, activate Map  $\alpha$ pli or convert the information to URL for mail attachment.

<Example> Viewing a map from a link item of location information on site screen

#### 1 Display a site ▶ Select a location info

#### 2 "Read map"

Map  $\alpha$ pli set in Select map starts.

**Starting Map  $\alpha$ pli :** "i- $\alpha$ pli Map" ▶ Select i- $\alpha$ pli

Using Map  $\alpha$ pli →P233

**Attaching location information to mail :** "Paste to mail" ▶ "OK"

### i-mode settings

## Making i-mode Browser/Full Browser Settings

You can select "i-modeBrowserSetting"/"FullBrowser Setting" to set items of each browser and select "Common Setting" to set items common to i-mode and Full Browser.

### ◆ i-modeBrowser/FullBrowser Setting

**Image display :** Set whether to display/hide JPEG/GIF/PNG/BMP images, GIF animation and Flash graphics.

- Set "Hide image" to display  instead of images.

**Sound** : Set whether to set off sound.

**Movie auto play**\*1 : Set whether to automatically play normal type i-motion while or after it is downloaded.→P173

**Display mode**\*2 : Set whether to display a screen in the PC screen size (PC layout mode) or aligned with the horizontal display size of FOMA terminal (Keitai mode).

**Movie DL in page** : Set whether to download moving pictures such as i-motion and a movie.

• When "Confirm always" is set, a confirmation screen appears each time communication request is made.

**Script** : Set operation of a page containing JavaScript.

• Some websites may not be correctly displayed unless setting Script setting to Valid.

**Phone info use** : Set whether to use the phone information in FOMA terminal.

• When "Valid" is set, time and language information may be sent to IP (Information Provider) via Internet and may be known by a third party.

**Font size** : Set font sizes.

**Cookie/Delete Cookies** : Set or delete Cookie.

• Cookie is a function that saves website-specified information such as date/time and the number of times the website is displayed in FOMA terminal. Some websites or contents services may not be correctly displayed or used unless setting Cookie to Valid.

• When setting Cookie to Valid, information such as date/time or number of times the website is displayed is sent. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility if your information is known to a third party by this. Please be forewarned.

**Referer** : Set whether to send Referer.

• Referer is a URL of a website from which a link is selected to move to another website. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility if your information is known to third parties by sending Referer. Please be forewarned.

**Window auto-open** : Set whether to automatically open a new tab.

**Pointer display setting** : Set whether to display/hide pointer.

**FullBrowser home**\*2 : Set a website as Home.

**FullBrowser usage**\*2 : Set whether to use Full Browser.

• To set "利用する (Yes)", be sure to read "注意事項の詳細 (precaution details)".

**FB permission disp**\*2 : Set whether to display a connection confirmation screen when Full Browser is used for connection.

**Zoom To**\*2 : Set screen magnification to display a website.

**Shortcut**\*2 : Set functions to be assigned to keypads.

**Auto NW trans. size**\*2 : Set whether to permit communication of data greater than the page maximum size.

• When "Restricted" is set, Flash graphics may not be correctly displayed.

\*1 Only for i-mode/BrowserSetting

\*2 Only for Full Browser Setting

**1**  [i-mode] **7** ▶ **1** or **2**

**2** **Set required items**

**Setting image display** : **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting sound** : **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting display mode**\* : **3** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting whether to download images in a page** : **4** ▶ **1** - **3**

**Setting Script operation** : **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting whether to use phone information** : **6** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting a font size** : **7** ▶ **1** - **5**

**Setting Cookie** : **8** ▶ **1** - **5**

**Deleting Cookie** : **9** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ "Yes"

**Setting Referer** : **0** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting auto start of a window** : Press  to display the second page ▶ **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting pointer display** : Press  to display the second page ▶ **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting home for Full Browser**\* : Press  to display the second page ▶ **3** ▶ Enter a URL (up to 2,048 one-byte characters) ▶ 

**Setting Full Browser usage**\* : Press  to display the second page ▶ **4** ▶ "Yes" or "No" ▶ "OK"

**Setting Full Browser permission display**\* : Press  to display the second page ▶ **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting screen magnification**\* : Press  to display the second page ▶ **6** ▶ **1** - **7**

**Editing a shortcut**\* : Press  to display the second page ▶ **7** ▶ Select a shortcut ▶ Select an item ▶ 

• Select  ▶ "Yes" on the shortcut list to restore the default setting.→P355

**Setting sizes for auto transmission**\* : Press  to display the second page ▶ **8** ▶ **1** - **3**

\* Only for FullBrowser Setting

## ✓INFORMATION

- For changing the following setting, press **ME** **NU** **8** ▶ **2** - **5**, **0** while a site or website is displayed.
  - Image display, Sound, Script, Pointer Display, and Display mode (only for FullBrowser Setting)

## ❖ Common Setting

**Certificate/Issued Certificates** : Display or set certificates. → P168

**Secure trans. svc** : Set user certificates, host, omission of security code input, etc. → P169, 170

**Access point** : Set an access point. → P167

**i-mode button** : Set whether to connect to iMenu or display i-mode menu screen when **ME** is pressed on the stand-by display.

- i-mode menu screen appears overseas regardless of the setting.

**Scroll** : Set the number of lines for one scroll.

**PagePilot Display** : Set whether to display the PagePilot screen that shows the whole page and the current display position while the pointer is displayed.

**Pointer Range** : Set movement range of pointer.

**Pointer ASpeed** : Set pointer speed.

**Bookmark Display** : Set display method of Bookmark.

**Display light** : Set the duration of display light time while displaying.

**Show/Hide navi keys** : Set whether to show/hide the guide area.

**1** **ME** **NU** **[i-mode]** **7** **3**

## 2 Set required items

**Setting i-mode button** : **5** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting the number of lines for one scroll** : **6** ▶ **1** - **4**

**Setting whether to display/hide PagePilot** : **7** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting movement range of pointer** : **8** ▶ **1** - **3**

**Setting pointer speed** : **9** ▶ **1** - **3**

**Setting display method of Bookmark** : **0** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting display light** : Press **ME** to display the second page ▶ **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Setting whether to show/hide the guide area** : Press **ME** to display the second page ▶ **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

## ✓INFORMATION

- While a site or website is displayed, the pointer speed changes when you press **ME** **8** **6**.

## ◆ Resetting i-mode setting

You can reset i-mode settings to default states. → P355

**1** **ME** **NU** **[i-mode]** **7** **5** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **Yes**

## ✓INFORMATION

- Checking current settings : **ME** **[i-mode]** **7** **4**

## ◆ Changing host (ISP connection communication) <Host selection>

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

### ISP connection communication

You can connect to the various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DOCOMO. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- You cannot make settings or changes for the host during communication.

### Provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to the provider to use ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details of service such as site, Internet connection, mail function.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DOCOMO never charges you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.

**1** **ME** **NU** **[i-mode]** **7** **3** **4**

**2** Move the cursor to User setting ▶ **ME**

Restoring settings for using i-mode : " **i モード** (i-mode)" ▶ **ME**

Changing to the previously set host : Select the host ▶ **ME**

### 3 Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

- You can delete all the contents entered for the items all at once by pressing .

**Host name** : Up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Host number** : Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

**Host address/Host address2** : Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- Host address 2 is the host for i-Channel.

### 4 Select the edited host ▶

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When host is changed, i-Channel information is restored to the default setting and the i-Channel ticker does not appear on the stand-by display. When the i-Channel list appears by pressing  on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker also appears.
- If you change the host, the program settings of the Music&Video Channel is initialized and the program cannot be obtained automatically. If you select "Set program" on Music&Video Channel screen, the setting confirmation screen appears, and if you select "Yes", the program setting information is received and the program can be obtained automatically.
- When Host number or Host address is changed, Auto-send settings are canceled.
- When the host is changed while using 2in1, i-Channel ticker for each mode is reset to the default settings.

## Operating certificate

You can perform the operation of the certificate required for the SSL/TLS session.

### ◆ Displaying certificate and setting certificate validity/invalidity <Manage certificate>

- The following certificates are required for connecting to SSL/TLS page.  
**CA Certificate** : The certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.  
**DOCOMO Cert** : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites. It is saved in the UIM by default.

**User Certificate** : A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. It proves that you subscribe to FOMA service. After requesting a certificate to be issued by FirstPass center and downloading it, the certificate is saved in the UIM.

**Original certificate (Issued certificate)** : A certificate issued by companies, local governments, etc., and it is saved in FOMA terminal after being downloaded. Downloaded certificates can be used at compatible sites.

- If blue UIM is installed in FOMA terminal, certificates except CA Certificate do not appear.

#### <Example> Setting validity/invalidity

### 1 [i-mode] ▶ or

- Icon definitions are as follows.  
 : DOCOMO certificate/User certificate  : Original certificate  
 : Original certificate whose chain is broken  
 : Certificate that is set to Valid

### 2 Move the cursor to a certificate ▶

- You cannot set DOCOMO Cert2.  
**Displaying** : Move the cursor to a certificate ▶  
- Selecting an original certificate displays the certificate list. Select a certificate to view.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Certificate contents displayed  
User  
CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number  
O= : (Organization) Company name etc.  
C= : (Country) Country name  
Issued by  
CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name or discrimination number  
O= : (Organization) Company name etc.  
OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company etc.  
Expiration date  
Serial number
- For a certificate with owner, issuer and/or expiration date items left blank, only their item names are displayed.

## ◆ Setting FirstPass <Certificate download>

Connect to the FirstPass center, request to issue the user certificate and download it.

- Screens for FirstPass center connection or operations are subject to change.
- Mails cannot be sent/received and MessageR/F cannot be received during connection to the FirstPass center.
- You cannot use this function overseas.

**1**  [i-mode] **7** **3** **3** **1** ▶ "English"

**2** "Request your certificate" ▶ "Continue" ▶ Enter PIN2 code

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is issued.

**Revoking the issued user certificate** : "Other settings" ▶ "Revoke your certificate" ▶ Select the certificate to send ▶ Enter PIN2 code ▶ "OK" ▶ "Next" ▶ "OK"

- If PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the application for issuance is canceled.

**3** "Download" ▶ "Continue"

The completion screen appears and the user certificate is downloaded.

- Downloaded user certificates can be viewed in "Manage certificate".→P168

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- No packet communication fee applies for connection to FirstPass center.
- FirstPass can be used on Full Browser.

### Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DOCOMO's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass is available for Internet communication from a FOMA terminal and Internet communication in the condition the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is required. For details, refer to 簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use) in CD-ROM. To view 簡易操作マニュアル (Manual for simple use) (PDF format), Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

- Before requesting a user certificate, read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code. All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Take extreme care not to let UIM or PIN2 code used incorrectly by any third party.
- If UIM is misplaced or stolen, contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- In any circumstances DOCOMO assumes no obligation nor responsibility for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DOCOMO nor certification organizations provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL/TLS. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

## ◆ Downloading original certificate

- Up to 5 items of original certificate and up to 500 Kbytes in total can be saved.

**1** Display a site ▶ Select a certificate ▶ "Yes"

-  while downloading : Stopping download

**2** "Save"

- Downloaded certificates can be viewed in "Manage certificate".→P168
- When password entry is requested, enter the password to the password entry field and select "OK".

**Canceling saving** : "Back" ▶ "No"

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Original certificates are issued by companies or local governments, etc. Downloaded certificates can be used at compatible sites.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading original certificates.
- If blue UIM is installed in FOMA terminal, Original certificate cannot be downloaded.

## ❖ Changing certificate control name

You can change the control name of a downloaded original certificate.

- 1  [i-mode]    ▶ Move the cursor to a certificate ▶  
- 2 Enter the name (up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

## ❖ Deleting Certificate

You can delete original certificates downloaded.

- 1  [i-mode]    ▶ Move the cursor to a certificate ▶   ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

## ◆ Skipping password entries <Skip password>

To use an original certificate, enter terminal security code for authentication. You can set whether to skip entry of terminal security code to reuse the original certificate already authenticated.

- 1  [i-mode]     ▶  or 

## ◆ Changing host for certificate issue <Center host>

If you use services except the FirstPass, set the center host for certificate. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

- 1  [i-mode]    
- 2 Select Host field ▶ 
- 3 Set required items ▶ 

**User host** : Enter up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters for the host.  
**User host URL** : Enter up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters for URL.

# i-motion/Movie/i-Channel/i-concier

---

## Using i-motion/movie

i-motion/Movie .....	172
Downloading i-motion/movie .....	172
Setting whether to play i-motion automatically .....	<b>Movie auto play setting</b> 173

## Using i-Channel

i-Channel .....	174
Displaying i-Channel .....	174
Setting i-Channel ticker .....	<b>i-Channel setting</b> 174
Resetting i-Channel .....	<b>Reset i-Channel</b> 175

## Using i-concier

i-concier .....	175
When information is received .....	<b>Receiving information</b> 175
Displaying i-concier details .....	176
Setting display for information .....	<b>Information display</b> 176

## i-motion/Movie

You can obtain movies or sounds such as i-motion/movie from sites or websites.

### ❖ i-motion

- You can play/save up to 10 Mbytes of i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format. i-motion in ASF format is not supported.
- You can play the following i-motion.

Type	Playing action
Normal type (can be saved*)	i-motion data is played while being downloaded. After download, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as i-motion to be played after downloading all data. i-motion data is played after downloading all data.
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	i-motion data is played while being downloaded. i-motion data is deleted after playing.

\* Some i-motion may not allow saving.

### ❖ Movie

- You can play Windows Media Video (WMV) and Windows Media Audio (WMA) up to 10 Mbytes in i-mode and play them unlimitedly in Full Browser. However, you cannot save them.
- Download of a movie may receive a large amount of data. Note that communication of a large amount of data requires high charges. For details of packet communication fees and charging plans, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Operating environments (browser type, OS, etc.) are checked in some sites or websites and a movie may not be played on FOMA terminal.

- You can play the following movies.

Type	Distribution method	Playing action
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Real-time distribution	Distributed in real time. Pause/Resuming play/Moving play position are unavailable.
	On-demand distribution	Distribute movies that are prepared in advance.
File extension	Windows Media file Meta file : wvx, wax, asx Media data : wma, wmv, asf	
Codec	• Windows Media Video 9 (Main Profile : Low level) • Windows Media Audio 2-9 (Windows Media Audio Standard : Level 3)	
Maximum bit rate*	Video : 2 Mbps Audio : 320 Kbps	
Maximum frame rate	30 fps	
Maximum screen size	VGA (horizontal 640×vertical 480)	

\* Indicates the maximum value in FOMA high-speed area and does not guarantee the actual traffic.

## Downloading i-motion/movie

- You can play/save i-motion and can only play movies.

### 1 Select i-motion/movie while sites or websites are displayed

Replay starts while data is downloaded or when the download is completed. To save the i-motion, go to Step 2. For movies, when the replay ends, site screen automatically reappears.

- During downloading, press  and select "Yes" to stop downloading.

- When a streaming type i-motion/movie is selected, a playing confirmation screen appears.
- When the battery level is low, a confirmation screen for playing may appear when you start playing or while it is played.
- For operation during replay, see Step 3 in "Playing movie/i-motion" (→P260). However, for i-motion/movie that is played while being downloaded, some operations are different as follows.
  - : Pause/Play (only for the replay of normal type i-motion or movies of on-demand distribution)
  - ▶ "Yes" : Interrupt (only while playing streaming type i-motion or movies)
  - : Stop (only for normal type i-motion. Press while being stopped to play i-motion from the beginning)
  - : Switch vertical display and horizontal display (switch to the horizontal wide-screen for some image sizes)
  - : Display detail information

## 2 "Save"

**Replaying : "Play"**

**Displaying detail information : "File property"**

Detail information→P278

**Stopping saving : "Back" ▶ "No"**

- For streaming type i-motion, if you select "Back", the site screen reappears.

## 3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters)

Selected item is saved to "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie.

- When appears in the guide area, press and to save to microSD card.→P259
- To save to FOMA terminal, press and - to set to the stand-by display etc.→P262

### ✓INFORMATION

<Common to i-motion and movie>

- The replay restrictions such as number of replay times or replay expiration may be set.
- When replay expiration or replay period expires while downloading data, you cannot play nor save.
- If data is improper, download may be canceled.
- In File property, items to be displayed differ depending on i-motion/movies.
- When a site has multiple movies, only the first movie is downloaded/played with i-mode, and all the movies are successively downloaded/played with Full Browser.

- When closing FOMA terminal or playing streaming type data while being downloaded, if a call comes in or the specified date/time of watching reservation of 1Seg, alarm clock or schedule comes, download is interrupted and the replay is canceled. If closing FOMA terminal when playing normal type i-motion while downloading it, the replay stops but the download continues.
- Replay may be paused to wait for data reception while the data is played. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception starts.
- Replay may become unavailable or pictures may be distorted during replay due to radio wave conditions etc. Even in this case, if the data is normally downloaded, it can be played after download. However, downloaded data may not be correctly played.
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P280

<i-motion>

- When you stop downloading i-motion whose file size is between 500 Kbytes and 10 Mbytes that can be partially saved, the confirmation screen for resuming appears. When "No" is selected, a confirmation screen for partial saving appears. When the data is partially saved, the remainder can be downloaded from the i-motion list.→P261 INFORMATION in "Playing moving picture/i-motion"
- Even if ticker (text) is included in i-motion, the text cannot be played.
- Even when Ring alert or Receive display is displayed as "Available" in detail information (→P278) before saving i-motion used from i-appli, it may not be saved. In this case, it cannot be set for ring alert or incoming call image.

<Movie>

- Replay may be stopped if there is an incoming call, alarm operation or operations of other functions during replay.
- Operations for some movies are different.
- You can play a movie that is protected by a license. However, FOMA terminal may not play it due to the license setting.
- When activated from i-mode, a movie is downloaded/played up to 10 Mbytes, and a message indicating the size excess appears after replay.

### Movie auto play setting

## Setting whether to play i-motion automatically

You can set whether to automatically play i-motion while or after it is downloaded.

[i-mode] ▶ or

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even when "Invalid" is set, i-motion can be played by selecting "Play" on the download completion screen.

## i-Channel

(In Japanese only)

This is a service that the information such as news or weather is distributed to terminals compatible with i-Channel. It can automatically receive information and show the latest information as a ticker on the stand-by display or display on the channel list by pressing **CLR** (Displaying the channel list→P174).

And, there are 2 types; the one is "Basic Channel" provided by DOCOMO and the other is "Okonomi (Favorite) channel" provided by IPs (Information Providers). For "Basic Channel", the packet communication fee for updating the distributed information is not charged. For "Okonomi (Favorite) channel" that you can use by registering your favorite channels, the packet communication fee for updating information is charged. Note that, when viewing detail information for "Basic Channel" and "Okonomi (Favorite) channel", packet communication fee is charged separately. For overseas use, packet communication fee is charged for both automatic update and viewing detail information. Also, for overseas use, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.

- i-Channel is a charged service requiring subscription (i-mode subscription is required for the service).
- For details of i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## Displaying i-Channel

By displaying i-Channel, you can view details of information of the current ticker display.

### 1 On stand-by display, **CLR**

- When moving picture/i-motion or i-appli is set on the stand-by display, press **ME** [i-mode] **6** **1**.

### 2 Select a channel

The site is connected and the detail information appears.

## ✓INFORMATION

- While receiving information,  keeps blinking.
- When information is received, none of the ring alert, vibrator, light operates.
- In the following cases, when the i-Channel list appears by pressing **CLR** on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker appears.
  - When the information cannot be received as FOMA terminal is turned OFF or out of service area
  - When moving UIM to another i-Channel compatible terminal
  - When changing the host→P167
  - When initializing i-Channel→P175
- When the i-Channel or i-mode service is canceled, no ticker appears; pressing **CLR** displays a screen for non-subscribers. However, before the procedure for cancellation is completed, a ticker may appear and pressing **CLR** may display the last information received in the i-Channel list.
- Under some usage conditions, information may be received when displaying the i-Channel list.
- For operations while displaying i-Channel, see "Viewing and operating screen" (→P157). However, when i-Channel list is displayed, some operations differ as follows.
  - Reloading information : **ME** **1**
  - Setting sound : **ME** **2**
  - Opening a new tab : **ME** **3** **1** ▶ **2** - **5**
- Some contents cannot be operated by pointer. In this case, perform an operation after setting Pointer Display of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF".→P165

## i-Channel setting

### Setting i-Channel ticker

**1** **ME** [i-mode] **6** **2** ▶ Set required items ▶ 

## ✓INFORMATION

- When moving picture/i-motion or i-appli is set to the stand-by display and "Display" is selected, a confirmation screen for canceling the stand-by display settings appears.
- When the i-mode service is canceled before canceling the i-Channel service, "Yes" remains to be set.
- When using 2in1, i-Channel ticker can be set for each mode.

## Reset i-Channel

### Resetting i-Channel

You can reset i-Channel to default states.

**1** **MR** [i-mode] **6** **3** ▶ "Yes"

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- After i-Channel is reset, no ticker appears on the stand-by display. When the i-Channel list appears by pressing **CLR** on the stand-by display, the latest information is received and a ticker also appears on the stand-by display.
- When 2in1 is used, resetting is required for each mode. Note that a ticker or the i-Channel list is reset regardless of modes.

## i-concier

i-concier is a service to support your life like a butler or concierge. It stores a variety of your information (area information of your residence, schedules, ToruCa, phonebook, etc.) and offers you information that suits your preferences of your living area and hobby in the right time. Also, it can automatically update schedules and ToruCa stored in FOMA terminal and automatically add useful information such as shop hours to the phonebook. Machi-chara (a character on the stand-by display) informs you of i-concier information on the stand-by display.

- i-concier is a charged service requiring subscription (Subscription is required subscription of i-mode).
- If you do not subscribe Data Security Service (→P113), when you subscribe i-concier, you subscribe Data Security Service, too.
- There are 2 types of information; the one is provided by DOCOMO and the other is provided by IP (Information Provider). For the information provided by DOCOMO, a packet communication fee for receiving is not charged. For the information provided by IP (Information Provider), a packet communication fee is required for receiving separately.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to use detail information.

- To use i-concier overseas, International Settings require to be set. "利用しない (Not use)" is set by default, so select **MR** [i-concier] → **MR** → "設定 (Settings)" → "その他共通設定 (Other common settings)" → "海外利用設定 (International Settings)" to change the settings for using i-concier overseas. For overseas use, a packet communication fee is charged for both receiving and viewing detail information. Also, for overseas use, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some contents (information, i-schedule, etc.) besides i-concier monthly service fee.
- Automatic updating i-schedule/ToruCa/phonebook requires a packet communication fee separately.
- For details of i-concier, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Downloading Schedule/i-schedule→P164

## Receiving information

### When information is received

When FOMA terminal is in the service area, information is received automatically.

- Received information is saved up to 50 items in the information list of i-concier. When exceeding the limit, items are overwritten chronologically.

#### 1 Information is received

- **MR** or **MR** lights, the light is turned on or blinks, and i-concier ring alert sounds then the information is displayed.
  - When multiple pieces of information are received, **MR** or **MR** blinks for 15 seconds.
  - When information is selected, information list of i-concier or a linked site is displayed or the screen displayed before receiving information reappears depending on information.
  - Press **CLR** or **MR** to return to the screen displayed before receiving information.
  - When multiple pieces of information are received, the latest piece appears on stand-by display.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When Information display is set to "Not display", the information is not displayed.
- For some information,  or  lights, the light is turned on or blinks, and i-concier ring alert does not sound.
- When information is received during another operation, the terminal acts according to Display priority of mail. When "Show message" is selected, a message indicating that information arrived appears.
- While information is displayed, Power saved mode is canceled temporarily.

## Displaying i-concier details

You can display details of received information and display Scheduler or ToruCa of FOMA terminal from i-concier menu easily.

<Example> Displaying details of information

### 1 [i-concier]

The i-concier information list is displayed.

### 2 Select a piece of information

- Some information pieces may have schedule or ToruCa attached or contain a link to a site that provides more detailed or related information. To view the content, select an icon.
- When a schedule or ToruCa menu is selected by pressing , Scheduler or ToruCa of FOMA terminal can be displayed.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Some contents cannot be operated by pointer. In this case, perform an operation after setting Pointer Display of i-modeBrowserSetting/FullBrowser Setting of i-mode settings to "OFF". →P165

## Information display

### Setting display for information

You can set whether to display information on the stand-by display when i-concier information is received.

### 1 [Settings & NW services] or

- When moving picture/i-motion or i-appli is set to stand-by display and "Display" is selected, a confirmation screen for canceling the stand-by display settings appears.

Before using camera .....	178
Shooting still images with Camera .....	<b>Still camera</b> 180
Shooting moving pictures with Camera .....	<b>Movie camera</b> 184
Recording voice with Sound recorder .....	<b>Sound recorder</b> 185
Setting image size and saving method of still images/moving pictures .....	<b>Image settings/Recording settings</b> 186
Changing settings for shooting .....	186
Sending still image shot during call .....	190
Using bar code reader .....	<b>Bar code reader</b> 190

## Copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use of photographs or movies and site or website information obtained by using FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When releasing shot or recorded work on Internet websites, use with care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



**Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking photos and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

## Before using camera

- Shutter sound is emitted even when "Silent" is set for volume settings or in Silent mode or Public mode.
- If no operations are performed for approximately 3 minutes during shooting stand-by, camera ends.
- For Still camera, contrast is corrected automatically while shooting a subject against the sun etc.
- There are some unavailable functions or settings when Camera is activated from phonebook, mail or i-αppli.
- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before taking photos.
- Be careful not to cover the lens with fingers when shooting images.
- Be careful of hand movement. Though FOMA terminal provides shake reduce function, it may become less effective for some shooting environment and/or object. Hold FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move; or use of Auto timer function with FOMA terminal placed in a stable location is recommended. Auto timer is only available when shooting still images.
- There is some time lag after the shutter tone sounds and until the actual shooting takes place. Do not move FOMA terminal for a while after you hear shutter sound.
- Images shot with the camera with i-αppli are saved in the i-αppli ("i-mode") folder or "Deco-mail picture" folder for some i-αppli). In some cases, automatically sent to the server.
- If battery power is low before saving shot image, the shot image is discarded.
- As the camera consumes the battery power very quickly, do not leave the camera activated for a long time or do not leave shot images unsaved for a long time.

## ◆ Precautions for using camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Images shot under very low light intensity contain increased noise such as white lines, but it is not a malfunction.

- If FOMA terminal is left in a warm place or exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, images to be shot may be deteriorated.
- When attempting to take a photo of a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp, images may become dark or degraded.
- Though F-08A can shoot still images and moving pictures in the water of a swimming pool, each function of camera may not get the maximum performance underwater. Before shooting underwater, carefully read the description of waterproofness. →P19
- For some characteristics of the lens, distorted images are displayed.
- Shooting images under illumination flickering at high frequency such as fluorescent lamp, mercury vapor lamp or sodium vapor lamp may cause the screen to flicker or stripe patterns to appear on the screen, which is called flicker phenomena, giving different coloring for some shooting timings. Flickers or stripes may be reduced by adjusting the brightness for shooting.
- Images shot may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness.
- If you shoot a fast moving object, the position of the object in the image may differ slightly from the position displayed on the screen when the shutter tone sounded.
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects when shooting a moving picture, the image may be blurred.
- When Movie camera and Sound recorder are used, the sound is recorded from the microphone. Do not cover it with your fingers.
- Some settings may require extra time for displaying shooting screen.

## ◆ Still image/Moving picture files

### Still image file

File format	Extension
JPEG (Exif format, compatible with PRINT Image Matching III <sup>*1</sup> )	jpg

### Moving picture file

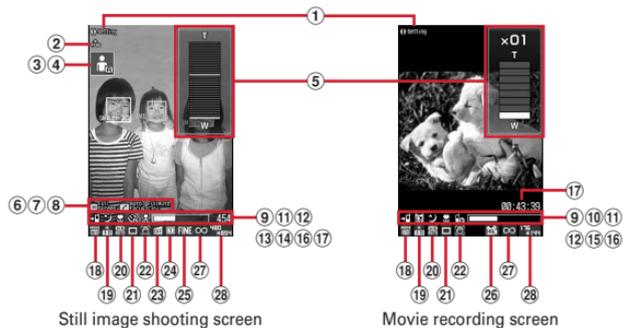
File format	Encoding method	Extension
MP4 (MobileMP4)	Video : MPEG4, H.264 <sup>*2</sup> Sound : AAC LC	3gp

\*1 Not supported when Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch".

\*2 Encoding method for image size of "VGA (640×480)".

- Shooting date/time is automatically set to Display name/Title/File name, but it can be changed before or after saving. →P180, 184, 278
- The extension added to the file name is not displayed on FOMA terminal.

## ◆ Shooting screens



\* The recording screen of Sound recorder is identical with the moving picture shooting screen, however, some icons are not displayed.

### ① Operation guidance when shooting→P180

: Indicate settings by using icon is available with .

### ② Sense orientation→P186

: Top of  $\triangle$  indicates upward.

### ③ Auto optimized shooting mode→P182

: Standard : Portrait : Landscape : Night scene : Macro

### ④ Skin tone enhance and Eye enhance (Scene mode/effect)→P187

: Skin tone enhance : Eye enhance-Low : Eye enhance-Hi

: Eye+Skin enhance-Low : Eye+Skin enhance-Hi

### ⑤ Zoom→P186

: Zoom in : Normal

### ⑥ Full-screen/Standard screen view switch operation guidance→P189

/ : Indicate switching screen view is available with .

### ⑦ Auto focus (Manual)→P183

: Indicate activating auto focus with .

: Focusing / : Success/Failure

### ⑧ Full auto focus→P183

: Full auto focus is ON

: Full auto focus is OFF

### ⑨ Memory to save→P186

: FOMA terminal : microSD card

### ⑩ Recording type→P186

: Video + Voice : Voice only

### ⑪ Night mode→P187

: Night mode:ON

### ⑫ Macro shooting→P187

: Macro shooting ON

### ⑬ Auto timer→P189

/ / / : 2 seconds/5 seconds/10 seconds/15 seconds

### ⑭ Smile-finder, Face detection→P189

: Smile finder OFF (only face detection)

/ / : Group (70%/50%/30% SmileRate)

/ / : Single (70%/50%/30% SmileRate)

: Face detection OFF

### ⑮ Compatible mode→P190

: CompatibleMode:ON

### ⑯ Indicator

During shooting stand-by : Usage ratio of memory space at the saving destination (available space on microSD card may not become 0 even if no files are saved).

During auto timer countdown : Remaining time before shutter clicks.

During moving picture shooting : The rate of the currently recorded movie size to the file size set in Size restrictions.

### ⑰ Counter

During shooting stand-by : Approximate number of images/recording time that can be saved under the current settings.

During auto timer countdown : Remaining time before shutter clicks.

During shooting in Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) and Panorama : The number of images currently shot and savable number of images.

During moving picture shooting : Elapsed time/Remaining time (approximate)

## 18 Scene mode/effect → P187

- Still camera

**MODE** **OFF** : Auto **MODE** **STD** : Standard **👤** : Portrait **🏞️** : Landscape  
**🌃** : Night scene **📷** : Backlight **🏃** : Sport **ABC** : Texts **ISO** : High sensitivity  
**📷** : Monotone **📷** : Sepia **📷** : Monochrome sketch **📷** : Colored sketch  
**👤** : Skin tone enhance **👁️** : Eye enhance-Lo **👁️** : Eye enhance-Hi  
**👤** : Eye+Skin enhance-Lo **👤** : Eye+Skin enhance-Hi

- Movie camera

**MODE** **STD** : Standard **🏞️** : Landscape **📷** : Backlight **🏃** : Sports **📷** : Monotone  
**📷** : Sepia

## 19 Brightness → P188

**+**2 / **+**1 / **0** / **-**1 / **-**2 : +2 / +1 ±0 / -1 / -2

## 20 White balance → P188

**WB** **MODE** : Auto **☀️** : Sunlight **☁️** : Cloudy **💡** : Fluorescent light **💡** : Bulb light

## 21 Frame → P189

**📷** : Set **📷** : Canceled

## 22 Reduce shake → P188

**📷** : ON **📷** : OFF

## 23 Correcting skew → P188

**ABC** : Typed letter **📷** : Hand writing **OFF** : OFF

## 24 Continuous/Panorama shooting → P183

**📷** : Continuous (Auto) **📷** : Continuous (Manual) **📷** : 4 frames (Auto)  
**📷** : 4 frames (Manual) **📷** : Panorama **📷** : OFF (Shoot 1 image)

## 25 Image quality → P186

**FINE** : Fine **ST** : Standard **ECON** : Economy

## 26 Movie quality → P186

**📷** : XQ (Extra high) **📷** : HQ (High quality) **📷** : STD (Standard)  
**📷** : LP (Long play)

## 27 Size restriction → P186

**📷** : None **📷** : Msg attach:Large **📷** : Msg attach:Small

## 28 Image size → P186

- Still camera

**176** **540** : QCIF **240** **320** : V-QVGA **640** **480** : H-VGA **480** **640** : V-VGA  
**480** **640** : Stand-by **168** **1280** : WXGA **1080** **1920** : FullHD **1456** **2592** : 3.8M **1944** **2592** : 5M

- Movie camera

**176** **540** : QCIF **320** **240** : QVGA **640** **480** : VGA

## ❖ Setting using icons on display

By using icons (18-28) on the shooting screen (→P179), you can change the settings directly.

<Example> Setting a frame

### 1 On the shooting screen, **📷** or **4**

Frame name **📷** : Switching by **📷**  
Icon **📷** : Switching by **📷**

Keypad compatible number



### 2 **📷**

Returning to the shooting screen without changing settings : **CLR**

## Still camera

### Shooting still images with Camera

### 1 **📷**

Enters shooting stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.

### 2 Check the settings and frame the shot

- When Smile-finder is set to other than "Face detection OFF", people's faces are detected, and a face detection frame and smile rate are displayed. →P189
- When Sense orientation is "ON", the orientation of still image to be saved changes automatically according to the orientation of FOMA terminal. →P186
- Auto optimized shooting mode can be used to shoot. →P182
- Auto focus can be used to shoot. →P182
- Settings for shooting can be changed. →P186

Checking saved still images : **📷**

Still images in the saving destination set in Image settings can be viewed.

Displaying image →P256, 272

- **CLR** on the list screen of still image or the folder : Return to shooting stand-by.

### 3 or

The shutter tone sounds and still image is shot, then light turns on in red and a confirmation screen for saving the still image appears. For continuous shooting, 4 frames shooting or Panorama shooting, the shutter tone sounds each time an image is shot and the light turns on repeatedly in red, yellow, green, blue, purple and orange in order.

**Shooting automatically when a subject smiles (while setting Smile-finder) :**  or 

A subject is focused and the smile finder is activated. While it is active, a smile finder icon blinks.

When a smile rate of a subject reaches the set value, a still image is shot automatically.

-  or  while it is active : Shoot
-  or **CLR** while it is active : Cancel
- Setting procedure of Smile-finder→P189

#### **In Continuous (manual), 4 frames (Manual), Panorama**

Repeat Step 3 for the number of images set to be shot.

Press  to cancel shooting before the set number of images are shot. Go to Step 4 for Continuous (Manual) or Panorama with multiple images already shot. For 4 frames (Manual) or Panorama with only 1 image already shot, the shooting stand-by reappears and still images already shot are discarded.

### 4 Check the shot still image

- Still images of QVGA (240×320) or smaller are displayed enlarged. Press  to display in actual size, and press  to enlarge again.

#### **For Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)**

- Each time you press , a single image and thumbnails toggle.
- When a single image is displayed, pressing  switches to previous or next still image.
- Only a single image shot with Continuous (Manual) is not displayed in thumbnails.

**Reshooting :** **CLR** or 

**Switching view to actual size :** 

- Press  to scroll the screen.
- Press  to switch displaying/hiding the guide area.

- Press any of **CLR**, , ,  or  to cancel.
- Only images of WXGA (768×1280) or larger can be displayed in the actual size.

**Scrolling automatically (for Panorama) :** 

**Attaching to mail :** 

A confirmation screen for saving appears.

- Saved to FOMA terminal even when the saving destination is microSD.
- Depending on image size, a confirmation screen may appear for converting to QVGA size.
- For some Image size and Size restrictions, a confirmation screen for file size adjustment appears. Selecting "No limit" causes the image to be saved without size adjustment, and selecting "Msg attach:Small" causes the image to be reduced to 90 Kbytes or less in size and saved.
- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.

**Setting as the stand-by display :**  **2** **1** ▶ **"Yes"**

The still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set to the stand-by display.

- When image size is QVGA (240×320) or smaller, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

**Saving to phonebook entry :**  **2** ▶ **2** or **3** ▶ **"Yes"**

Still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook data entry screen appears. Only images of QCIF(176×144) can be saved.

- To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be saved to phonebook.

**Changing the title :**  **3** **1** ▶ **Enter the title** ▶ 

- Up to 31 characters can be entered (up to 30 characters for continuously shot images).
- Display name is changed. The display name can be changed after saving.→ 278

### Adjusting brightness or color balance :

The edit screen appears. → P258

• Images cannot be adjusted in the following cases.

- When the image size is H/V-VGA (640×480, 480×640) or larger
- When the frame is set for 4-frame shooting
- For continuous Panorama
- When Scene mode/effect is set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch"

### Switching normal/mirror image (with in-camera only) :

Switching the saving destination between FOMA terminal and microSD card :

Displaying the list of saved images :    or 

## 5 or

The shot still image is saved in "Camera" (for microSD card, "My Picture") folder of My Picture.

Saving a mirror image (with in-camera only) :   

• A mirror image cannot be saved when a frame is set to the image.

**Saving only the displayed still image (in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) :**  (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

- A still image at cursor position is saved for thumbnail display.
- When shooting with in-camera, select "Save normal" or "Save mirror".

**Selecting selected still images to be saved from still images shot continuously (for thumbnail display in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual)) :**

①    ▶  to cancel saving of still image

- Press  to zoom in the still image at the cursor position. Press  or  to return to thumbnail display.

②  ▶ "Yes"

The selected still images are saved.

- When shooting with in-camera, select "Save normal" or "Save mirror".

### ✓ INFORMATION

• When shooting with the following settings, it takes a time for operation by pressing  ,  on a confirmation screen for saving.

- Scene mode/effect is "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi"
- Reduce shake is "Auto"
- Skew correction is other than "OFF"

• In the following cases, Sense orientation is unavailable.

- For shooting in Panorama
  - When the second frame or later is shot in 4 frames (Manual)
  - When Motion sensor is set to "OFF"
- Saving shot still images takes time for some image sizes, quality or the destinations to save.
- Shooting still image during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- During still image shooting stand-by, when a call is received, the incoming call screen appears.
- If the screen is switched by an incoming call or alarm immediately after shooting, the image may be destroyed.

## ◆ Using auto optimized shooting mode

For still camera shooting, setting Scene mode/effect (→P187) to "Auto" switches modes (Standard, Portrait, Landscape, Night scene, Macro) automatically by recognizing shooting subjects. Recognized scene is displayed with auto optimized shooting mode icon (→P179).

And when camera is rested at shooting subject, auto focus is activated. An orange focus frame appears to focus camera automatically.

- When Continuous(Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) is set, scene mode cannot be switched to "Night scene".

## ◆ Using Auto focus

To shoot still images, you can use full auto focus or manual auto focus to focus automatically.

- The distance that you can focus on the object by auto focus is 30 cm or longer. Note that when simultaneously using Macro shooting mode, the distance is 8 to 40 cm.
- In the following cases, Auto focus may not work.
  - When shooting while moving FOMA terminal
  - When shooting a matte object or moving object
  - When shooting in a dark place or shooting in a place where there is light in the shooting area
- When shooting with in-camera or setting Scene mode/effect to "Night scene", this function is unavailable.

## ❖ Switching ON/OFF of full auto focus

When full auto focus is set to "ON", auto focus is activated automatically for shooting, and the shutter clicks after the object is focused. The focus confirmation tone does not sound.

- When face detection frame is displayed, the green frame is used to focus. When face detection frame is not displayed, the center of the screen is focused.
- Full auto focus ON/OFF cannot be switched when Scene mode/effect is "Auto" or "Night scene", or when the Smile-finder is set.

1 On the still image shooting screen,   

## ❖ Activating auto focus manually

1 On the still image shooting screen, 

When face detection frame is displayed, the green frame is used to focus. When face detection frame is not displayed, the center of the screen is focused. When focused, a confirmation tone sounds.

The next procedure→P181 Step 3 and the following steps in "Shooting still images with Camera"

- When face detection frame is not displayed, an orange focus frame appears. It changes to "+" when focused.

Canceling : 

## ◆ Setting Continuous/4 frames/Panorama shooting

**Continuous (Auto)/Continuous (Manual)** : The set number of images are shot.

Images are saved in created animation format when the saving destination is set to FOMA terminal and saved as individual still images to microSD card.

**4 frames (Auto)/4 frames (Manual)** : 4 continuous images are shot and saved as 1 still image composed with four-frame.

**Panorama** : 2-8 still images continuously shot shifting the direction of the camera little by little can be form 1 still image connecting the images. During the shooting, approximately one fifth of the previously shot still image is transparently displayed on the seam. Shoot the next image overlaying the transparent part. To connect horizontally, shoot rightward continuously, and to connect vertically, shoot downward continuously.



Overlap the transparent parts

- Still images can be shot at interval of approximately 0.4 seconds in Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto). However, the interval of shooting may differ depending on the shooting condition.
- During Panorama shooting, the transparent part for the next shooting can be checked with grid line displayed.
- Available image sizes and number of images to be shot are as follows.

Image size	Continuous (Auto) Continuous (Manual)	4 frames (Auto) 4 frames (Manual)	Panorama
QCIF (176×144)	2-9*	—	—
QVGA (240×320)	2-9*	4	8
H/V-VGA (640×480, 480×640)	2-6*	4	4
Stand-by (480×854)	2-6*	4	3

\* Can be set in Continuous shot photos of Image settings. However, even if a number larger than the maximum is set, only up to the maximum can be shot.

1 On the still image shooting screen,     - 

- While Panorama shooting stand-by, press  to switch direction to connect. When an icon in the lower left of the guide area is  or , the image is connected horizontally, and when it is  or , the image is connected vertically.

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- When Scene mode/effect is "Monochrome sketch", "Colored sketch", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo-/Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo-/Hi", Continuous, 4 frame or Panorama cannot be set.
- When Auto timer is set, Continuous (Manual) or 4 frames (Manual) cannot be set.

- Panorama cannot be set in the following cases.
  - Shooting with in-camera
  - Starting still camera from phonebook or i-appli
  - Frame in use
  - During i-appli
  - Size restriction other than "None"
  - Auto timer activated
- When 1 or selected images shot in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual) are selected and saved, the images not selected are discarded.
- You can separate an image in create animation format into individual still images. A number from "-1" to "-9" is added to each image file name. →P258
- During continuous shooting or 4 frame shooting, when a call is received, the time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes, FOMA terminal is closed, the following actions are performed.
  - Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) shooting continues, and a confirmation screen for saving appears after the call or alarm ends.
  - Continuous (Manual) shooting is interrupted, and a confirmation screen for saving appears.
  - 4 frames (Manual) shooting is interrupted, and still images already shot are discarded.
  - No ring alert or alarm sound is emitted before the shutter sound ends.
- During panorama shooting, when a call is received, the time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes, the shooting stops and the shot still images up to that point are discarded.
- When you close FOMA terminal during panorama shooting, the shooting stops. If a still image is shot before closing the terminal, it is discarded. If multiple still images are shot, a confirmation screen for saving them appears.
- Options should be set for in-camera/out-camera separately.
- The maximum image sizes for connecting in Panorama are as follows. Note that, connection sizes depend on the shooting conditions.

Image size	Maximum image size after connection
QVGA (240×320)	1,584×320 / 2,112×240
H-VGA (640×480)	2,176×480 / 1,632×640
V-VGA (480×640)	1,632×640 / 2,176×480
Stand-by (480×854)	1,248×854 / 2,220×480

## Movie camera

### Shooting moving pictures with Camera

#### 1 (1 sec. or more)

Shooting stand-by starts, and the light blinks in blue.

#### 2 Check the settings and frame the shot

- Settings for shooting can be changed. →P186

**Checking saved moving picture :** 

The moving picture in the saving destination set in Recording settings can be viewed.

Displaying moving picture →P259, 272

-  on the moving picture or folder list screen : Return to shooting/recording stand-by.

#### 3 or

Shutter sound is emitted,  appears on the display and recording starts. The light blinks in red.

**Pausing/Resuming :** During shooting/recording, 

When paused, the light turns on in green and  switches to .

- When paused or resumed, the shutter sound is emitted.

#### 4 or

The Shutter tone sounds, shooting/recording ends, and a confirmation screen for saving the moving picture appears.

- When restricted size or time is exceeded, shooting/recording ends. Time is limited to 180 minutes when Codec type is set to "Video + Voice" or "Video only" (80 minutes when movie quality is "XQ" and image size is "VGA (640×480)"), and 720 minutes when Recording Type is "Voice only".

#### 5 Check the shot moving picture

**Playing :** 

**Reshooting :**  or 

#### Attaching to mail :

A saving confirmation screen appears.

- Even when the memory to save is microSD card, the shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal.
- When file size exceeds 2 Mbytes, it cannot be attached to mail.

#### Setting as the stand-by display (stand-by i-motion) : **2** ▶ "Yes"

The moving picture is saved to FOMA terminal and set to the stand-by display.

- When "Yes (Zoom)" is selected, moving picture is enlarged fitting to the screen size and appears on Stand-by display.
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.
- When the memory to save is microSD card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.
- When Recording type is "Voice only", the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

#### Saving to phonebook entry : **2** ▶ **2** or **3** ▶ "Yes"

The moving picture is saved to FOMA terminal and phonebook data entry screen appears.

- The movie can be saved to phonebook data, only when the Recording Type is "Video only".
- To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- Saving as phonebook images is disabled in the following cases.
  - When the memory to save is microSD card
  - When the image size is "VGA (640×480)"

#### Changing the title : **3** ▶ Enter the title (up to 31 characters) ▶

- Display name and title are changed. The display name can be changed after saving. → 278

#### Switching the saving destination between FOMA terminal and microSD card :

 **5**

- For a file whose size is 2 Mbytes or smaller, the saving destination can be switched.

#### Displaying the list of saved moving picture : **6** ▶ **1** or **2**

**6**  or 

Shot moving pictures are saved in "Camera" folder of i-motion/Movie (if the destination is microSD card, moving pictures are saved to "Movie" and voice is "Other movies").

#### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When Recording Type is set to "Voice only" in Recording settings, Sound recorder starts.
- Some data cannot be recorded to the maximum size set in Size restrictions.
- Data may not be saved when battery runs out while shooting or recording data.
- If the following cases occur during recording, a confirmation screen for saving appears.
  - When a call is received
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule come
  - When FOMA terminal is closed
- Shooting is interrupted if battery level becomes very low.
- If an alarm or battery alarm sounds while shooting/recording and shooting/recording is interrupted, the alarm may be recorded at the end of the saved moving picture.

### Sound recorder

## Recording voice with Sound recorder

- If setting Recording Type to "Voice only" from Recording settings when recording a movie, Sound recorder starts.
- Precautions on using → P185 INFORMATION in "Shooting moving pictures with Camera"

#### [LifeKit] **5**

Enters recording stand-by state, and the light blinks in blue.

The next procedure → P184 Step 2 and the following steps in "Shooting moving pictures with Camera"

Switching to Still camera : 

Switching to Movie camera : 

## Setting image size and saving method of still images/moving pictures

- The functions that can be set differ between still image and moving picture.

### 1 On the still image shooting screen, or on the moving picture shooting screen,

- When Recording Type is "Voice only", press   on the recording screen.

### 2 Set required items

**Image size** : Set image size for shooting/recording.

- For still image shooting, a setting screen appears. Available functions can be checked by the icon appearing on the bottom of the screen.
- In-camera and out-camera are set separately, however, for moving picture shooting, in-camera is fixed to QCIF (176×144).

**Size restrict/restrictions** : Set the size limitation of file to shoot.

- Setting "Msg attach:Large" restricts file size to 2 Mbytes.
- Setting "Msg attach:Small" restricts the file size to 90 Kbytes for still image shooting and to 500 Kbytes for moving picture shooting.
- For shooting still images, set this option for in-camera and out-camera separately.

**Quality** : Set quality of still image to shoot.

**Quality** : Set quality of moving picture to shoot.

- Set this option for moving picture shooting and sound recorder separately. "LP (Long play)" and "XQ (Extra high)" cannot be set for Sound recorder.

**Recording Type** : Set recording type.

**Continuous shot photos** : Set the number to shoot in Continuous (Auto) or Continuous (Manual). → P183

**Auto save** : Set whether to save automatically after shooting or recording.

When setting to "Yes", saving is performed without displaying the confirmation screen for shooting or recording.

**Save to** : Set the saving destination of shot image or recorded voice.

**Shutter sound** : Select the sound to be emitted when shooting.

- When moving the cursor to the shutter sound, the sound is emitted.
- This setting also applies to settings of Shutter sound/Movie camera sound in System sound.

 **key assign** : Set a function to be assigned to .

**Sense orientation** : Set whether to switch image orientation for saving automatically.

**Display light time** : Set light time.

- When setting to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- On the still image settings screen, image size selection screen or recording settings screen, press  to display the approximate number of images that can be shot or approximate recording time for movies/sounds.
- With Still camera, the image size larger than WXGA (768×1280) and "Msg attach:Small" for size restriction cannot be set at the same time.
- When setting to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" in Scene mode/effect, you cannot set the size of WVGA (768×1,280) or larger.
- When i-appli is activated, the following sizes cannot be set.  
Still image shooting : FullHD (1,080×1,920) or larger  
Moving picture shooting : VGA (640×480)
- The screen has the highest brightness with Display light time set to "Always on" and Brightness of FOMA terminal display (→P88) set to "Auto adjust".

## Changing settings for shooting

### ◆ Zooming

Change shooting magnifications and shoot an object by zooming.

- You can change the magnification while shooting a moving picture.
- Display magnifications available for each image size on out-camera are as follows.

Image size	Maximum magnification display (times)	
	Still camera	Movie camera
QCIF (176×144)	Approx. 16.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 16.0 (8 scales)
QVGA (240×320)	Approx. 8.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 8.0 (5 scales)

Image size	Maximum magnification display (times)	
	Still camera	Movie camera
H-VGA (640×480)	Approx. 4.0 (32 scales)	Approx. 4.0 (3 scales)
V-VGA (480×640)		
Stand-by (480×854)		
WXGA (768×1,280)	Approx. 4.0 (6 scales)	—
FullHD (1,080×1,920)	Approx. 2.0 (6 scales)	—
3.8M (1456×2,592)		
5M (1,944×2,592)		

- Display magnification available for still images and moving pictures on in-camera is approximately 2.0 (2 scales) regardless of the image size.

### 1 On the shooting screen,

Zooming adjustment panel appears and the scale is increased/decreased according to zooming out/in.

- If the slider goes over the orange scale of zooming adjustment panel when shooting a still image, the scale turns into yellow. The yellow scale indicates that an image quality is deteriorated by zooming.

## ◆ Switching out-camera and in-camera

### 1 On the shooting screen,

- Available sizes for in-camera are as follows.  
Still image shooting : QCIF (176×144), H-VGA (640×480)  
Moving picture shooting : QCIF (176×144)
- Cameras cannot be switched when the quality is set to "XQ(Extra high)" during moving picture shooting.
- After cameras are switched, settings such as Scene mode/effect are retained.
- During moving picture shooting, cameras can be switched during a pause if the image size is identical for in-camera and out-camera.
- When  key assign (→P186) is set to "Movie camera"/"Still camera", press  for 1 second or more to switch cameras.
- An image shot with in-camera is displayed as a mirror image, however, it is saved as a normal image.

## ◆ Switching night mode ON/OFF

If you select "ON", the sensitivity of the camera increases so that you will be able to take clear images even in a dark place.

- The mode is not switchable when Scene mode/effect is "Night scene" or "Sport".

### 1 On the still image shooting screen, or on the moving picture shooting screen,

When you select "ON", the light turns on.

## ◆ Switching macro shooting ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can focus on an object approximately 7-10 cm away from camera.

- With auto focus function, you can focus on an object approximately 8-40 cm away from camera.
- When shooting with in-camera or setting Scene mode/effect to "Auto", this function is unavailable.

### 1 On the shooting screen,

## ◆ Setting Scene mode/effect

- Auto optimized shooting mode→P182
- Effects of "Monochrome sketch", "Colored sketch", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo-/Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo-/Hi" can be checked after shooting/recording.

### 1 On the shooting screen, ▶ Select a scene/effect

- When setting to "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo-/Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo-/Hi", an icon is displayed on the shooting screen (→P179) according to your selection.

#### Selecting Skin tone enhance and Eye enhance : On the still image shooting screen, ▶ -

Scene mode/effect easily enables you to make the skin more smooth and to make the eye bigger.

- "Auto" is selected for Scene mode/effect if you select "Eye+Skin enhance-OFF". However, "Standard" is set for shooting with in-camera.

## ✓INFORMATION

- When shooting with in-camera, "Auto" cannot be set.
- When Continuous (Auto) or 4 frames (Auto) is set for still image shooting, "Night scene" cannot be set.
- Only images of Stand-by/WVGA (480×854) or smaller can be set to "Monochrome sketch" or "Colored sketch" for still image shooting.
- For still image shooting, "Monochrome sketch", "Colored sketch", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" and "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi" cannot be set with Continuous/4 frames/Panorama shooting.
- When setting to other than "Auto" or "Standard", white balance settings cannot be changed. And, the settings of Brightness are retained until switched to "Auto" or "Standard".
- Effects of "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" and "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi" may not work in the following cases or other shooting conditions.
  - A face is turned away or tilted
  - A face is partially covered with eye glasses, a hat, mask or shadow
  - A face is extremely small, large or dark against the entire screen
  - A face is at the edge of the screen

## ◆ Adjusting brightness

1 On the shooting screen, 2 1 ▶ 1 - 5

## ◆ Adjusting white balance

- You can adjust it when Scene mode/effect is set to "Auto" or "Standard".

1 On the shooting screen, 2 2 ▶ 1 - 5

## ◆ Adjusting flicker

Adjusting flicker can suppress the flicker phenomena which cause flickering or fringe patterns on the screen under light such as fluorescent lights.

1 On the shooting screen, 2 3 ▶ 1 - 3

**Auto** : Adjust automatically to eliminate flickering.

**50 Hz (East-Japan)** : Adjust to match the power frequency in eastern Japan.

**60 Hz (West-Japan)** : Adjust to match the power frequency in western Japan.

- If flickering still remains in "Auto", set according to the area you stay.
- This setting is retained even when Camera is ended. This setting also applies to the flicker adjustment of Videophone and Bar code reader.

## ✓INFORMATION

- The flicker may not disappear in a very bright place such as under fluorescent lights.
- When the shake reduce function is used with Adjust flicker set to "Auto", Adjust flicker may not function satisfactorily. In this case, it is recommended to set Adjust flicker according to the area you stay.

## ◆ Restoring default settings for Brightness

- The settings of Scene mode/effect, Brightness, White balance and Adjust flicker are reset to the default settings.

1 On the shooting screen, 2 4 ▶ "Yes"

## ◆ Switching Reduce shake ON/OFF

1 On the still image shooting screen, 4 1 or on the moving picture shooting screen, 4

## ✓INFORMATION

- The setting is "OFF" in the following cases.
  - During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama
  - Shooting with in-camera
  - When Still camera is activated from i-appli or while i-appli is running
- The effect of auto correction is not achieved for some subject or shooting condition.

## ◆ Correcting skew

For shooting a still image, correct skew of images to make characters more easy to read.

1 On the still image shooting screen, 4 2 ▶ 1 - 3

## ✓INFORMATION

- This function cannot be used with the following functions or settings.
  - During Continuous/4 frames/Panorama
  - Shooting with in-camera
  - When Still camera is activated from i-appli or while i-appli is running
  - When Scene mode/effect is "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi"
  - When Image size is QVGA (240×320, 320×240) or smaller

- Skew correction function cannot completely correct camera skew. The effect depends on the object and/or shooting states. Some still images may be more natural if not adjusted.
- It is recommended to use auto-focus when using skew correction.

### ◆ Shooting with frame added

- Frames are available for the following sizes.  
Still image shooting : Stand-by (480×854) or smaller  
Moving picture shooting : QCIF (176×144)

**1** On the still image shooting screen, **7** **3** or on the moving picture shooting screen, **3**

**2** **1** ▶ Select a frame

Canceling : **2**

- You can also cancel by pressing **4** for 1 second or more on the shooting screen.

Rotating : **3**

Updating : **4**

### ◆ Switching full-screen and standard screen modes

In full-screen mode, icons and the guide area are not displayed.

**1** On the still image shooting screen,

### ◆ Switching still image shooting and moving picture shooting

- Switching is not available in continuous panorama shooting.

**1** On the shooting screen, (1 sec. or more)

- When key assign (→P186) is set to "Movie camera"/"Still camera", press to switch shooting modes.

### ◆ Setting Auto timer

You can set so that the shutter clicks after specified time elapses.

- When set, countdown starts while shooting, and the light blinks in green synchronized with the countdown sound. The countdown sound and blinking of the light go faster when the remaining time is reduced to a few seconds.

- With auto focus function, countdown starts after auto focus is activated. When using manual auto focus, focus is adjusted and countdown starts regardless of the setting of full auto focus.
- To cancel countdown, press .

**1** On the still image shooting screen, **5** ▶ **1** - **5**

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Countdown is canceled in the following cases.
  - When a call is received
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule come
  - When FOMA terminal is closed
- Auto timer is not available for Continuous (Manual), 4 frames (Manual) and Panorama.

### ◆ Setting Smile-finder or Face detection

You can use the face detection function to detect people's faces and to measure smile rates. Also, use of Smile-finder allows you to shoot a still image when a smile rate of a subject reaches the set value.

- The shooting procedure when using Smile-finder→P181 Step 3 in "Shooting still images with Camera"
- Face detection frame and smile rates are displayed on the detected faces and the brightness of face is adjusted automatically.
- Up to 10 face detection frames are displayed. The frame with the highest detection rate is displayed in green. Other frames are displayed in white.
- When a face is not detected, a white frame is displayed at the center of the screen.
- Switching is available only when Scene mode/effect is set to "Auto", "Standard", "Portrait", "Landscape", "Skin tone enhance", "Eye enhance-Lo/-Hi" or "Eye+Skin enhance-Lo/-Hi".
- This cannot be switched when shooting with in-camera or setting Skew correction to "OFF".
- When Auto timer is set, setting other than "Smile finder OFF" or "Face detection OFF" is unavailable.

**1** On the still image shooting screen, **3** ▶ **1** - **8**

**Smile finder OFF** : Only Face detection operates. Shoot using Auto focus.

**Group(70%, 50%, 30% SmileRate)** : Shoot when SmileRate of all people for detecting reaches the set rate.

**Single (70%, 50%, 30% SmileRate)** : Shoot when SmileRate of the person who is in the highest level of detection reaches the set rate.

**Face detection OFF** : Smile-finder or Face detection does not operate.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- A smile level guide of 70%, 50% and 30% SmileRate indicate big grin on one's face, big smile and smile respectively. However, detected rate varies between individuals.
- Face detection may not work in the following cases or under other shooting conditions.
  - A face is turned away or tilted
  - A face is partially covered with eye glasses, a hat, mask or shadow
  - A face is extremely small, large or dark against the entire screen
  - A face is at the edge of the screen

### ◆ Displaying/Hiding grid line

Grid is gridded straight lines that guide shooting. Grids are not displayed on the shot image.

- Grids cannot be displayed when setting a frame.

1 On the still image shooting screen, 

### ◆ Switching Compatible mode ON/OFF

When setting to "ON", you can shoot a moving picture that can be played regardless of the model of FOMA terminal.

- Size restrictions, Quality and Image size are restricted to "Msg attach:Small", "HQ(high quality)" or less and "QCIF(176×144)", respectively.

1 On the moving picture shooting screen,  

## Sending still image shot during call

- Even with the saving destination set to "microSD" in Image settings, images are saved to FOMA terminal.
- Still image cannot be sent if the saving destination is set to "microSD" and Auto save is set to "Yes" in Image settings.

1 During a call,   ▶ Shoot a still image

Shooting method→P180 "Shooting still images with Camera"

- Shot still images are displayed as thumbnails after continuous shooting. Move the cursor to a still image to send.
- When Auto save is "Yes" in Still image settings, a confirmation screen for attaching mail appears.
- If pressing  or , shooting ends and the talking screen reappears.

2  ▶ "Yes"

- Still image is saved in FOMA terminal and the mail creation screen appears.
- For some image sizes, a confirmation screen for converting to QVGA appears.
  - For some settings in Image sizes and Size restrictions, a confirmation screen for adjusting a file size appears. Selecting "No limit" saves the image without size adjustment, and selecting "Msg attach:Small" saves the image reduced to 90 Kbytes or smaller in size.
  - When the file size is 90 Kbytes or smaller, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the message text appears.
  - When the mail address of the other party is saved in phonebook, it is automatically entered as the destination.
  - When returning to the shooting screen without creating i-mode mail, press  or .

3 Edit the i-mode mail ▶ 

i-mode mail is sent and the shooting stand-by screen reappears.

### Bar code reader

## Using bar code reader

You can read and use information of JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code and CODE128 code. Up to 5 pieces of information can be saved.

- QR code cannot be scanned for some versions (type and size).
- A large width code may be unfocused and fail in recognition when trying to display the entire code on the screen. Such code is easily recognized when Auto focus is used or FOMA terminal is brought close to the center of the code until it is focused.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.
- You can activate it from the character entry screen and enter the scanned data.→ P312

## ■ JAN code

JAN code is a bar code representing a number with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. The bar code of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 (JAN13) can be read.

## ■ QR code

QR code is the 2-dimensional codes representing a string of alphanumeric, kanji, hiragana, katakana, pictograms or data such as melody and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.

## ■ NW7 code

A bar code representing alphanumeric characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

## ■ CODE39 code

A bar code representing alphanumeric characters and symbols with vertical lines (bars) of different widths. Bar code with up to 20 characters, a 2-character start symbol and a 2-character end symbol can be read.

## ■ CODE128 code

A bar code representing ASCII characters with vertical lines (bars) of different widths.

\* To read CODE128 code, downloading i-appli compatible with the code is required (→P241).  
Read codes following instructions displayed on the screen.

Example of JAN code



Information to be scanned  
"4942857315721"

Example of QR code



Information to be scanned  
"株式会社NTTドコモ (NTT DOCOMO, INC.)"

Example of NW7 code



Information to be scanned  
"A123456789012A"

Example of CODE39 code



Information to be scanned  
"\*123456ABC\*"

## ◆ Scanning codes

### 1 MF [LifeKit] 1

After Bar code reader starts, camera automatically switches to Macro shooting and zoom becomes ON. Hold out-camera approximately 7-10 cm away from the code to scan.

• During Bar code reader stand-by, the following operations are available.

: Zoom ON : Zoom OFF

: Switching Macro shooting OFF/ON (👁)

: Switching Auto focus

• Depending on the states, the auto focus icon changes as follows.

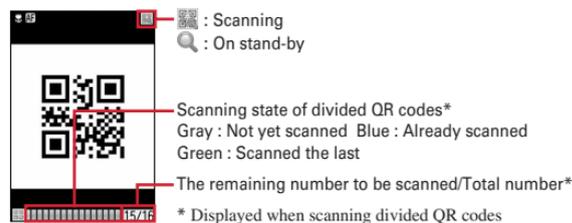
(black) : Adjusting focus (green) / (red) : Focus succeeded/failed

• Switch to Macro OFF before scanning large size codes. The readability of code may be raised by setting zoom OFF.

• In scanning stand-by, press (2) ▶ (1) - (3) to adjust flicker.  
Flicker adjustment→P188

### 2 Move out-camera over the code

The code is scanned automatically. A confirmation sound is played when scanning is complete and the scanned data appears.



• If scanned data exceeds 5,500 two-byte (11,000 one-byte) characters, exceeded characters are not displayed, but they are saved.

#### Scanning divided QR codes

When one data item is divided into multiple (up to 16) QR codes, scan them one by one following the instructions on the display.

• Canceling scanning : ▶ "Yes"

**Switching to still image shooting or moving picture shooting :** ▶ or

- When Bar code reader has not been started from Camera or the stand-by display, the switching is unavailable.

### 3 Use the scanned data

**Saving data :**

- Up to 5 items can be saved. When 5 items are already saved or there is insufficient memory space, a confirmation screen for deleting saved data appears.

**Rescanning code :**

**Copying text :** ▶ **Select a range to copy**

Copy/Paste information→P313

**Adding information to phonebook :** Move the cursor to **information** ▶ ▶ or ▶ or

- To update phonebook, select the party to save.

**Saving all data to phonebook at a time :** "Add to phonebook" ▶ or

The phonebook entry screen appears with the information entered.

**Creating i-mode mail :** Select a mail address or "Compose message"

**Connecting site or Internet website :** Select a URL ▶ "i-mode" or "Full Browser"

**Registering URL as bookmark :**

① Move the cursor to a URL ▶

- Select "Add bookmark" to save.

② Enter the title (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters) ▶ ▶ Select a folder to register

**Starting i-appli :** "Start i-appli"

**Making a call :** Select a phone number ▶ Set a condition for dialing ▶

Making a call under set conditions→P57

**Creating SMS :** Select a phone number ▶ Select Call type field ▶ ▶ ▶ "Yes"

**Saving a still image file :** Select a still image file ▶ "Save"

The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

- Selecting "Display" displays the still image file.

**Saving melody data :** Select melody data

The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

- When saving to phone, the saving destination is "Data transfer" folder of Melody.

**Saving ToruCa :** Select ToruCa

The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading data"

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- If the code is not scanned well, try to change the distance between the code and camera, the angle or direction of camera, or to use auto focus.
- In the following cases, the confirmation sound is not emitted when the code is read.
  - In Silent mode or Public mode (Drive mode)
  - When Keypad sound is set to "OFF" (including the setting of Personalized silent mode)
  - When "Operation sound" in Adjust volume is set to "Silent"
- When Bar code reader is activated from i-appli, the scanned data is saved and used by i-appli.

#### ◆ Using the scanned data saved

1 [LifeKit] ▶

#### 2 Select the scanned data

Using scanned data→P192 Step 3 in "Scanning codes"

**Deleting scanned data :** Move the cursor to the scanned data ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- A data file is named as scanned date/time + file number + extension. The extension is "jan" (JAN code), "qr" (QR code), "nw7" (NW7 code) or "c39" (CODE39 code). When there is already a data saved on the same date/time, the file number is incremented by 1. The file name cannot be changed.

1Seg .....	194
Before using 1Seg .....	195
Setting channels .....	195
Watching 1Seg .....	<b>Activate 1Seg</b> 196
Using i-appli program guide .....	199
Using Data Broadcasting .....	<b>Data broadcasting</b> 199
Using TV link .....	<b>TVlink</b> 200
Watching 1Seg with Multi window .....	200
Recording 1Seg .....	<b>Recording 1Seg</b> 201
Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program .....	<b>Watching reservation/Recording reservation</b> 203
Setting 1Seg watching/recording settings .....	<b>User setting</b> 205
Using Remote controller with microphone F01 .....	<b>Remote controller with microphone</b> 206

## 1Seg

**1Seg is a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service that allows mobile devices to receive broadcasted data along with images and sounds. You can also use i-mode to acquire detailed program information, participate in quiz programs, enjoy TV shopping, etc.**

- For details of "1Seg" service, refer to the following websites.

The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

PC : <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>

i-mode : <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>

### ◆ Using 1Seg

- 1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc. A communication fee for receiving video picture and sound is not required. Contact NHK for details on your NHK viewing fees.
- There are 2 types of information displayed in the data broadcasting area : "Data broadcasting" and "Data broadcasting site". "Data broadcasting" is displayed using airwave along with images and sounds; while "Data broadcasting site" is displayed by connecting to a site provided by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), etc., using information of data broadcasting. Sometimes, you may connect to "i-mode site" etc. You need to subscribe to i-mode to connect to the site.
- For viewing "Data broadcasting site", "i-mode site", etc., packet communication fees are charged. Some sites require information fees (i-mode pay sites).
- While watching 1Seg, ToruCa may be saved automatically. To download details from saved ToruCa, packet communication charges apply.

### ◆ Radio waves

1Seg is one of the broadcast services and a different type of radio waves (airwaves) from that of FOMA service is received. Therefore, regardless of whether you are in or out of FOMA service area, it cannot be received where airwaves do not reach or during broadcasting interruptions.

Also, even in FOMA service area, reception condition may be poor or reception may be unavailable in the following places.

- A place far from the tower that the airwaves are sent from
  - Mountain-ringed regions or a place between buildings where airwaves are interrupted by geography or buildings
  - Tunnel, underground or far back from a building where airwaves are weak or do not reach
- To receive stronger radio waves, try to move FOMA terminal closer or further from your body, or move to another location.

### ◆ Screen appearing when using 1Seg for the first time

When you use 1Seg for the first time, a confirmation screen for disclaimers appears. If you agree and then press "OK", the confirmation screen does not appear again.

### ◆ Storage area

Storage area is an area dedicated to 1Seg only in the terminal. Based on the settings made by TV broadcasting enterprises (stations), the storage area saves information entered by customers according to instructions of data broadcasting. Saved information may contain personal information such as answers to quizzes, membership number, gender, age, occupation, etc.

Saved information, without reentry, may be displayed when viewing data broadcasting sites or sent to TV broadcasting enterprises (stations).

Deleting storage area → P206

If UIM is replaced or un-inserted, a confirmation screen for initializing the storage area appears. Select "Yes" and initialize the storage area. When "No" is selected, services using the storage area are unavailable.

### ■ Screen appearing when reading storage area

When using information saved in the storage area while watching a program, "Use saved information? It may include information used by the same affiliate." appears. Select "Yes" to display no confirmation screens subsequently when reading saved information while watching the same program. Select "Yes (Always)" to display no confirmation screens subsequently also for different programs.

## Before using 1Seg

### ■ 1Seg watching procedures

- ① Create and set the channel list corresponding to the area where you watch 1Seg. → P195
- ② Start 1Seg. → P196

### ■ 1Seg antenna

The terminal has a built-in 1Seg antenna, and an entire body of the terminal can work as an antenna. To receive signals, minimize the covered part of FOMA terminal when holding it with your hands to watch 1Seg in better conditions. However, when FOMA terminal is closed, an antenna shown in the following illustration is used for reception. Do not cover it with your hands etc. while recording etc.



Antenna that is used when FOMA terminal is closed

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any loss or modification of saved contents resulting from malfunction, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal.

When changing the model of or repairing FOMA terminal, information (still images recorded by 1Seg, TVlink, information saved in the storage area, etc.) saved in the terminal cannot be transferred.

- Watching 1Seg long time while charging may reduce the battery pack lifetime.

## Setting channels

To watch 1Seg, you need to create a channel list of broadcasting stations and saved channels, and set it according to the area. Up to 10 items can be saved.

### ◆ Creating Channel list

Channel list can be created in either of the following ways.

**Use preset** : Broadcasting stations and channels that can be received are saved in advance by area. Select from the area list.

**Auto setting** : Broadcasting stations and channels that can be received in your current location, are automatically searched and set. Perform this within the terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service.

- Channels in a preset may not be available depending on the place you watch. In that case, use Auto setting.

1 [LifeKit] 9 7 >

- A confirmation screen for creating a channel list appears if there is none.

### 2 Select a method to create

**Setting from a preset** : "Use preset" ▶ Select an area ▶ Select a prefecture ▶ Select a local municipality

- For some areas, selecting prefecture or local municipality may be omitted.

**Creating by automatic search** : "Auto setting" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select an area

Auto setting starts and, upon completion, a confirmation screen appears.

- When "No" is selected on the confirmation screen to select an area, an auto-scanning channel setting screen remains displayed. At this time, channel list is named after the date and time of creating.
- When an area is selected, channels of the selected area are searched first.
- To interrupt Auto setting, press and select "Yes".

### 3 "Yes"

## ✓INFORMATION

- It takes approximately 60 seconds to search for channels in Auto setting. It may take longer time depending on the number of broadcasting stations and airwave conditions.
- Auto setting performed near a noise source such as a PC or LCD TV may require a time.
- While Auto setting is set, system sound is not generated.
- Auto setting is unavailable while recording.

## ◆ Specifying Channel list

- When there is only one Channel list saved, it is automatically set as the one to be used.

1 [LifeKit]

A list of Channel list appears.

2 **Move the cursor to Channel list**

Channel list to be used is set and channel number list appears.

- If setting while watching 1Seg, 1Seg watching screen appears immediately.
- For the list of Channel lists,  appears in the set Channel list.

## ◆ Using Channel list

1 [LifeKit]

2 **Perform necessary operations**

**Opening the channel number list : Select Channel list**

**Updating Channel list : Move the cursor to Channel list**

The next procedure→P195 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating Channel list"

**Deleting channel list : Move the cursor to a channel list** or ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a channel list.
- Authentication is required for deleting all items.

**Changing Channel list name : Move the cursor to Channel list** ▶ Enter Channel list name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters)

**Activating 1Seg watching : Select a channel list ▶ Select a channel**

**Changing a channel number : Select a channel list ▶ Move the cursor to a channel** ▶ **Select a new channel**

**Deleting a channel : Select a channel list ▶ Move the cursor to a channel** ▶ "Yes"

## ✓INFORMATION

- While watching 1Seg, the following operations are unavailable for the currently active Channel list.
  - Updating or deleting Channel list
  - Changing channel numbers
  - Deleting registered channels

## Activate 1Seg

### Watching 1Seg

- A confirmation screen appears when you watch 1Seg for the first time.→P194

1 (1 sec. or more)

- A confirmation screen for creating a channel list appears if a channel list is not set. Select "OK" to create a channel list.→P195 Step 2 and the following steps in "Creating Channel list"

## ✓INFORMATION

- You can also activate 1Seg watching in the following ways.
  - Selecting 1Seg watching information etc. displayed on Program guide i-appli, mail, MessageR/F, i-Channel, site, website, etc. (Media To)→P165
  - Watching reservation→P203
- A confirmation screen for 1Seg use, storage area, etc. for which "Yes (Always)" is selected does not appear again unless performing any of UIM replacement, Reset (Preferences), Delete all data or Reset check setting.
- If you select "Yes (default)" on a confirmation screen, data broadcasting or data broadcasting site information may be updated etc. without confirmation and packet communication fees may be charged.

## ◆ 1Seg screens

<Vertical standard display>



<Horizontal display  
(full-screen)>



<Horizontal display  
(movie with data broadcasting)>



1Seg watching screen

- ① Captions (if any)
- ② Data broadcasting or data broadcasting site
- ③ Currently selected remote controller number
- ④ TV station name (currently selected)/Program name (station selection finished)
  - When a program being watched is interrupted, "Unavailable channel" appears.
  - On the horizontal display, the name of the next program and starting time are also displayed.
- ⑤ 1Seg reception level



Strong ← → Weak



Out of broadcasting area

- Icon definitions are as follows.

- : Unavailable to select because recording is in progress
- : Available to switch services to view → P199
- : Time shift playback in progress
- : Time shift normal playback/time shift fast forward playback in progress
- : 1Seg Eco-mode activated
- : Sound status (Stereo/Monaural/Main sound/Sub sound/ Main+Sub sounds)
- : Dolby Mobile is ON
- + a number : Sound volume : Sound not available
- : Recording in progress
- + Remaining time : Off timer is activated, or "End time" is set in watching reservation (only appears if the remaining time exceeds 99 minutes)
- : Off timer is activated (until the end of the program), or "End time" is set to "Auto-delay adjust" in watching reservation
- : Available to select items by using the keypad during data broadcasting or at a data broadcasting site
- : Available to adjust volume by
- : Available to switch the watching screen by
- : Available to switch to Multi window or concurrently running function by → P200
- : Message from TV station

- Some icons may not be displayed depending on screens.
- Subtitles on horizontal display (video with data broadcasting) is shown at the bottom of the screen and icons are displayed at the top of the screen.
- When going outside broadcasting service area while selecting a channel, a black screen is displayed for both video and data broadcasting.

## ◆ Operations while watching TV

Switching watching screens :

- When Auto rotation is "ON", a screen changes as follows.
  - Vertical display : Vertical standard display/Data broadcasting full-screen
  - Horizontal display : Horizontal display (full-screen)/Horizontal display (video with data broadcasting)
- When Auto rotation is "OFF", each screen changes by turns.

### Adjusting volume :

- You can also press to operate when data broadcasting display area is not displayed.\*1

### Setting Silent : (1 sec. or more)

- You can also press for 1 second or more to operate when data broadcasting display area is not displayed.\*1

### Starting Program guide i-appli :

### Switching to Multi window or other function : (1 sec. or more)

- It can be operated while other function is performed at the same time.

### Selecting one-key channel : (1-9), (X), (0), \*2

- Channels after 13 can be selected from the channel number list.
- You cannot select a channel when is displayed.

### Selecting previous/next channel : \*1, 2

### Searching previous/next frequency that can be received : (1 sec. or more) \*1, 2

- Searching channels, after you move etc., may enable you to receive waves from a broadcasting station that is not saved. When you cannot receive waves, the previously watched channel reappears. A broadcasting station that is found through wave reception can be saved to a channel. Note that the channels may not be searched in the order of the remote controller numbers because channels are searched in the order of frequency.

### Recording a still image : → P202\*2

### Starting/Stopping recording a video : (1 sec. or more) → P202\*2

### Displaying/Hiding subtitles : \*2

- This is not available when there are no subtitles.

### Scrolling data broadcasting : \*1

### Displaying a link destination of data broadcasting :

### Moving a previous/next page of data broadcasting : \*1

- Available when previous and next pages are stored in the cache on the data broadcasting full-screen.

### Returning to the first page of data broadcasting : ,

- By the displayed contents, an operation such as returning to the previous page may be performed.

### Terminating 1Seg watching : ▶ "Yes"

- \*1 On the horizontal display, operations using multi-cursor keys change according to the orientation of the screen.

\*2 Unavailable on the data broadcasting full-screen.

## ■ Operations from submenu

### Checking TV station list : (1)

### Checking program information : (2)

- Note that information not yet set or read may not be displayed.

### Switching Channel list : (3)

The next procedure → P196 Step 2 in "Specifying Channel list"  
Operation of the Channel list → P196 Step 2 in "Using Channel list"

### Reserving watching/recording : (4) (2)

The next procedure → P203 Step 3 and the following steps in "Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program"

### Checking recordable time/number of items : (4) (3)

Deleting a recorded video/still image : (4) (4) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a video/still image ▶ "Yes"

### Activating/Canceling Off timer : (5) ▶ (1) - (5)

### Creating introduction mail : (6) (2)

A mail creation screen appears with information for 1Seg watching of the currently watched program already entered in the message text.

- If a receiver is the terminal that supports Media To function, 1Seg can be activated when information for 1Seg watching is selected.

### Moving to the previous/next page of data broadcasting : (7) ▶ (1) or (2)

- Available when previous and next pages are stored in the cache.

### Reloading data broadcasting : (7) (3)

### Displaying details of a certificate : (7) (4)

- It can be operated while displaying an SSL/TLS page.

### Setting Image&Effect : (7) (5) ▶ Set required items ▶

Image & Effect → P205

### Displaying TV link : (7) (6) ▶ Select a folder

The next procedure → P200 Step 2 in "Displaying saved TV link"

### Setting Display setting, Sound setting, Record setting : (8) ▶ (1) - (3) ▶ Set required items ▶

Settings → P205

### Making Close setting : (8) (4) ▶ (1) - (3)

Close setting → P205

**Adding the currently viewed channel to the channel list :** ▶ Select a channel

- When a channel already saved is selected, a confirmation screen appears. Up to 62 items can be registered.

**Switching services to view :** ▶ -

- You can operate when other programs (services) are broadcasted in the same channel.

**Switching 1Seg Eco-mode ON/OFF :**

Light becomes disabled when this mode is set to ON to darken the display for power saving. In a well-lighted area, power saving effects may not be great.

**Displaying key function help :**

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Some channels cannot be received depending on areas. They may be received by updating Channel list or performing Auto setting. → P195
- Depending on airwave strength, a audio may be interrupted, data broadcasting may not be received, or the video picture may contain block noise or may stop.
- When activating 1Seg watching or a channel is switched, it takes a time before watching is enabled.
- When OFF timer end time comes, a confirmation screen for ending the watching appears. When 30 seconds elapse without doing any operations, 1Seg watching stops.
- If 1Seg is started from information for 1Seg watching or Program guide displayed in watching reservation, site or mail, OFF timer is automatically activated if the information contains an end date/time.
- When another channel is selected with OFF timer set to "Complete program", the end date/time set in OFF timer changes to the end date/time of the program broadcasted on the channel selected. Note that, the end date/time does not change unless there is information.

### ◆ Time shift function

When receiving a call while watching 1Seg, the program can be recorded automatically from that time, and you can watch it after the call ends.

- Time shift recording is available for approximately 1 minute, and a new recording always overwrites the old one.
- Time shift is not activated while selecting a channel.
- Data broadcast is unavailable during Time shift playback.
- During fast forward play, audio may not be heard clearly.

### 1 End the call ▶ "Yes" on a confirmation screen to play the video recorded during the call

- During Time shift playback, the following operations are available.

: Switch from normal play to fast forward play\*

: Switch from fast forward play to normal play

▶ "Yes" : Return to normal watching from time shift playback

- \* On the horizontal display, operations using multi-cursor keys change according to the orientation of the screen.

## Using i-appli program guide

You can activate 1Seg watching and make a watching reservation or recording reservation from Program guide.

- "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)" is saved by default as Program guide i-appli (→P228). You can set Program guide i-appli to use in Program guide key setting in Software settings of i-appli (→P225).
- When using Program guide i-appli for the first time, you must make initial settings.

1 [LifeKit]

The i-appli starts and the program guide appears.

## Data broadcasting

### Using Data Broadcasting

You can use various information on the site which is linked to a program.

- Data broadcasting and data broadcasting site → P194 "Using 1Seg"

1 On the screen with data broadcasting, ▶ Select an item

Data broadcasting is shifted to data broadcasting site display.

Operation during site display → P157

- On the horizontal display, multi-cursor key operations change according to the orientation of the screen.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Depending on selected items, a confirmation screen may appear. Selecting "Yes (Always)" may automatically update data broadcasting/data broadcasting site information without a confirmation from next time. Note that in this case, packet communication fee may be charged.
- If there is not enough available space in the storage area, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

## TVlink

### Using TV link

For some data broadcasting and/or data broadcasting site, site and memo information can be saved in TVlink. The site or memo information saved in TVlink can be directly displayed.

- Saved contents can be used only by 1Seg.

### ◆ Saving in TV link

- Up to 50 items can be saved.

#### 1 Select a savable item in TVlink ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a folder

- If you attempt to register an already registered URL or Text info, there is not enough available space, or the savable number is exceeded, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

### ◆ Displaying saved TV link

- While data broadcasting/data broadcasting site is displaying, a confirmation screen of TV link list display may appear automatically.

#### 1 [LifeKit] 9 6 ▶ Select a folder

- Icon definitions :

 : TV link exists  : No TV link

#### 2 Select a TV link ▶ "Yes"

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 : Link to data broadcasting

 : Link to a site or website of i-mode or Full Browser

 : Text info

- When Text info is selected, selecting "Yes" is not required.

**Displaying detail information :** Move the cursor to a TV link ▶ 

**Deleting :**  2 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to TVlink.

- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

- To delete all items, on the folder list,  4 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Select "Yes".

**Moving to an other folder :** Move the cursor to a TV link ▶  3 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ Select a destination folder

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

### ◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created.

#### 1 [LifeKit] 9 6

#### 2 1 ▶ Enter a folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a folder ▶  2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- When there is only 1 folder, it cannot be deleted.

**Changing a folder name :** Move the cursor to a folder ▶  3 ▶ Enter a folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

**Changing the order of folders :** Move the cursor to a folder ▶  5 or 6

### Watching 1Seg with Multi window

You can divide the display into 2 to perform another task while watching 1Seg.

- It is available on the vertical display.
- It is unavailable during Time shift playback.

### ❖ Using another function while watching 1Seg

When the following functions are used at the same time, they are displayed in Multi window. However, even for available function, some operation is unavailable in Multi window.

- A call\*<sup>1</sup>, Fake call

- Displaying mail, MessageR/F, SMS\*<sup>2</sup>, creating mail/SMS, Check new message, Check new SMS, Receive option

- i-mode, Full Browser, i-Channel
- i-αppli list, i-αppli Display light time, Vibrate alert/effect
- Phonebook, Received calls, Redial, Record message, Voice memos, Mail logs, User information
- List of images
- Infrared communication/iC transmission, packet communication with a PC, microSD card, Data Security service, Pedometer/ACT monitor, IC card content, 1Seg reservation list
- Notepad, Alarm clock, Calculator, Dictionaries, Countdown timer
- Call alert volume, Mail/Msg. alert vol., i-concier ring alert, i-αppli effect sound, Melody effect sound

\*1 1Seg watching is interrupted.

\*2 For received mail, attached melody and the sound effect of Flash graphics in Deco-mail or Decome-Anime cannot be played.

Detail display is not available for mail or SMS received from parties not saved in phonebook.

### While watching 1Seg, **MULTI** ▶ Select a function



Creating mail during 1Seg watching

**Switching between Multi window and 1Seg watching screen :** **MULTI** (1 sec. or more)

- When 1Seg watching and i-mode/Full Browser are used together, a screen changes in the order of Multi window→a screen of the function used together →1Seg watching screen each time you press **MULTI** for 1 second or more.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even when Multi window is activated by selecting another function, no 1Seg image may appear or 1Seg sound may remain sounding during display of other functions.

### ◆When receiving a call etc, while watching 1Seg

When a call is received or schedule reminder/alarm clock is activated while watching 1Seg, Multi window opens automatically. When receiving mail, messenger/F or SMS with Display priority set to "Show message", Multi window opens automatically. When a function is ended, 1Seg watching screen reappears.

- 1Seg watching is interrupted during a call or if i-motion is set for alarm sound.
- You can watch a program received during a call with Time shift function.→P199

### Recording 1Seg

#### Recording 1Seg

You can record movies, sounds and data broadcasting (video recording) or save movies being broadcasted as still images (still image recording).

- Video is saved to "Video(Phone memory)" or "Video(microSD)" folder in "1Seg" of Data Box, and a still image is saved to "Image(Phone memory)" folder in "1Seg".
- Program name is used as a display name for video, the saved date and time are used as a display name for a still image. Saved date and time are used as a file name. However, it does not apply to the file name for the video saved in microSD. →P270
- Programs whose recording is prohibited cannot be recorded. When airwave reception condition is not good, recording may be unavailable.
- Recorded data cannot be sent via mail attachment or infrared communication/iC transmission. They cannot be set to the stand-by display etc.
- Viewing recorded video or still images→P267
- Recording ends when the recorded data reaches 2 Gbytes. It is approximately 11 hours in terms of time. Recording time may vary depending on program contents etc.

## ◆ Recording video

- Recording is unavailable during Time shift playback or on the data broadcasting full-screen.
- Record setting → P206
- Recording reservation → P203

### 1 On 1Seg watching screen, (1 sec. or more)

Recording starts.

### 2 (1 sec. or more)

Recording stops and watching continues.

**Ending only watching and continuing recording :**  ▶ "End only reception"

 appears on the stand-by display.

- To stop recording, select  and press "Yes".

**Terminating both of recording and watching :**  ▶ "Yes"

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, recording is unavailable. Delete unnecessary recorded video. → P198
- Recording stops when storage area is exhausted while recording.
- When saving destination is microSD card, recording may be disabled while running other functions that use the microSD card.
- While recording, switching channel/channel list, Auto setting, using OFF timer and switching service are disabled.
- In the following cases, both or either of movie and sound stops, however, recording continues.
  - When a call or 64K data communication is received
  - When a call is made
  - When the date and time specified in Alarm clock or schedule\*1 come
  - When mail, MessageR/F, SMS is received (with Display priority of Mail set to "Show message")
  - When a melody is played
  - When i-appli is activated from data broadcasting\*2

- \*1 When using watching reservation schedule, when you select "Yes" on a confirmation screen, recording is stopped if the channel is different from the one being recorded.
- \*2 When i-appli that cannot be used concurrently with recording is started, a confirmation screen for watching and continuation of recording appears
- When a link to 1Seg watching information displayed on a site or mail is selected while recording, select "Yes" on a confirmation screen to stop recording and start watching the linked channel. If the linked channel is the same as the one being recorded, recording continues.
- At the time for recording reservation while recording, reserved recording starts. When the channel currently recording and the channel for recording reservation are different, a confirmation screen appears if Record setting of recording reservation is set to "Operation".
- To record data broadcasting, record it for approximately 1 minute or more under strong wave reception conditions. If the recording time is too short, data broadcasting may not be displayed.
- If FOMA terminal goes outside broadcasting service area immediately after starting recording and the recording is stopped without receiving the airwave, the recorded data may not be saved.
- For some programs, movie and/or sound may be recorded from a point a little before recording operation is done.
- While a function that cannot be activated at the same time as recording is running, a confirmation screen appears.

## ◆ Recording still image

- Recording is unavailable during Time shift playback or video recording or on the data broadcasting full-screen. Subtitles and data broadcasting are not saved.

### 1 On 1Seg watching screen,

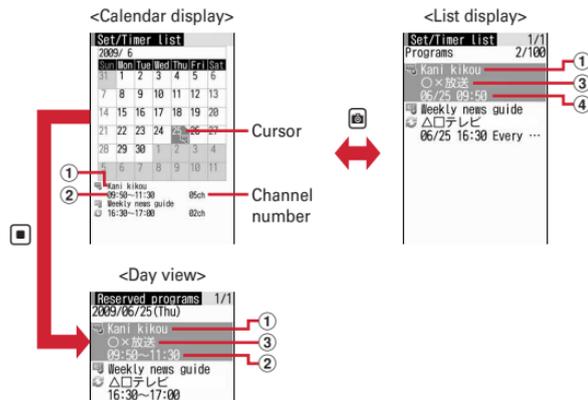
- When exceeding the savable number/area → P280
- If a videophone is received immediately after pressing , still images may not be recorded.

## Setting timer for watching or recording 1Seg program

You can start 1Seg watching, receive notification of start of a program or start recording automatically.

- Up to 100 watching and/or recording reservations can be saved in total, but the savable number varies by the number of saved items in Scheduler. → P392
- You can also use channel information shown in Program guide i-αppli, site or mail to register reservations.

**1** **ME** **NUM** [LifeKit] **9** **4**



Reservation list screen

- ① Program name
- ② Start time - End time\*
- ③ TV station

#### ④ Start time

- \* In the case of a long-term schedule, the start time is displayed only on the start date and the end time is displayed only on the end date. The start and end dates are displayed between those days.
- In Calendar display, use **MEMO** / **MAIL** to switch months.
- Icon definitions are as follows.
  - MEMO**: Watching reservation
  - RECORD**: Recording reservation
  - REPEAT**: Repeated schedule
  - LONGTERM**: Long-term schedule
- At the bottom of calendar display, list display and Day view screen, icons of programs which have already passed start time and date are displayed in gray.

**Setting calendar display format**: In calendar display, **MEMO** **6** **2** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ **MEMO**

Set required items → P291 "Setting view" (Scheduler type cannot be set)

**Displaying key function help**: In calendar display, **NUM** **7**

## 2 In list view or Daily view, **MEMO**

The reservation method selection screen appears.

- In calendar display, press **MEMO** **1**.

## 3 Select a reservation method

**Reserving from Program guide i-αppli**: "By program guide"

Program guide i-αppli starts. You can reserve watching or recording.

**Reserving 1Seg watching**: "Manual reception" ▶ **Set required items** ▶ **MEMO**

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered for a program name.
- "Auto-delay adjust" of end time changes the end time of an extended program.
- Set notify alarm icon definitions.
  - ALARM** (yellow) / **ALARM** (gray): Start-alarm setting activated/deactivated
  - CONFIRM**: Start after confirm
  - AUTO**: Auto start
  - STOP**: Not start
- **MEMO**: Change to recording reservation

**Reserving 1Seg recording**: "Manual recording" ▶ **Set required items** ▶ **MEMO**

- Up to 100 two-byte (200 one-byte) characters can be entered for a program name.

- "Auto-delay adjust" of end time changes the end time of an extended program.
- You can use REC setting to set whether to prioritize recording or operation when using the function that cannot be used with recording. When "Operation" is set, a confirmation screen for recording appears when the time of recording reservation comes.
- REC setting icon definitions.  
 : Recording  : Operation
-  : Save to phone  : Save to microSD
-  : Change to watching reservation

## 4

-  If the start time has already passed when you make watching reservation, the program starts immediately.
- If 1 minute before the start time has already passed when you make recording reservation, preparation of recording starts.

Changing the reservation : 

### ✓INFORMATION

- Long-term schedule is defined as there being 24 hours or more from the start to end time. Long-term schedule and repeated schedule cannot be set concurrently.
- Watching reservation and recording reservation are also displayed in Scheduler.

### ◆ When the reserved date and time come

#### ◆ When the time set in watching reservation comes

The saved reserved contents appear on the display.

- When any keys except , , , ,  are pressed while an alarm sounds, you can display an activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching.
- At the watching reservation time during recording, a confirmation screen appears.
- Operations while watching →P197

### ✓INFORMATION

- Operations for the reserved contents are the same as those for the schedule reminder. →P293
- When multiple watching reservation items or schedules are saved, the alarm of the watching reservation or schedule saved the last becomes effective. 1Seg watching may not be activated according to Sync TV start depending on the order of saving. The Schedules or watching reservation not activated can be confirmed by pressing  after the alarm sound is stopped.
- In the following cases, an activation notification screen appears even when Activate 1Seg of Set notify alarm is set to "Auto start". You can display an activation confirmation screen or activate 1Seg watching by pressing  on the activation notification screen.
  - When the specified date and time come (a warning tone sounds at the time)
  - When another function is activated while an alarm sounds
- When specified date and time come while using functions that cannot be used with 1Seg, 1Seg watching cannot be activated regardless of Activate 1Seg setting. To watch 1Seg, quit the currently running function.

#### ◆ When the time set in recording reservation comes

 blinks on the stand-by display 1 minute before the start time. When the specified time comes, blinking stops and recording starts automatically.  appears on the stand-by display during recording .

- To stop recording, select  and press "Yes".

### ✓INFORMATION

- Preparations for recording are made under poor condition of airwave reception, and recording is started when the wave reception condition becomes better.
- When reserving times are overlapped, a reservation with earlier start time is interrupted by the one with later start time. Note that, if the start times are the same, the later reservation is given priority.
- When recording reservation was made without displaying the confirmation screen for using 1Seg, recording is not performed. →P196
- When reserved recording starts while using functions that cannot be used with 1Seg, recording starts according to Priority (→P203) interrupting the running function or a confirmation screen appears (for some i-appli, a confirmation screen appears regardless of Priority). Active data in the interrupted function may be discarded.
- When reserved recording is started during downloading music data, the music data cannot be saved until the end of recording.

## ◆ When reserved recording ends

The icon (📺 / 📺) : Recording reservation completed/failed) appears on the standby display. Select to check recording results.→P205

- When multiple programs are reserved to be recorded, an icon for the last recording result is displayed.
- The saving destination, file names and precautions are the same as for recording while watching.→P201

## ◆ Checking/Operating reservation

### 1 [LifeKit] ▶ Perform necessary operations

**Displaying the reservation details screen :** Select the reservation

**Editing :** Move the cursor to reservation ▶   ▶ Edit reservation ▶  ▶ 

• You cannot operate reservations in calendar display.

**Deleting :**   ▶ Select an item ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the reservation.
- If a long-term schedule is included when performing One day, select whether to delete all except the long-term schedule.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.
- The type of deletion that can be operated varies depending the display.

**Rearranging <Sort> :**   ▶  - 

- "Name(Ascending)" sorts program names in the order of Unicode.
- Can be operated only in list display.

**Displaying recording result :**  

The next procedure→P205

- Cannot be operated on Day view screen.

**Setting display/operation :**    ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- When Auto-del past items is set to "Auto delete", reservations that already passed the reserved time are deleted without confirmation.
- Cannot be operated on Day view screen.

### ✓INFORMATION

- In list display, reservations with the start date/time already passed appear after those not passed. However, this does not apply when items are sorted or Sort of Display/Operation is set to other than "Air date(new→old).

## ◆ Checking result of recording reservation <Recording result>

- Up to 50 items can be saved. When the maximum is exceeded, items are overwritten chronologically.
- Reserved recording result is not recorded if reservation is canceled because other reservation was set for the same time or because FOMA terminal was not turned ON at the start time.

### 1 [LifeKit]

Recording result list appears.

- Icon definitions

 : Recording reservation completed  : Recording reservation failed

### 2 Move the cursor to a result ▶

Recording result details appear.

**Playing a recorded program :** Select a completed recording result

- Playing is unavailable when recorded program is moved or deleted.

**Deleting a log :** Move the cursor to a log ▶   or  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a history.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

## User setting

### Setting 1Seg watching/recording settings

**Display setting :** Set brightness of light, display of subtitle or icon, display of ticker when the information of mail or i-concier is received. With Display icon always, you can set whether to always display icons at the top of the horizontal display.

**Sound setting :** Set voice switching or ON/OFF of Dolby Mobile.

- The setting of Dolby Mobile also applies to 1Seg of Stereo sound effect.

**Image & Effect :** Set whether to display image of data broadcasting or to play sound effect.

**ToruCa from 1Seg :** Set whether to automatically save ToruCa distributed while watching or recording 1Seg to "ToruCa" of FOMA terminal.

- Even when Duplication check (→P252) is "OFF", no ToruCa is saved if it is identical to the existing one.

**Restore storage area** : Delete the information of Storage area.

**Reset permit status** : Redisplay a confirmation screen that "Yes (Confirm once)" is selected on the confirmation screen of data broadcasting.

**Close setting** : Set actions when FOMA terminal is closed while watching/recording 1Seg or playing recorded videos.

**Play setting** : Set ON/OFF for Auto CM skip, set ON/OFF for skipping unrecorded part (Auto blur skip), set whether to notify before skipping when playing a video.

**Record setting** : Set destination to be saved or time for ending Video.

- It is unavailable for recording reservation.

**1**  **[LifeKit]** **9** **8**

## **2** Perform necessary operations

**Setting Display setting** : **1** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

- If setting Display subtitle to "In silent mode", subtitle appears when "No" is selected from a sound play confirmation screen appearing when watching 1Seg in Silent mode.
- When Subtitle size is set to "Large", data broadcasting is not displayed on the vertical standard display.
- For the horizontal display (movie with data broadcasting), the subtitle size remains unchanged.

**Setting Sound setting** : **2** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**Setting Image & Effect** : **3** **1** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**Setting Receiving ToruCa from 1Seg** : **3** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

**Performing Restore storage area** : **3** **3** ▶ **Move the cursor to affiliate broadcasting station or individual enterprise** ▶  ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ **"Yes"**

- When there are storage areas of individual enterprises, select an affiliate broadcasting station.
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to an information item.
- To delete all items, authentication is required.

**Resetting permit status** : **3** **4** ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **"Yes"**

**Making Close setting** : **4** ▶ **1** - **3**

- When "Mute" is set, 1Seg watching/recording continues, but only sound is muted (the sound is recorded in the recorded video). Video playback is paused.

**Making Play setting** : **5** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**Making Record setting** : **6** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

- Record time is the time from starting recording or changing the setting of recording until recording ends.

## **INFORMATION**

- Display light is not applied while 1Seg ECO mode is ON.
- When Close setting is "Continue" or "Mute", information of data broadcasting or data broadcasting sites is updated and packet communication fees may be charged.
- Recording destination of Record setting is applied from the recording performed after the setting. Record time is applied from the time of setting.

## **Remote controller with microphone**

### **Using Remote controller with microphone F01**

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate during 1Seg watching.

 during time shift fast forward play : Time shift ordinary play

 (1 sec. or more)<sup>\*1</sup> : End 1Seg watching (including data broadcasting site)

  : Adjust volume

While watching,  (1 sec. or more)<sup>\*1</sup> : Select the next channel

During time shift play,  (1 sec. or more)<sup>\*2</sup> : Time shift fast forward play

While watching,  (1 sec. or more)<sup>\*1</sup> : Select the previous channel

 (Slide in the direction of  ) : Disable  ,  and  keys.

 (Slide in the opposite direction of  ) : Enable unavailable keys

<sup>\*1</sup> Available only on 1Seg watching screen.

<sup>\*2</sup> Unavailable during displaying detail program information.

## Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel .....	<b>Music&amp;Video Channel</b>	208
Setting/Checking/Canceling programs .....		208
Playing a program .....		209
Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box .....		211

## MUSIC Player

MUSIC Player .....		212
Saving music data or Uta-moji Lyrics .....		212
Viewing MUSIC Player screen .....		214
Playing music data .....		215
Managing folder/playlist/data .....		216

## Enjoying music by various operations

Using i-appli while playing music .....	<b>BGM play</b>	219
Using Remote controller with microphone F01 .....	<b>Remote controller with microphone</b>	220

### Handling music data

- This manual refers to Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> and WMA (Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Audio) files played with MUSIC Player as "music data".
- FOMA terminal can play WMA file or Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> protected by copyright protection technologies.
- When downloading music data from Internet websites etc., check the use conditions (permitted, prohibited actions, etc.).
- WMA files protected by copyright protection technologies are played using information specific to FOMA terminal. When information specific to FOMA terminal is changed due to failure, repair or modifications of the terminal, existing WMA files may not be played.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for handling of copy control CD (CCCD) or for reactions to disability of converting music data to WMA files.
- Music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card is allowed for personal use only. When using the music data, take extreme care not to infringe intellectual property rights of a third party such as copyrights etc. Do not move or copy music data saved in FOMA terminal or microSD card to other devices such as a PC.

## Music&Video Channel

Music&Video Channel is a service which automatically distributes a program of up to approximately 1 hour at night just by setting your favorite music program etc. in advance. You can also enjoy high-quality video program of up to approximately 30 minutes. Programs are updated regularly and you can enjoy the distributed program at your convenient time such as on commuting.

### ■ Using Music&Video Channel

- Music&Video Channel is a charged service requiring subscription. To subscribe to the Music&Video Channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode and Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double in advance.
- Information fee may be required additionally for some programs besides Music&Video Channel service fee.
- If UIM is used on a Music&Video Channel incompatible FOMA terminal after subscribing to Music&Video Channel, Music&Video Channel cannot be used. Note that the service fee is charged unless Music&Video Channel is unsubscribed.
- Program setting and downloading are unavailable during international roaming\*. Stop distribution of programs before leaving Japan. Also, restart distribution of programs after returning to Japan.
- \* Note that attempting program setting or downloading during international roaming requires packet communication fee for i-mode connection.
- You can view mail or i-mode site etc. while listening to music with Music&Video Channel (Background play). Note that it is unavailable for video programs. Combination of functions that can be used together→P371
- For details of Music&Video Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## Setting/Checking/Canceling programs

- Up to 2 programs can be set. To set, Music&Video Channel program site must be registered in My Menu.→P155

### 1 [MUSIC] 2



Music&Video Channel screen

#### ① Image of a set program

- appears if it is not displayed.

#### ② State of program

- : Program completely downloaded : Program partially downloaded
- : Replay restricted, trick play restricted
- / : Replay restricted, trick play restricted : Time link distribution
- : Program not played yet : Download failed

#### ③ Channel number

#### ④ Display name of programs

"No program" appears before a program is downloaded, and "Updating program" appears while a program is being downloaded.

#### ⑤ Schedule of next program update

#### ⑥ Service menu

### 2 "Set program" ▶ Set, check or cancel the program according to instructions on the screen

- If you select the service menu at the time of purchase of this FOMA terminal or if the UIM is replaced, a confirmation screen for program setting appears.
- For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".



⑥ : Replay restricted : Time link distribution : Trick play restricted

⑦ **Play position indicator**

⑧ **Play state**

: In play : In pause

: In fast forward : In rewind

⑨ **Play time/Total time**

⑩ **Current chapter number/Number of total chapters**

⑪ **Repeat play\***

⑫ **Equalizer\***

⑬ **Play volume**

\* When the function is set to "OFF" or "Normal", characters are displayed in gray.

• Music programs continue to play back even when the FOMA terminal is closed. The icons that show play status on the sub-display ( : playing, : in pause) and a chapter title/an artist name are displayed.

• The following operations are available on the Music&Video Channel player screen.

, : Play/Pause\*<sup>1</sup>

, : Adjust volume

(1 sec. or more)\*<sup>2</sup> : Rewind/Fast forward\*<sup>1</sup>

\*<sup>2</sup> , (1 sec. or more) : Jump to the beginning of the chapter, or jump to the previous chapter if play time is within 3 seconds\*<sup>1</sup>

\*<sup>2</sup> , (1 sec. or more) : Move to the next chapter\*<sup>1</sup>

: Connect a site if URL information is contained in the program

: Switch horizontal and vertical displays

: Stop playing and end Music&Video Channel player screen

\*<sup>1</sup> Unavailable for time link distribution program.

\*<sup>2</sup> On the horizontal display, multi-cursor key operations change according to the orientation of the screen.

• The light turns on or blinks by some operations.

**Setting/Canceling repeat :** ▶ or

• This is not available for a time link distribution program.

**Setting Display light time :** ▶ or

• When "Phone setting" is specified, the light turns on according to the setting of Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

• This setting also applies to Display light time (i-motion) of Display & Key light and Display light time of Settings for i-motion.

**Setting/Canceling Dolby Mobile :** ▶ or

• This setting also applies to Music&Video Channel of Stereo sound effect.

**Setting Equalizer :** ▶ -

• This is not available for video programs.

• "In-a-train" reduces the sound leakage from earphone etc.

## ❖ Programs with replay restrictions

Some programs are subject to replay count, replay expiration and/or replay period restrictions; you cannot play programs which exceed the restrictions.

- When setting both replay expiration and replay period, the date closer to the current date is displayed.
- Expiration and period of replay restriction cannot be changed even if you change the date and time.
- If you use in other than Japan, replay period may be expired before or after the displayed expiration.

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- In the following cases, play is paused. Play restarts automatically after the operation is over.
  - When a call is received
  - When mail, MessageR/F, SMS is received (with Display priority set to "Show message")
  - When i-mode inquiry is performed
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When a function that cannot be used concurrently is performed
- When many functions are used simultaneously, the tune being played may be interrupted.
- Time link distribution programs have available time to play already assigned. Playing these programs requires auto time adjust.
- When a program that was partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining section appears. Selecting "Play" plays up to the downloaded chapter. An entire time link distribution program needs to be downloaded before playing.
- When a program that has failed updating is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading appears. Selecting "Play" plays the previously downloaded program.
- With Rewind, Fast forward, Chapter back or Chapter skip, the operation with the restriction is unavailable. When the remaining replay count is 0 while playing, the operation of rewinding, returning to chapter or playing from the chapter list is unavailable.
- If the battery level is low, a confirmation screen for playing appears.

## ◆ Checking program chapter list

1 [MUSIC] (2) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ (1)

Playing a chapter : Select a chapter

Checking details of chapter : Move the cursor to a chapter ▶

## ◆ Checking program information

1 [MUSIC] (2) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ (2)

- When the program name is unknown, "musicchX" (where X is a channel number) is displayed.

## ◆ Moving a program

A program is moved to Saved program folder of Music&Video Channel in Data Box.

- Up to 10 items can be saved.

1 [MUSIC] (2) ▶ Move the cursor to a program  
▶ (3) ▶ "Yes"

### ✓INFORMATION

- When the memory space is not enough or when exceeding the savable number, a program cannot be moved. Delete unnecessary programs from Saved program folder.
- Data failed in downloading, data with Move restriction set, data with replay restriction reached, or a time link distribution program cannot be moved.
- Data cannot be moved to microSD card.

## ◆ Deleting a program

- Deleting a program does not cancel Program setting.

1 [MUSIC] (2) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ (4) ▶ "Yes"

## ◆ Connecting to sites

You can connect to the site for the program with URL.

1 [MUSIC] (2) ▶ Move the cursor to a program ▶ (5) ▶ "Yes"

## Operating Music&Video Channel from Data Box

From Data Box, you can display or play a distributed program or program saved in Saved program folder, or manage folders or programs.

- Folder operations are the same as for other data in Data Box. Note that Delivered program folder and Saved program folder cannot be deleted.
  - Creating/Deleting folders → P276
  - Moving (→ P277), Deleting (→ P279), Sorting (→ P280) programs
- Programs cannot be copied.

## ◆ Playing from program list

1 [Data Box] (3)

: Delivered program folder : Saved program folder : User-created folder

## 2 Select a folder



- In the thumbnail view, the file size at the cursor position is displayed at the bottom of the display.

### ① Replay restriction

: Replay restricted, trick play restricted

/ : Replay restricted, trick play restricted : Time link distribution

### ② Display name of programs

### ③ State of program

: Program completely downloaded : Program partially downloaded

: Program unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

### ④ File restriction

: File restricted

### 5 Program image

When program images cannot be displayed, the following icons appear.

: No image : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

## 3 Select a program

Music&Video Channel player is activated and the program is played. →P209

## ◆ Changing program display name

- 1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor a program ▶ ▶ Enter a program display name (up to 128 two-byte or 256 one-byte characters) ▶

## MUSIC Player

Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> downloaded from a site, and Windows Media<sup>®</sup> Audio (WMA) files downloaded from music CDs, or the Internet, etc. can be played. You can also set Link lyrics & song to display Uta-moji Lyrics downloaded from a site on the player screen.

- i-motion containing only sound downloaded from i-mode is played from Data Box (→P259). Playing is available from microSD card when i-motion is saved on the card (→P272).
- You can view mail or i-mode site etc. while listening to music (Background play). →P286
- Precautions for using microSD card →P269
- For details of MUSIC Player, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- For Windows Media Player, contact the manufacturer of your PC.

## ◆ Uta-hodai

This is a flat-rate service with replay expiration provided by a music distribution company.

Music expired or that with service registration stopped etc. cannot be played. To play, updating license is required.

## Saving music data or Uta-moji Lyrics

- When exceeding the savable number/area →P280
- Checking memory space of FOMA terminal, microSD card →P274, 280

## ◆ Downloading Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> or Uta-moji Lyrics

- For Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> can be saved up to 5 Mbytes per item and up to 100 items to FOMA terminal or 1,000 items to microSD card.
- Uta-moji Lyrics can be saved up to 50 Kbytes per item and up to 100 items to FOMA terminal. It cannot be saved in microSD card.
- A lyrics & song link can be set to downloaded Uta-moji Lyrics. →P218
- Some Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> contains Uta-moji Lyrics.
- When replay expiration or replay period expires while downloading, you cannot play nor save. For Uta-hodai, it cannot be played but can be saved.

## 1 Display a site including Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> or Uta-moji Lyrics ▶ Select Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> or Uta-moji Lyrics

Download starts. Uta-hodai download starts after the replay expiration information is downloaded.

Stop downloading Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> : ▶ "No"

Stop downloading Uta-moji Lyrics : ▶ "Yes"

## 2 "Save"

Playing : "Play"

- The operation is unavailable for Uta-moji Lyrics.

Saving the partially downloaded Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> : "Save temporary".

- It appears if "No" is selected on the confirmation screen for resuming when downloading is interrupted. The rest of data can be downloaded from the data list screen. →P215 Step 2 in "Playing music data"

Displaying detail information : "File property" →P218

Canceling saving : "Back" ▶ "No"

## 3 Enter the display name (up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters) ▶

- When appears in the lower-left corner of the guide area, the saving destination can be switched by pressing . When "SD Save" is displayed, press to save to microSD card.

- When music data or Uta-moji Lyrics that available lyrics & song link is included, a confirmation screen for lyrics & song link appears. Select "Yes" and subsequently select music data or Uta-moji Lyrics to set lyrics & song link.

## ◆ Saving WMA files

You can save WMA files saved on a PC to microSD card using Windows Media Player. Be sure to check the version of Windows Media Player before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.

- It is recommended that you use PC's OS and Windows Media Player in combination of the following versions.
  - For Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later as PC's OS  
Windows Media Player 10 (version 10.00.00.3802 or later) or Windows Media Player 11 (version 11.0.5721.5145 or later)
  - For Windows Vista  
Windows Media Player 11 (version 11.0.6000.6324 or later)
- For operations, refer to the help of Windows Media Player 10/11.
- It is recommended that you keep Windows XP, Windows Vista or Windows Media Player updated to ensure better performance of operating or displaying forwarded WMA files.
- Up to 1,000 items can be saved. They cannot be saved on FOMA terminal.
- Playlists can be transferred from a PC. However, up to 400 items in the playlist can be transferred.
- WMA file saved to microSD card with another FOMA terminal may not be displayed/played on F-08A. And, if you use a microSD card used for transferring a WMA file from a different FOMA terminal, it may not be recognized by a PC even if you switch to MTP mode. In these cases, perform Delete all WMAs (→P219), or initialize the microSD card (→P275). Note that, if you initialize the microSD card, all the data other than music files are also deleted.

### 1 Set USB mode settings to "MTP mode"

USB mode settings→P275

### 2 With Windows Media Player activated, connect FOMA terminal to a PC using USB cable ▶ Send WMA file from the PC

- For connecting method, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM. Note that, when transferring a WMA file, installation of the FOMA communication configuration file described in "Manual for PC Connection" is not required.

### Napster® application

Using Napster® application, music data can be saved.

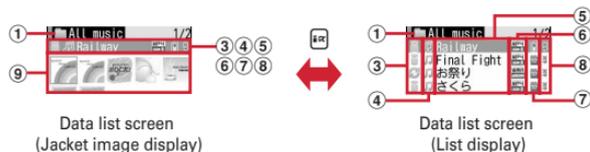
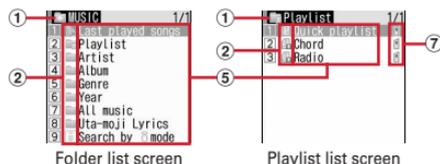
- Napster® application can be downloaded from the website below.  
<http://www.napster.jp/>
- For more detailed information about Napster® application, refer to the website below.  
<http://www.napster.jp/support/>

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Do not remove the USB cable during data transfer. It may cause malfunction or data loss.
- While a PC is accessing microSD card in FOMA terminal, only MTP mode can be switched.
- WMA files saved in microSD card in FOMA terminal can be deleted using Windows Media Player while FOMA terminal is connected to a PC.
- When music data cannot be transferred from a PC, you can check the optimum configuration for your PC by using "ポータブルデバイス用パソコン環境診断 (PC environment diagnosis for a portable device)".  
For ポータブルデバイス用パソコン環境診断, refer to the following website.  
FMWORLD (<http://www.fmworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→WMP環境診断ツール (WPM environment diagnostic tool)
- When Windows Media Player and Napster® application are used at the same time on a PC, processing speed of the PC may be lowered.
- AAC format files can be played only in "Other movie" in Multimedia on microSD card. Set the copying destination of AAC format files to directly under the PRIVATE ¥ DOCOMO ¥ MMFILE or MUDxxx in MMFILE on microSD card (→P270).
  - \* Files named other than "MMFxxxx" or files with extension of "m4a" cannot be displayed or played even after they are copied.
  - \* When you copy files, it is recommended that you use SD utility of FOMA F series. SD utility automatically converts file names.  
For SD utility of FOMA F series, refer to the following website from a PC.  
FMWORLD (<http://www.fmworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→データリンクソフト (Data link software)

## Viewing MUSIC Player screen

### Folder list screen/Playlist screen/Data list screen



- On the jacket image display screen, the file size (actual memory size) of the data at the cursor position is displayed at the bottom of the display.

#### ① Current folder/playlist

#### ② Folder/Playlist/Types of functions

: Play previous tune : Playlist folder

: Folder

- "Artist", "Album", "Genre", "Year" folders : Create a folder to organize data (except Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link) according to category
- "All music" folder : Display all data (except Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link)
- "Uta-moji Lyrics" folder : Display all Uta-moji Lyrics (except Uta-moji Lyrics in Chaku-uta full®)

: Searching songs from i-mode sites→P212

: Quick playlist : Playlist created by FOMA terminal

: Playlist transferred from a PC

#### ③ Originated

: i-mode : Data exchange

#### ④ Replay restriction

(orange) : Replay unrestricted (music data)

: Replay unrestricted (partially saved music data)

: Replay unrestricted (Uta-moji Lyrics)

/ / : Number of times/Expiration/Period (only Chaku-uta Full®)

/ : License not expired/License expired, no expiration, replay prohibited (Uta-hodai only)

(gray) : Replay prohibited

#### ⑤ Folder name/Playlist name/Function name/Music display name

#### ⑥ File format and copyright management

: Chaku-uta full®, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® with Uta-moji Lyrics, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

: Chaku-uta full® unavailable due to UIM operation restriction with Uta-moji Lyrics, DOCOMO

: WMA file, Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM)

: WMA file with lyrics & song link, Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM)

: WMA file, no copyright management

: WMA file with lyrics & song link, no copyright management

: Uta-moji Lyrics, DOCOMO

: Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

: Uta-moji Lyrics unavailable due to UIM operation restriction, DOCOMO

: Uta-moji Lyrics unavailable due to UIM operation restriction with lyrics & song link, DOCOMO

#### ⑦ Save location

: FOMA terminal : microSD card

#### ⑧ File restriction

: File restricted

#### ⑨ Jacket image

When images cannot be displayed, the following icons appear.

(Music data) / (Uta-moji Lyrics) : No jacket image

: Music data partially saved

(Music data) / (Uta-moji Lyrics) : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

- When FOMA terminal is closed, and Folder name/Playlist name/Music display name are displayed.

## ■ Player screen



Player screen

### ① Tune number/Number of tunes in folder or playlist

### ② Tune title/Artist name

### ③ Jacket image of tune

### ④ Uta-moji Lyrics

### ⑤ Play time/Total time

### ⑥ Play position indicator

### ⑦ Play state

: Normal play   : Fast forward   : Rewind

: In pause

### ⑧ Dolby Mobile is ON

### ⑨ Play volume

### ⑩ Repeat play\*

: Play one   : Play all

### ⑪ Shuffle\*

### ⑫ Equalizer\*

\* When the function is set to "OFF" or "Normal", characters are displayed in gray.

- When FOMA terminal is closed, the icons that show play status on the sub-display ( : playing, : in pause) and a tune title/an artist name are displayed.

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- If the original song saved to a Playlist on FOMA terminal cannot be recognized, "--" appears as a song name in the Playlist and the song cannot be played.

## Playing music data

- The light is always on while playing music with FOMA terminal opened.

### 1 [MUSIC] ▶ Select a folder or Playlist

- When FOMA terminal is closed, you can activate it by pressing for a second or more by default.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, you can move the cursor by pressing and select an item by pressing on the folder list screen, playlist list screen or data list screen.

### 2 Select music data

Playback starts. The light turns on or blinks depending on operations.

- When Chaku-uta full® failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading remaining data appears. If the remaining data cannot be downloaded again, partially saved data is deleted.
- When Uta-moji Lyrics with lyrics & song link is selected, you can confirm what data is being set. When Uta-moji Lyrics without lyrics & song link is selected, a confirmation screen for setting appears. Select "Yes" and a music data to set lyrics & song link.
- The following operations are available on the player screen.
  - : Play/Pause
  - : Adjust volume
  - (1 sec. or more) : Rewind/Fast forward
  - (1 sec. or more) : Jump to the beginning of the song, or jump to the previous song if play time is within 3 seconds
  - (1 sec. or more) : Move to the next tune
  - : Display whole Uta-moji Lyrics (only available during playing)/Access a site to search Uta-moji Lyrics if Uta-moji Lyrics is not saved
- When whole Uta-moji Lyrics is displayed, a title, artist name, lyric writer and lyrics are displayed.

- : Switch between data list screen and player screen without stopping playback
- : Stop playing and display data list screen
- : Changing the repeat setting
- : Changing the shuffle setting
- : Changing the equalizer settings (cannot be changed during playback)
- : Changing Dolby Mobile (cannot be changed during playback)
- (Press twice quickly) : Save the current song or song in pause to Quick playlist→P217
- (1 sec. or more) : Stop MUSIC Player

#### When Uta-hodai is selected

When you need to update the replay period in the selected file or other files, a confirmation screen appears. After update is completed, Uta-hodai is played.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- In the following cases, play is paused. Play restarts automatically after the operation is over.
  - When a call is received
  - When mail, MessageR/F, SMS is received (with Display priority set to "Show message")
  - When i-mode inquiry is performed
  - When the date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When a function that cannot be used concurrently is performed
- When many functions are used simultaneously, the tune being played may be interrupted.
- If the battery level is low, a confirmation screen appears.

#### ◆When music data has replay restriction set

Some music data has replay count, replay expiration and/or replay period restrictions; you cannot play music that exceeds the restrictions.

- The remaining replay count, replay expiration and replay period of Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> can be checked by viewing the detail information.
- Expiration and period of replay restriction cannot be changed even if you change the date and time.

#### ■ Uta-hodai replay expiration

After expiration, a confirmation screen appears. Updating the replay expiration requires site connection. Packet communication fee is charged to connect to a site.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- The replay expiration of Uta-hodai may contain a renewal period of several days after the specified expiration. In this period, the service is available without updating the replay expiration information.
- When MUSIC Player is used with a different UIM from the one used for downloading Uta-hodai, it is recommended to delete all data at once.→P115
- When Uta-hodai is attempted to be downloaded from a site for which FOMA terminal does not have an updated license, a confirmation screen appears before downloading. Select "Yes" and update license to download.
- The default tone sounds when Uta-hodai set to ring alert or alarm sound cannot be played.
- Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double is not applicable to packet communication fee to be charged for updating the replay expiration during international roaming.
- To play a WMA file which cannot be played, check that it has not expired yet using a PC, and connect FOMA terminal to the PC to synchronize.→P213
- In a place overseas with time difference, the replay expiration of Uta-hodai is displayed with local time. Note that, the replay expiration is passed in Japan time, playing is unavailable regardless of the local time displayed.

#### ◆ MUSIC Player setting <Settings>

[MUSIC] ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

- "In-a-train" of Equalizer reduces the sound leakage from earphone etc.

## Managing folder/playlist/data

#### ◆ Moving Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>

You can move Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> between FOMA terminal and microSD card.

**1** Move the cursor to Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> on the data list screen other than Playlist ▶ ▶ or ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> is moved, and and are switched.

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

### ✓INFORMATION

- Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> partially saved or exceeded replay restriction cannot be moved. WMA file or Uta-moji Lyrics cannot be moved, too.
- If Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> set for ring alert is moved from FOMA terminal to microSD card, the ring alert setting returns to default.

### ◆ Deleting data

#### 1 Move the cursor to data on the data list screen other than Playlist ▶ 6 ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to data.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When all data is deleted in a folder, the folder itself is also deleted. However, a folder stored by default is not deleted.
- If music data set for ring alert is deleted, the ring alert setting returns to default.
- When data with lyrics & song link is deleted, the Link lyrics & song is also canceled.

### ◆ Creating/Deleting playlist

You can manage music data in your preferred playing order. Up to 20 in FOMA terminal and up to 100 in microSD card can be saved.

- Playlists created on a PC can be transferred. → P213

#### 1 Select Playlist folder on the folder list screen

#### 2 1

- Deleting :** Move the cursor to a playlist ▶   3 ▶ "Yes"
- Quick playlist cannot be deleted.

**Displaying name :** Move the cursor to a playlist ▶   4

**Changing name :** Move the cursor to a playlist ▶   5

- Quick Playlist and Playlist transferred from a PC cannot be renamed.

#### 3 Enter the Playlist name (up to 40 two-byte (80 one-byte) characters) ▶

### ◆ Creating playlist from music data to save

#### 1 Move the cursor to music data on the data screen other than Playlist ▶ 3 ▶ -

The next procedure → P217 Step 3 in "Creating/Deleting playlist"

- Selecting operation ▶  is required for registering selected items.

### ◆ Saving music data to playlist

Up to 100 songs can be saved in 1 Playlist.

- Songs cannot be saved in a Playlist transferred from a PC.

### ◆ Operating from playlist to save data

#### 1 On the folder list screen, select Playlist folder ▶ Select a playlist

#### 2 3 ▶ - ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data

- To save selected items, select them ▶ . To save all items,  is required.
- All music data is displayed as selected for registering all items.

**Saving to playlist that no music data is saved :** "Yes" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data ▶ 

### ◆ Operating from the music data to save

#### 1 Move the cursor to music data on the data list screen other than Playlist ▶ 3 ▶ - ▶ Select a playlist

- To save selected items, select them ▶ .

### ◆ Saving music data to Quick playlist on the player screen

You can add a song in playback or paused to dedicated Playlist (Quick Playlist). Up to 100 songs can be saved.

- Quick playlist cannot be newly created.
- A song being played from a Playlist cannot be saved to Quick Playlist.

#### 1 On the player screen, press twice

The confirmation sound is emitted.

## ◆ Removing music data from playlist

- Music data cannot be removed from a Playlist transferred from a PC.
- Removing music data from a Playlist does not delete the data.

### 1 Move the cursor to music data on the data list screen in Playlist ▶ 3 2 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes"

- To remove selected items, select them ▶ .

## ◆ Copying playlist

### 1 On the folder list screen, select the Playlist folder ▶ Move the cursor to a playlist ▶ 2

- When copying Playlists transferred from a PC, press  and select "Yes". These are saved to FOMA terminal as Playlists created on FOMA terminal.

## ◆ Sorting playlist order in playlist freely

- Sorting is unavailable for playlist transferred from a PC.

### 1 On the data list screen in Playlist, 3 3 ▶ Move the cursor to music data ▶ or ▶

## ◆ Rearranging the display order of data <Sort>

### 1 On the data list screen other than Playlist 7 ▶ Set required items ▶

## ◆ Setting Link lyrics & song to Uta-moji Lyrics

This function allows you to synchronize music data playback to display lyrics on the player screen.

- If music data contains Uta-moji Lyrics in advance, setting or canceling is unavailable.

### 1 On the data list screen other than Playlist, move the cursor to Uta-moji Lyrics or music data ▶ 4 2 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select music data or Uta-moji Lyrics ▶ "Yes"

**Canceling** : On the data list screen other than Playlist, move the cursor to Uta-moji Lyrics or music data ▶  4 3 ▶ "Yes"

- Link lyrics & song for the currently played data can be canceled by pressing  3 3 on the player screen.

## ◆ Setting music data as ring alert

You can select "Full song ring tone" to set whole music data as a ring alert or "Point ring tone" to set a part of it.

- You cannot set WMA files and music data in which Full song ring tone and Point ring tone are set to "No" in Detail info.

<Example> Setting music data on FOMA terminal

### 1 Move the cursor to music data on the data list screen ▶ 1 ▶ 1 - 8

### 2 or

- To set as Point ring tone, select a section to set.
- When setting as a contact alert (call, mail), select a phonebook entry and press .

**Setting music data of microSD card to full song ring tone** :  ▶ "Yes"

The music data moves to FOMA terminal and is set as ring alert.

**Setting music data on microSD card as Point ring tone** :

### ① ▶ Select the part to set ▶ "Yes"

- When setting the music data in "Music (subscription required)", the data moves to FOMA terminal. No more operation is required.

### ② Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶

- When selecting the music data in "Music", the selected part of the music data is saved in "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie on FOMA terminal as i-motion compatible with contents transfer.

## ◆ Displaying detail information of data <Displaying detail information>

### 1 On the data list screen, move the cursor to data ▶ 2 1 ▶

- Detail information of the currently played music data can be checked by pressing (1) on the player screen.
- Different types of information are displayed depending on data.
- "Display name" is the name to be displayed on the data list screen, "Title" is the original name of the data.
- "Track number" indicates a song number in album/total number of songs in album.
- A file extension is not displayed in "File name".
- In "File type", "Music" indicates Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>, and "Music(subscription)" indicates Uta-hodai files respectively.
- "Sound" indicates a format and bit rate of the music data. Bit rate is not displayed for a WMA file.
- While File of detail information is being displayed, press to display a confirmation screen for connecting to a site indicated in "URL".

**Changing detail information of data :** Move the cursor to data on the data list screen ▶ (2) (2) ▶ Select an item ▶ Enter new data ▶

- If detail information of music data in pause is changed (however, detail information of Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> in the microSD card cannot be operated in pause), the music data may not be played by using "Last played songs" when MUSIC Player is activated next time.
- Detail information of WMA file cannot be changed.
- Items that can be changed and the number of characters that can be entered to individual saving destinations are as follows. Note that, only display name can be changed in Uta-moji Lyrics.

Item	F-08A	microSD card
Display name	25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters	
Title	127 two-byte (254 one-byte) characters	31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters
Artist		126 two-byte (253 one-byte) characters
Album		
Year	4 one-byte digits	
Genre	127 two-byte (254 one-byte) characters	126 two-byte (253 one-byte) characters
Comment		
Track number	3 one-byte digits	
Total track number		

- Selecting "Restore original" causes the item above the button to return to the information as downloaded.

## ◆ Displaying images or lyrics contained in music data

- Images in JPEG or GIF format can be displayed.
- You can display up to 1 Jacket image, 2 images and 7 lyrics. Some images or lyrics can be saved. In the case of a WMA file, only the jacket image can be displayed.

**On the player screen,** (2) ▶ (1) - (3)

- While displaying image, the following operations are available.
  - : Display on a full-screen
  - : Display the previous or next image or lyrics
  - : Save to "i-mode" folder of My Picture.
  - / : Return to the player screen
- You can perform the same operation by moving the cursor to music data on the data list screen and pressing (2) (3), but lyrics cannot be displayed.

## ◆ Deleting WMA files all at once <Delete all WMAs>

**On the folder list screen,** (1) ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

WMA files saved in microSD card and playlists transferred from a PC are deleted and the Link Lyrics & song is canceled.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Performing Delete all WMAs deletes the WM folder in microSD card, WM\_SYSTEM folders and all data from these folders. Note that data not used by MUSIC Player is also deleted.

## BGM play

### Using i-αppli while playing music

You can set whether background play of Music&Video Channel programs or MUSIC Player songs is available while using i-αppli.

- Background play is not available unless the volume of the running i-αppli is set to 0. Background play may not be available even when the volume of some i-αppli is set to 0.

## Remote controller with microphone

### Using Remote controller with microphone F01

Using Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional), you can operate Music&Video Channel player and MUSIC Player.

▶/|| (1 sec. or more)\*<sup>1</sup> : Start/Stop

▶/|| : Play/Pause

▶/|| (Pressing twice quickly on the player screen)\*<sup>1</sup> : Save the current or paused tune to Quick playlist

+ - (Player screen) : Adjust volume

+ - (Folder list screen, playlist list screen, data list screen)\*<sup>1</sup> : Move the cursor

+ (1 sec. or more) : Move to the next chapter/tune

- (1 sec. or more)\*<sup>2</sup> : Jump to the beginning the next chapter/song

◀ HOLD (Slide in the direction of ▼) : Disable ▶/||, + and - keys.

▶ HOLD (Slide in the opposite direction of ▼) : Enable unavailable keys

\*<sup>1</sup> This is available only for MUSIC Player.

\*<sup>2</sup> If playing time is within 3 seconds, move to the previous chapter/tune.

## i-αppli

i-αppli .....	222
Downloading i-αppli .....	222
Starting i-αppli .....	223
Starting i-αppli quickly .....	236
Starting i-αppli automatically .....	237
Using i-αppli call .....	237
Starting i-αppli from site, mail or ToruCa .....	238
Operating i-αppli stand-by display .....	<b>i-αppli To</b> 239
Managing i-αppli .....	239
Using various i-αppli functions .....	241
Using map application .....	<b>Map</b> 242

## i-Widget

i-Widget .....	242
Using i-Widget .....	243
Downloading Widget Appli .....	244

## i-αppli

"i-αppli" is a software for i-mode compatible mobile phones. By downloading various software from i-mode site, you can update the information of stock price or weather automatically, enjoy the games without connecting network or use FOMA terminal more conveniently.

Moreover, i-αppli Online which enables online communication among multiplayer by using real-time communication or i-αppli call (→P237) is supported to enjoy a versus game or chat application etc.

Also, some i-αppli support i-Widget (→P242).

- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For overseas use, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.→P328
- For details of i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### ✓INFORMATION

- Any images or moving pictures saved by i-αppli or i-αppli DX are saved in "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" folder or a folder under "Deco-mail pict" of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie, added album or in the i-αppli, respectively. Any ToruCa saved by i-αppli is saved in "ToruCa" of ToruCa content.
- When ring tone is saved by i-αppli DX, it is saved in "i-mode" folder of Melody or in the i-αppli.
- Press  [i-αppli]  to display the registered trademarks regarding i-αppli.

## Downloading i-αppli

You can download i-αppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum size of i-αppli that can be saved is 2 Mbytes.

**I** Display a site ▶ Select an i-αppli

i-αppli is downloaded.

- Press  and select "Yes" while downloading to stop downloading.
- When downloading is stopped or communication is interrupted, a confirmation screen for resuming it may appear. When selecting "No", a confirmation screen for partial saving appears when it is available. When partially saved, the remainder can be downloaded from Software list.→P223 Step 3 in "Starting i-αppli"

### When Software info disp. is "ON"

A confirmation screen of i-αppli information and downloading appears.

- The detail information of the i-αppli to be downloaded can be displayed by pressing .

### When i-αppli that uses and sends the saved data, the serial number of your mobile phone/UIM, data in IC card (including a unique number of IC card) or microSD card is download

A downloading confirmation screen appears.

- With "Guide" displayed on the guide area, press  to check details of the data used by the i-αppli.

### When the selected i-αppli is already downloaded.

A screen indicating that the data is already downloaded appears. When the new version of the i-αppli is released, upgrading confirmation screen appears.

When already downloaded with another UIM, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

### When the setting screen for Set stand-by disp. (i-αppli stand-by), Use network, Program guide key setting or i-αppli call setting appears

Set required items.

Setting items→P225 Step 1 in "Setting operating condition of i-αppli"

## 2 After completion of downloading, "Yes" or "No"

Select "Yes" to activate i-αppli and select "No" to return to the site display.

- Downloaded i-αppli is saved to "My folder" of Software list.
- When Set stand-by disp. is set to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting appears. When it is set, Show ticker of i-Channel setting or Information display is set to "No/Not display" if it was set to "Yes/Display".

## ✓ INFORMATION

- When exceeding the savable number/area→P280
- Checking memory space→P280
- Downloading of i-appli may be unavailable if memory space in the IC card is not sufficient (regardless of memory space in the i-appli storage area) or the i-appli to be downloaded is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that uses the same services as those used by another Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli already saved. Delete the i-appli following instructions displayed on the screen. Note that, some types of i-appli may not be displayed as ones to be deleted or may require to be started or downloaded again and the data in the IC card to be deleted.

## ◆ Downloading Message i-appli

When Message i-appli is downloaded, the folders for Message i-appli are automatically created in the folder list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages. The automatically created folder name is set to the name of the Message i-appli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Up to 5 items of Message i-appli can be saved (included in the savable number, 100 of i-appli). When exceeding the savable number, follow the instructions on the screen and delete stored folder for Message i-appli.
- If Message i-appli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, it cannot be downloaded.
- If a Message i-appli is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i-appli folder remains, a confirmation screen for using mail folder appears. If you do not use, download after deleting the mail folder.
- If a mail that supports Message i-appli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for moving to the folder created automatically when downloading appears.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, the site screen reappears when downloading Message i-appli is completed. When the setting screen is displayed, press  to return to the site screen.

## ◆ Setting whether to display i-appli information when downloading <Software info disp.>

1  [i-appli]   ▶  or 

## Starting i-appli

1  (1 sec. or more)

Displaying only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli :  [Osaifu-Keitai]  ▶ Go to Step 3

Displaying only Map appli :  [LifeKit]   ▶ Go to Step 3

2 Select a folder

- Icon definitions

 /  : Stored folder by default with/without i-appli

 /  : Created folder with/without i-appli

Checking number of i-appli in folder <Count software> : Move the cursor to a folder ▶ 

- For icon definitions, see Step 3.

Checking current settings : 

The settings such as saved number, i-appli stand-by display, one-key shortcut and auto start are displayed.

3 Select i-appli to start



Graphical display

- Icon definitions are as follows.

 : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

 : IC card data transferred by iC transfer service

- : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that is not set
- : Message i-αppli : i-αppli DX
- : i-αppli (orange)
- : i-αppli setting available/currently set for i-αppli stand-by display
- : Auto start set
- (upper half in gray, lower half in orange) : i-αppli partially saved
- : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
- : Stopped by IP (Information Provider)
- : i-αppli downloaded from SSL/TLS page
- : Unable to start because 2in1 is in B mode
- : i-αppli registered as one-key shortcut
- : i-αppli registered as two-key shortcut
- : Individual IC card lock is set : Map αppli
- : Map application that can be set as the one used for Show map/map application that is currently set
- : Program guide key setting available/set to ON
- : Search i-mode site for i-αppli →P222

- Icons may be displayed instead of thumbnails.
- Each time you press , the view switches in the order of graphical display→list display→thumbnail display.
- When Widget Appli is activated, an operation screen for the Widget Appli appears. →P243
- When partially saved i-αppli is selected, a downloading confirmation screen asking if you download the rest appears. The i-αppli can be started after the rest is downloaded; when download is disabled, the i-αppli partially saved may be deleted.
- When IC card data transferred by iC transfer service is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading or connecting to the site appears. The related Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli can be started after it is downloaded.
- To exit i-αppli, follow the procedure specified for each i-αppli. You can also quit i-αppli by pressing and then selecting "Yes".

### ✓INFORMATION

- For some i-αppli, display area differs or horizontal display is applied. However, keypad operations or the guide area on the horizontal display is the same as those on the vertical display.

- i-αppli whose horizontal and vertical (or vice versa) size is less than 240×427 dots is displayed with horizontal and vertical size doubled.
- For i-αppli in a full-screen, you can display/hide the battery icon each time you press .
- You can adjust the volume that sounds while i-αppli is running. Note that some i-αppli does not emit sounds. →P226
- Some i-αppli can activate another specified i-αppli while running i-αppli (when not specified, select i-αppli). Note that, if the specified i-αppli is not on the Software list, it must be downloaded.
- Images used on i-αppli (shot using the camera from i-αppli, obtained using the i-αppli infrared communication/iC transmission function) or the data you entered may be sent to the server via Internet.
- i-αppli that uses microSD card can save data in microSD card from the i-αppli, but the saved data may not be used for other models. Select "i-αppli data" in microSD card to check for the i-αppli that uses microSD card. →P272
- i-αppli may be interrupted when any of the following conditions occur. When the operating function ends, i-αppli restarts, but some i-αppli does not return to the state of the time of interruption.
  - When a call is received
  - When Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated
  - When the date specified in the watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-αppli may not start or not operate correctly.
- For certain i-αppli, the IP (Information Provider) may access i-αppli saved in the mobile phone and directly set operation disabled state. In this case, i-αppli startup, stand-by display settings, upgrading, etc. are disabled, enabling only deletion and software description display. To resume using i-αppli, notification of i-αppli enabled must be received; contact the IP (Information Provider).
- For certain i-αppli, the IP (Information Provider) may send data to i-αppli saved in the mobile phone.
- When the IP (Information Provider) requests i-αppli for stopping or restarting or sends data to i-αppli, FOMA terminal makes communications and blinks. In this case, no communication fee is charged.
- For i-αppli builders
  - If i-αppli does not operate normally while building, trace information may help. Press [i-αppli] on the stand-by display to display Trace information. Note that Trace information cannot be displayed if i-αppli that records Trace information is not in the software list.
  - To delete Trace information, press and select "Yes".

## ◆ Displaying Security error history

When i-αppli ended with an error because i-αppli cannot use the saved data, the name of the i-αppli, date and time, and cause of security error are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1  [i-αppli]  

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

## ◆ Displaying i-αppli description <Software description>

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-αppli ▶ 

- Displayed items differ by i-αppli.
- To check the site certificate of the i-αppli downloaded from SSL/TLS page, press  on Software description screen.

## ◆ Setting operating condition of i-αppli <Software settings>

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i-αppli.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode, "Set i-αppli display" and "Set NW transmission during i-αppli display" cannot be selected.

1  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-αppli ▶   ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Set i-αppli display** : Set if you set i-αppli to stand-by display. Only one i-αppli can be set.

**Set NW transmission during i-αppli display** : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-αppli stand-by display is running.

**Set NW transmission** : Set if you allow automatic communication while the i-αppli is running.

**Use icons** : Set if you allow i-αppli to use icons for mail, MessageR/F, battery, Silent mode and signal level.

**Start from browser** : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from site (i-αppli To).

**Start from ToruCa** : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from ToruCa (i-αppli To).

**Start from mailer** : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from mail (i-αppli To).

**Start from Location Service menu** : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from link item of location information in site, MessageR/F or ToruCa (i-αppli To).

**Start from external** : Set if you allow starting the i-αppli from external device (i-αppli To).

**Start from data broadcasting site** : Set if you permit activation from 1Seg data broadcasting site (i-αppli To).

**Allow ring tone / image changes by software** \* : Set if you allow i-αppli to change settings such as ring tone and images for the stand-by display.

**Confirm all changes** \* : Set if you display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring alert or images are changed.

**Allow access to phone book / call records by software** \* : Set if you allow i-αppli to refer to phonebook, redial or received call logs automatically. This setting also applies to ToruCa saved in FOMA terminal.

**Program guide key setting** \* : Set if you set i-αppli in program guide i-αppli activated from 1Seg. Only one i-αppli can be set.

**Map setting** \* : Set if you set i-αppli to be the i-αppli used for Show map. Only one i-αppli can be set.

- This setting also applies to Select map. →P242

**i-αppli call setting** \* : Set if you activate i-αppli from i-αppli call.

\* Available only for i-αppli DX.

## ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When setting Set i-αppli display to "Yes", a confirmation screen for setting appears (except when i-αppli is already set to the stand-by display). When it is set, Show ticker of i-Channel setting or Information display is set to "No/Not display" if it was set to "Yes/Display". When Set i-αppli display is set to "No", Show ticker of i-Channel setting or Information display is set to "Yes/Display".
- If you set "No" for Set NW transmission, i-αppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather information may not be provided by i-αppli.
- If you set "Yes" for Use icons, since icons for unread messages, unread MessageR/F, remaining battery level, Silent mode, and antenna icon may be sent to IPs (Information Providers) through the Internet, it may give the information to a third party. Some i-αppli requiring icons may not operate when "No" is set.
- When "No" is selected in Program guide key setting, a cancellation confirmation screen appears.
- When "Yes" is selected in Map setting, a message appears indicating that selected location information may not be displayed.
- Some i-αppli are unavailable even when i-αppli call setting is set to "Yes".

## ◆ Setting operations while i-αppli is active

### ❖ Setting Display light time

**[** **ME** **NUM]** [i-αppli] **[** **3** **4** **▶** **1** **or** **2** **]**

- When setting to "Terminal setting", it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even if "Software" is set, the light turns off in Public mode (Drive mode) when the time specified in Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light has elapsed.
- This setting also applies to Display light time (i-αppli) of Display & Key light.

### ❖ Setting vibrator

You can set if you allow the vibrator operation by i-αppli.

- This setting also applies to i-αppli effect of Vibrate alert/effect.

**[** **ME** **NUM]** [i-αppli] **[** **3** **5** **▶** **1** **or** **2** **]**

### ❖ Setting volume

- This setting also applies to i-αppli effect sound of Adjust volume.

**[** **ME** **NUM]** [i-αppli] **[** **3** **7** **▶** **⊗** **▶** **□** **]**

## ◆ Motion tracking

This FOMA terminal supports motion tracking to operate i-αppli (by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal) using recognition technology of in-camera.

- May be unavailable in the following cases.
  - When the lens of in-camera is soiled
  - When your clothing looks similar to the background
  - When the background is not fixed like when moving
  - When in a dark place or where back ground is too bright

### WARNING

Play motion tracking compatible applications by shaking FOMA terminal etc. There is a risk that FOMA terminal hits people or objects around you by shaking it too much, causing an accident or damage. When you play, grip FOMA terminal firmly, do not shake it too much and confirm the safety around you while playing.

## ◆ Using preinstalled i-αppli

- If you delete stored i-αppli, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site. →P280

### Precautions related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli

- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the information set in the IC card.

## ❖ ロジックパズルF (LOGIC PUZZLE F)



Solve clue numbers and create a correct picture by locating square blocks (■). This is a puzzle game that can everyone enjoy with simple rule.

- For operation method, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of ゲーム設定 (Game settings) on the title screen

©T2i Entertainment

## ❖ ブチブチズーキーパー ver.F (Puchipuchi Zookeeper ver.F)



This is an action puzzle game to fulfill the norm by erasing the specified number of adjacent animal panels within a time limit.

- For operation method, see "HOW TO PLAY" on the title screen.

© 2008 ROBOT

## ❖ ケータイ脳カストretching2 (Keitai Brain Stretching 2 (editing supervised by Professor Ryuta Kawashima at Tohoku University))



You solve various problems to estimate your brain age or train brain.

- For operation method, see "操作説明 (Operation)" on the menu screen.

## ❖ 日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)



By voice entry, translate words mainly used for travelling from Japanese to English and vice versa.

- To use, you are required to agree to the Terms of Service.
- A packet communication fee is charged separately.
- For operation method, refer to "チュートリアル (Tutorial)" by pressing **[F]** on the title screen.
- All functions are free till the 60th day from the first activation. You are charged from 61st day to use all the functions, and My Menu registration is required from "しゃべって翻訳 (Speech Translation)" site of ATR-Trek.

i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→辞書/学習/便利ツール  
(Dictionary/Learning/Convenient tool)→しゃべって翻訳 (Speech Translation)

QR code for  
site access



© ATR-Trek Co., Ltd. 2008

## ❖ iアバターメーカー (iavatar maker)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

Functions available with iavatar maker

### ■ Creating avatar

Avatar can be created by using parts for iavatar maker.

You can create avatar while watching camera photos or images in Data Box or by selecting from samples provided beforehand.

### ■ Using avatar

With the created avatar, you can use as materials for Deco-mail, Deco-mail pictogram or Decome-Anime, and it can be converted to Machi-chara compatible with i-concier.

By registering to iavatar site, the created avatar can be changed various clothes items or publicized on competition or compatible sites.

- A packet communication fee is separately required to convert avatar to Decome-Anime.

- A packet communication fee is separately required to register an avatar to iavatar.
- To dress it up on iavatar site, you may be required to purchase items on the site.
- iavatar is a trademark of D2 Communications Inc.
- アバターメーカー (Avatar maker) is a trademark of Acrodea, Inc.  
©2009 Acrodea, Inc./©eitarosoft

### ◆ モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)

You can search for area information, shop information or user created contents by displaying a map. You can also switch to aerial photograph mode or see the street view.

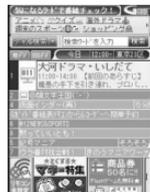
#### ■ Map screen



- ☰ : Display "メニュー (menu)"
- 🔍 : Search (Search shop or service information or location of the area and display it on the map)
- 📍 : Context menu (現在の住所 (Address of current location), ここまでの経路 (Route to here), ここからの経路 (Route from here), ストリートビュー (Street view), お気に入り保存 (Save to favorite), 付近を検索 (Search nearby))
- 👉 : Move of the cursor
- 🔍 : Zoom out
- 📷 : Switch map/aerial photo
- 🔍 : Zoom in
- 📍 : Display current location
- 🔍 : Save to/display お気に入り (your favorite)

- You are required to agree to the Terms of Service at the first time you use this application.
- A packet communication fee is charged separately. It is recommended to use Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-houdai double for this application.
- For details, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of メニュー (Menu).  
©2009 Google - Map data ©2009 ZENRIN

### ◆ Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



- \* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.
- Program guide available in the area you live is displayed.

This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and AV remote controller function with no monthly fee.

You can easily obtain the TV program information of terrestrial digital, terrestrial analog or BS digital of your preferred time any time and anywhere. You can check the title, contents, start/end time, etc. of TV programs. Also, you can activate 1Seg from Program guide, and Program guide from 1Seg. If there is any program you are interested in, you can make a watching reservation of the program to DVD recorder etc. via Internet (DVD recorder etc. compatible with remote watching reservation function is required. When using, the initial setting of this application is required). Moreover, you can search for program information by keyword of TV category, favorite personalities, etc., or pickup keyword at the top of the main display. You can also perform remote controlling operation of TV, video or DVD player (→P284) (some models does not support this function).

- The first time you use this i-appli, initial setup and agreement to the Terms of Service are required.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- When using overseas, set Date & time of FOMA terminal to Japan time.
- For details of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

## ■ Watching reservation function

You can select a program from Program guide of this i-αppli and reserve 1Seg watching.

### Watching reservation :

Activate this i-αppli, select a program to reserve, select "視聴予約 (Reserve)" from "予約実行 (Reserved program)" of メニュー (Menu) and reserve the program according to the instruction given on the screen when the reservation scheduler is activated.

## ■ Recording reservation function

You can select a program to record from Program guide of this i-αppli and make a recording reservation of 1Seg.

### Recording reservation :

Activate this application, select a program to make a recording reservation, select "予約実行 (Reserved program)" from "#ワンセグ録画予約 (1Seg recording reservation)" of メニュー (Menu) and reserve the program according to the instruction given on the screen when the reservation scheduler is activated (recording reservation can also be made by selecting a program to make a recording reservation and pressing (Ⓜ)).

## ■ Remote recording reservation function

If a DVD recorder etc. applicable with remote recording reservation is available, you can make recording reservation from a program table of this application even while going out.

For remote recording reservation, initialization in this application is necessary.

### Initialization procedure :

- ① Set DVD recorder etc. for Internet connection (See the operation manual of the DVD recorder etc.).
- ② Start this application, select "リモート録画予約 (Remote recording reservation)" from メニュー (Menu) and perform initialization according to the prompt displayed.

### Reserving program :

After initialization has completed, specify your favorite program and select "リモート録画予約 (Remote recording reservation)" from メニュー (Menu). Thus, you are connected with the DVD recorder etc. set in this application via Internet and can make recording reservation.

## ❖ iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"iD" is a convenient electronic money by credit clearance scheme. You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently only by holding Osaifu-Keitai with credit information set or the iD-compatible card over the IC card reader in stores. Because up to 2 types of credit information can be registered in Osaifu-Keitai, you can use them according to the benefit of store etc. It also supports cashing, depending on the card issuer.

- To use "iD" with Osaifu-Keitai, subscribing to a card issuer that supports iD, settings for iD-αppli or card i-αppli are required. For some cards, after completing iD-αppli settings, you may need to make card i-αppli settings.
- The charges required for iD service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- "iD 設定アプリ (iD appli)" cannot be deleted. For resetting IC owner, perform "iD アプリ初期化 (Reset iD application)" from "設定メニュー (Setting menu)" of iD appli beforehand.
- For information regarding iD, refer to the iD i-mode site.
- i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→"iD"

QR code for  
site access



## ◆ DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"DCMX" is a credit service compatible with "iD" provided by NTT DOCOMO. There are 2 types of DCMX : DCMX mini that allows you to use up to ¥10,000 per month and DCMX/DCMX GOLD that allows you to use more amount of money than DCMX mini while saving DOCOMO points. Using DCMX mini, a credit payment service becomes available right now by making application from this application.

Membership application and examination\*1

Setting card information

### Use

No need for a troublesome charge!  
You can enjoy shopping with no signature\*2 only by setting the card information for your terminal only once and placing it over the reader in the store that has the below iD mark.



#### Check

You can check DCMX services, available amount for the current month\*3 and usage details from application!

#### Change

You can set for the model change and update the expiration date from application!

- \*1 A membership examination is carried out online at your application for DCMX mini. For application for services except DCMX mini, you are connected to i-mode application page.
  - \*2 Entry of security code may be required under certain conditions.
  - \*3 Only DCMX mini is available.
- For details of the service and application, refer to i-mode site of DCMX.  
i-mode site : iMenu → DCMX iD

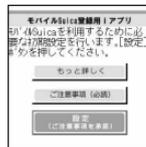
QR code for  
site access



## ▼INFORMATION

- When card information is not set, "未設定 (not set)" or is displayed on the software list.
- When starting this application for the first time, agreement with "Precautions on Usage" is necessary.
- A packet communication fee is required for various settings and operations.

## ◆ モバイルSuica登録用iアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-appli)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"モバイルSuica登録用iアプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-appli)" is an i-appli that is provided by NTT DOCOMO for making initial setting of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service "モバイルSuica (Mobile Suica)" that is provided by JR East Japan Railway Company before using. After initial setting by this application, download Mobile Suica application from JR East Japan Railway Company's site with following the instruction on the screen and make member registration.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "ご注意事項 (必読) (Notice (essential reading))".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.

- You can delete this application after completion of initial setting, but the area in IC card for setting remains occupied. For using this area for other service, formatting all of data in IC card (hereinafter, Full-format) is required.
  - For performing Full-format, it is necessary to come to the docomo shop.
  - When Full-format is performed, all of data in IC card is deleted.
  - For using Mobile Suica service again after performing Full-format, an initial setting by this application is required again.
  - For information about Mobile Suica, refer to i-mode site.
- i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)→対応サービス (Supported services)→モバイルSuica (Mobile Suica)
- "モバイルSuica" (Mobile Suica) is a registered trademark of East Japan Railway Company.

### ❖ FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

FOMA communication environment check application is an application to check if FOMA terminal can use FOMA high-speed area.

- When using FOMA communication environment check application, agreement with "ご利用上の注意 (Precautions on Usage)" is necessary.
- Depending on the communication condition (weather, radio wave conditions or congestion of the network) at the time of communication confirmation, different communication results or the result of out of service area may be displayed even if the place or the time zone is the same.
- If you activate another function while using this application, you may not confirm correctly.

### ❖ ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker)



This is an application to manage data of steps, activity amounts, pulse rates, blood pressure and body compositions. You can view data by using a graph or specifying date, automatically send mail that notifies of steps and activity amounts data, use "からだカルテ (medical record)" that offers you health advice.

- This application supports Pedometer/ACT monitor.
- You can measure your pulse rates by using パルスチェッカー (Pulse checker).
- You can receive data of manometer (marketed product) or body composition measure (marketed product) by using infrared communication.
- For operation method, see "ヘルプ (Help)" of メニュー (Menu).
- To use, it is recommended to set your information at first. It is necessary for judging the details of measured data. If it is not set, acquiring data by using infrared communication, entering body compositions such as pulse rates, blood pressure and weight manually, or using からだカルテサービス (medical record service) are unavailable. Also, setting "アスリート (athlete)" is recommended for those who meet the following conditions.
  - Those who exercise 12 hours or more per week
  - Professional sports players or their equivalents
  - Those who train muscles
- Information for the past 1,098 days including the current day can be recorded in ヘルスチェッカー. When exceeding 1,098 days, the record is deleted chronologically.
- When mail is automatically sent, i-appli automatically starts.
- Precautions for auto start→P237

- For details of カルテサービス, refer to "からだカルテ" site.  
"からだカルテ" site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→健康/ビューティー/医学 (Health/Beauty/Medicine)→健康 (Health)→TANITAからだカルテ (TANITA medical record)

QR code for  
site access



## ■ Widget Appli compatible



You can quickly check the walking state or activity amount on i-Widget screen. To use, activate from i-Widget.→P243

- While running, the following operations are available.

- : Activate ヘルステッカー (i-appli)
- : Switch steps/activity amounts
- : Change the date

## ✓ INFORMATION

- This FOMA terminal is not a medical device. Use the displayed information by ヘルステッカー just as guides.
- When using からだカルテサービス, your information such as height and measuring mode is sent to the server of からだカルテサービス. The sent information is not used for purposes except からだカルテサービス.

### <Precautions for using パルスチェッカー (Pulse checker)>

- Use it in the place with normal brightness such as under fluorescent light. If it is too bright or too dark, measurement may fail.
- Measurement may not be correctly taken due to finger placement or strength of finger touch. Adjust it by changing the place of your finger or the strength of touch.
- Measurement performance may be decreased when your finger conditions are as follows. The measurement performance may be improved by washing hands, wiping hands, changing a finger to measure, etc. according to your finger conditions.
  - Fingers are wet, sweaty or wrinkled
  - Fingers are soiled with oil or mud
  - Fingers are rough or injured (cuts, sore, etc.)

- Perform measurement in a resting condition without walking or moving.
- After measurement, wipe a fingerprint, fat, etc. off the lens of in-camera with a soft cloth.

## ❖ROIDウィジェット (ROID widget)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"ROIDウィジェット" is Widget Appli that a character named ROIKUN introduces updated information (trial version of a game/moving pictures/update of a site) of the mobile site "ROID".

Entertaining actions or comments of ROIKUN are updated by the information of the mobile site "ROID". You can see details of updated information by transiting from "ROIDウィジェット" to the mobile site "ROID"

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is charged separately.

©team ROID

## ❖Start! i ウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"Start! i ウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)" is an application for viewing how to use i-Widget by movie.

You can display sites to download application other than the ones saved in FOMA terminal by connecting i-mode.

- A packet communication fee is separately required when selecting "ダウンロード (Download)" to connect i-mode.

## ❖ iWウォッチ (iW Watch)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"iWウォッチ (iW Watch)" is an application that you can enjoy the graphical watch at i-Widget.

You can change the design and the color to your preference.

## ❖ 地図アプリ (Map Application)

"地図アプリ (Map Application)" is a useful i-appli that allows you to look up a map of current location or specified place, search for information around the place, display a route to the destination, etc. by using location information. You can also search the facilities helpful in case of disaster.



TOP menu screen



Map display screen

\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

- A packet communication fee is required separately. It is recommended to use Pake-Houdai/Pake-Houdai full/Pake-hodai double for this application.
- In case of deleting this application, you can download it from "i エリアー周辺情報 - (i-area -Peripheral information-)" site.
- DOCOMO gives no assurances of accuracy, immediacy, etc. of the map or routing information. Please be forewarned.
- Make sure that other than the driver operate this software while driving.
- This application supports the motion tracking.

### ■ Service fee

The service that this i-appli provides is classified in charge-free function and charged function.

#### Charge-free function :

- Displaying map and searching information around the location are available. Searching Gourmet coupon is available, too.
- Paint and display the map of the city/village you displayed before by using location information on a prefectural basis. This function allows you to check the city you visited at first sight.
- Change the mode to not only a normal map, but also to various types of maps such as a 3D map, a map emphasizing railroads, a map in day or night mode, etc.

#### Charged function :

- For 60 days from the first day of activating Map Application, it is a charge-free period and you can use all services except the traffic jam information free of charge. After the charge-free period, you are required to subscribe to My menu (charged) of "ゼンリン 地図+ナビ" provided by ZENRIN DataCom.
- You can perform comprehensive route display including by car, by train and on foot. Searching for the route considering the traffic jam information is possible.
  - Transfer information or timetable of the railway system is available.
  - You can also search the facilities helpful in case of disaster. And a communication-free i-appli; 災害用地図アプリ (Map application for disaster) is also available. It is useful in case of emergency for downloading an evacuation map for disaster of neighborhood area etc. beforehand.

©2009 ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD.

## ❖ 楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)" is a convenient application for easily auctioning in Rakuoku any time, anywhere. With guide display for auctioning operation and "体験出品 (Auctioning trial)", it is available even to beginners of auction at ease. With using "かんたん入力 (Easy entry)" function for composing description or convenient functions for image shooting, editing, log saving, etc., you can make auctioning from a site in a shorter period of time.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For details of Rakuoku, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- Auctioning in Rakuoku requires your subscription for a membership of Rakuten and registering to My Menu.
- For information about Rakuoku, see i-mode site.

i-mode site : iMenu → オークション (Auction)

QR code for  
site access



### ■ Widget Appli compatible



You can check the auction state easily with displaying Rakuoku recommendation items or the information of your selling/bidding items.

## ❖ iアプリバンキング (i-appli banking)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

i-appli banking is a service that allows you to use mobile banking (checking the balance, details of deposits and withdrawals, transferring and other operations on your own account) from your FOMA terminal conveniently. When activating i-appli, you are only required to enter a password set by yourself; after that, you can use mobile banking for up to 2 financial institutions. A payment for invoice/payment notice by Pay-easy is also available.

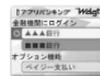
- Before using mobile banking by i-appli banking, you are required to have an account of and make a subscription to one of financial institutions applicable to the Internet banking service.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For details of i-appli banking, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- For information about i-appli banking, visit i-mode site.

i-mode site : iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu list) → モバイルバンキング (Mobile banking) →  iアプリバンキング (i-appli banking)

QR code for  
site access



### ■ Widget Appli compatible



iアプリバンキングウィジェット (i-appli banking widget) allows you to easily activate iアプリバンキング only by entering passwords on the widget, and you can use financial institutions and option functions that you registered more conveniently.

## ❖ マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

You can check recommended information such as McDonald's new product (instantaneously or download to use discount coupon "かざすクーポン (Hold over coupon)" that is available at McDonald's.

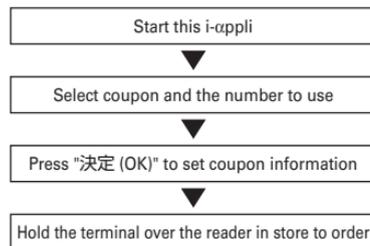
For using "かざすクーポン", register "トクするケータイサイト (TOKUSURU KEITAI site)" and select/set your favorite coupon from the application, and hold it over the reader in McDonald's store.

- For information of マクドナルド トクするアプリ, refer to McDonald's official site "トクするケータイサイト".

i-mode site : iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→グルメ/レシピ (Gourmet/Recipe)→マクドナルド トクする (McDonald's TOKUSURU)

- "かざすクーポン" is unavailable in some stores.
- For the area "かざすクーポン" is unavailable, "見せるクーポン (Show coupon)" is available.
- For "おすすめ情報 (Recommendation)", it is available even for nonmember of "トクするケータイサイト".
- The function or service of "マクドナルド トクするアプリ" may be changed.
- A packet communication fee is required separately.

## ■ Using かざすクーポン



## ■ Widget Appli compatible

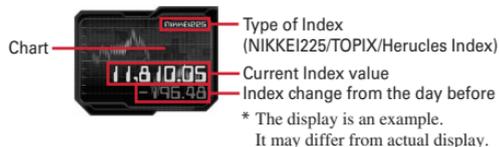


When "おすすめ情報" of McDonald's is updated, the sign of McDonald's of Widget Appli turns and informs you of that.

Select the sign to display the recommendation. By pressing "もっと詳しくボタン (For more details button)" to see more detailed information.

©2009 McDonald's

## ❖ 株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)



"株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)" is an application that you can see the stock price information easily at i-Widget.

The stock price information that can be displayed is 3 indexes of "日経225/TOPIX/ヘラクレス指数 (Nikkei 225/TOPIX/Herules)". A recent price and change on each index can be displayed.

For chart information, "日中足/日足/週足/月足 (intra-day/daily/weekly/monthly)" can be switched.

- Before using for the first time, you have to agree with "Terms of Service".
- A packet communication fee is required separately.
- For recent index value, it is the information of approximately 20 minutes late.
- The information of this application is not for trading stocks etc. and for assisting trade.
- The information of this application expands all possible means for its contents but no assurance. DOCOMO and the information providers assume no responsibility for damages resulted from this information.

## ❖ Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)



\* The display is an example.  
It may differ from actual display.

"Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)" is an application that you can use mobile web search function. It is convenient because entering the search word entered in the past or the trend word can be entered simply.

And you can call for convenient Google service such as mail service (Gmail) or transfer guide etc. easily.

- A packet communication fee is required separately.

## Starting i-appli quickly

i-appli can be started by a simple operation from the stand-by display.

### ◆ Registering i-appli as one-key/two-key shortcut

- You can register one item of one-key shortcut.
- You can register one item of two-key shortcut for each key of keypad, up to 10 items in total.

#### 1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

#### 2 Move the cursor to i-appli ▶ (8) ▶ or

- Same operations are required also for canceling.
- No more operation is required to register as one-key shortcut.

#### 3 Select a destination to register

- Icon numbers (, ) correspond to keypads (, ) used to activate two-key shortcut.
- When a destination already registered is selected, an overwriting confirmation screen appears.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- Press  (i-appli)  () on the stand-by display to display the Shortcut list. Detail info can be displayed and perform Cancel two-key s.cut from the submenu of the list screen.

### ◆ Starting i-appli using one-key/two-key shortcut

<Example> Starting i-appli using two-key shortcut

#### 1 - ▶ (1 sec. or more)

Starting i-appli using one-key shortcut :  (1 sec. or more)

## Starting i-αppli automatically

### ◆ Setting whether to start automatically <Auto start>

You can set whether to automatically start all i-αppli which are set to "ON" for User in Set auto start info.

**I** [i-αppli] **3** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

### ◆ Setting date and time of auto start <Set auto start info.>

Set the conditions such as ON/OFF of automatic start or start time for each i-αppli and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli may not be able to start automatically.
- This function cannot be set when Auto start is "OFF".

**I** (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-αppli ▶ **5** ▶ Set required items ▶

**User** : Select if you perform auto start with the following conditions.

**Time** : Enter the time for auto start of the i-αppli.

**Repeat** : Set the condition for repetitive auto start of the i-αppli.

**Weekly** : Set the day of the week when Repeat is set to "Weekly".

**Date** : Set the date when Repeat is set to "Onetime".

**Software** : Set if you automatically start at the intervals preset for the i-αppli.

**i-αppli 1-4** : For some i-αppli DX, up to 4 conditions of auto start can be set while it is running. You can set if you enable those settings.

### ✓INFORMATION

- Even with auto start set, automatic activation does not occur in the following cases, causing to appear on the stand-by display and to be recorded in Start failure hist.
  - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
  - When it is unavailable due to UIM operation restriction (except for preinstalled i-αppli) or UIM cannot be recognized.

- When the interval of auto start is too short
- When All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock or Privacy mode is ON (when i-αppli is "Authorized access")
- When 2in1 is in B mode (only for Message i-αppli)
- When i-αppli usage is stopped by IP (Information Provider)
- Even if you change "Repeat" to set multiple i-αppli to be automatically started at the same time, only one of them can be activated at one time. The information of the i-αppli that failed to be activated is recorded in Start failure hist., however, does not appear on the stand-by display.

### ◆ Displaying the start failure history

When auto start of the i-αppli fails, appears on the stand-by display and the name of the i-αppli, date and time, and causes are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.
- When displaying Start failure hist. or when the next auto start is successful, on the stand-by display disappears.

**I** [i-αppli] **4** **1**

- To delete histories, press and select "Yes".

## Using i-αppli call

This is a function to ask activation of i-αppli from a third party in order to call the opponent when playing a versus game connecting to a network.

- You can use this function with i-αppli call compatible i-αppli.
- You can reject reception of i-αppli call collectively. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone Use's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### ◆ Sending i-αppli call for calling

**I** Operate i-αppli and select "Yes" on a confirmation screen for sending i-αppli call.

## ◆ Receiving i-appli call

### 1 Receive i-appli call

When the ring alert turns on, the light turns on or blinks according to Mail alert, the ring alert sounds and a confirmation screen for responding appears. On the confirmation screen for responding, the phone number (the name when saved in phonebook) of the sender and i-appli name are displayed.

- The volume when receiving i-appli call follows the setting of Mail/Msg. alert vol. of Adjust volume.
- When i-motion is set to mail ring alert, it operates according to the default setting of Mail alert.

### 2 "Respond"

Targeted i-appli starts.

- When the targeted i-appli is not saved, a confirmation screen for downloading it or connecting to a site appears. Select "Yes" to download. A packet communication fee is charged separately.

**Not activating i-appli : "Reject"**

**Holding calling : "Hold"**

You can respond from i-appli call log. Note that you cannot respond after expiration date.

### ✓INFORMATION

- A confirmation screen for responding does not appear in the following cases.
  - When the screen except the stand-by display appears
  - When date and time are not set
  - In Public mode (Drive mode)
  - In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Privacy mode (when setting i-appli to "Authorized access"), Lock on close or Lock when immobile
  - When "No" is set for i-appli call setting of targeted i-appli.
  - When the targeted i-appli is not saved and i-appli call DL set is "Reject"
- Some i-appli starts without displaying a confirmation screen for responding.
- Responding to i-appli call may require packet communication fees.

## ◆ Operating i-appli call log

When i-appli call is received, reception date, response state, i-appli name, expiration date and phone number of the sender (the name when saved in phonebook) are recorded.

- Up to 30 items can be recorded. The oldest expired item is overwritten when exceeding this limit.

**<Example> Responding to i-appli call on hold**

1  [i-appli] 

- Icon definitions

 : Select "Hold" on a confirmation screen for responding/No operation for approximately 15 seconds.

 : Respond  : Reject  : Expired

### 2 Select the log on hold ▶ "Respond"

Deleting :   ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is required to delete all items.

## ◆ Setting download for i-appli call <i-appli call DL set>

You can set if you download the targeted i-appli if it is not saved when receiving i-appli call.

1  [i-appli]   ▶  or 

### i-appli To

## Starting i-appli from site, mail or ToruCa

1 Display site, i-mode mail or ToruCa ▶ Select a link item enabling to start i-appli ▶ "Yes"

### ✓INFORMATION

- i-appli not saved in FOMA terminal cannot be started with i-appli To. Some i-appli can be started immediately after being downloaded from a site, without saving.
- Partially saved i-appli cannot be started from mail with i-appli To.

- For i-αppli starting just after downloading from sites, a communication confirmation screen while they are activated may appear.
- Some i-αppli program may not be saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the i-αppli is set not to start with i-αppli To, the i-αppli cannot be started. →P225

## i-αppli stand-by display

### Operating i-αppli stand-by display

You can set i-αppli to the stand-by display and start it from the stand-by display to operate.

- While displaying i-αppli stand-by display,  or  appears on the top of the display in gray.
- Setting i-αppli stand-by display →P85, 225

### Starting i-αppli of i-αppli stand-by display

On the i-αppli stand-by display,  ▶ Operate the i-αppli

 or  on the top of the display flash in orange.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When FOMA terminal is turned ON while setting the i-αppli stand-by display, an activating confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears. The display starts when selecting "Yes" or performing no operations for approximately 5 seconds. Selecting "No" cancels i-αppli stand-by display. Note that when the power is turned ON by Auto power ON, the i-αppli stand-by display automatically appears, without displaying the confirmation screen.
- When setting i-αppli that performs communication to i-αppli stand-by display, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions etc.
- In All lock, Omakase Lock, Personal data lock, Privacy mode (when i-αppli is "Authorized access") or when 2in1 is in Dual mode or B mode, the i-αppli stand-by display is temporarily canceled and the default image is displayed.
- When an error that cancels the i-αppli stand-by display occurs, a canceling confirmation screen for the i-αppli stand-by display appears. If you select "Yes", it is canceled and recorded in Abnormal exit hist.

## Quitting i-αppli and returning to the i-αppli stand-by display

While running i-αppli,  ▶ "End"

 or  on the top of the display changes from orange to gray.

The procedure to exit i-αppli and return to the i-αppli stand-by display depends on the i-αppli.

- When selecting "Cancel", the i-αppli stand-by display is canceled.  or  on the top of display disappears.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Operation from Software list :  

## Managing i-αppli

### Upgrading

When the i-αppli is updated, upgrade is available.

 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-αppli ▶   ▶ "Yes"

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When upgrading i-αppli, data such as game scores stored in i-αppli may be erased.
- Some i-αppli may inquire the DOCOMO server about the availability depending on the length of time of use and number of times of use. If the server notifies you there is upgraded i-αppli, you can upgrade it.
- Some i-αppli is automatically upgraded.

### Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- Stored folders by default cannot be deleted. Also, folder names cannot be changed.

### <Example> Creating folders

1 (1 sec. or more)

2 4

**Changing a folder name** : Move the cursor to the folder 1

**Changing the order** : Move the cursor to the folder 5 or 6

#### Deleting folders :

① Move the cursor to a folder 2 1

- When i-αppli is saved in the folder, authentication is required.

② "Yes"

- For some i-αppli saved in the folder, a confirmation screen for deleting i-αppli or mail folder appears.→P240 Step 3 in "Deleting i-αppli".

3 Enter the folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters)

### ◆ Moving i-αppli to another folder

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to i-αppli 3 ▶ -

- To move selected items, select them .

3 Select a folder to move to ▶ "Yes"

### ◆ Deleting i-αppli

- "iD設定アプリ (iD appli)" stored by default cannot be deleted.
- For some Osaifu Keitai compatible i-αppli, the data in the IC card needs to be deleted by activating or redownloading i-αppli before being deleted.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be deleted.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to i-αppli 2 ▶ -

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to i-αppli.
- To delete selected items, select them . To delete all items, authentication is required.

### 3 "Yes"

- When attempting to delete Message i-αppli, a deleting confirmation screen for the message folder appears.
  - "Yes" : Deletes the message folder and all messages stored in the folder.
  - "No" : Deletes i-αppli only.
- However, if there is any protected mail in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-αppli or mail folder even if "Yes" is selected.
- If i-αppli to be deleted by "Selected items" or "All items" includes Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli which needs to delete data in the IC card beforehand, a confirmation screen for deleting other i-αppli appears.
- When deleting i-αppli set in Program guide key setting or Map setting, a deleting confirmation screen appears.
- When deleting i-αppli that uses data of microSD card, a deleting confirmation screen for data of microSD card may appear.
  - "Yes" : Deletes the data of microSD card.
  - "No" : Deletes i-αppli only.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When the mail folder used for Message i-αppli is not deleted, the mail can be displayed from the submenu of the mail folder list.→P133
- When the folder for Message i-αppli to be deleted is being used (including displaying list), the i-αppli may not be deleted.

### ◆ Sorting i-αppli <Sort software>

1 [i-αppli] ▶ -

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Operations from the Software list : 9
- If one- and two-byte characters/alphanumeric are included in the name of i-αppli, the result of sort "By name" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- The access frequency is carried over when upgrading the i-αppli version.
- The access frequency does not include the number of starts as i-αppli stand-by display.
- Selecting "By software size" sorts the i-αppli from large to small.

## ◆ Displaying Abnormal exit history

When an error that cancels i-αppli stand-by display or prevents Widget Appli from running on the Widget Appli list screen occurs, the i-αppli name, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1  [i-αppli] 4 2

- To delete histories, press  and select "Yes".

## Using various i-αppli functions

- i-αppli that supports each function is required.
- Some i-αppli may need different operation or be unavailable.

## ◆ Making a call from i-αppli

1 **Select a phone number ▶ Set a condition for dialing** 

Making a call under set conditions→P57

## ◆ Using camera function from i-αppli

1 **Operate i-αppli to use camera function**

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When activating camera from i-αppli, the still image/moving picture is saved in i-αppli (for some i-αppli, in "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" folder or a folder under "Deco-mail pict" of My Picture, "i-mode" folder of i-motion/Movie or in added album). Also, they may be automatically sent to the server.

## ◆ Using bar code reader from i-αppli

1 **Operate i-αppli to read a bar code (JAN code, QR code, NW7 code, CODE39 code or CODE128 code)**

- The scanned data is used by i-αppli and saved.
- To read CODE128, downloading compatible i-αppli is required.

## ◆ Using infrared communication from i-αppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other party's device even if it has infrared communication function.

1 **"Yes" on a confirmation screen of infrared communication**

- i-αppli can also be executed by receiving i-αppli starting data via infrared communication.

## ◆ Using ToruCa from i-αppli

From i-αppli, you can save ToruCa, use or search ToruCa in the folder.

<Example> Saving

1 **Select "Yes (NewEntry)" on a confirmation screen of saving the ToruCa**

The ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" of ToruCa content.

**Overwriting ToruCa : "Yes (OverWrite)" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select ToruCa to be overwritten**

**Displaying : "Preview"**

## Using map application

### ◆ Showing map <Show map>

You can show a map by activating the map application that is set for Select map.

- "地図アプリ" is activated by default, and you can view a map of current location or specified place.→P233



- When a map application is not set, a confirmation screen for Map setting appears.
- You cannot operate when there is no map application available.

### ◆ Activating map application <Map appli>

You can select it from the map application list to activate.

- "地図アプリ (Map Application)" and "モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)" are stored by default as a map application.
- The next procedure→P223 Step 1 and the following steps in "Starting i-appli"

### ◆ Setting map application to be used for Show map <Select map>



▶ Select a map application

### ◆ Using map overseas

- You may not use the service overseas when date and time are not set.
- i-mode services Settings are required for using a map overseas. i-mode usage overseas→P330

#### ■ Using map application

- Operating procedure→P242
- Note that, a map is not provided or correctly displayed in some places when you use a map application overseas, but a packet communication fee is charged in those cases.

## i-Widget

i-Widget is a convenient function that allows you to easily access frequently-used contents (Widget Appli) such as calculator, clock and stock price information only with the i-Widget/TV key ()

**Widget Appli can be added by downloading from sites provided by IP (Information Provider) etc. Up to 8 Widget Appli can be pasted to make customized screen.**

- When i-Widget screen is displayed, multiple Widget Appli may communicate.
- A packet communication fee is separately required to download Widget Appli or display i-Widget screen.
- For overseas use, a packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.
- For details of i-Widget, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The following preinstalled i-appli are compatible with i-Widget.
  - ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker)→P231
  - ROIDウィジェット (ROID widget)→P232
  - Start! i ウィジェット (Start! i-Widget)→P232
  - iWウォッチ (iW Watch)→P233
  - 地図アプリ (Map Application)→P233
  - 楽オク☆アプリ (Rakuoku☆ application)→P234
  - iアプリバンキング (i-appli banking)→P234
  - マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application)→P235
  - 株価アプリ (Stock Prices Application)→P236
  - Googleモバイル (Google Mobile)→P236
- "ヘルスチェッカー", "Start! i ウィジェット", "iWウォッチ", "地図アプリ", "Google モバイル" are pasted on i-Widget screen by default.

## Using i-Widget

### ◆ Starting i-Widget

- Operations on each screen→P243

#### 1

i-Widget starts and i-Widget screen appears when Widget Appli are pasted on i-Widget screen. The Widget Appli list screen appears when no Widget Appli is pasted.

- When i-Widget screen is displayed, all Widget Appli pasted on i-Widget screen start.
- For overseas use, a setting screen of i-Widget roaming set (→P244) appears at the first activation. Pressing **[CLR]** on the setting screen displays the Widget Appli operation screen without establishing communication as you select "No".

#### 2 Select Widget Appli

The Widget Appli operation screen appears.

- When Widget Appli is selected from the Widget Appli list screen, the Widget Appli starts.
- To paste Widget Appli on the i-Widget screen, press **[on]** on the Widget Appli operation screen to display the i-Widget screen with the Widget Appli activated. When 8 items are already pasted, exit other Widget Appli and then paste.
- i-Widget can be activated or the Widget Appli operation screen can be displayed from Software list.→P223

### ◆ Viewing and operating screens



i-Widget screen



Widget Appli list screen



Widget Appli operation screen  
(e.g. : WALKING CHECKER)

#### ■ Operating i-Widget screen

-  : Move the cursor
-  : Display Widget Appli operation screen at the cursor position

- : Display the Widget Appli list screen
- : Shuffle (when 2 or more items are pasted)
- : Return to the stand-by display
- ▶ "YES" : Exit Widget Appli at the cursor position (delete from i-Widget screen)

#### ■ Operating Widget Appli list screen

- / : Operate in the same way as i-Widget screen
- : Display i-Widget screen when Widget Appli is pasted. Return to the stand-by display when no Widget Appli is pasted.
- When selecting "全てのアプリ (All applications)" on the Widget Appli list screen, i-appli folder list is displayed.

The next procedure→P223 Step 2 in "Starting i-appli"

#### ■ Operating Widget Appli operation screen

- For some Widget Appli, you can also operate with keys except the following.
- \* : Display i-Widget screen (paste on i-Widget screen)
- ▶ "YES" : Exit Widget Appli (delete Widget Appli from i-Widget screen when pasted on i-Widget screen)
- \* When 9 items are already started, press ▶ "YES" to exit Widget Appli.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- When no operation is performed for approximately 3 minutes while displaying i-Widget screen or the Widget Appli list screen, stand-by display automatically reappears.
- When you execute Delete all data or replace UIM, the status of pasting to i-Widget screen returns to the default. However, updated, deleted or re-downloaded Widget Appli cannot be pasted.

#### ◆ Setting i-Widget sound effect <i-Widget sound effect>

You can set if you play a sound effect when activating i-Widget by pressing .

- The volume follows the setting of Sound effect volume of Adjst volume.

1 [i-appli] ▶ or

#### ◆ Setting communication method during international roaming <i-Widget roaming set>

You can set if you allow Widget Appli to communicate when activating Widget Appli with i-Widget during international roaming.

1 [i-appli] ▶ "Yes" or "No"

#### Downloading Widget Appli

You can download Widget Appli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- For precautions on downloading, see "Downloading i-appli".→P222
- Using downloaded Widget Appli→P243

#### 1 Display a site ▶ Select Widget Appli

Widget Appli is downloaded.

#### 2 After completion of downloading, "Yes" or "No"

When selecting "Yes", Widget Appli starts and an operation screen for the Widget Appli appears. Select "No" to return to the site display.

## Using Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai .....	246
iC transfer service .....	247
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli .....	247
Checking owner information of IC card .....	<b>Check IC owner</b> 247
Preventing use of IC card function .....	<b>IC card lock</b> 248

## Using ToruCa

ToruCa .....	249
Receiving ToruCa .....	<b>ToruCa download</b> 249
Displaying ToruCa .....	<b>ToruCa list</b> 250
Setting ToruCa functions .....	252

## Osaifu-Keitai

Osaifu-Keitai is equipped with IC card and allows you to pay money only by holding FOMA terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc.

Moreover, by using communication, you can credit electronic money in a bank account and check the balance or usage history, etc. Various security systems\* are also equipped for your safe usage. For details of Osaifu-Keitai, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

\* Omakase Lock and IC card lock can be used. →P101, 248

To use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service, you are required to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli from Osaifu-Keitai compatible site\*, and make settings.

\* iMenu→メニューリスト (Menu list)→"おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)"

- The data (including electronic money, points, etc.) in the IC card may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of FOMA terminal (When we take your Osaifu-Keitai for repair etc., as we cannot take it with data remained, you are required to erase the data by yourself). For support such as reissuance, restoration, temporary preservation or transfer of data except transfer by IC transfer service, confirm with Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider. For important data, be sure to use a service with backup service.
- If the data in the IC card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If FOMA terminal is stolen or misplaced, immediately contact Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider for an advice.

### ◆ Using Osaifu-Keitai

#### Step 1

##### Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli→P222

iD 設定アプリ (iD appli), DCMX クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli), モバイル Suica 登録用 i アプリ (Mobile Suica Setup i-appli) and マクドナルド トクするアプリ (McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application) are stored by default. Press  [Osaifu-Keitai]  to connect to the site for downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

#### Step 2

##### Make initial settings of the service by starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli→P247

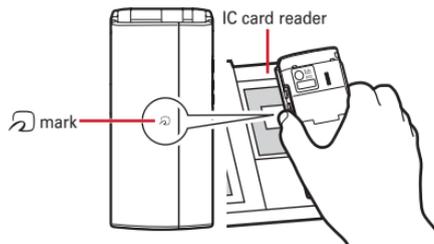
After starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli and make settings following the instruction on the screen, you can charge (credit) money or check the balance or the usage history using the mobile phone.

#### Step 3

##### Holding mark over IC card reader

You can use the i-mode terminal as electronic money to purchase, or use as a passenger ticket by placing  mark of Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader. This function can be used without starting the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

\* No communication fee is charged.



##### ✓INFORMATION

- With IC card light of Light alert set to "ON", when holding  mark over the IC card reader scanning area, the light blinks.
- If the recognition is not performed successfully by scanning  mark of FOMA terminal with the IC card reader, shift the mark back and forth or right and left when scanning.
- Even when the power is turned OFF or battery is exhausted, you can use the functions of Osaifu-Keitai by holding  mark over the IC card reader. Note that, when the battery pack is not installed, or even when the battery pack is installed, if it has not been used for a long time or if it was left alone after battery alarm sounded without charging, Osaifu-Keitai may not be used.

- You cannot start the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read/write data in the IC card or download ToruCa with the power OFF.
- i-appli may be started when holding  mark over the IC card reader.
- When scanning  mark with the IC card reader, take care not to give a strong shock to FOMA terminal.

## iC transfer service

**iC transfer service**<sup>\*1</sup> is a service that, when replacing Osaifu-Keitai in such cases as model change or repair, transfers data in an IC card collectively<sup>\*2</sup> to a new Osaifu-Keitai<sup>\*3</sup>.

After data in IC card is transferred, Osaifu-Keitai compatible services can be continuously used only by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli<sup>\*4</sup>. iC transfer service is available at a sales outlet such as docomo Shop near you. For details of iC transfer service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- \*1 Both the source and the destination of the data need to be iC transfer service compatible FOMA terminal. For using iC transfer service, visit available sales outlet such as docomo Shop near you.
- \*2 Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are not covered by iC transfer service, so only the Osaifu-Keitai compatible data saved in IC card covered by iC transfer service can be transferred.
- \*3 As this service is "transfer", not "copy", the data saved in IC card does not remain in the original FOMA terminal. There may be a case that you cannot use iC transfer service, use the backup service for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service etc.
- \*4 i-appli downloading and settings require packet communication fee.

## Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- When first starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, UIM in use is registered as the owner (IC owner) of the IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai. After that, IC card function cannot be used unless the UIM registered as the IC owner is installed. Note that, when replacing UIM with another one, IC card function cannot be used unless the IC owner is changed.→P247

### [Osaifu-Keitai] **1**

The next procedure→P223 Step 3 in "Starting i-appli"

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is running, Osaifu-Keitai may be unavailable by placing  mark over the IC card reader.
- Active Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may be interrupted in the following cases. In that case, the data being read/written may be discarded.
  - When a call is received
  - When Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated
  - When the date specified in the watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule comes
  - When the function is switched over to another function
- When you are out of service area or the saved data cannot be used, some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may not start or not operate correctly.
- Press  [Osaifu-Keitai] **2** to activate DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli).

### Check IC owner

## Checking owner information of IC card

You can check if the UIM in use is registered as the owner (IC owner) of the IC card in the Osaifu-Keitai.

### [Osaifu-Keitai] **6**

- If not registered, install a UIM registered as IC owner, or select "How to reset IC owner" and change IC owner.→P248 Step 2 in "Changing IC owner"

#### ❖ Changing IC owner

To change IC owner, IC owner requires to be reset. If it is reset, iD 設定アプリ (iD appli) is restored to the default and Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli other than iD 設定アプリ is deleted. Note that, for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that the data in IC card is saved, the data in IC card needs to be deleted by activating or redownloading i-appli before being reset. After reset, if starting or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, it is registered as IC owner.

### [Osaifu-Keitai] **7**

## 2 "Reset IC owner" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

### IC card lock

#### Preventing use of IC card function

- Activation of IC card lock disables using IC card, obtaining ToruCa from IC card reader, downloading/using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, resetting IC owner or iC transmission.
- To activate both IC card lock and All lock, first start IC card lock and then start All lock.

#### 1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ "Yes"

When activating IC card lock,  or  (for individual IC card lock) appears on the stand-by display.

**Canceling :**  (1 sec. or more) ▶ Authenticate

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, IC card functions are unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings.
- During IC card lock, deletion of some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may be disabled.

#### ◆ Setting functions related to IC card lock

**Lock preference :** You can set so that only the IC card function for specified Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is locked when activating IC card lock (Individual IC card lock).

**Timed lock :** You can set to activate IC card lock automatically after the specified time elapses.

**IC lock(power-off) :** You can select if you continue the IC card lock state before turning the power OFF or lock all IC card functions.

#### 1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 4

#### 2 Perform necessary operation

**Performing Lock preference :**   ▶ Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli ▶ 

- To lock all the IC card functions, press  .

- For selected Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli,  appears on IC card content. →P223
- The selecting targets are Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli that the service is already registered in the IC card and the service is available.

**Performing Timed lock :**  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

- If the power is turned OFF manually or due to exhaustion of the battery while this function is "ON", IC card lock is activated before the specified time.
- When locking time comes while using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, IC card lock is activated upon termination of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

**Performing IC lock(power-off) :**  ▶ Authenticate ▶  or 

#### ◆ Canceling IC card lock at specified time <Programed activation>

You can set so that you can use IC card only in the specified period of time in IC card lock.

- Up to 7 items can be registered.
- This function operates only while the power is ON.

#### 1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 4 4 ▶ Authenticate ▶ 1-7

**Setting/Canceling :** Move the cursor to the title ▶ 

- While this function is set,  appears on the left of the title.

#### 2 Set required items ▶

**Time :** Enter the start time and end time (it can be set to the following day over 24 o'clock) to deactivate IC card lock.

**Repeat :** When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

**Title :** Up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters can be entered.

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When the end time for canceling IC card lock comes while using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, IC card lock is activated upon termination of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.
- IC card lock can be started in the period for which IC card lock is deactivated, but cannot be automatically activated by Timed lock.

## ToruCa

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be obtained using Osaifu-Keitai; it can be used conveniently as a flier, restaurant card, coupon ticket, etc.

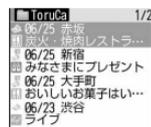
ToruCa can be downloaded from the IC card reader, site, etc. and can be easily exchanged using mail, infrared communication/iC transmission or microSD card.

• For details of ToruCa, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

### ❖ Flow of using ToruCa



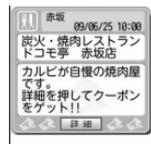
Hold Osaifu-Keitai over the IC card reader to obtain ToruCa



Select ToruCa from ToruCa list



ToruCa (Details)



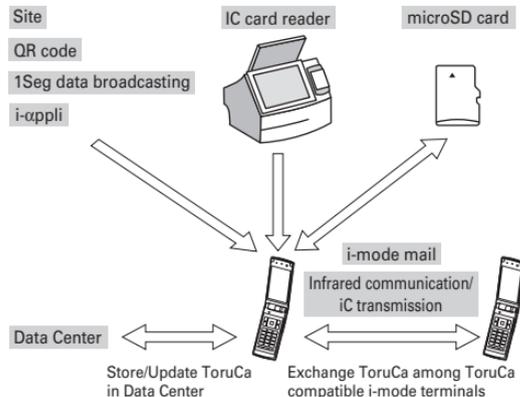
Press the "詳細 (Details)" button to download detailed information

## ToruCa download

### Receiving ToruCa

• The savable size of each ToruCa is 1 Kbyte. The maximum size of each ToruCa (Details) is 100 Kbytes.

### ❖ ToruCa download method



- The procedure for obtaining from IC card reader is the same as Step 3 in "Using Osaifu-Keitai". →P246
- Saving/Updating ToruCa in Data Center →P114
- Attaching to i-mode mail/saving →P126, 132
- Downloading from a site →P164
- Reading QR code →P190
- Obtaining from 1Seg data broadcasting →P205
- Saving from i-appli →P241
- Moving/Copying to microSD card →P271
- Infrared communication/iC transmission →P281, 282

## ✓ INFORMATION

- When obtaining ToruCa with an IC card reader, operations are performed according to the settings of ToruCa from IC card, ToruCa alert, ToruCa auto-read, ToruCa receive alert of Adjust volume, and ToruCa receive of Light alert in Light alert.
- The obtained/downloaded ToruCa is saved in "ToruCa". However, if ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader, it is saved according to ToruCa sort rule.
- When Auto-display of ToruCa from IC card is "ON", if ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader, a confirmation screen for connecting to the site to download details may appear. If no key operations are made during automatic display, ToruCa is saved under unread state.
- ToruCa that are obtained by receiving i-mode mail, downloading from a site, reading QR code and receiving read ToruCa via infrared communication/iC transmission are saved as read ToruCa.
- When ToruCa (Details) is attached to mail, moved/copied to microSD card or sent via infrared communication/iC transmission, a screen may appear indicating that the detail information is not included or saved.
- For some ToruCa, updating, moving/copying, transmission through mail attachment or infrared communication may be disabled.
- Checking memory space → P280
- When exceeding the savable number/area → P280

## ToruCa list

### Displaying ToruCa

#### 1 [MENU] [Osaifu-Keitai] [3] ▶ Select a folder

- (gray) : No ToruCa (blue) : No unread ToruCa
- : Unread ToruCa exists (gray) : No used ToruCa
- (blue) : Used ToruCa exists

Displaying all ToruCa : on the folder list

#### 2 Select ToruCa



#### ① Status icon

: Unread : Read

#### ② Category icon

#### ③ Download date

#### ④ Index

#### ⑤ Title

#### ⑥ "詳細 (Details)" button

Displayed when there is detail information. Detail information can be downloaded from a site.

#### Deleting : Move the cursor to ToruCa ▶ [MENU] [3] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to ToruCa.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- To delete all (except ToruCa in the "Used ToruCa" folder), on the folder list, ▶ [MENU] [2] [3] ▶ authenticate, then select "Yes".
- To delete ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder, move the cursor to the ToruCa, press and select "Yes".

#### Moving to another folder : Move the cursor to ToruCa ▶ [MENU] [4] [1] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "Yes"

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .
- ToruCa cannot be moved to "Used ToruCa" folder.

#### Changing order (sorting) : [MENU] [5] [2] ▶ [1] - [5]

- They are sorted temporarily. When the one- and two-byte characters are mixed in the titles of ToruCa, the sort result by "By title" and "By index" may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- When selecting "By name", the ToruCa list is sorted in the order of ID included as data in ToruCa (ID cannot be displayed).

**Attaching to mail :** Move the cursor to ToruCa ▶

- Operations for attaching to mail→P126 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

## ❖ Operations while displaying ToruCa (Details)

**Updating the display :** (1) ▶ "Yes"

**Adding phone number or mail address to phonebook :** Move the cursor to the phone number or mail address ▶ (4) ▶ (1) or (2) ▶ (1) or (2)

Phonebook new entry→P70

- Select a phonebook entry to update the entry.

**Registering URL in bookmark :** Move the cursor to the URL ▶ (4) (3)

▶ Select a destination folder

The next procedure →P160 Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark"

**Saving image :** (4) (4) ▶ Select the image

- Press (4) (5) to save a background image.

The next procedure→P164 Step 2 in "Downloading image"

**Using location information :** Select location information

The next procedure→P165 Step 2 in "Using location information"

**Replaying Flash graphics or GIF animation :** (7)

**Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion :** "View"

The next procedure→P165 Step 2 in "Uploading image or moving picture/i-motion"

## ✓ INFORMATION

- For some ToruCa, an expiration date is set. After expiration, the background of the ToruCa list is displayed in different color.
- If ToruCa includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.
- Category marks specific to ToruCa issuers may appear on the ToruCa list and ToruCa (Details) (they are not included in category marks in "Category", searching and/or ToruCa sorting method).
- When Flash graphics are not in place within ToruCa (Details), the operation starts when they are in place within the display by scrolling.
- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be displayed.
- A packet communication fee is required for downloading detail information.
- ToruCa (Details) may not be received even if the receiver's device is compatible with ToruCa.
- The operation when a confirmation screen for sending music information appears is the same as during site display.→P154 INFORMATION in "Displaying a site"

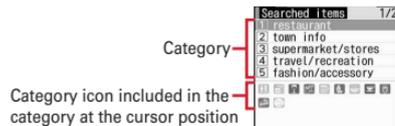
## ◆ Searching ToruCa

- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be searched for.

<Example> Searching by category

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] (3) ▶ (1) ▶ Select Search method field

2 (1) ▶ Select Category field ▶ (1) - (5)



Category selection screen

**Searching by title :** (2) ▶ Enter a part of the title in the entry filed for Search text (up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters)

**Searching by index :** (3) ▶ Enter a part of the index in the entry filed for Search text (up to 7 two-byte (15 one-byte) characters)

3

- To search in the folder, press (2).

## ◆ Creating/Deleting folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created in addition to "ToruCa" and "Used ToruCa" folders.
- "ToruCa" and "Used ToruCa" folders cannot be renamed, sorted or deleted.

<Example> Creating folders

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] (3)

2 (2)

**Changing a folder name :** Move the cursor to the folder ▶ (4) ▶ Go to Step 3

**Changing the order :** Move the cursor to the folder ▶ (8) or (9)

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to the folder ▶ (3) ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

3 Enter the folder name (up to 8 two-byte (16 one-byte) characters) ▶

## ◆ Checking the number of ToruCa <Check No. of items>

- ToruCa in "Used ToruCa" folder are not included in the number of saved items.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 3 ▶ 6

- To check the number of items in the folder, press 5 1.

## Setting ToruCa functions

### ◆ Setting operation for obtaining ToruCa <ToruCa from IC card>

You can set actions when you obtain ToruCa from IC card reader, or operations to obtain ToruCa from IC card reader.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

**ToruCa receive** : When setting to "ON", ToruCa is obtained from IC card reader.

- When setting to "OFF", ToruCa cannot be obtained via iC transmission either.

**Duplication check** : When setting to "ON", a new ToruCa is not downloaded if it is duplicated with the existing one.

**Auto-sort** : When setting to "ON", sort ToruCa according to ToruCa sort rule.

**Auto-display** : When setting to "ON", downloaded ToruCa is automatically displayed for 15 seconds only when the stand-by display is active.

### ◆ Setting operations for checking completion of obtainment <ToruCa alert>

You can set lighting and/or sound volume for notifying completion of ToruCa obtaining from the IC card reader.

- This setting also applies to ToruCa receive alert of Adjust volume and ToruCa receive of Light alert in Light alert.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 1 ▶ Set required items ▶

**Light alert** : Set if you make the light blink when obtaining is completed.

**Light color** : Set the lighting color of the light.

**Receive alert volume** : Set the volume of the alert activated when obtaining ToruCa has completed.

## ◆ Using ToruCa auto-read <ToruCa auto-read>

You can set if you automatically read enabled ToruCa when using it by placing FOMA terminal over an IC card reader. When set to "ON", enabled ToruCa is automatically recognized and moved to "Used ToruCa" folder. If not setting this function to "ON", some ToruCa may not be able to use.

- Up to 20 ToruCa can be stored into "Used ToruCa" folder. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 3 ▶ 1 or 2

### ✓INFORMATION

- When this function is "OFF", if you hold FOMA terminal over an IC card reader, a confirmation screen for using ToruCa auto-read or a screen indicating that ToruCa auto-read is disabled may appear. When using ToruCa, set to "ON".

### ◆ Setting sort method <ToruCa sort rule>

You can set sort method of ToruCa obtained with an IC card reader to specified folders.

- Up to 20 items can be registered.
- To execute this function, Auto-sort of ToruCa from IC card should be "ON".
- "Used ToruCa" folder cannot be specified to the folder to sort.

<Example> Sorting by category

1 [Osaifu-Keitai] 5 4

List of methods is displayed. Registered sort methods are displayed in order of priority.

: Category : Title : No icon : No method

## 2 ▶ Select Sort by: field

**Checking sort methods** : Select a sort method

**Changing** : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ 2 ▶ Select Sort by: field ▶ Go to Step 3

**Deleting** : Move the cursor to the sort method ▶ ▶ 3 or 4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a sort method.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

**Changing sort priority** : Move the cursor to a sort method ▶ 5 ▶ Go to Step 5

### 3 ▶ Select Category field ▶ -

Category selection screen→P251

**Sorting by title :**  ▶ Enter a part of the title in the field for Enter text (up to 10 two-byte (21 one-byte) characters)

**Sorting by index :**  ▶ Enter a part of the index in the field for Enter text (up to 7 two-byte (15 one-byte) characters)

**Sorting by no method :**

### 4 Select Location: field ▶ Select a folder ▶

### 5 Select a priority

Sort method is added above the selected row.

- When registering the first sort method, select "Add to last" (When changing a registered method, "Move to last" is displayed).



## Making full use of image

Displaying image .....	256
Editing still images .....	258

## Making full use of moving picture/i-motion

Playing moving picture/i-motion .....	259
Editing moving picture/i-motion .....	263
Moving i-motion to microSD card .... <b>Compatible with contents transfer</b>	264

## Making full use of Machi-chara

Displaying Machi-chara .....	265
------------------------------	-----

## Making full use of Chara-den

Displaying Chara-den .....	265
----------------------------	-----

## Making full use of melody

Playing a melody .....	266
------------------------	-----

## Displaying recording data of 1Seg

Viewing recorded video or still images .....	267
--	-----

## Making full use of microSD card

microSD card .....	269
Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card .....	271
Displaying data in microSD card .....	272
Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal all at once .....	273
Managing microSD card .....	274
Operating data of microSD card in the FOMA terminal from a PC ..... <b>USB mode settings</b>	275

## Managing various data

Using folder or album .....	276
Viewing/Editing data detail information ..... <b>Detail information/Edit detail information</b>	278
Deleting data .....	279
Sorting data .....	<b>Sort</b> 280
Checking storage space of the FOMA terminal .....	<b>Memory status</b> 280
When exceeding the savable number/area .....	280

## Making full use of infrared communication/iC transmission

Using infrared communication/iC transmission .....	280
Sending data by infrared communication/iC transmission ..... <b>Send Ir data or iC transmission</b>	281
Receiving data by infrared communication/iC transmission ..... <b>Receive Ir data or iC transmission</b>	282
Using infrared remote control function .....	284
Setting operations for data exchange .....	<b>Data exchange settings</b> 284

## Displaying image

- Images (JPEG or GIF format), animations (GIF animations or Flash graphics), and created animations can be displayed. Note that, images with sizes larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or larger than 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be displayed.

### [Data Box] 1

- The folder contents are as follows.
  - Camera** : Images shot with Camera or cut out of moving pictures/i-motion
  - i-mode** : Images downloaded from sites, websites, mail or i-α.pli or saved by MUSIC Player
  - Deco-mail picture** : Images stored by default, downloaded from sites, websites, mail or i-α.pli, or read with Bar code reader
  - Deco-mail pictogram** : Images stored by default or Deco-mail pictogram downloaded from the site
- Images are classified by type.
- When obtaining an image conforming to the standard of Deco-mail pictogram (image size is 20×20, the file size is up to 90 Kbytes, permitted to attach to mail or output from FOMA terminal and JPEG or GIF format), it is stored to this folder. Images not conforming to the standards cannot be saved.
- Item** : Frame images stored by default, frame or stamp images downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled** : Images stored by default
- Data transfer** : Images read with Bar code reader, acquired from microSD card or external devices or downloaded via infrared communication/iC transmission
- My album** : Images moved from another folder
  - Appears when album is added. →P276
  - When secret attribute is set,  is displayed.
- Search by i-mode** : Searching images from i-mode sites →P163

## 2 Select a folder

- When "Deco-mail pict" is selected, additionally select a folder.



### ① Originated

-  : Preinstalled
-  : i-mode, Full Browser, Mail, i-α.pli
-  : Camera  : Frame, Stamp  : Data transfer
-  : Searching images from i-mode sites →P163

### ② Type of image

- No icon : Still image 
-  : GIF animations, Flash graphics

### ③ File format

- No icon : Create animation  : JPEG image
-  : GIF image, GIF animation  : SWF (Flash graphics)
- \* If unavailable due to UIM operation restriction,  appears in the lower right of the icon.

### ④ File restriction

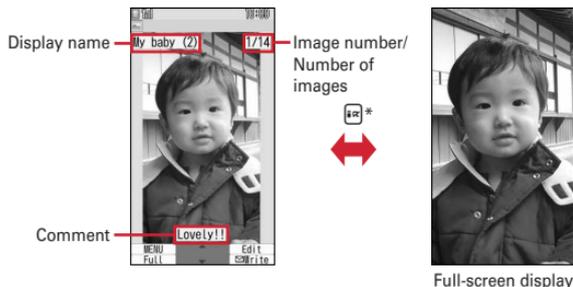
-  /  : File restricted/unrestricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the image at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the following icons are displayed.

-  : No preview image
-  : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

Switching to microSD card list : 

## 3 Select an image



Full-screen display

\* On the full-screen display, press any of **[F6]**, **[F7]**, **[CLR]**, **[E]** to return to the previous display.

- Press **[P]** or **[N]** to switch to the previous/next image.
- While playing animation or created animation, press **[P]** to pause/play, press **[F7]** to play from the beginning (except in full-screen display). Also, while created animation is stopped or while playing created animation after a stop, press **[P]** to play it in slow motion.

**Attaching to mail** : Move the cursor to an image ▶ **[E]**

Operations for attaching files → P126 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the mail text appears.

### ✓INFORMATION

- The video data of Flash graphics including video data cannot be played.
- If the still image is larger than the display area, it is scaled to fit the area.
- An image with vertical and horizontal (or vice versa) size of less than 240×432 dots is displayed with its size doubled. If the image is larger than the display area when enlarged, the image is displayed being adjusted to the display area. Press **[P]** to display in the actual size. Press **[N]** to restore the double-size display.
- You can use zooming in or out to view a JPEG image larger than the screen size by pressing **[Z]** on the image display screen. When an image is zoomed in or out, press **[Z]** to scroll, **[F6]** to zoom out by 20%, **[F7]** to zoom in/out by 20%, **[X]** to show/hide the guide area and **[P]** to restore the actual size view. Press **[F6]** to restore actual size from enlarged size.

- When a JPEG image has the rotation correction information, the image is rotated and displayed. However, it is not rotated in the thumbnail display or when set for the stand-by display.
- You can save images using Data Security Service. → P113

## ◆ Setting operating conditions of image

**[MENU]** **[Data Box]** **[1]** ▶ **[MENU]** **[6]** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ **[E]**

**Display icon** : Set if you use thumbnail display on the image list.

**Display title/Display number/Display comments** : Set if you display name/image number and number of images/comment on the image display screen.

**Scale up image** : Set if you zoom in on an image to fit the display maintaining the image aspect ratio.

**Scale down image** : Set if you zoom out from an image to fit the display maintaining the image aspect ratio.

**Sound effect** : Set whether to play sound effects set to an image (except slide show).

**Auto scroll mode** : Set whether to automatically scroll the display if a still image is smaller than full-screen display.

• While scrolling, use **[P]** to pause/play and **[X]** to show/hide the scroll bar.

**Slideshow speed** : Set how quickly switch images.

**Slideshow random** : Set whether to display slides randomly.

**Slideshow effect** : Set effects on the slide show.

## ◆ Displaying slide show

Display images in a folder sequentially in a full-screen.

**[MENU]** **[Data Box]** **[1]** ▶ **Move the cursor to a folder** ▶ **[MENU]** **[7]**

- When display of all images is complete or you press one of **[CLR]**, **[MENU]**, **[F7]**, **[E]**, **[E]**, the folder list screen reappears.

## ◆ Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook

<Example> Setting to the stand-by display

**[MENU]** **[Data Box]** **[1]** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to an image** ▶ **[MENU]** **[2]**

## 2 1 ▶ "Yes"

- For an image smaller than the screen size that can be enlarged, select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)".
- If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

**Adding to phonebook :** 2 or 3

Phonebook new entry→P70

- To update the phonebook, select a phonebook entry to add.

**Setting as Calling image :** 4 ▶ 1 or 2

**Setting as Video-phone image :** 5 ▶ 1-7

- Animations, still images in size larger than 176×144 or images that cannot be output from FOMA terminal can be set only for outgoing/incoming call image.

**Setting as Mail image :** 6 ▶ 1-4

- The images set to Mail image also appear when Message/R/F or SMS is sent or received.

**Setting as Basic menu icon :** 7 ▶ Select a function or "Background"

- Flash graphics, images in "Item" folder or created animation cannot be set.
- When the displayed menu is set to other than Basic menu, a confirmation screen for switching to Basic menu appears.

## ◆ Creating animation

You can select up to 9 still images smaller than 480×960 from the same folder and create an animation.

- Still images saved cannot be displayed or edited individually. Also, unless canceled, they cannot be saved to microSD card or external device or attached to i-mode mail to send.

1 [Data Box] 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 4 1

**Canceling :** Move the cursor to a created animation ▶ 4 2

## 3 Select images to save to Create animation

Selected images are numbered 1-9 in the order of selections.

: Deselect the target : Deselect all

4 ▶ Enter a display name (up to 36 characters) ▶

## Editing still images

1 [Data Box] 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a still image ▶

## 2 Perform necessary operations

**Changing display size by specifying the size :** 1 ▶ 1-8

- If the aspect ratio is different from that of the original image, a blue frame appears. Press to change to the specified size without saving the aspect ratio, and press to save the aspect ratio and put the image within the specified size. If moving the frame by and pressing , the image can be cut out by the specified size.

**Changing display size by zooming in/out :** 1 9 ▶ Zoom out or in by ▶

- Press / to zoom out/in by 20 %. By the display on the upper right of the screen, the size after the change and the rate of zooming out/in can be checked.
- Zooming in up to 960×960 and zooming out up to 8×8 are possible.

**Cutting out by specifying the size :** 2 ▶ 1-8 ▶ Move the frame by ▶

- If pressing , the frame size can be changed, and if pressing , the vertical and horizontal sides of the frame can be switched. By the display on the upper right of the screen, the size after cutting out can be checked.
- If pressing , you can change to the screen for cutting out by specifying the range.

**Cutting out by specifying the range :** 2 9 ▶ Specify the upper left by and ▶ Specify the lower right by and ▶

**Changing brightness :** 3 1 ▶ Adjust the brightness by ▶

- If pressing / , brightness can be adjusted to the highest/lowest.

**Setting monotone/sepia :** 3 ▶ 2 or 3

**Applying effect :** 4 ▶ 1-6

**Applying sketch effect :** 4 ▶ 7 or 8 ▶

- Effect can be adjusted by one step by or to the highest/lowest by / . And, if pressing , the thickness of the line can be changed.

**Reversing :** 5 ▶ Use to reverse ▶

**Rotating :** **5** or

**Adding frames :** **6** **Select a frame**

- If pressing with the frames added, the frames can be rotated by 180 degrees, and if pressing , the frames can be changed.

**Pasting stamps :**

① **7** **Select a stamp** **Specify the position by** and

- When pasted, a sound effect is played.
- The same stamp can be pasted to multiple locations.
- If pressing , all the stamps can be erased.

②

**Pasting text :**

① **8** **Enter text in up to 20 two-byte (40 one-byte) characters** **Set required items**

- If setting Paste method to "By character", one character can be pasted each time you press .

② **Specify the position by** and

- When pasted, a sound effect is played.
- The same text can be pasted to multiple locations.
- If pressing , all the texts can be erased.

③

**Cutting out adjacent similar color area :** **9** **Move** **to the color to cut out using** **and press**

**Restricting the file size :** **0** **1** or **2**

- A still image file size is changed to within 90 Kbytes for "Msg attach:Small" and 2 Mbytes for "Msg attach:Large", and the changed image is saved as a new image in the same folder as the original. Omit Step 3.

**Adjusting :**

①

② **1** - **7**

- By the display on the upper right of the screen, the selected adjustment type can be checked.
- You can also change adjustment type by pressing .
- Effect can be adjusted by one step by or to the highest/lowest by .

③

**3** **"Save"**

Saved as a new still image in the same folder as the original still image.

- When the image size after editing is 20×20 and the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, the image is saved to "Face/i-pictogram" folder under "Deco-mail pict".
- Select "As frame/stamp" to save the image for frame or stamp.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Image sizes that can be edited are as follows.  
Specify the size in Change size, attaching mail (Large) of Size limitation : 8×8-2,448×3,264  
Specify cut out size : 16×16-2,448×3,264  
Specify cut out range : 16×16-1,224×1,632  
Items other than the above : 8×8-480×960
- Still images saved in microSD card, or in "Item" or "Preinstalled" folder, or still images that cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except still images with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal) cannot be edited.
- When the image size is larger than the display area as edited, the image is displayed with reduced magnification. However, images are displayed with the same magnification in Zoom in/out of Change size, Paste stamp or Paste text.
- After editing, the file size may become larger or the quality may be deteriorated. And, if displaying it on PC etc., the transparently displayed portion is displayed in white.
- When selecting frame or stamp, some frame or stamp is not displayed because of the size of the image to edit.
- When exceeding the savable number/area→P280

## Playing moving picture/i-motion

- In the following formats, moving pictures/i-motion with image size of 48×48 - 640×480 can be played.

File format (Extension)	Encoding format	
MP4 (MP4, 3GP)	Video	MPEG4, H.263 <sup>*1</sup> , H.264
	Sound	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (ASF)	Video	MPEG4 <sup>*2</sup>
	Sound	G.726

\*1 Supported to the image size of 128×96, 176×144 only.

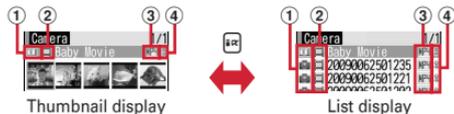
\*2 Supported to the image size of 176×144, 320×240 and 640×480 only.

## 1 [Data Box] 4

- The folder contents are as follows.

- Playlist**: Playlist→P261
- Camera**: Moving picture shot by camera, sound recorded with Sound recorder and moving picture memo
- i-mode**: i-motion downloaded from sites or mail, i-motion cut out of i-motion or music data and i-motion compatible with contents transfer moved from microSD card
- Preinstalled**: Moving pictures stored by default
- Data transfer**: Moving picture/i-motion (except i-motion compatible with contents transfer) acquired from microSD card or external device
- My album**: Moving pictures/i-motion moved from other folders
  - Appears when album is added.→P276
  - When secret attribute is set, is displayed.
- Search by i-mode**: Searching i-motion from i-mode sites→P172

## 2 Select a folder



### 1 Originated

- : Preinstalled : i-mode, Mail, i-appli
- : Camera : Data transfer : Videophone
- : Searching i-motion from i-mode sites→P172

### 2 Replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Restriction on the number of times/expirations/period

### 3 File type

- : MP4/MP4 with bookmark
- : Replay unavailable due to replay restriction
- : MP4 partially saved
- : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction
- : ASF/ASF with bookmark

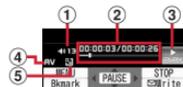
### 4 File restriction

- : File restricted/unrestricted
- For thumbnail display, the display name of the moving picture at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display. And, when thumbnail display is unavailable, the following icons are displayed.
  - : Moving picture/i-motion containing only sound, recorded voice
  - : Moving picture/i-motion with thumbnail images unavailable
  - : Replay unavailable due to replay restriction
  - : Replay unavailable due to errors of data for management
  - : Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

\* Only i-motion compatible with contents transfer can be displayed

Switching to microSD card list:

## 3 Select moving picture/i-motion



### 1 Play volume

- is displayed on the left of play volume when Dolby Mobile in Settings is "ON".

### 2 Play time/Total time and the play position indicator

### 3 Play state

- : In play : In stop : In pause

### 4 File type

- : Sound : Movie

### 5 Zooming in/out display

- : Zoomed out display

- For the moving picture/i-motion with a bookmark set, the confirmation screen appears for playing from the bookmark. Select "No" to play from the beginning or play stopped position.
- While playing, the following operations are available.
  - : Adjust volume (Rewind/Fast forward play on the horizontal display)
  - : Adjust volume
  - : Rewind/Fast forward play (Adjust volume on the horizontal display)
  - : Pause/Play/Play from the beginning (In stop)

▶ "Yes": Set a bookmark

- To cancel, press during pause.
- A bookmark cannot be set to i-motion with replay restriction.

: Stop

: Return to list screen

: Rewind for 10 seconds (Starting playing from the beginning if the time from it is less than 10 seconds)

: Fast forward for 30 seconds (Starting playing from a point approximately 1 second before the end position if the time to the end position is less than 30 seconds)

/ : Play from the beginning of previous/next chapter

: Switch vertical display and horizontal full screen (Switching into the horizontal wide-screen for some image sizes)

: Rotate the screen display clockwise 90 degrees

: Rotate the screen display counterclockwise 90 degrees

: Play the selected chapter

\* Enabled only for moving picture/i-motion with chapter information

- During pause, press to display a tab for specifying position on the play position indicator. Move by and press to play from the specified position.

**Attaching to mail** : **Move the cursor to moving picture/i-motion** ▶

## ◆ Using Remote controller with microphone F01 <Remote controller with microphone>

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate during playing moving picture/i-motion.

: Pause/Play

: Adjust volume

(Slide in the direction of ): Disable , and keys

(Slide in the opposite direction of ): Enable unavailable keys

### ✓ INFORMATION

- For some i-motion on which "-----" may appear as the full play duration on the play screen, fast-forwarding/rewinding, playing operation from the bookmark or play stop position, or playing using chapter information or tab for specifying position is unavailable.

- When i-motion with replay restriction set is selected, the replay restriction state appears. When replay is unavailable due to the replay restriction, a message appears for confirming deletion (except before the replay period). When replay period or expiration is restricted, replaying is not available by changing the date and time of FOMA terminal.
- When i-motion failed or interrupted in downloading and partially downloaded is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading the remaining data appears. When it cannot be downloaded by retry, partially saved data is deleted. For partially downloaded i-motion that the replay period or replay expiration expired, a confirmation screen for deleting appears and redownloading is unavailable.
- When playing is stopped by pressing or while playing or by other functions, the stop position is saved and used for the next playback. The stop position of playback is saved in up to 5 moving pictures/i-motion videos in each of FOMA terminal and microSD card. When new information is saved, old information is deleted chronologically. When playing while downloading data or in preview play or for playing i-motion with replay restriction, the stop position cannot be saved.

## ◆ Setting operating conditions of moving picture/i-motion

[Data Box] ▶ ▶ **Set required items** ▶

**View thumbnails** : Set whether to use thumbnail display on the moving picture/i-motion list.

**Size adjustment** : Set whether to zoom in/out an image to fit the display area maintaining the image aspect ratio.

**Repeat play** : Set whether to repeat playing when playing playlist.

**Display light time** : Set light operations during playback. When setting to "Phone setting", backlight operates according to the setting of Display light time (Normal use) of Display & Key light. This setting is also applied to Display light time (i-motion) of Display & Key light as well as Display light time of Music&Video Channel.

**Volume** : Set the sound volume during playback.

**Dolby Mobile** : Set whether to enable surround effects and low/high tone adjustment function etc. This setting also applies to Movie (i-motion) in Stereo sound effect.

## ◆ Creating/Playing playlists

Saving and managing the titles of moving picture/i-motion.

- 100 titles can be saved in 1 playlist.

- Moving picture/i-motion saved in microSD card, i-motion partially saved, i-motion titles restricted by Replay restriction option, or i-motion title unavailable due to UIM operation restriction cannot be registered.

## ❖ Creating/Deleting playlist

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "Playlist" folder

2

When no playlist is created : "Yes"

Changing name : Move the cursor to playlist ▶ ▶ Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶

Deleting : Move the cursor to playlist ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a playlist.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

3 Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶

- "PlaylistYYYYMMDD (year, month and day of creation)" is preset.

4 Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion ▶ ▶ "Yes"

## ❖ Adding/Deleting titles of moving pictures/i-motion to/from playlist

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "Playlist" folder ▶ Select a playlist

2

Canceling : Move the cursor to a title ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- To cancel 1 item, move the cursor to a title.
- To cancel selected items, select them ▶ . To cancel all items, authentication is required.

3 - ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion ▶ ▶ "Yes"

- To add one item, pressing is not required after selection.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Removing a title of moving picture/i-motion in a playlist does not delete the data itself. When moving picture/i-motion is deleted or moved to microSD card, they are removed from the playlist.

## ❖ Playing playlist

You can continuously play moving pictures/i-motion starting from the selected title.

- Fast forwarding/Rewinding, operation of playing from the bookmark or play stop position, playing using chapter information or tab for specifying position is unavailable.

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select "Playlist" folder ▶ Select a playlist

2 Selecting title to play first

- On the screen for playing, the icons / indicating the settings of Repeat play appear beside ones normally appear.

- While playing, the following operations are available.

( on the horizontal display), : Adjust volume

: Pause/Play/Play from the beginning of the current title (when paused)

(1 sec. or more) : Play from the beginning of data (pressing within 3 seconds after playback starts plays the previous data)

: Stop

(1 sec. or more) : Play the next data

: Return to list screen

: Switch vertical display and horizontal full screen (Switching into the horizontal wide-screen for some image sizes)

: Rotate the screen display clockwise 90 degrees

: Rotate the screen display counterclockwise 90 degrees

Sorting play order : ▶ Move the cursor to a title ▶ or ▶

## ❖ Setting moving picture/i-motion to stand-by display or the phonebook

Some types of moving picture/i-motion can be used for the following settings.

○ : Supported × : Not supported

Type	Stand-by display	Phonebook	Ring alert	Alert image
Sound + Video	○	×	○*	×
Video only	○	○	×	○
Sound only	×	×	○	×

\* Excluding i-concier ring alert

- i-motion that Replay restriction is set, or moving picture/i-motion whose file size is larger than 10 Mbytes are unavailable.
- The following moving picture/i-motion are unavailable for phonebook, ring alert or incoming call image.
  - Other than the image size of 128×96, 176×144 or 320×240
  - ASF format
  - With ticker (text)
  - Those transferred to an external device or another FOMA terminal and transferred back
  - Those moved or copied from microSD card to FOMA terminal (including those moved or copied from FOMA terminal to microSD card and then returned) except i-motion compatible with contents transfer
- Moving picture/i-motion for which Receive display of Detail information is "Unavailable" is not applicable to phonebook or incoming call image. And, moving picture/i-motion that Ring alert is "No" is not applicable to ring alert.

#### <Example> Setting to the stand-by display

1 [Data Box] **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a moving picture/i-motion ▶ **2**

2 **1** ▶ "Yes"

- Select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)" depending on the image size.
- If i-appli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-appli stand-by display appears.

Adding to phonebook: **2** or **3**

Phonebook new entry→P70

- To update the phonebook, select a phonebook entry to add.

Setting to ring alert: **4** ▶ **1** - **8**

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Press

Setting to alert image: **5** ▶ **1** - **3**

## Editing moving picture/i-motion

- The following moving picture/i-motion cannot be edited. Downloaded i-motion may not be edited by encoding formats.

- Moving picture/i-motion with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except moving picture set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)
- i-motion with replay restrictions
- Moving picture in ASF format
- Edited moving picture/i-motion is saved as new data to the folder where the original data is saved. The cut out data is saved in "Camera" folder of My Picture. It also applies when moving picture/i-motion is attached to mail after editing.

## ◆ Cutting out still image (Capture)

Specify a range and cut out as a still image.

- The size of the still image cut out is same as the display size when it is played.

1 [Data Box] **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a moving picture/i-motion

2 At the position to cut out, **5** ▶

- Pressing resumes a play.

Attaching to mail: At the position to cut out, **5** ▶

Operations for attaching files→P126 Step 1 in "Attaching a file"

- When the file size is 90 Kbytes or less, a confirmation screen for pasting it to the mail text appears.

## ◆ Cutting out moving picture/i-motion (Custom edit)

Cut out from the beginning to the specified location.

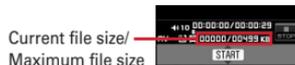
- Moving picture/i-motion that the file size is 11-2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

1 [Data Box] **4** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a moving picture/i-motion ▶ **4** **1**

appears below a replay time.

- When data containing a ticker (text) track is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

2 ▶ at the cutting position



**[CLR]** : Retry

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press **[ME]** and select "Msg attachment S" to cut out a file of 500 Kbytes, press **[ME]** and select "No settings" to cut out a file approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum size. For a file of 2,048 Kbytes, press **[ME]** and select "Msg attachment L" to cut out a file of 2,047 Kbytes.
- When data is cut out up to the end without pressing **[END]**, the end point is set at the position approximately 1,000 bytes smaller than the maximum file size.

### 3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶ **[OK]**

Playing : **[FR]**

Attaching to mail : **[EM]**

## ◆ Specifying file size for cutting out moving picture/i-motion (Edit by size)

Cut out a specified file size from the beginning.

- Moving picture/i-motion that the file size is 11-2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

### 1 **[ME]** **[Data Box]** **[4]** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to a moving picture/i-motion ▶ **[ME]** **[4]** **[2]**

- When data containing a ticker (text) track is cut out, the ticker (text) is deleted.

### 2 Enter size to cut out

- For a file larger than 500 Kbytes, press **[ME]** and select "Msg attachment S" to enter 500, or press **[ME]** and select "Msg attachment L" to enter 2047 for a file of 2,048 Kbytes.

### 3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters) ▶ **[OK]**

Playing : **[FR]**

Attaching to mail : **[EM]**

## Compatible with contents transfer

### Moving i-motion to microSD card

Of copyrighted i-motion items downloaded from a site, you can move those compatible with contents transfer to microSD card. It cannot be copied.

- i-motion compatible with contents transfer can be moved only when Moved to microSD in detail information is set to "Yes" or "Yes (Same model only)".

### 1 **[ME]** **[Data Box]** **[4]** ▶ Select "i-mode" folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-motion ▶ **[ME]** **[5]** **[4]** ▶ **[1]** - **[3]**

- To move selected items, select them ▶ **[OK]**.

### 2 Move the cursor to the destination folder ▶ **[OK]** ▶ "Yes"

- When saving to a subfolder, select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the destination subfolder ▶ Press **[OK]**. When a folder with no subfolders is selected, a selecting screen for moving to current position or creating a folder appears.
- If i-motions incompatible with contents transfer are included in Selected items or All items, a message appears to notify that only encrypted files to be moved to specified folder. If you select "Yes" to move them, i-motion incompatible with contents transfer is saved in "Movie" or "Other movie" folder on microSD card.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- If data is moved to a created folder, it may not be checked from other FOMA terminals.
- While moving data, do not remove microSD card or turn the power OFF. It may make all data compatible with contents transfer in microSD card unavailable.

## ◆ Moving to folder in the FOMA terminal or others

Moving i-motion compatible with contents transfer saved in microSD card

- Moving is available only when installing the same UIM as when obtaining from the site or moving to microSD card (the model also must be the same for some i-motion).

### 1 **[ME]** **[LifeKit]** **[3]** **[1]** **[5]** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to i-motion ▶ **[ME]** **[3]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]**

### 2 **[1]** - **[3]** ▶ "Yes"

- To move selected items, select them ▶ **[OK]**. To move all items, authentication is required.
- To move to another folder, move the cursor to a folder ▶ Press **[OK]**.
- When moving to the terminal, i-motion is saved in "i-mode" folder in i-motion/Movie.

## Folders to store i-motion compatible with contents transfer in the micro SD card



### 1 Folder

: Folder : Home folder

- The folder in pink is the initial folder. The initial folder is in light pink if it has no data. The folders in light blue are the ordinary folders. They are in light grey if they have no data. Initial folder is created when "Movie" folder is displayed for the first time. The folder name can be changed.

### 2 Folder name

- "Movie" is a root folder.

**Switching to folder list of FOMA terminal** : On the root folder list,

**Setting as home folder** : Move the cursor to a folder "Yes"

**Moving to home folder** :

## Displaying Machi-chara

You can display a character to be set on the stand-by display, menu screen, etc.

- Setting Machi-chara → P89

### 1 [Data Box] 7

- The folder contents are as follows.

**i-mode** : Machi-chara downloaded from sites

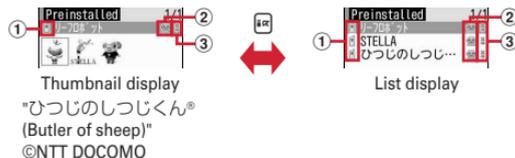
**Preinstalled** : Machi-chara stored by default

**My folder** : Machi-chara moved from other folders

- Appears if a folder is added. → P276

**Search by i-mode** : Searching Machi-chara from i-mode sites → P164

### 2 Select a folder



### 1 Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

: Searching Machi-chara from i-mode sites → P164

### 2 File type

: Machi-chara (upper half is gray) : Partially saved Machi-chara

: Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

### 3 File restriction

: File restricted

- For thumbnail display, the display name of Machi-chara at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and the file size appears at the bottom of the display. If thumbnail display is not available, an icon with the same design of "2 File type" appears.

## 3 Select Machi-chara

- When partially saved Machi-chara is selected, a confirmation screen for downloading appears. Select "Yes" to start downloading. When downloading is unavailable, Machi-chara partially saved may be deleted.

## Setting operating conditions of Machi-chara

### 1 [Data Box] 7 5 1 or 2

- When setting to "Display icons", the thumbnail display is used on Machi-chara list.

## Displaying Chara-den

You can display a character instead of camera image during videophone call.

- Using Chara-den during videophone call → P65

## 1 [ME] [Data Box] [8]

- The folder contents are as follows.
  - i-mode**: Chara-den downloaded from sites
  - Preinstalled**: Chara-den stored by default
  - My folder**: Chara-den moved from other folders
- Appears if a folder is added. →P276

## 2 Select a folder



### 1 Originated

: Preinstalled : i-mode

### 2 File type

/ : AFD/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

### 3 File restriction

: File restricted

## 3 Select Chara-den

- While displaying Chara-den, the following operations are available.

: Large size/Same size

- , : Perform applicable action

: Stop action

: List actions

(1 sec. or more): Switch Action/Action of Parts

- The current action type is indicated with the following icons appearing in the lower-left corner in the screen.

: Action : Action of Parts

**Making a videophone call**: Move the cursor to Chara-den ▶ ▶ Enter a phone number or press to select from phonebook ▶

- To make a videophone call specifying conditions, enter a phone number and press . →P57

**Setting as Substitute image**: Move the cursor to Chara-den ▶

## ◆ Setting operating conditions of Chara-den

### 1 [ME] [Data Box] [8] ▶ [ME] [5] ▶ Set required items ▶

**Display size**: Set whether to zoom.

**Display light time**: Set light operations during playback. When "Terminal settings" is set, it operates according to Display light time (Normal use) of settings of Display & Key light.

## Playing a melody

- Melody in SMF or MFi format can be played.

### 1 [ME] [Data Box] [5]

- The folder contents are as follows.

: Melody downloaded from a site or a mail

: Preinstalled: Melodies for ring tone stored by default →P356

: Mail attach melody: Melodies for mail attachment stored by default →P357

: Data transfer: Melody read with Bar code reader, acquired from microSD card or external devices or downloaded via infrared communication/iC transmission

: My album: Melodies moved from another folder

- Appears when album is added. →P276

: Search by i-mode: Searching melodies from i-mode sites →P164

## 2 Select a folder



### 1 Originated

/ : Preinstalled, Mail attach melody/3D sound supported

/ : i-mode, mail/3D sound supported

/ : Data transfer/3D sound supported

: Searching melodies from i-mode sites →P164

## ② File type

MFI / : MFI/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

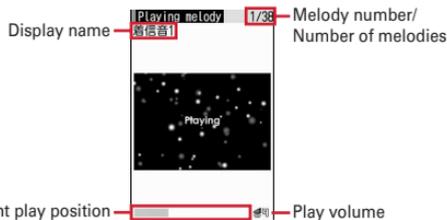
SMF / : SMF/Unavailable due to UIM operation restriction

## ③ File restriction

/ : File restricted/unrestricted

Switching to microSD card list :

## 3 Select a melody



- While playing, the following operations are available.

, : Adjust volume

, (1 sec. or more) : Play the previous/next melody

, **[CLR]** : Return to the list screen

Attaching to mail : Move the cursor to a melody ▶

## ◆ Setting melody for ring alert

- Melodies in "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be set as ring alert.

1 **[ME NU]** **[Data Box]** **[5]** ▶ **Select a folder** ▶ **Move the cursor to a melody** ▶ **[ME NU]** **[2]** ▶ **[1]-[8]**

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Press .

## ◆ Setting operating conditions of melody

1 **[ME NU]** **[Data Box]** **[5]** ▶ **[ME NU]** **[7]** ▶ **Set required items** ▶

- If setting Light alert to "Sync melody", the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set. Note that some melodies may not be synchronized.

- When Play position is set to "Play portion", the melody is partially played. Note that some melodies are not played partially.
- When setting Play background to "Select", you can select an image saved in Image folders.
- Stereo/3D sound settings are enabled only when an earphone/microphone (optional) etc.is connected. This setting also applies to a melody of Stereo sound effect.

## Viewing recorded video or still images

1 **[ME NU]** **[Data Box]** **[9]**

- The folder contents are as follows.

**Video (microSD)** : Video recorded in microSD card

**Video(Phone memory)** : Video recorded in FOMA terminal

**Image(Phone memory)** : Still image (JPEG format image) saved in FOMA terminal

2 **[1]-[3]**



Thumbnail display of video



List display of video



Thumbnail display of image



List display of image

### ① File format

(white) / (yellow) : MP2 (video)/MP2 (video) available for continuous play

: Image in JPEG format (image)

### ② File restriction

: File restricted

- It is not displayed in video (microSD).

- For thumbnail display, the display name of the file at the cursor position appears at the top of the display, and recorded date/time of video, image size and file size appear at the bottom of the display.

### 3 Select data

- When a still image is selected, it is enlarged and the display name and the image number/total number of images appear at the top of the display. Press to display in the actual size and to return to the enlarged display. Press to switch to the previous/next image.
- If a video that was stopped after being partially played the last time is selected, a confirmation screen to play from where it stopped appears. Note that, video is not displayed if its total time is within approximately 15 seconds or if the previous play time was within 5 seconds.
- When selecting a video divided into multiple files recorded with another FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen appears indicating that fast forwarding/rewinding cannot be performed.

### ❖ Video screen



- \*1 The following icons appear for some playing conditions.

: Playing   : In pause or playing completed  
 / / : Reverse playing in slow speed/normal speed/fast speed  
 : Fast playing in 1.3 times speed  
 / / : Fast playing in slow speed/normal speed/fast speed

- \*2 When Auto CM skip of Play setting in User setting of 1Seg is set to "ON", appears. Other icons definitions → P197

### ❖ Operations while playing a video

**Skipping :** **2** ▶ **1** - **3**

**Switching to the previous/next video :** ▶ **3** or **4**

**Checking program information :** **5**

**Using data broadcasting :** **6** ▶ **1** - **7**

- The operation is the same as that of 1Seg watching.

**Setting operations :** **7** ▶ **1** - **4**

- The operation is the same as that of 1Seg watching.

**Displaying key function help :** **8**

- Key operation is available with key function help displayed. Press to return to the original screen.
- On the horizontal display, multi-cursor key operations change according to the orientation of the screen.

**Switching watching screens :** **9**

- The switching method of screen is the same as the one for 1Seg watching.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- When Auto CM skip of Play setting in User setting of 1Seg is set to "ON", the operations are as follows.
  - CM is skipped and a video is played. Note that the 50th CM or later within 1 video cannot be skipped.
  - Commercials may not be correctly recognized due to the airwave reception condition of the recorded programs, programming, contents, etc.
  - For the video saved to microSD card from the terminal without CM auto-skip function, CM cannot be skipped. And the video may not be played correctly.
  - For some video saved to microSD card from the other terminal with CM auto-skip function, CM cannot be skipped.
- Thumbnails of video images may not be correctly displayed while using Multitask etc.

### ◆ Using Remote controller with microphone F01 <Remote controller with microphone>

You can use Remote controller with microphone F01 (optional) to operate video watching.

: Pause\*/Play

(1 sec. or more) : Exit video play

: Adjust volume

(1 sec. or more)\*/ (1 sec. or more)\* : Fast forward/Rewind (except when stopped)

**◀ HOLD** (Slide in the direction of ▲) : Disable **▶/II**, **+** and **-** keys.

**▶ HOLD** (Slide in the opposite direction of ▲) : Enable unavailable keys

\* While displaying data broadcasting site in full-screen mode, it is unavailable.

## ◆ Setting operating conditions of recorded still image

**1** **ME** **NU** [Data Box] **9** **3** ▶ **ME** **NU** **5** ▶ Set required items ▶ **Ⓜ**

**View thumbnails** : Set whether to use thumbnail display on the data list.

• The data list of the Video is displayed according to this setting.

**Display title** : Set whether to display the display name on the display screen.

**Display number** : Set whether to display the image number/number of items in the folder on the display screen.

## microSD card

You can save data such as still images, moving pictures or melodies or make a backup of data such as phonebook or schedule to microSD card. Moving pictures created with external devices can be saved in microSD card and played with FOMA terminal (→P373) or the data can be operated from a PC with microSD card in FOMA terminal recognized as a drive (→P275).

- A microSD card is required. If you have none, purchase it in an electric appliance store.
- microSD card formatted by this FOMA terminal can be used (→P275). Note that the operation of microSD card formatted by other FOMA terminal, a PC, etc., or that formatted half way is not guaranteed.
- Data in microSD card except i-motion compatible with contents transfer cannot be set as stand-by display, ring alert or incoming image.
- F-08A supports microSD card of up to 2 Gbytes, and microSDHC card of up to 16 Gbytes (as of May, 2009). For information about manufacturers or available sizes of compatible microSD cards, or latest operation check results, read "メモリーカード対応情報 (Memory card compatibility)" in "@Fケータイ応援団 (@F Mobile phone supporters)" (→P280) at i-mode, or visit the following website.

FMWORLD (<http://www.fmwORLD.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→microSD対応状況 (microSD compatibility) (In Japanese only)

Note that microSD cards not listed as compatible may not work. Information provided is a result of operation check and does not guarantee all operations.

## ◆ Precautions for using microSD card

- Do not subject FOMA terminal to strong impact such as dropping when a microSD card is attached. Doing so may damage data.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the microSD card.
- The terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same condition as out of service area) while data is being copied, moved, backed up/restored or deleted, or microSD card is being formatted, information is being updated or microSD card is being scanned.
- When write protection is set for the microSD card by other devices such as a PC, saving data into the card, deleting data and format cannot be performed.
- Data saved from other devices such as a PC into a microSD card may not be displayed or played with FOMA terminal. Also, data saved in the microSD card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Data of file size exceeding 2 Gbytes cannot be used.
- With some microSD card, the saved moving picture is distorted.
- It is recommended that data saved in microSD card should be separately backed up for storage. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for accidental loss or alteration of data.
- Note that, if you initialize the microSD card, all the saved data are deleted.

## ◆ Installing/Removing microSD card

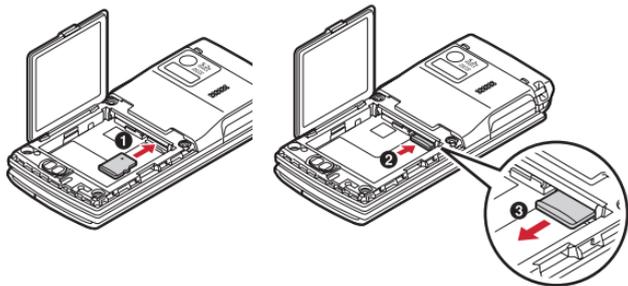
- Be sure to turn off the power before installing/removing microSD card.
- In the microSD card slot, do not install anything except microSD card. Do not install microSD card with scratches, deformation or stain. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Install the microSD card correctly with care for the direction into FOMA terminal. Installing it to wrong direction may cause damage the microSD card or slot, or the microSD card may not be pulled out. You cannot perform operation such as copying or backing up data, if you have not installed microSD card correctly.
- Be careful to avoid touching metal connectors of microSD card.
- When installing/removing the microSD card, it may pop out of the slot occasionally.

### ■ Installing

Insert microSD card with metal connectors side down slowly into the slot (1), and push the card until it clicks.

## ■ Removing

Press the center of microSD card lightly in the direction of ② and pull out the ejected card straight in the direction of ③.

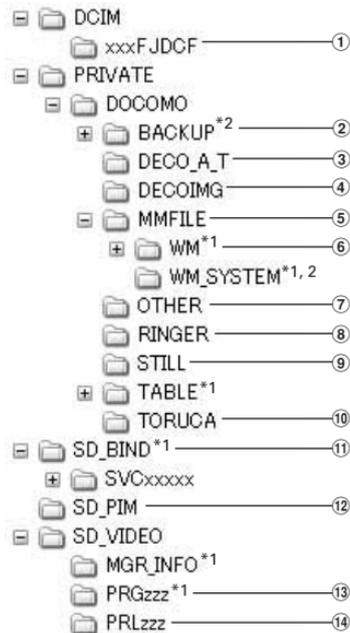


## ◆ microSD card folder structure

When data is moved/copied to microSD card from FOMA terminal or a recorded still image or video is saved directly to microSD card, a folder associated with the file is automatically created. The folder structure and files names displayed on a PC are as follows.

To save data from a PC, use this folder structure and file names. Also, after data is saved, information on FOMA terminal must be updated.→P275

- If a folder is renamed, or a file of data for management is renamed/deleted, FOMA terminal cannot display or play data correctly.
- The savable number may be reduced depending on the size of microSD card.
- Naming rules for folders and files are as follows. Characters to use should be one-byte characters except " \* " and upper cases for alphabetic characters.
  - "a" alphanumeric, \_ (Under bar)
  - "xxx" 3-digit number between 001-999 (100-999 only for "xxxFJDCF")
  - "xxxx" 4-digit number between 0001-9999
  - "xxxxx" 5-digit number between 00001-65535
  - "zzz" 3 alphanumeric characters between 001-FFF (Hexadecimal)
  - "\*" Any string



\*1 Including data for management. Do not edit/delete.

\*2 A hidden folder. It does not appear with some PC settings.

① **My Picture in Multimedia (shot still images, JPEG of DCF standard or GIF)**

File name : aaaaxxxx.JPG/GIF Savable number : 9,999 items

② **Backup**

③ **Decome-Anime template**

File name : DEATxxxx.VGT Savable number : 9,999 items

④ **Multimedia Deco-mail pictogram**

File name : DIMGxxxx.JPG/GIF Savable number : 9,999 items

- ⑤ **Other moving picture of Multimedia (audio only moving pictures/i-motion)**  
 File name : MMFxxxx.3GP/ASF/MP4 Savable number : 9,999 items  
 • Files with extension "3GP" or "MP4" are treated as MP4 format.  
 • Music data of AAC format can be saved.
- ⑥ **MUSIC of Multimedia (WMA)**  
 File name : \*.WMA Savable number : 1,000 items  
 • You can enter up to 94 characters (including extension) for a file name.  
 • To save, use Windows Media Player. No information update is necessary after saving.
- ⑦ **Others**  
 File name : aaaaaaaaa.aaa Savable number : 999 items  
 • The number of characters for file name and for extension are 8 and 3, respectively.
- ⑧ **Melody of Multimedia**  
 File name : RINGxxxx.MID/MLD/SMF Savable number : 9,999 items
- ⑨ **Other image of Multimedia (JPEG out of DCF standards, GIF animation, Flash graphics)**  
 File name : STILxxxx.JPG/GIF/SWF Savable number : 9,999 items
- ⑩ **ToruCa**  
 File name : TORUCxxx.TRC Savable number : 999 items
- ⑪ **Data compatible with contents transfer (Movie→0 in Multimedia, MUSIC in Multimedia (Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>), i-αplli data)**  
 File name : aaaaaaaaa.SB1/SB2/aaa  
 Savable number : 1,000 items for each of i-motion and Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>, 1,200 items for i-αplli data  
 • You can enter 1 to 8 characters for a fine name and 3 or less for a file extension.
- ⑫ **Folders in PIM**  
 File name : PIMxxxxx.VBM/VCF/VCS/VMG/VNT  
 Savable number : 9,999 items in total  
 • For management of PIM data (Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark), files with extension "PIM" are also saved.
- ⑬ **1Seg of Multimedia (1Seg video)**  
 File name : MOVzzz.MAI/MOI/SB1, PRGzzz.PGI  
 Savable number : 99 items
- ⑭ **Moving pictures of Multimedia (Moving picture/i-motion)**  
 File name : MOLzzz.3GP/ASF/MP4 Savable number : 4,095 items  
 • Files with extension "3GP" or "MP4" are treated as MP4 format.

## Exchanging data between the FOMA terminal and microSD card

- Moving i-motion compatible with contents transfer→P264
- Moving the music data of MUSIC→P216
- The following data can be moved or copied.
  - Image (except created animation), Deco-mail pictogram, Moving picture/i-motion, Melody, ToruCa (including Details), Decome-Anime template (except moving to microSD cards), 1Seg video (only moving/copying to microSD card)
- The following data can be copied or backed up.
  - Phonebook entries, schedule, mail, notepad, bookmarks

### ◆ Moving/Copying data from the FOMA terminal to microSD card

- You cannot move or copy data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer").
- Data cannot be moved/copied during recording 1Seg with recording reservation or recording 1Seg.

#### <Example> Moving/Copying images

- 1   [Data Box]  ▶ Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to data
- 2    ▶  or 
- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. "Move/Copy" ▶ Select "Move to microSD" or "Copy to microSD". On 1Seg Video(Phone memory) list, select "Move to microSD" or "Copy to microSD", on Decome-Anime template list, select "Copy to microSD".
- 3  -  ▶ "Yes"
- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .
  - Step  to  are not required to copy 1Seg video stored in the FOMA terminal).

## ✓INFORMATION

- When data in My Picture, i-motion/Movie, Melody, 1Seg, or Decome-Anime template is moved/copied, the file name is automatically changed according to the rules for saving data to a PC.→P270
- The memory size of the moved/copied still image may become larger than the size displayed on FOMA terminal. In this case, the size displayed on microSD card is the actual size.
- TV program video that supports Dubbing+10 can be copied up to 9 times. Only moving is available in the 10th operation.

## ◆ Moving/Copying data from microSD card to the FOMA terminal

- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box)→P280

<Example> Moving/copying a Decome-Anime template

1  [LifeKit]  

2 Select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the data

- When "Multimedia" is selected, select data type before selecting a folder.

3   ▶  or 

- When "Multimedia" is selected, press  .

4  -  ▶ "Yes"

- To move/copy selected items, select them ▶ .
- Data is saved in the following folders on FOMA terminal.  
Multimedia data : "Data transfer" folder for each data  
Deco-mail pictogram : "Smiley/Pict" under "Deco-mail pict" folder in My Picture  
ToruCa : "ToruCa"  
Decome-Anime template : "Decome-Anime" folder in Template

## ◆ Copying PIM data

- You can copy PIM data (Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad and Bookmark).

1  [LifeKit]   ▶  -  ▶ Move the cursor to data ▶   ▶  - 

**Add to phone** : Copy data from microSD card to FOMA terminal.

**Update phone** : Overwrite the current data on FOMA terminal with all data on microSD card.

**Copy all to microSD** : Save all data of selected types to microSD card collectively.

## 2 Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

- Authentication is not required for "Add to phone" of 1 item.
- When all phonebook entries are copied to microSD card, a confirmation screen for copying User information appears.
- You can copy all to microSD card by selecting the following submenu on a list screen of each data in FOMA terminal. You can also perform Copy one to microSD on a list screen.

**Phonebook entry list, scheduler** : "Copy/Store data"

**Note list** : "IriC/microSD"

**Mail list** : "Move/Copy" ▶ "Copy to microSD"

**Bookmark list** : "Move/microSD" ▶ "Copy to microSD"

## ✓INFORMATION

- Copying phonebook entry does not copy the registered moving picture. Still images are copied but cannot be displayed on other than FOMA terminal. If you copy one item, the secret attribute is disabled.
- When you copy a mail, i-mode mail protection is canceled. The part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes including message text is not copied.
- When schedule item is copied, contact or image is not copied. When all items of schedule are copied, watching reservation/recording reservation of 1Seg are not copied.

## Displaying data in microSD card

- Playing the music data of MUSIC→P215
- 1Seg display→P267
- Viewing backed-up data→P274
- Update information when data cannot be correctly displayed in FOMA terminal due to change, addition or deletion of data from microSD card by other devices.→P275

## 1 [LifeKit] ▶ -

### 2 Select a folder

- When you select "Multimedia", select a folder after you select data type.
- When you select "PIM", select a data type.
- "Movie" folder (i-motion compatible with content transfer)→P265

#### Switching to FOMA terminal folder list :

- You can operate only folders of Multimedia and of ToruCa.

### 3 Select data

#### Displaying all copied data in PIM : Select all copied data ▶ Select data

- The icon of all copied data is displayed as overlapping icons.

#### Switching between thumbnail and list view :

- Only Multimedia (except Melody) and My Document data can be operated.

#### Jumping by specifying a page :

- Press  without entering a page number to jump to page 1 (except i-motion compatible with contents transfer, i-αppli data).

#### Attaching to mail :

- You can control only Multimedia (except i-motion compatible with content transfer), Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark, ToruCa, and Other folders.

#### Searching data : ▶ Enter date ▶

- You can control only Multimedia (except i-motion compatible with content transfer) folders.
- The same operation is available by pressing   in PIM data list or pressing   in Decome-Anime template list.

#### Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as the stand-by display :

##### Move the cursor to data ▶ ▶ "Yes"

- Select "Yes (Same size)" or "Yes (Large size)" depending on the image size.
- If i-αppli stand-by display is set, a cancellation confirmation screen of the i-αppli stand-by display appears.

#### Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as ring alert : Move the

##### cursor to data ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

- When "Contact alert:Call" or "Contact alert:Mail" is selected, select a phonebook entry ▶ Select "Yes".

#### Setting i-motion compatible with content transfer as Movie alert : Move the

##### cursor to data ▶ ▶ - ▶ "Yes"

#### Playing moving picture/i-motion continuously :

- During continuous play, the following operations are available.

 ,  : Adjust volume

 : Pause/Play

 /  (1 sec. or more) : Play the previous/next moving picture

 : Stop continuous play

- When the FOMA terminal is closed during continuous playback, the title of the playing moving picture/i-motion is displayed on the sub-display. The playback continues.

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Alarm does not sound for schedules saved in microSD card even when the specified time comes.
- Detail information cannot be downloaded from the ToruCa saved in microSD card.
- i-motion compatible with content transfer can be played only when the same UIM as downloading i-motion from a site or moving to microSD card is inserted (the model also must be the same for some i-motion). Note that, when i-αppli using microSD card is set for the stand-by display, playing may be unavailable.
- When you attempt to display data of i-αppli that was used with a different model or UIM, the reason not available is displayed. When only Restricted operation is set to "Yes", downloaded i-αppli may be used.
- Checking User information or View preference is available from the submenu of the phonebook details screen.
- Changing font size, adding mail address to phonebook or updating, showing/hiding attached file or checking title is available from the submenu of the mail details screen. Replying or forwarding received message is available.
- Copying URL or adding to phonebook or updating is available from the submenu of Bookmark details screen.

## Backing up data saved in the FOMA terminal all at once

You can back up Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad, Bookmark and setting item data all at once in microSD card and restore them to FOMA terminal when necessary.

- It may take time to back up/restore depending on data volume. Operate after you check that remaining battery is sufficient.
- When there is no data to be backed up/restored, it is unavailable.
- The following setting information is backed up/restored.

Inbox sort, Outbox sort, Font size (Mail view), Signature (Auto add, Edit signature), Receive option, Display priority, Auto-display, Incoming msg. attach, Attachment auto-play, Early warning "Area Mail" setting (Receive setting, Beep time, Manner/Public mode setting), Check msg. option, Specified caller, Unregistered caller, Anonymous caller (Anonymous, Payphone, Unavailable), Record message (ON/OFF, Set response time), Redial, Received calls, Sent msg. log, Received msg. log, Text input (Save word, conversion prediction), Alarm clock

\* When it has been set to one other than "Call Rejection", it is backed up/restored as "Disable settings".

### ◆ Backing up in microSD card

- Data is overwritten in backing up. Note that backup data saved last time is deleted and only the latest backup data is saved.

1  [LifeKit] 3 6 1

#### 2 "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- Step 3 is not required when no phonebook data is saved. User information cannot be backed up when no phonebook data is saved.

#### 3 "Yes" or "No"

- When you press  or **CLR** to interrupt, data backed up last time is deleted and data halfway backed up is saved. Back up again to save the correct backup data.
- When a message indicating the lack of memory appears, delete unnecessary data or operate after installing another microSD card that has sufficient memory.

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- Moving pictures saved in phonebook are not backed up. Still images are backed up but cannot be displayed.
- Protection of i-mode mail is canceled. The part of the attachment files in excess of 100 Kbytes including message text is not backed up.

- Contacts and images in the schedule are not backed up. Also, watching reservation/Recording reservation of 1Seg are not backed up.

### ◆ Restoring to the FOMA terminal

Backed-up data is restored after the Phonebook, Schedule, mail, Notepad, Bookmark and setting item data is deleted.

- Note that the latest data in FOMA terminal is deleted when restored.
- If backup is interrupted due to turning off during backup etc., do not restore by using the backup data. Partially backup data may be restored into the FOMA terminal.
- When the setting item data is restored to other than this FOMA terminal, some setting information is not restored.

1  [LifeKit] 3 6 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

- When you press  or **CLR** to interrupt, FOMA terminal is restored with the data processed before the interruption.
- When the memory space in FOMA terminal is insufficient or the backup data includes data that FOMA terminal does not support, a message appears indicating there was data not restored.

### ◆ Displaying backup data

1  [LifeKit] 3 6 3 ▶ 1 - 8 ▶  ▶ Select data

- Only the back-up date is displayed for setting items. You cannot refer the data.

### ◆ Deleting backup data

1  [LifeKit] 3 6 4 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate

## Managing microSD card

### ◆ Checking the memory space of microSD card

1  [LifeKit] 3 ▶ 

## ✓ INFORMATION

- The actually available memory space of microSD card is smaller than the displayed memory space.
- Size of data that cannot be recognized by FOMA terminal is also included in the used memory space.

## ◆ Formatting microSD card

To use a new microSD card on FOMA terminal or delete all data saved in a microSD card, format it.

- The data is not formatted by some conditions of microSD card.
- Note that, if you initialize the microSD card, all the saved data are deleted.

### 1 [LifeKit] 3 ▶ ▶ "Quick format" or "Regular format"

**Quick format** : Only the data management area is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. All the data saved is deleted. Use this method only when the microSD card is already formatted and has no problem.

**Regular format** : Both the data management area and data areas are formatted. All the data saved is deleted. To format a new microSD card, use this method.

## 2 Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

## ◆ Updating the microSD card information

Perform this operation when data cannot be correctly displayed in FOMA terminal due to change, addition or deletion of data from microSD card by other devices.

- When information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows.
  - Data in "My Picture", "Other image", "Deco-mail pict" or "Decome-Anime template" is renamed to the same name as the file name.
  - Data in "Melody", "Movie", "Other movie", or "ToruCa" is renamed to the same name as the title. When no title name is set, the name is changed to the same name ("No title" for ToruCa) as the file name.
  - Data in "Other" is renamed to the name that the file name with extension added.
- Updating information causes moving picture/i-motion containing only sound, if any, saved in "Movie" folder not to appear in a list. It is recommended that you move the moving picture/i-motion with only sounds in "Movie" before updating the information, or change the file name and save the file in PRIVATE≠DOCOMO ¥MMFILE folder of microSD card or MUDxxx (xxx is 001-999) in MMFILE using a PC etc.

### 1 [LifeKit] 3 ▶ ▶ Select a data type ▶ ▶ "Yes"

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Information update is not applicable to data in "Movie", "MUSIC", "1Seg", "i-appli data" or "Backup/Restore".
- If microSD card has much data, updating information takes time.
- If available space becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a microSD card with other devices, data saved in the microSD card may not be displayed correctly on FOMA terminal.

## ◆ Restoring data in microSD card <Scan card>

- The data is not restored by some conditions of microSD card.

### 1 [LifeKit] 3 ▶ ▶ "Yes"

## USB mode settings

### Operating data of microSD card in the FOMA terminal from a PC

- To connect FOMA terminal to a PC, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required.
- Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Vista are applicable.
- For MTP mode→P213 "Saving WMA files"

### 1 [LifeKit] 2 6

### 2 2 or 3

**microSD mode** : Set for recognizing microSD card in FOMA terminal as a drive and operating data.

**MTP mode** : Set for transferring music data using Windows Media Player to microSD card.

**Setting Communication mode** : 1

- Make this setting for packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting a PC.

### 3 "Yes"

The following icons appear on the stand-by display. Displayed in gray when microSD card is not installed.

 : microSD mode  : MTP mode

## ◆ Connecting to a PC

For connecting method, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" in the attached CD-ROM. Note that, when using in "microSD mode" or "MTP mode", installation of the FOMA communication configuration file described in "Manual for PC Connection" is not required.

- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected,  appears on the stand-by display. Press  and select  to display USB mode settings screen. At this time, other mode than "Communication mode" may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when a FOMA terminal is connected.
- In microSD mode or MTP mode, the light blinks in green.
- When data is transferred using DOCOMO keitai datalink in Communication mode, the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same state as out of service area).

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Applying an excessive force to pull the USB cable may give damage to it. And, removing the USB cable during data transfer may cause malfunction or data loss.
- When disconnecting the USB cable from a PC in microSD mode, click  in the task tray in the lower-right corner of a PC screen, click "USB大容量記憶装置デバイス-ドライブ (E:) を安全に取り外します (または停止します) (Safely Remove (or stop) USB Mass Storage Device-Drive (E:))" and check that message "USB大容量記憶装置デバイスが安全に取り外すことができます (The USB Storage Device can now be safely removed from the system)" appears.

\* The character to be assigned to a drive varies with the system of a PC.

## Using folder or album

- The fixed folders stored by default cannot be deleted and the folder names cannot be changed. However, you can delete folders other than "Face/i-pictgram" under "Deco-mail pict" in My Picture, and change their names.

## ◆ Adding folder or album

- A folder can be added to the following list.
  - Music&Video Channel, Kisekae Tool, Machi-chara, Chara-den in Data Box and Deco-mail pict in My Picture
  - Multimedia (except MUSIC and 1Seg) of microSD card, ToruCa, Decome-Anime template, Other
- An album can be added to the lists of My Picture, i-motion/Movie and Melody in Data Box.
- Up to 100 items can be added to My Picture of Data Box, and up to 10 data items of each data type can be added to other. Deco-mail pict folders in My Picture can be added up to 10 items. Up to 900 items can be added to My Picture of microSD card, up to 4,095 items for moving pictures, and up to 1,000 items of each data type can be added for other.

<Example> Adding an album of My Picture

1  [Data Box] 

2   (  on Melody folder list)

Deleting an album : Move the cursor to an album   (  on Melody folder list) 

- When the data is saved, perform authentication.

Changing album name or secret attribute : Move the cursor to an album   (  on Melody folder list)

3 Set required items 

- **Album name** : Enter an album name with up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters (up to 10 characters for Machi-chara and Chara-den).
- However, up to 31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters available for a folder (except "Movie-") on microSD card.
- **Secrecy** : Set whether to display an album in Privacy mode (with "Hide secrecy album" set for My Picture).
- Only My Picture (except Deco-mail pict) and i-motion/Movie can be set.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- Deleting a folder in "Movie-") of microSD card causes the following actions to occur.
  - When an attempt is made to delete the initial folder, only sub-folders and data of the initial folder are deleted.

- When a folder set as home folder is deleted, the initial folder is set as home folder.
- If the folder to be deleted contains an invalid file (not displayed on the list screen) except i-motion compatible with contents transfer, i-motion compatible with contents transfer is deleted from the folder, but the folder is not deleted. Operate the microSD card from a PC etc. to eliminate such an invalid file and retry deleting the folder.

## ◆ Moving/Copying data to folder or album

### ❖ Moving data

- Data saved in "Preinstalled", "Item" or "Mail attach melody" folder cannot be moved.
- Data saved in "Deco-mail pict" cannot be moved to other than the folders under "Deco-mail pict".

#### <Example> Moving data of My Picture

- 1  [Data Box]  ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Move the cursor to data ▶   
- 3  - 
- 4 Select destination album ▶ "Yes"

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ("Move" for Kisekae Tool) ▶ "Move to album" or "Move to folder". On Music&Video Channel program list, Machi-chara list and Chara-den list, select "Move". On microSD card list screen, select "Move/Copy" or "Move" ▶ "Move to folder".

- To move selected items, select them ▶ .

- When moving data compatible with contents transfer to "Movie" or "i-motion" on microSD card, move the cursor to the destination folder ▶ Press . When saving to a subfolder, select a folder ▶ Move the cursor to the destination subfolder ▶ Press . When a folder with no subfolders is selected, a confirmation screen for creating a subfolder appears.

### ❖ Restoring data to fixed folder

- The data of Music&Video Channel, Machi-chara, Chara-den, or Deco-mail pict in My Picture, or data on microSD card cannot be back to a fixed folder.

#### <Example> Restoring album data in My Picture to fixed folder

- 1  [Data Box]  ▶ Select an album
- 2 Move the cursor to data ▶   
  - Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ("Move" for Kisekae Tool) ▶ "Restore to folder".
- 3  -  ▶ "Yes"
  - To restore selected items, select them ▶ .

#### ✓ INFORMATION

- Images read by bar code reader in "Deco-mail picture" folder move to "Data transfer" folder, and other images moves to "i-mode" folder.
- Data copied in album or folder moves to the fixed folder that the source data was saved.

### ❖ Copying data

In My Picture or i-motion/Movie, data can be copied to the same album or folder. Data in microSD card can be copied to other folders.

- The following data cannot be copied.
  - Data in "Preinstalled" folder
  - Created animation in My Picture, images in "Item" folder
  - i-motion with replay restrictions or i-motion compatible with contents transfer
  - Data with File restriction set to "File restricted" (except data set to "File restricted" on the local terminal)

#### <Example> Copying data of My Picture

- 1  [Data Box]  ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Move the cursor to data ▶   

Data is saved to the same album or folder as the source.

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Move/Copy" ▶ "Copy". On microSD card list screen, select "Move/Copy" ▶ "Copy to folder" ▶  -  ▶ Select destination album ▶ Select "Yes".

## ◆ Playing album

You can play all melodies in the album collectively.

1 [Data Box] 5 ▶ Move the cursor to an album ▶ 1

- While playing album, the following operations are available.

(1 sec. or more) : Play the previous/next data

: Adjust volume

[CLR] : Stop

### Detail information/Edit detail information

#### Viewing/Editing data detail information

- Details of the chapter of Music&Video Channel, program information→P211
- Data information of MUSIC (Music data, Uta-moji Lyrics)→P218

## ◆ Viewing detail information <Detail information>

<Example> Viewing the detail information of image

1 [Data Box] 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to an image ▶ 3 1

- Submenu item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Detail info" ▶ "View".

## ◆ Changing detail information <Edit detail info>

<Example> Changing the detail information of image

1 [Data Box] 1 ▶ Select a folder

2 Move the cursor to an image ▶ 3 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

- Submenu item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Detail info" ▶ "Edit".

## ◆ List of display items and changeability

Detail information contains the following items. Data detail information saved on microSD card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

**Display name** : Title displayed on FOMA terminal

- Decome-Anime template can be edited within 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters, Melody within 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters, 1Seg within 50 characters, and others within 36 characters.
- For microSD card data, movie can be changed within 36 characters, 1Seg within 50 characters and other within 31 two-byte (63 one-byte) characters. Note that, if moving/copying to FOMA terminal, the characters exceeded the limit of number of characters for changing the display name on FOMA terminal are deleted.

**Title** : \* : Original title of data

- If no title is set, the file name or "----" appears.

**File name** : File name displayed when attaching to mail

- Only for image, moving picture/i-motion or melody, up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumeric characters, ".", "-", and "\_" can be changed. A dot "." is not allowed for the first character of a file name.

**File restriction** : For a file sent by mail attachment, you can set restriction of transfer from the receiver mobile phone to another mobile phone.

- You can change only image, moving picture/i-motion and melody. However, you cannot change moving pictures exceeding 2 Mbytes or downloaded files.

**Move to microSD/phone** \* : Restriction of transfer between FOMA terminal and microSD card

**File type** \*/**format** : File type

- It appears as "----" for Flash graphics.

**Display size** \* : Display size of data

**Size (Bytes), Size on disk (Bytes)** : Data file size, size of memory used for data saving

- The actual memory size of the same data in FOMA terminal and microSD card may be different.

**Saved date & time/Created date & time** : Date and time when data is saved/created

**Originated** : Data source

\* Do not appear for some data types.

### ■ Items displayed for Kisekai Tool

**Font** : Font information

**Receive** : Complete receiving/Uncompleted download

### ■ Items displayed for image and Chara-dan

**Comment** : Data description, etc.

- You can change within 100 characters.

### ■ Items displayed for an image

**Type** : Type of image

**Msg attach size(Bytes)** : Attachment size of data that can be attached to mail

**Use as frame, Use as stamp** : Indicate whether they can be pasted as a frame or stamp.

- You can change only JPEG or GIF images. However, an image composed with an image in "Item" folder cannot be changed to "Yes". Also, an image exceeding 480×960 used as a frame, and an image exceeding 480×960 used as a stamp cannot be changed to "Yes".
- Even setting to "Yes", the image is saved in the original folder, not in "Item" folder.

### ■ Items displayed for moving picture/i-motion

**Creator\*1** : Creator information

- For moving picture shot with the local terminal, the name of User information appears. If no name is saved, "----" appears.

**Copyright\*1** : Author's name/Release date etc.

**Description\*1** : Data description

**Sound** : Sound data type

**Video picture** : Codec type

**Quality** : Bit rate of the data

**Ring alert\*2** : Indicate whether it can be set for a ring alert

- Moving picture shot with Recording Type set to "Voice only", moving picture shot with Recording Type set to "Video + Voice" with image size of 320×240 or less, or moving pictures cut out of these moving pictures are set to "Available".

**Receive display\*2** : Indicate whether it can be set for an incoming image

- For moving picture shot with the local terminal with Recording Type set to "Video only" or a moving picture cut out of it is set to "Available".

**Replay restriction** : Restriction on replay

\*1 Can be edited within 256 characters. Note that some data such as moving pictures in ASF format cannot be edited.

\*2 For i-motion compatible with contents transfer, the item which is "Unavailable" in microSD card may become "Available" after moving to FOMA terminal.

### ■ Items displayed for Machi-chara

**Receive** : Complete receiving/Uncompleted download

### ■ Items displayed for a melody

**Playing time** : Data play time

### ■ Items displayed for Other

**Extension** : File extension

### ■ Items displayed for video

**TV station name, Program name** : Names of a TV station and a program

**Recorded time** : Recorded time

**Copy restriction** : Copy permit

- It is not displayed in video (microSD).

## Deleting data

- Deleting MUSIC (Music data, Uta-moji Lyrics)→P217
- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder of My Picture, Melody or Kisekae Tool cannot be deleted.

<Example> Deleting data in My Picture

- 1  [Data Box]  ▶ Select a folder
- 2 Move the cursor to data ▶  6 ▶  -  ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to data.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Delete" and operate. Also on microSD card list screen, you can select "Delete" and operate.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- If you delete created animation, the composing original images are also deleted.
- If data set for stand-by display or ring alert is deleted, each setting returns to default or standard setting. When data set to phonebook is deleted, the operation depends on the settings of the ring alert or incoming/outgoing image.
- "OFF" is set when you delete Machi-chara already set.
- Deleting a Kisekae Tool already set returns items related to it to default states.

- If you delete data stored by default, you can download the software from "@Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)" site.
- "@Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters)" (as of May 2009)  
iMenu → メニューリスト (Menu list) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → @Fケータイ応援団 (@ F mobile phone supporters)

QR code for  
site access



\* The access method may be changed without previous notice.

## Sort

### Sorting data

- Sorting MUSIC (Music data, Uta-moji Lyrics)→P218

<Example> Sorting data of My Picture

1 [Data Box] ▶ Select a folder

2 ▶ Set required items ▶

- Submenu item numbers vary by list screens. Select "Sort".
- By : Select a sort type. Available items vary depending on data.
- If changing to "Display name", they are sorted in the Unicode order. May not be in the order of Japanese syllabary.
- If changing to "Originated", sorting is performed in the order of Preinstalled → i-mode → Camera → Data transfer when the Sorting order is "Ascending".
- Order : Select sorting order.

## Memory status

### Checking storage space of the FOMA terminal

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Move the cursor to data type

: Change unit

- "Total:" indicates the space of the common area shared by the entire data.

## When exceeding the savable number/area

If exceeding the savable number (→P392) or shared memory space when downloading or saving data, delete unnecessary saved data following instructions on the screen.

You can perform the same operation if the savable number (→P270) is exceeded or memory space is insufficient when saving 1 data item in microSD card.

### 1 On a deletion confirmation screen, "Yes" or "Delete"

Delete data from screen appears, showing the size that requires to be deleted and the size currently used for each data type. For microSD card, the size or number of items that requires to be deleted is displayed.

- When exceeding the savable number on FOMA terminal, Delete data from: screen does not appear. Go to Step 3.
- When you delete data on FOMA terminal while recording 1Seg video (when storing to "Phone memory"), a message appears indicating that data cannot be deleted. Select "Yes" to stop 1Seg recording and the data can be deleted.

### 2 Select data type

### 3 Select a folder ▶ Select a file ▶ "Yes"

- For microSD card, select files ▶ .

## Using infrared communication/iC transmission

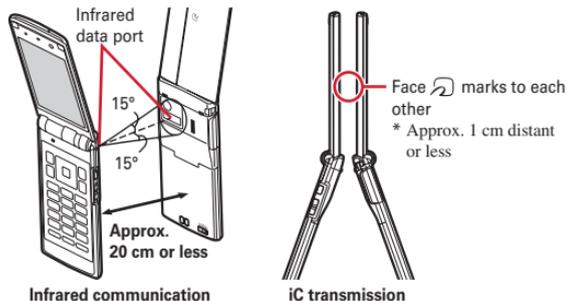
You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals or mobile phone, PCs equipped with infrared communication function or send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals equipped with iC transmission function by placing mark close to each other. And, i-appli compatible with Infrared communication/iC transmission is also available.

- Packet communication, 64K data communication or data transfer by connecting with a PC cannot be used simultaneously.
- During infrared communication or iC transmission, or while INBOX data is being used, the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same state as out of service area).

- The infrared communication function of FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC™ 1.1. Even if the other party's terminal conforms to IrMC™ 1.1, data is not received/sent for some data type.

## ◆ Using infrared communication/iC transmission

- The communication range for infrared communication is about 20 cm or less, and the infrared ray radiation angle is 15 degrees or less from the center. Keep FOMA terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until data sending/receiving completes.
- When doing iC transmission, make  marks of the sender and receiver terminals face close to each other with a distance of about 1 cm or less. Do not move FOMA terminals before data sending/receiving completes.



## ✓ INFORMATION

- When placing  marks close to each other for iC transmission, do not give a strong shock to FOMA terminal.
- If communication is not started by facing  mark of both terminals over each other for iC transmission, shift the facing position approximately 5-10 mm.
- Infrared communication may not be performed in areas exposed to direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.
- It is difficult to exchange data with some terminal of the other party.

## Send Ir data or iC transmission

### Sending data by infrared communication/iC transmission

You can send data individually or collectively by data types.

- The following data can be sent.
  - All items of Decome-Anime templates, images, moving pictures/i-motion or melodies can be sent at once via infrared communications. However, all items may not be sent at once depending on the other party's terminal.

Data types	Precaution
<b>Phonebook/User information</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Images are not sent by some other parties' terminals. And, when Contact image sending is "OFF" for Data exchange settings, images are not sent for sending all data items.</li> <li>When all data items are sent, User information (except My phone number) is also sent. Secret attribute of a phonebook group is canceled, and individual phonebook entries are sent with secret attribute set.</li> </ul>
<b>Schedule</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Birthday or watching reservation/Recording reservation of 1Seg cannot be sent.</li> <li>i-schedule cannot be sent.</li> <li>When sending one schedule event, it is regarded as an i-schedule-independent event.</li> </ul>
<b>Received/Sent/Unsent messages</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The link items, attached to a mail, that can activate i-appli are deleted.</li> <li>The whole title is not received with some other receiving terminals.</li> </ul>
<b>Decome-Anime template</b>	—
<b>Note</b>	—
<b>Bookmark</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Folder settings do not apply to some other parties' terminals.</li> </ul>
<b>ToruCa</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sending is unavailable by some settings of IP (Information Provider).</li> <li>ToruCa (Details) is not sent to some other parties' terminal.</li> </ul>
<b>Image</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A display name with up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters is sent with excessive characters deleted.</li> </ul>
<b>Moving picture/i-motion</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Data larger than 3 Mbytes cannot be sent when sending one item.</li> </ul>
<b>Melody</b>	—

- You cannot send data whose output from FOMA terminal is inhibited (except data with File restriction set to "File restricted" on the local terminal or data in "Data transfer" folder).
- When data is sent to i-mode terminal except F-08A or to infrared communication device, items that cannot be saved by the receiving side are discarded.
- When data containing pictograms is sent to a terminal except i-mode terminal, the data may not be displayed correctly. If the receiving terminal is an i-mode terminal not supporting Pictogram 2, Pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly.

### ◆ Sending single data

- For infrared communications, the other party's terminal must be ready for communications.

<Example> Sending a phonebook entry

**I Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a phonebook entry ▶**  **8 ▶**  **or**  **▶ "Yes"**

- Submenu names or item numbers vary depending on list screens. Select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission" and operate. For some screens, select "Send via Ir/iC" or "Ir/iC/microSD" and then select "Send Ir data" or "iC transmission".

**Sending User information :**  **0 ▶**  **or**  **▶ "Yes"**

### ◆ Sending all data

You can send all data of selected items.

- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.
- For infrared communications, the other party's terminal must be ready for communications.

**I**  **[LifeKit] 2 ▶**  **or**  **▶ Select an item to send ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter a 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes"**

- The order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

## Receive Ir data or iC transmission

### Receiving data by infrared communication/iC transmission

You can receive data individually, or collectively by data types.

- Data cannot be received in iC transmission with other functions activated. Perform reception operation on the stand-by display.
- The following data can be received.
  - All items of Decome-Anime templates, images, moving pictures/i-motion or melodies can be received at once via infrared communications.

Data types	Storage after reception
<b>Phonebook/User information</b>	Phonebook <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For receiving single data item, data is saved to the smallest free phonebook entry number (except 000-009).</li> <li>• When all data items are received, User information (except My phone number) is also overwritten.</li> </ul>
<b>Schedule</b>	Scheduler
<b>Received/Sent/Unsent messages</b>	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The folder name set by the other terminal is not used even when all mail messages are received from F2102V, F2051.</li> </ul>
<b>Decome-Anime template</b>	"Decome-Anime" of Template
<b>Note</b>	Notepad
<b>Bookmark</b>	Bookmark
<b>ToruCa</b>	"ToruCa" of ToruCa content
<b>Image</b>	"Data transfer" folder of My Picture "Face/i-pictgram" folder under "Deco-mail pict" of My Picture for Deco-mail pictogram
<b>Moving picture/i-motion</b>	"Data transfer" folder of i-motion/Movie
<b>Melody</b>	"Data transfer" folder of Melody

- Images, moving pictures/i-motion or melodies, if any, received from terminals except FOMA F series may be saved as notes.
- When receiving all items of received/sent/unsent mail, bookmarks (i-mode/Full Browser), ToruCa, images, moving picture/i-motion or melodies, the data is received including folders created on other party's terminal. The folder with no data cannot be received. Also, the data saved in "Camera" folder or "i-mode" folder is additionally saved to "Camera" or "i-mode" folder of each data.

## ◆ Receiving single data

- You cannot receive data larger than 3 Mbytes.

## ❖ Receiving a data item via infrared communication

- 1  [LifeKit]    ▶ "Yes" ▶ A data item is sent from the sender side

The next procedure→P283 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

## ❖ Receiving a data item via iC transmission

- 1 Send a data item from sender ▶ Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place  marks close to each other

The next procedure→P283 Step 2 in "Saving received data"

## ◆ Saving received data

You can save received data stored temporarily in INBOX to FOMA terminal.

- Up to 3 Mbytes can be saved in INBOX.
- Images with sizes larger than 480×960 (or vice versa) in GIF format or larger than 2,448×3,264 in JPEG format cannot be saved in FOMA terminal.

- 1  [LifeKit]  

• Icon definitions :

-  : Phonebook, User information  : Schedule  : Mail
-  : Decome-Anime template  : Notes
-  /  : Bookmark (i-mode)/(Full Browser)
-  : ToruCa  : Image  : SWF (Flash graphics)
-  : Moving picture/i-motion  : Melody

## 2 Select data ▶ "Yes"

- Deleting** : Move the cursor to data ▶   or  ▶ "Yes"
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

## ◆ Receiving all data

You can receive data collectively by data type.

- The data saved at the receiving side is deleted, and only the received data is saved.
- Enter the same authentication password on the sending and receiving sides. Decide a 4-digit authentication password in advance.

## ❖ Receiving all data via infrared communication

- 1  [LifeKit]    ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter 4-digit authentication password ▶ "Yes" ▶ Send all data from sender ▶ "Yes"

## ❖ Receiving all data via iC transmission

- 1 Send all data from sender ▶ Display the stand-by display on the receiver and place  marks close to each other ▶ Authenticate ▶ Enter a 4-digit authentication password ▶ Place  marks again ▶ "Yes"

## ✓INFORMATION-----

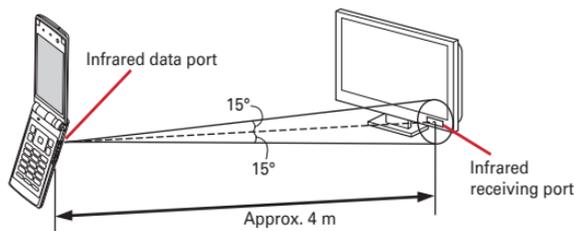
- ToDo data (list function to manage errands) cannot be saved to FOMA terminal. If all items of ToDo and schedule are received, only the schedule is saved.
- Receiving time differs by the type or number of received data items. If you receive large size data or a lot of data items, receiving may take time.
- For some sizes of data saved, the number that can be received becomes fewer than the savable number of FOMA terminal.
- When exceeding the savable number/area (data in Data Box)→P280
- Folder settings of other party's terminal may not be applied to your terminal depending on the model or condition of other party's terminal.
- Mail messages received from a device that can save messages by folder may be saved in the folder for Message i-appli. Move the cursor to the folder for Message i-appli and press →   to check saved mail.

## Using infrared remote control function

- Download i-appli applicable to each model for Infrared remote control. Operations differ by i-appli.
- If activating preinstalled i-appli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) (→P228), FOMA terminal can be used as infrared remote control for TV.
- Even devices compatible with infrared remote control may not work. Communication may also be affected depending on the supported device used or ambient luminance.

### ❖ Remote control

To use remote control, point the infrared data port of FOMA terminal at the infrared receiver of the supported device. Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and distance is up to approximately 4 m. However, the allowable angle and distance depend on the operated device or ambient luminance.



## Data exchange settings

### Setting operations for data exchange

Operations for data exchange via infrared communication, iC transmission or data transfer by connecting with a PC can be set.

1 [LifeKit] ▶ Set required items ▶

**End alert** : Set whether to sound the end tone at the end of communications.

**Auto authentication** : Set whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party for data transfer by connecting a PC.

- To set to "ON", perform authentication and enter 4-8 digit Auth code: terminal (FOMA terminal) and Auth code: PC (the other party) and press .

**Ph.book image sending** : Set whether to send images saved in phonebook with all phonebook entries.

# Convenient Functions

Multiaccess .....	286
Multitask .....	286
Searching with a simple operation .....	<b>Quick search</b> 286
Turning power ON/OFF automatically .....	<b>Auto power ON/OFF</b> 288
Setting the timer with a simple operation .....	<b>Countdown timer</b> 288
Ringing alarm clock at specified time .....	<b>Alarm clock</b> 288
Turning power ON at the set alarm time .....	<b>Alarm auto power ON</b> 289
Sounding loud alarm with one touch .....	<b>High-pitched alarm</b> 290
Managing schedules .....	<b>Scheduler</b> 290
Starting often-used function quickly .....	<b>Shortcut icons</b> 295
Registering often-used function .....	<b>Custom menu</b> 297
Setting function to be activated by holding down side key .....	<b>Side key shortcut</b> 298
Saving your own name .....	<b>User information</b> 298
Playing Toy's world .....	<b>Toy's world</b> 299
Pretending to be receiving a call and talking .....	<b>Fake call</b> 299
Recording voice/image .....	<b>Voice memo/Movie memo</b> 300
Checking call duration/charge .....	<b>Call duration/Call cost</b> 300
Using the FOMA terminal as calculator .....	<b>Calculator</b> 302
Creating notes .....	<b>Notepad</b> 302
Using Dictionaries .....	<b>Dictionaries</b> 303
Measuring number of steps or activity amount .....	<b>Pedometer/ACT monitor</b> 304
Using earphone/microphone with switch .....	<b>Earphone/Microphone with switch</b> 305

## Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that enables you to use voice call and i-mode/data communications simultaneously.

- Combinations of Multiaccess functions → P370
- You are charged separately for each communication when using the Multiaccess function.

<Example> Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 During a voice call, **[MULTI]** **[2]** **[1]**



- You can talk while displaying the site screen.
- Press **[END]** to end the current function on the display.

## Multitask

Multitask allows you to perform multiple functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- Up to 2 functions can be performed at the same time. However, Dial, User information, Dictionaries or Silent mode ON/OFF may be started even while 2 other functions are active.
- Combinations of Multitask functions → P371

### ◆ While performing a function, perform another function

<Example> Saving schedule during a call

1 During a call, **[MULTI]** **[7]** **[1]** ▶ Save schedule

- You can talk while displaying the schedule screen.
- Press **[END]** to end the current function on the display.
- Press **[MULTI]** ▶ **[ON]** and select "Yes" to terminate all running functions.

### ✓INFORMATION

- If many functions are performed at a time while playing moving picture, operating camera, playing Flash graphics, watching/recording 1Seg, playing Music&Video Channel program or playing tune by MUSIC Player, the movements displayed on the screen may not perform smoothly or the sound may be distorted during play.

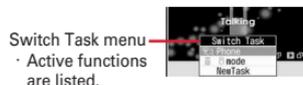
### ◆ Switching tasks to operate

Displaying the Switch Task menu allows you to operate while switching screens.

- Some items in the Switch Task menu are different from the names of the menu item.

<Example> Switching from a voice call screen to site screen

1 During a voice call, **[MULTI]** ▶ "i-mode"



- Press **[MULTI]** on Switch Task menu to switch New Task start menu and Switch Task menu.

### Quick search

## Searching with a simple operation

You can use search functions by pressing **[SEARCH]** on the stand-by display or while running functions.

- Some running functions may not allow search result display function to be activated at the same time, and search may be unavailable. → P371
- You can search in the middle of the operation to copy/cut characters. → P159, 313
- For some search operation or connecting condition, search may be unavailable or the search result may not be displayed correctly.

<Example> Searching on Full Browser screen

1 **[SEARCH]**

- If you searched at previous time, the search screen you performed immediately before is displayed. If not searching the entered keyword, displayed with the keyword entered.

- 2** to switch to Full Browser search ▶ Select the search service selection field ▶ **1**-**0** ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search" ▶ "Yes" or "Yes(Always)"

Full Browser starts, and the search result screen on the selected search service site is displayed.



- Searching by i-mode :** to switch to i-mode search ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

i-mode starts, and the search result screen by the i-mode search is displayed.

- If selecting "Connect to iMenu", iMenu is displayed.

- Searching by a map :** to switch to map search ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Map compatible i-αppli set in Select map starts, and the search result screen appears.

- For some map compatible i-αppli, you can enter multiple keywords (insert a space between keywords) to search.
- Selecting "Read map" activates the map compatible i-αppli set in Select map.

- Searching by a dictionary :** to switch to dictionary search ▶ Select the dictionary selection field ▶ **1**-**3** ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Dictionary starts, and the search result screen appears.

- Searching phonebook :** to switch to phonebook search ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 9 one-byte characters) ▶ "Search"

The search result screen of name search appears.

- If selecting "Search in phonebook", phonebook search screen appears.

- Searching for mail by subject/message text :** to switch to mail search ▶ Select the mail search selection field ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 128 two-byte (256 one-byte) characters) ▶ "Search"

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

- You can enter multiple keywords (insert a space between keywords) to search.
- Select "Advanced search" to search under more detailed conditions.→P137

- Searching mail by phonebook :** to switch to mail search ▶ Select the mail search selection field ▶ **3** or **4** ▶ Enter a keyword in the entry field (up to 9 one-byte characters) ▶ "Search"

Mails that match the search criteria are listed.

- Switching searching function :** After entering the keyword, ▶ "Search"

- The common keyword can be used for i-mode search, Full Browser search, map search and dictionary search, and another common keyword can be used for phonebook search and mail search (one-byte subject/message text and phonebook reading) even after they are switched.

- Using key word history :** to switch to the function to search ▶ **1**-**5** ▶ "Search"

- Up to 5 logs common to i-mode search, Full Browser search, map search and dictionary search are recorded, and up to 5 logs common to phonebook search and mail search (one-byte subject/message text and phonebook reading) are recorded (including two-byte characters for logs of mail search (subject/message text)). When exceeding the limit, logs are overwritten chronologically.

- To delete keyword histories, press **2** and select "Yes". To delete from Full Browser search, press **4**.

- Pasting copied character in the entry field :** to switch to the function to search ▶ ▶ "Search"

- For phonebook search and mail search, pasting character is unavailable.

## ◆ Managing search service of Full Browser

- Up to 10 services can be registered.

<Example> Adding search service

- 1** to switch to Full Browser search

- 2** **2** ▶ "Yes" ▶ Select a search service

Changing the title name :

- 1** **1** ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶

## ② Enter the title (up to 36 characters) ▶

- To reset to the original title, select "Restore original".

**Deleting :** 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶ 2 ▶ "Yes"

**Switching the order :** 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a search service ▶ 3 or 4

## 3 "Save" ▶ Enter the title (up to 36 characters) ▶

- When exceeding the savable number, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears.

## Auto power ON/OFF

### Turning power ON/OFF automatically

1 [Settings & NW services] 7 1 ▶ 2 or 3 ▶ Set required items ▶

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Even when Auto power OFF is set to "ON", the power is not turned OFF while using other functions.
- In addition to turning FOMA terminal OFF, keep Auto power ON set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in airplanes, medical facilities or hospitals.

## Countdown timer

### Setting the timer with a simple operation

On the stand-by display, you can enter and set the time (minutes) to elapse before the timer sounds.

1 Enter time (1-60 minutes) ▶

The countdown starts.

- When FOMA terminal is closed during countdown, remaining time before the timer sound is displayed on the sub-display.
- When or is pressed during the countdown, a screen for confirming the end appears.

## ❖ When the specified time has elapsed

"Timer Countdown ended" appears on the display, and the timer sounds at Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to the settings to Alarm Clock in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert. When FOMA terminal is closed, and "Countdown ended" appear on the sub-display.

- Press to stop the timer.
- To stop timer, perform no operations for approximately 1 minute, press keys except , and , or double-tap (→P39).

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When the specified time comes during a call, a warning sound is emitted and a timer screen appears.
- When the specified time comes during a fake call, the timer does not sound and the vibrator operates.
- When the specified time comes while making/receiving a call, calling, disconnecting, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode, while using infrared remote control or while high-pitched alarm is sounding, the timer is activated after termination of current operations.

## Alarm clock

### Ringing alarm clock at specified time

- You can set 1Seg to start after Alarm clock sounds.
- Up to 9 items can be set.

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ 1 - 7

**Setting/Canceling :** Move the cursor to a set alarm clock ▶

- appears at the left of the time when Alarm clock is set.

## 2 Set required items

**Time :** Enter the time to sound an alarm clock.

**Repeat :** When setting Repeat, appears at the right of Szn in the alarm clock list.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .

**Message** : Up to 7 two-byte (14 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Snooze(Snz)** : Set whether to use snooze (alarm sounds for approx. 1 minute and stops) for approx. 30 minutes with the specified intervals.

### 3 to switch to Set sound screen ▶ Set required items

**Alarm sound** : When this is set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of Ring alerts & Sounds.

Setting Music→P79

**Volume** : If you set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of Adjust volume.

### 4 to switch to 1Seg alarm screen ▶ Set required items

**Activate 1Seg** : When this is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts when Alarm clock is deactivated or stopped (including paused when snooze is activated) (1Seg alarm clock).

**Volume** : When this is set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Alarm clock sound of 1Seg alarm sound.

**Channel** : Set the channel to start with.

**Time out** : When the set time elapses, 1Seg is terminated.

### 5 to switch to Set others screen ▶ Set required items

**Vibrate alert** : Setting "Phone setting" applies to Alarm clock in Vibrate alert/ effect.

**Light pattern** : When "Sync melody" is set, the light blinks in multiple colors. Light color cannot be set.

**Light color** : Set the lighting color of the light.

### 6

- When alarm clock is set,  or  (when a schedule reminder is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

### ❖ When the specified time arrives

The message and time appears on the display and operations are performed according to the setting. When FOMA terminal is closed,  and time appear on the sub-display.

- Press  to terminate the alarm clock. When Activate 1Seg is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts.
- An alarm clock stops or starts snooze by performing no operations for approximately 1 minute, pressing keys except ,  and , or double-tapping (→P39). When Activate 1Seg is set to "Yes", 1Seg starts.
- While an alarm clock is stopped with snooze operation activated, "スヌーズ中 Snooze" appears on the display and the light blinks slowly.
- While alarm clock is stopped, press  or  to deactivate it. While alarm clock is stopped with snooze operation activated, press  to deactivate.

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- With moving picture/i-motion set for Alarm sound, moving picture/i-motion appears on the screen when the alarm clock operates.
- When starting 1Seg, a program not specified may be displayed.
- If alarm clock and a schedule reminder are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.
- In Personalized silent mode, 1Seg alarm clock operates according to Alarm clock sound in Personalized silent mode.
- The same operation as Countdown timer is made at the specified time during a call, fake call, while making/receiving/disconnecting a call, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode, while using infrared remote control or while high-pitched alarm is sounding.

### Alarm auto power ON

#### Turning power ON at the set alarm time

1   [Settings & NW services]    ▶  or 

### ✓ INFORMATION -----

- This function does not operate if power supply to FOMA terminal is stopped in a way except power OFF operation or Auto power OFF settings (e.g. by removing the battery pack).
- In addition to turning FOMA terminal OFF, keep this function set to "OFF" in areas where use of a mobile phone is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities or airplanes.

## High-pitched alarm

### Sounding loud alarm with one touch

- When this setting is "ON", functions to be activated by pressing  or  for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal closed do not work, and the high-pitched alarm sounds.

### ◆ Setting the operations of high-pitched alarm

#### 1 [Accessory] ▶ Set required items ▶

**High-pitched alarm** : Set if you enable high-pitched alarm. When setting to "OFF", you do not need to perform Step 2.

**Sound option** : When setting to "Steptone", the volume gradually increases and reaches the maximum volume in 5 seconds.

**During alarm sound** : When setting to "Ring alert sound", high-pitched alarm is terminated and the operation for incoming call is performed when a call comes in. If setting to "Disable ring alert", alarm continues sounding, and recorded as a missed call.

#### 2

 appears on the stand-by display.

### ◆ Activating high-pitched alarm

- Operate with FOMA terminal closed.

#### 1 or (1 sec. or more)

Alarm sounds, the light blinks and the vibrator operates.

- High-pitched alarm stops when no operation is performed for approximately 10 minutes or by pressing any key except .

### ✓ INFORMATION

- High-pitched alarm does not operate when the power is OFF, the battery is almost exhausted (→P47), in Silent mode, Omakase Lock, data transfer mode or while updating software.
- High-pitched alarm can be activated during a call or packet/64K data communication, but call or communication except the packet communication connected with a PC is disconnected.

- If you activate high-pitched alarm before other functions end, the start of the operation may delay.
- The operations while high-pitched alarm is sounding are as follows.
  - If the battery level becomes very low, high-pitched alarm ends.
  - i-appli with auto start set is not activated and recorded in Start failure hist.
  - When the date and time specified in ISeg watching reservation, Countdown timer, Alarm clock or schedule come, each function operates respectively after high-pitched alarm ends.
  - Even when the time for Software update comes, the update does not start.
  - If you use Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) for a calling operation, you can make a call by ending high-pitched alarm.
  - If Omakase Lock is activated or Area Mail is received, high-pitched alarm ends.
  - When data is received via 64K data communication or packet communication with a PC, the reception is rejected. At this time, only for 64K data communication, it is recorded as a missed call.
- High-pitched alarm is for drawing attention of others and it does not assure crime prevention or security. Please be notified that DOCCOMO assumes no responsibility even if any damage occurs while you are using this function.

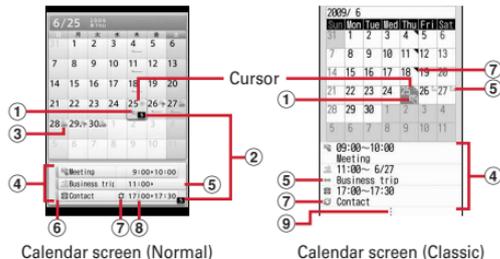
## Scheduler

### Managing schedules

- Scheduler displays vary depending on Scheduler type in Scheduler view type. When "Normal" is set, i-schedule downloaded from i-concier, birthdays saved in the phonebook, etc. can be displayed in the scheduler. When "Classic" is set, you can change Scroll mode and Zoom style.
- Displaying and operating i-schedule→P295

### ◆ Displaying calendar

#### 1



- While displaying a calendar screen, the following operations are available.

: Moving of the cursor

/ : Switch previous/next month

- When is pressed in "Normal", i-schedule list is displayed. →P295
- When is pressed in "Classic", Key function help is displayed.
- Reading the screen is as follows.

#### ① Schedule event exists

- In "Normal", (light blue) appears when a normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) is registered, (orange) appears when a schedule in i-schedule is registered.
- In "Classic", an item icon of schedule event set for the earliest time is displayed. appears for saved watching reservation of 1Seg and appears for saved recording reservation.

#### ② Number of Schedule events

#### ③ Weather report for a week

- If you subscribe to i-concier, the weather report for the next 8 days (at longest) will be distributed.

#### ④ List of schedule events saved for the date at the cursor position

- In "Normal", in addition to saved schedules, schedules in i-schedule and birthdays saved in phonebook are displayed.
- In "Classic", it is not displayed in the zoom style.

#### ⑤ Long-term schedule

#### ⑥ Normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) (light blue)/schedules in i-schedule (orange)

#### ⑦ Repeat schedule

#### ⑧ Schedule reminder set

#### ⑨ 4 or more schedules exist

**Specifying a certain date to display :** ▶ Enter year/month/day ▶

- Press to restore the current date.

**Checking the number of schedule events :**

### ✓INFORMATION

- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

- Holidays of Calendar are based on "The Public Holiday Law and the Law to Amend Parts of Old-age Persons' Welfare Law (Up to No.43 of 2005)". Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ since their dates are announced by the government gazette on February 1 of the previous year (as of May, 2009). Note that the above laws came into effect as of January, 2007, and some of the national holidays and compensating holidays by 2006 are not displayed as the dates before the amendment.
- Operations such as change, delete, copy and set secret attribute are not available for birthdays. Also, birthdays are not included in the number displayed in No. of items.
- Operations such as changing, deleting, displaying item by type, copying, operating mail and setting secret attribute are not available for watching/recording reservation of 1Seg.
- Data Security Service is available. →P113

## ◆ Setting view <Scheduler view type>

▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

**Scheduler type :** When "Classic" is selected, you can set Scroll mode and Zoom style.

**Display mode :** Specify the first day of a week (displayed at the left).

**Scroll mode :** Set whether to switch the screen by a month or scroll by week when is pressed.

**Zoom style :** Set to "Weekly zoom" for enlarging based on weeks in 4 levels, and "Daily zoom" for enlarging based on days in 7 levels.

- The registered schedule information is displayed by zooming it in (vary by the zoom style and scale factor).

## ◆ Setting days off/weekly off/holidays <Days off/Day off of week/Holiday settings>

- Up to 30 items can be set for days off.
- Up to 5 items can be set for holidays.

▶ ▶ Perform necessary operation

**Setting days off to a fixed day/every year :** ▶ Move the cursor to a day on Holiday settings screen ▶ or

- When moving the cursor to the holiday on Holiday settings screen, "Day off" or "Day off-EveryYr" appears at the right of the date.

- Each time you press , every year/fixed holiday can be switched.

**Canceling day off :** Move the cursor to the holiday on **Holiday settings screen** ▶ 

- Press  and select "Yes" to cancel all items on the holiday setting screen.

**Setting weekly off :**  ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

- Press  on the day of week selection screen to restore the original setting.

**Setting holiday :**  ▶  ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

- Up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters can be entered for a holiday name.
- Set Mark on calendar to "ON" to display a holiday name on the calendar screen or Day view screen.

**Changing holiday :**  ▶ **Select a holiday** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

- Holiday names set by default cannot be changed.
- Select "Change" in Date field and enter a date to change the date of a holiday set by default.

**Deleting a holiday :**  ▶ **Move the cursor to a holiday** ▶  ▶ "Yes"

- Holidays set by default cannot be deleted.

## ◆ Saving schedules

1  ▶  

### 2 Set required items

 : Select an item icon. A schedule event corresponding to the selected item icon appears in the entry field. It can be changed with up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters.

**All day :** To set all day schedule without specifying the hour, select "ON".

**Start date and time :** Enter a start date/time.

**End date and time :** Enter an end date/time. Enter a date that is after the Start time to register as a Long-term schedule.

**Place :** Up to 25 two-byte (50 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Details :** Up to 300 two-byte (600 one-byte) characters can be entered.

### 3 to switch to Schedule contact screen ▶ "<Add contact>" ▶ Select a contact from the phonebook

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- To delete an item, move the cursor to it and press .

## 4 to switch to Reminder screen ▶ Set required items

**Alarm :** To set a reminder, select "Yes" and select an alarm sound (schedule reminder).

- If you set to "Phone setting", it operates according to Schedule reminder of Ring alerts & Sounds.  
Setting Music→P79

**Alarm before time :** Set the time to sound alarm prior to the schedule event with 0-99 minutes.

## 5 to switch to Other settings screen ▶ Set required items

**Repeat :** The schedule event is registered as repeated one except when "None" is selected.

- When "Day of week" is selected, select "Day/Week", select a day of the week and press .
- When a "31st" day or "February 29" in a leap year is set as the start date and "Every month" or "Every year" is selected for repeat, the schedule is repeated on the last day of the same year/month instead of the specified date (that is, "30th" or "February 28").

**Alarm image :** To change the schedule reminder screen, select "Yes", select "Image" and select the image.

## 6

- When a schedule event with Alarm set is saved,  or  (when alarm clock is also set) appears on the stand-by display.

## ❖ Saving schedule events from stand-by display <Quick schedule>

You can save schedule events with simple key sequence without using calendar screen.

### 1 Enter date/time in 8-digit number ▶

Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

- For 10:00 on June 25, enter        .
- For the current day, enter 4 digits : 2 digits for hour, 2 digits for minute.
- When the date and time before the current day are entered, Main (New) screen for the next year or next day appears.

The next procedure→P292 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

## ◆ When the specified date and time come

An image, date/time and schedule appear on the display and an alarm sounds at the volume set in Schedule reminder in Adjust volume. Actions are taken according to Schedule reminder in Vibrate alert/effect or Call in Light alert. When FOMA terminal is closed, time and a schedule content appear on the sub-display.

- Press to stop the alarm.
- To stop an alarm, perform no operations for approximately 1 minute, press keys except , and , or double-tap ( $\rightarrow$ P39).
- While the alarm is stopped, press to display the details screen.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- The schedule with All day set to "ON" operates the schedule reminder at 0 o'clock on the specified day.
- With moving picture/i-motion set for schedule reminder, moving picture/i-motion appears on the screen when the schedule reminder operates.
- When multiple schedule reminders are set for the same date and time, the contents of other schedules can be checked by pressing after stopping the alarm.
- If a schedule reminder and alarm clock are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock sounds, succeeded by notification of the schedule reminder.
- The same operation as Countdown timer is made at the specified date and time during a call, fake call, while making/receiving/disconnecting a call, making/receiving 64K data communication, in data transfer mode, while using infrared remote control or while high-pitched alarm is sounding.

## ◆ Setting default value for schedule reminder <Reminder option>

### 1 ▶ Set required items ▶

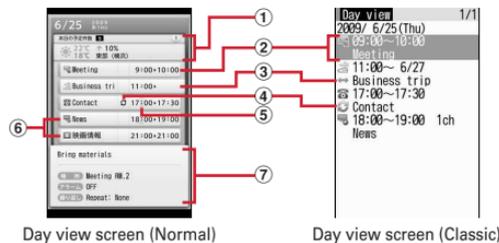
**Set by scheduler :** Set default values for saving a schedule event from the calendar screen.

**Set by quick-schedule :** Set default values for saving by quick-schedule.

## ◆ Checking registered schedule

- Schedules in i-schedule can also be displayed, but submenu operations etc. are different or restricted.  $\rightarrow$ P295

### 1 ▶ Select the saved schedule day



Day view screen (Normal)

Day view screen (Classic)

- Press to switch the date.
- Descriptions of the screen are as follows.
  - ① **The number of schedule events, weather report for a week**
    - When displayed in Display by type, "本日のフィルタリング後の予定件数 (Number of today's schedules after filtering)" is displayed.
  - ② **Item icon, Schedule, Start time-End time**
    - For watching/recording reservation of 1Seg, watching/recording reservation icon, program name, start time-end time, channel ("Classic" only) are displayed.
  - ③ **Long-term schedule**
  - ④ **Repeat schedule**
  - ⑤ **Schedule reminder set**
  - ⑥ **Normal schedule (including birthday, watching/recording reservation of 1Seg) (light blue)/schedules in i-schedule (orange)**
  - ⑦ **Schedule details**

## 2 Select a schedule event



**Changing :** Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ **ME** **NUM** **2**

The next procedure → P292 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ **ME** **NUM** **3** ▶ **1** - **5** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a schedule.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ **ME** **NUM** **3**. To delete all items, authentication is required.
- When Long-term schedule events including the selected date have been saved and "One day" or "Before date" is selected, a confirmation screen to delete the Long term schedule events appears.

**Displaying after specifying an item <Display by type> :** **ME** **NUM** **4** **2** ▶ Select an item icon

The selected item icon appears in the upper-right corner of the calendar or Day view screen and only the schedule for the item icon appears.

Press **ME** **NUM** **4** **1** to restore the display.

**Copying and pasting :** Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ **ME** **NUM** **6** **1** ▶ **CLR** ▶ Move the cursor to the date to paste ▶ **ME** **NUM** **5**

- Only the latest copied schedule event is retained until the Scheduler is ended, allowing the pasting of the event to other dates repeatedly.

**Creating mail :** Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ **ME** **NUM** **7** **1** ▶ **1** - **3**

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format. If the schedule to be entered exceeds the number of characters that can be entered in the message text, the excess part is deleted.

**Attaching to mail :** Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ **ME** **NUM** **7** **2**

**Searching mail :** **ME** **NUM** **7** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**

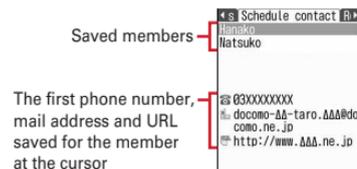
### ✓INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule data includes phone numbers, mail addresses or URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To or Web To functions can be used.
- In "Normal", press **ME** **NUM** **7** **2** on the details screen to check an alarm image.
- You can make a call or send mail to the birthday person on the birthday details screen.
- When displayed in Display by type, only the displayed items are deleted or informed via mail.

### ◆ Using schedule contact

In "Normal", select the phone number or mail address from the contact items in the detail screen. In "Classic", perform the following operations.

**1** **ME** **NUM** **3** ▶ Select the saved schedule day ▶ Select a schedule ▶ **ME** **NUM** **3** to display the schedule contact



## 2 Move the cursor to a contact ▶ Perform necessary operation

**Making calls :** **ME** **NUM** **4** or **ME** **NUM** **4**

- Press **ME** **NUM** **4** to make a call specifying conditions. → P57

**Attaching to mail :** **ME** **NUM** **5** **2**

- Press **ME** **NUM** **5** **2** to send mail to all contacts.

**Displaying a site :** **ME** **NUM** **6** ▶ "i-mode" or "FBrowser"

### ✓INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number or mail address saved in phonebook, select a contact from Schedule contact screen and display the target phone number or mail address from the phonebook details screen.

## ◆ Protecting secret schedules <Secret attribute>

Set secret attribute to a schedule. In Privacy mode ("Hide set schedule" set for Schedule), the schedule with secret attribute does not appear.

### 1 [📅] ▶ Select the saved day of schedule ▶ Move the cursor to a schedule event ▶ [🔒] [0]

- While setting secret attribute, [🔒] is blinking.
- The same operations are also required for canceling.

## ◆ Displaying/Operating i-schedule

Multiple schedules are included in an i-schedule (schedules in i-schedule). i-schedule is updated when a new schedule is downloaded or the data saved in Data Center is updated/restored.

- Individual schedules in i-schedule are not deleted. To delete them, delete i-schedule.

### 1 [📅] ▶ [📅]

The i-schedule list is displayed.

- If no i-schedule is registered, the description of i-schedule is displayed.
- Select "To i-schedule list" to connect to the i-schedule site.

### 2 Move the cursor to i-schedule ▶ [📅]

The schedule list in the i-schedule is displayed.

**Overviewing i-schedule :** Select i-schedule

**Deleting i-schedule :** Move the cursor to i-schedule ▶ [🔑] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to i-schedule.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ [🔑]. To delete all items, authentication is required.

### 3 Select a schedule in i-schedule

The schedule details screen in the i-schedule is displayed.

**Copying and editing :** Move the cursor to a schedule in i-schedule ▶ [📅] ▶ "OK"

The next procedure → P292 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

- It is saved as a normal schedule.

**Attaching to mail :** Move the cursor to a schedule in i-schedule ▶ [📧]

- It is attached as a normal schedule.

**Creating mail :** Move the cursor to an event in i-schedule ▶ [ME] [2] [1]

- It is entered to the message text in the Date To format.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Operations such as displaying item by type, copying, mail operation, setting secret attribute are not available for i-schedule. Some operations such as setting secret attribute are not available for events in i-schedule.
- When Scheduler is activated from i-concier or exceeding the savable number by downloading i-schedule, select "Yes" on the confirmation screen for deleting and perform one of the following operations.
  - Select unnecessary schedule in Day view screen (Press [📅] in Day view screen to display the details screen)
  - Press [📅] and select unnecessary i-schedule in the i-schedule list (Press [📅] in the i-schedule list to display overview)
  - To delete i-schedule in "Classic", press [🔑] [3] [3] on Calendar screen to switch to "Normal", press [📅] and select unnecessary i-schedule on the i-schedule list

## Shortcut icons

### Starting often-used function quickly

Frequently-used functions, folders, files, etc. can be pasted as icons on the stand-by display (shortcut). You can activate quickly by selecting the shortcut.

## ◆ Pasting shortcuts

When pasting shortcuts of functions, operate from the function selecting screen.

When pasting shortcuts of folders, files, etc., operate from the list screen of folders, files, etc.

- Up to 15 items can be pasted. If pasting a shortcut, it is added to Shortcut icons list.

<Example> Pasting shortcuts of functions

### 1 [📅] ▶ Move the cursor to a shortcut ▶ [ME]



Shortcut icons list

- ① Icons displayed on the stand-by display

- ② **Title (function name, folder name, file name, data name, etc.)**
  - When moving the cursor to the shortcut on stand-by display, it is displayed as a balloon.
- ③ **Icons set in Ph.book 2in1 setting (with 2in1 in Dual mode)**
  - On the stand-by shortcut list, press to check the pasting method.

## 2 ▶ Move the cursor to a function on the function selection screen ▶

- A function without menu on lower levels can be pasted also by selecting the function.

<Example> Pasting shortcut of folder of My Picture

### 1 [Data Box] ▶ Move the cursor to a folder ▶



When the folder, file, data, etc. at the cursor position can be pasted, after pressing to display submenu, "Add icon" is displayed on the guide area.

- When pasting phone number or mail address, display phone number or mail address on the details screen of FOMA terminal and press to display "Add icon".
- When pasting alarm clock, display alarm clock list to display "Add icon".

## 2

### ✓INFORMATION

- If the name of function or data to paste exceeds 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters, exceeded characters are deleted and before registration.
- Also when saving i-mode mail, SMS or a screen memo, you can paste shortcuts.→ P127, 148, 162
- When 15 functions including ones that secrete attribute is set are pasted, if pasting in Privacy mode, hidden shortcut is deleted and a shortcut is newly pasted.

## ◆ Activating from shortcut

### 1 ▶ Select a shortcut

When shortcuts other than displayed ones exist (displayed by )



Title registered in the shortcut icons list (shortcut title at the cursor position is displayed with a balloon), icon

## ◆ Editing a shortcut

### 1 ▶ Move the cursor to a shortcut ▶

### 2 Move the cursor to an item ▶ Perform necessary operation

**Sorting the order:** to move to the destination ▶

**Changing the icon:** ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an icon

- You can select a JPEG or GIF image within 20×20 - 40×40 dots (images smaller than 39×39 dots are enlarged). Images in "Deco-mail pict" folder of My Picture can be selected.

- Press to restore to the original icon.

**Changing the title:** ▶ Enter the title (up to 11 two-byte (22 one-byte) characters) ▶

**Deleting an item:** ▶ "Yes"

**Setting display of shortcut <Shortcut icon setting>:** ▶ or

- When "Press to display" is selected, press to display shortcuts only in Focus mode.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When deleting a folder or file, the shortcut is also deleted.
- Even after changing or deleting a phone number or mail address in phonebook, the information you registered to a shortcut remains. Note that, if a phonebook entry is deleted or overwritten, the shortcut is deleted.
- Even if deleting a shortcut, its functions or folders are not deleted.
- Activation is available from a shortcut even if a file is moved, but activation becomes unavailable if moved to microSD card or UIM, and its shortcut is deleted.
- Even if the title of a shortcut is changed, the name of folder or file is not changed. And, if the name of a folder or a file is changed after pasting the shortcut, it does not apply to the title.

## Registering often-used function

You can register frequently used functions and make your own menu.

- Functions of the first level of Custom menu can be activated by pressing the corresponding keypad (**1**-**9**) for 1 second or more on the stand-by display. However, a function with menus in its lower level, person or group registered cannot be activated.

### ◆ Creating Custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in 1 layer.

**1** 

#### 2 Perform necessary operation

**Adding a function to item :**  **1** **1** ▶ **Move the cursor to a function** ▶ 

- A function without menu of lower levels can be registered also by selecting the function.

**Adding a person to item :**  **1** **2** ▶ **Select a person from phonebook**

- The image (except Flash graphics and moving pictures/i-motion) or character icon registered in the phonebook appears on the menu screen.

**Adding a group to item :**  **1** **3** ▶ **Enter a group name (up to 9 two-byte (18 one-byte) characters)** ▶ 

**Adding to a group :**

No group can be added to the third level.

**① Select a group.**

**②**  **1** ▶ **1**-**3** ▶ **Perform registering operation**

- When no menu items are registered to a group, select one from "Save (Person)" - "Save (Menu group)".

**Replacing menu item :** **Move the cursor to a menu item** ▶  **2** ▶ **1**-**3** ▶ **Perform registering procedure**

- When replacing a group, a screen for confirming the overwrite appears.

### ◆ Using Custom menu

**1**  ▶  ▶ **Select a menu item**

- When a function is selected, the function is activated or menu items in lower levels appear.
- When a group is selected, the menu items registered in the group appear.

### ◆ Using person

**1**  ▶ 

#### 2 Move the cursor to a person ▶ Perform necessary operation

**Making calls\* :**  or 

- Select a person and press **1** to make a call specifying conditions. →P57

**Creating mail\* :** 

**Creating SMS\* :**  (1 sec. or more)

**Displaying a site\* :** **Select a person** ▶ **4** ▶ "i-mode" or "FBrowser"

**Display detail information\* :** **Select a person** ▶ **5**

- \* When 2 or more phone numbers or mail addresses are saved, select a phone number or mail address to use from the phonebook details screen after the operation.

### ◆ Editing Custom menu

- Reset to default →P92 "Resetting menu"

**1**  ▶ 

#### 2 Move the cursor to a menu item ▶ ▶ Perform necessary operation

**Replacing menu items :** **3** ▶ **Select the destination** ▶ "Yes"

**Changing icon :** **4** ▶ **Select an icon**

- Press **4**  to restore to the original icon.

**Renaming a group :** **5** ▶ **Rename a group** ▶ 

**Deleting menu item :** **6** ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a menu item.
- Authentication is required to delete all items.

## Side key shortcut

### Setting function to be activated by holding down side key

You can set a function to be activated by pressing any of , , for 1 second or more with FOMA terminal closed.

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

## User information

### Saving your own name

In addition to the phone number, you can also save your name and mail addresses.

1 [User information]

- For My phone number, the subscribing terminal phone number appears.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, you can press to switch User information between Number A and B.

2 ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

Setting items → P71 Step 2 and the following steps in "Adding entries to phonebook" (None of phonebook number or group can be set.)

- My phone number appears in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.
- When mail address is selected, an entry method selection screen is displayed. When "Mail address auto reception" is selected, you can download the subscribed mail address from i-mode Center. Note that, that is unavailable for the second or subsequent mail address or the mail address of Number B.

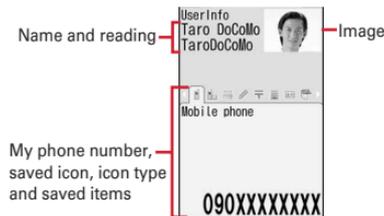
### ✓INFORMATION

- My phone number is saved to UIM and other items to FOMA terminal.
- Changing the mail address in User information does not change your i-mode mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode mail address does not change the saved mail address in User information.

## ◆ Checking user information details

1 [User information] ▶ ▶ Authenticate

- Each time you press , the details screen is switched.
- When the saved phone number has Caller ID settings, appears at the top of the details screen.



User information details screen

Displaying User information :

The phone number, mail address, etc., of the first entry appear.

Switching display of details screen : ▶ -

Editing the saved data : ▶ Edit and

Resetting the saved data : ▶ "Yes"

- When using 2in1, only the displayed user information is reset.

## ◆ Using user information details

1 [User information] ▶ ▶ Authenticate

2 Perform necessary operation

Making call : Display the phone number details screen ▶ or

- Calls cannot be made to My phone number.
- Press to make a call specifying conditions. → P57

Setting Call ID settings : Display the phone number details screen ▶ ▶ -

**Creating mail :** Display the mail address details screen ▶

**Changing the mail address order :** **[7]** **[2]** ▶ Select a mail address to be set as the first one

**Creating SMS :** Display the phone number details screen ▶

**Displaying a site :** Display the URL details screen ▶ ▶ "i-mode" or "FBrowser"

**Copying a saved data :** **[5]** ▶ **[1]** - **[8]**

- To copy the second phone number/mail address or later, display the details screen for them, press **[5]** and press **[2]** or **[3]**.

**Displaying a map from an address :** Display the Postal code/Address details screen ▶

Map compatible i-αppli that is set in Select map is activated.

## ◆ Obtaining Number B

With 2in1 activated and Number B displayed, you can obtain Number B.

<Example> Operating in B mode

**[MF icon] [User information]** ▶ ▶ **Authenticate** ▶ **[9]** ▶ "Yes" ▶

- In Dual mode, press [UserInfo] then to display Number B.

## Toy's world

### Playing Toy's world

The screen changes by tilting or shaking FOMA terminal or in response to voice, sound, etc.

**[MF icon] [Accessory]** **[9]** ▶ **[1]** - **[4]** ▶ Select play time

## Fake call

### Pretending to be receiving a call and talking

Fake call is a function that allows you to pretend you are receiving a call or calling.

- Since voice line is not used, it can be used regardless of the radio wave conditions. And, the call cost is not charged.

## ◆ Setting Fake call

**[MF icon] [Accessory]** **[8]** **[2]** ▶ Set required items ▶

- When setting Call start time to other than "Ring now", a countdown screen appears when you start a fake call. The incoming operation is performed when the specified time elapses.

## ◆ Starting Fake call

**[MF icon] [Accessory]** **[8]** **[1]**

Ring alert sounds according to Alert&Time settings, and the incoming fake call screen appears. Also, it operates according to Call in Light alert of Light alert (when "OFF" is set, "Light pattern 2" is applied).

- If is pressed while receiving fake call, the terminal operates in silence.

**2**

The fake call talking screen appears and the fake call guidance follows. And, even if Call session light of Light alert is "OFF", the light blinks according to Light color of Call session light.

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- When Call start time of Alert&Time settings is set to other than "Ring now" and Side key shortcut is set to "Fake call", the terminal vibrates before the start of countdown if you press the key set in Side key shortcut for 1 second or more to start a fake call.
- In Silent mode, the ring alert does not sound and the vibrator operates. Press to stop the vibrator.
- The ring alert is heard from the speaker even in Public mode (Drive mode) or when Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected.
- You can receive a fake call by pressing **[0]** - **[9]**, **[\*]** or **[#]**.
- You can end a fake call by closing FOMA terminal.
- If there is any of the following operations during a fake call, ring tone or alarm sound is not sounded, and vibrator operates.
  - A call is received
  - Mail or MessageR/F is received
  - At the set date and time specified in countdown timer, alarm clock or Schedule
  - At the specified time for ISeg watching reservation (except when Alarm setting is set to "No")

## Recording voice/image

You can record voice or images while talking over a call or in stand-by mode.

- Up to 4 voice memo while talking or voice memo in stand-by can be recorded in total, with up to 30 seconds for each memo.
- Moving picture memos up to 30 seconds each can be recorded.
- Some guidances cannot be recorded.
- The recording of the voice memo while talking or moving picture memo may be distorted or the image may be blurred if the radio waves are poor.
- Playing of voice memo → P65
- Playing moving picture memo → P259

### ◆ Recording the other party's voice/image during a call

#### 1 During a call, (1 sec. or more)

Recording starts. When the remaining time is about 5 seconds, two short beeps indicating the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.

- While recording, elapsed recording time appears at the bottom of the screen.
- During moving picture memo recording, the image is sent to the other party according to the settings of Movie memo image in Image setting (videophone image).
- During moving picture memo recording, pressing  switches display between lapse of the recording time and call duration.
- To stop in the middle of recording, press  for 1 second or more.

### ◆ Recording your own voice during stand-by

- Operate with FOMA terminal opened.

#### 1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ 3

After about 3 seconds, a long beep sounds and recording starts. When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, 2 short beeps noticing the end of recording sound. A long beep sounds at the end of recording.

- While recording, elapsed recording time appears in the bottom of the screen.
- Press any of ,  or  to stop in the middle of recording.

## Checking call duration/charge

Last and total call durations and costs for voice and videophone calls can be checked.

- The call durations are displayed for voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication, by the counting both outgoing and incoming calls.
- Call costs are only counted for outgoing calls. However "0 YEN" or "\*\*\*\*\*YEN" appears when a call is made to toll free numbers such as Free-dial or to Directory assistance (104).
- Because the call costs are stored on UIM, the stored total calls cost appears (totaling from December, 2004) when UIM is replaced.
- The call durations and costs displayed are approximate values and may be different from the actual durations and costs.
- The call costs displayed do not include consumption tax.

### ◆ Checking call duration

#### 1 [Settings & NW services]

**Last call** : Duration of last incoming/outgoing voice call, videophone or data session

**Total voice calls** : The total duration of voice calls made

**Total videophone calls** : The total duration of videophone calls made

**Total data sessions** : The total duration of data communication established

**Reset:day&time(Voice)** : Last date and time the total duration of voice calls was reset

**Reset:day&time(VP)** : Last date and time the total duration of videophone calls was reset

**Reset:day&time(Data)** : Last date and time the total duration of data communications was reset

**Resetting total calls** : On the call duration check screen,

 ▶ **Authenticate** ▶  ·  ▶ **"Yes"**

## ◆ Checking call cost

1  [Settings & NW services]     

- If there is no last call cost information, "\*\*\*\*\*YEN" appears.

**Last call cost: Voice** : Charge for the previous voice call

**Last call cost: VP** : Charge for the previous videophone call

**Last call cost: Data** : Charge for the previous data session

**Total calls cost** : The total cost of voice/videophone calls or data communication

**Reset: day & time** : Last date and time the total duration was reset

**Resetting total calls cost** : On the call cost check screen,  ▶ Enter the PIN2 code ▶ "Yes"

## ◆ Automatically resetting Total calls cost <Reset call cost>

You can set whether to automatically reset Total calls cost at 0:00 on the first day of every month.

1  [Settings & NW services]      ▶  
Authenticate ▶  or  ▶ Enter PIN2 code

### ✓ INFORMATION

- The duration of received calls or that for establishing call with the other party is not counted.
- Transmission charge for Chaku-moji messages is not counted.
- For i-mode and packet communications, the communication duration or costs are not counted. For the procedure for confirming i-mode fees, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The international call fee for using WORLD CALL is counted. It is not counted for using other international call service.
- When FOMA terminal is turned OFF, the previous call cost appears as "\*\*\*\*\*YEN".
- When last or total duration for the voice/videophone call or data communication has exceeded 9,999 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds, counting restarts from 0 second.
- If voice and videophone call is switched during the call, the last call cost shows the total charge for each of voice and videophone calls. No call cost is charged while switching.
- The total of Number A and Number B appears for the total call duration and total calls cost with 2in1 subscribed.

### <When Reset call cost is "ON">

- The call cost is reset after the terminal is turned ON or ending the call if the power is OFF or a call is being made at 0:00 on the first day of the month.
- The call cost is immediately reset when date and time in the next or subsequent month are set in Date & time.
- PIN2 code is required when turning the power ON or authentication is required when performing Date & time.

## ◆ Notifying call cost upper limit <Call cost limit>

When Total calls cost has exceeded the set limit, it is notified with an alarm, icon display, etc.

1  [Settings & NW services]      ▶  
Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶ 

**Alert** : Set this option to "ON" to be notified when the limit is exceeded.

**Limit** : Enter the upper limit cost in the range of 10 yen-100,000 yen omitting the one's place.

**Alert method** : Set to use both an alarm and icon or only an icon for notification.

**Alert sound** : Select a sound to be notified.

**Alert time** : Set the period of time to sound the alarm in the range of 1-60 seconds.

## ◆ When the call cost has exceeded the limit

- During a call or communication,  appears at the top of the display.
- When the stand-by display reappears after completion of a call or communication with Alert method set to "Sound + icon display", an alarm sounds and "Call cost reached limit." appears on the display. However, an alarm does not sound if you make a call or communication with FOMA terminal closed or if you end a call by closing FOMA terminal.
- The alarm operates according to Call alert volume of Adjust volume.

## ◆ Hiding call cost icon <Hide call cost icon>

1  [Settings & NW services]      ▶  
Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

## ✓ INFORMATION

- Even with "Sound + icon display" set for Alert method, the alarm does not sound or no messages appear when a call exceeding the call cost limit is made at 0:00 on the first day of the month with Reset call cost set to "ON".

## Calculator

### Using the FOMA terminal as calculator

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from entry field of Scheduler or Notepad. → P312

## 1 [MENU] [Accessory] 4 ▶ Calculate

Functions assigned to keys appear on the calculator screen.

**Deleting 1 digit from the entered number :**

**Copying/Pasting numbers :** ▶ **1** or **2**

- Among the copied numbers, only the latest one remains recorded until the terminal is turned OFF, allowing you to paste to other locations any number of times.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" appears when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits or a divide-by-zero occurs. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded off.

## Notepad

### Creating notes

## 1 [MENU] [Accessory] 2 ▶ ▶ Set required items ▶

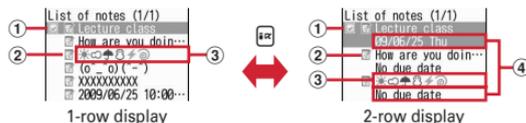
**Catg icons :** Select the category icon.

**Note content :** Up to 1,000 two-byte (2,000 one-byte) characters can be entered.

**Due date :** To set an expiration date, select "ON" and enter a date.

## ◆ Checking notes

## 1 [MENU] [Accessory] 2



### 1 Status icon

Indicate expiration state of a note (Completed/Uncompleted)

- (top in green) : Uncompleted (2 or more days before expiration)
- (top in yellow) : Uncompleted (The previous day or current day of expiration)
- (top in red) : Uncompleted (Past expiration)
- (check in red) : Completed No icon : No due date

### 2 Category icon

### 3 Note content

### 4 Expiration

## 2 Select note

Display notepad screen appears.

- If Note content includes phone numbers, mail addresses and URL, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, SMS To and Web To functions can be used.

**Changing :** Move the cursor to a note ▶ 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

**Deleting :** Move the cursor to a note ▶ 3 ▶ 1 - 4 ▶ "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a note.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.
- Only the displayed notes are deleted in List by category or List by status.

**Specifying a category icon to display <List by category> :** 4 2 ▶ Select a category icon

The selected category icon appears in the upper-right corner of List of notes and only the note for category icon appears.

- Press 4 1 to restore the display.

**Changing Completed/Uncompleted :** Move the cursor to a note with expiration set ▶

Displaying by specifying completed/uncompleted <List by status> : **ME** **NU** **5** ▶

**2** or **3**

• Press **ME** **NU** **5** **1** to restore the display.

**Sorting** : **ME** **NU** **6** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ **ME** **NU** **6** ▶

**Creating mail** : **Move the cursor to a note** ▶ **ME** **NU** **7**

**Registering to Scheduler** : **Move the cursor to a note** ▶ **ME** **NU** **8**

A screen with note contents already entered to details field of Scheduler appears. The date of Start time and End time varies depending on note expiration settings.

The next procedure → P292 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

## ◆ Registering to schedule from Date To format

Date To format is formed with the following strings.

<Example> **2009/6/25** **10:00** **~** **2009/6/25** **11:00** **Lecture class** ↵  
Start date Start time End date End time Description  
A line feed is regarded as an entry.

- \* Characters except "~" are all one-byte characters. □ represents a one-byte space.
- The year is Western calendar year and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only 1 digit for month, date, hour or minute, the preceding zero is not needed.
- Using Phrase simplifies entering Date To format. → P310

**1** **ME** **NU** **[Accessory]** **2** ▶ **Select a note** ▶ **Select a description in Date To format**

Main (New) screen of schedule appears.

The next procedure → P292 Step 2 and the following steps in "Saving schedules"

## Dictionaries

### Using Dictionaries

**1** **ME** **NU** **[Accessory]** **5** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ **Enter a word in entry field (up to 20 two-byte or 40 one-byte characters)**

When **ME** is pressed, the character entry screen is switched to the search result screen.



Search result screen

- When the cursor is in a search result list, press **ME** to enter a word.
- Viewing "Today's trivia" or "Today in history"** : **ME** **NU** **[Accessory]** **5** ▶ **4** or **5**
- To view another day, enter a date in Enter date field and select "Show events".
- Press **ME** / **ME** to switch the previous/next day.

## 2 Select a word to be searched for from a search result list

- The details screen (meaning of the word) appears.
- To copy the text, press **ME** **NU** **1** on the details screen.
  - To search another dictionary for a word already searched, press **ME** **NU** **2** and **1** - **3** on the search result or details screen.
  - Some words may not be correctly searched for.

## ◆ Using search records

**1** **ME** **NU** **[Accessory]** **5** ▶ **1** - **3** ▶ **ME** **NU** **1**

- The search records are displayed.
- Up to 20 items can be recorded. When exceeding the limit, record is overwritten chronologically.

## 2 Select word

- The search result screen appears.
- Deleting** : **Move the cursor to a word** ▶ **ME** **NU** **1** - **3** ▶ **"Yes"**
- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a word.
  - To delete selected items, select them ▶ **ME**. To delete all items, authentication is required.

## Measuring number of steps or activity amount

You can check the number of steps, walked distance, consumed calories or quantity of burnt fat with Pedometer/ACT monitor. And, "Brisk walk" that is a measure of aerobic exercise (exercise to use oxygen inhaled by breath effectively to improve the total body endurance and burn body fat effectively), "ActivityAmount" that is calculated from performing time of physical activity (body movements, walking, exercise etc. in daily life) and also an exercise intensity (METs: a unit indicates how many times the intensity of physical activity per the one at rest) can be measured.

- \* You can display details of activity amounts and Brisk walk by pressing  while displaying Steps/Activity/Calories info (→P304).
- The countdown of steps or measurement of activity amount is not performed in the following cases.
  - When Motion sensor is "ON" and a clock or details of arrival information are displayed on the sub-display
  - When Motion sensor is "ON" and while countdown timer, alarm clock or schedule reminder is sounding with FOMA terminal closed
  - When the power is OFF
  - When power saving mode is "ON" and Full saving
  - When "Not use" is set to Set Pedometer/Activity monitor
  - When Vibrate alert is operating
  - While updating software
- Brisk walk is automatically measured when walking continuously for 3 or more minutes at the pace of 60 or more steps per minute. And, the rest of less than 4 minutes is regarded that you continued.
- ActivityAmount is calculated when 3 METs or more of exercise intensity is measured.
- Steps/Activity/Calories info can be used by ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker).→ P231

### ❖ Precautions on using Pedometer/ACT monitor

- To count the precise number of steps, it is recommended that you hold the terminal appropriately (wear it on your waist belt in Carry Case S 01 (optional) or put it in an inside pocket or separated place in a bag) and walk at the speed of 100-120 steps per minute.

- Steps may not be counted precisely in the following cases.
  - When FOMA terminal moves randomly as the bag you put FOMA terminal in hits your legs or hip, or when hanging FOMA terminal down from your hip or bag
  - When shuffling, walking randomly wearing sandals or geta (wooden clogs), or when your walking pace was slowed down because of walking in the crowded area etc.
  - When you had a lot of up-and-down motion, shaking or horizontal movement like repeating standing and sitting, climbing up and down steep stairs or slopes, or getting on vehicles (bicycle, car, train, bus, etc.)
  - When you jogged or did some sports other than walking, or walked extremely slowly
- When FOMA terminal is opened/closed, keypad operation is performed, or FOMA terminal vibrates or swings, steps and activity amounts may not be precisely measured.

### ◆ Setting Pedometer/ACT monitor

  [LifeKit]   ▶ Set required items ▶ 

-  appears on the stand-by display when Pedometer/ACT monitor is set to "Use". Also, you can display walking distance, number of steps, activity amounts and burned calories that are measured during the day on the sub-display. →P34
- When you set height in ヘルスチェッカー (Health checker), the height is reflected.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- At the beginning of walking, number is not changed because the Pedometer is judging to prevent miscount whether you started walking. As a guide, when you walked for 4 seconds, the steps to there is added at a time.
- When date and time are not set, counted steps or measured activity amount is accumulated (cannot be displayed).
- Counted number of steps and measured activity amount are saved every 60 minutes and 10 minutes, respectively. If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned OFF, unsaved steps and activity amount may be lost.

### ◆ Displaying Steps/Activity/Calories info

When 00:00 AM comes with the time of FOMA terminal, information of the day such as steps or activity amount are automatically saved as the log. Information for the past 1,098 days including the current day can be checked.

- When date and time are not set, the log is not saved.
- Use the displayed figures just as guides.

**1**  **Select**

**2**  **Check the log by**

**WalkedSteps** : Counted steps (up to 999,999 steps)

**WalkedDistance** : Walking distance calculated from steps and stride (up to 9,999.9 km)<sup>\*1</sup>

**BurnedCalories** : Consumed calories calculated from exercise intensity, activity time, set weight (up to 65,535 kcal)<sup>\*2</sup>

**BurnedFat** : Burned fat calculated from consumed calories (up to 4,681g)

**BriskWalkSteps** : The number of steps by Brisk walk (up to 999,999)

**BriskWalkTime** : Walking time of Brisk walk (up to 99 hours 59 minutes)

**ActivityAmount** : Activity amount calculated from time of physical activity and exercise intensity (up to 9999.9 Ex)<sup>\*3</sup>

\*1 May differ from the distance calculated from the set stride since the stride is adjusted by steps per minute.

\*2 When the exercise intensity is not measured, calories are not measured.

\*3 Ex (Exercise) : A unit of Activity amount

**Deleting logs** :   **"Yes"**

All the logs including the number of steps and activity amount currently counted or measured, are deleted.

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When steps, walking distance, Brisk walk time or activity amount exceeds the maximum value, it is reset to 0.
- By malfunction, repair or other treatments of FOMA terminal, the information of steps/activity/calories may be lost. And, the information of steps/activity/calories are retained for about a month even with the battery removed or vacant, but they may be lost if more time passes. Note that, even if the information of steps/activity/calories are lost, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility.

### Earphone/Microphone with switch

#### Using earphone/microphone with switch

You can make voice call or receive voice or videophone call by pressing the switch when Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) etc. is connected.

- Do not wind a cord of Stereo Earphone Set 01 etc. around FOMA terminal or place it near the antenna. The received signal level may be lower or noise may occur.
- Connect the plug of Stereo Earphone Set 01 etc. firmly. If the connection is insufficient, sound may not be heard.
- With Stereo Earphone Set 01 connected in Silent mode, the sound is emitted from the earphone regardless of the settings of Alert preference. If the earphone is disconnected before completion, a melody stops. i-αppli, 1Seg watching, Music, moving picture/i-motion, etc., is performed and played silently. For Music&Video Channel, a confirmation screen for playback appears.

### ◆ Setting switch operation of earphone/microphone <Headset key control>

You can set so that the switch of Stereo Earphone Set 01 allows you to make a voice call.

**1**  **[Settings & NW services]**    **▶ Set required items** 

**Control function** : Set to "Voice call" to make a voice call.

**Phonebook No.** : Search the party to call with Headset quick-dial from FOMA terminal phonebook and set.

### ◆ Making/Receiving calls by pressing switch <Headset quick-dial/Headset quick-answer>

<Example> Making a voice call

**1** **Press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep**

<Example> Receiving a voice call

**1** **When there is an incoming call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear 2 short beeps ▶ When ending the call, press the switch (1 sec. or more) until you hear a short beep**

#### ✓INFORMATION-----

- When the phonebook No. of Headset key control contains multiple phone numbers, the voice call is made to the first phone number saved.

- If an entry of Phonebook No. in Headset key control is deleted or overwritten by another entry, or its number is switched, Headset key control is canceled.
- When you receive a videophone call, a camera image is sent when FOMA terminal is opened, and a substitute image is sent when it is closed.
- When FOMA terminal is closed during a call with Stereo Earphone Set 01 connected, the call continues regardless of Close settings. If it is a videophone call, a substitute image is sent to a party.

**<When a call is received during call (when Call waiting is Activate)>**

- Press the switch for 1 second or more when a voice call is received to answer the call. And, you can switch the party to talk by pressing the switch for 1 second or more.
- Pressing the switch for 1 second or more when a videophone call is received disconnects the current communication and a videophone call reception screen is displayed.

**◆ Answering call automatically with earphone connected <Auto answer setting>**

If there is an incoming call when Stereo Earphone Set 01 etc. is connected, you can answer the call automatically.

- This function is unavailable to incoming calls during another call.
- This function is not available in Public mode.

**I**  [Settings & NW services] **5** **4** **2** ▶ **Set required items** ▶ 

**Auto answering** : Setting to "ON" allows you to automatically answer.

**Delayed time(Sec)** : Set time before automatically answering an incoming call in the range of 0-120 seconds.

**✓ INFORMATION** -----

- The substitute image is displayed on the other party's terminal when a videophone call is answered with Auto answer.
- With Delayed time set within the time of Ring alert delay, this function does not start when a call is received from a caller not saved in phonebook.

**◆ Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone <Alert preference>**

By connecting Stereo Earphone Set 01, you can set to hear the ring tone through both headset and speaker or only through the headset.

- Alert tones such as alarm sound operate according to this setting.

**I**  [Settings & NW services] **5** **4** **1** ▶ **1** - **3**

- With "HS, + SP after 20sec" set, the ring alert is emitted from the speaker about 20 seconds after the ring alert is emitted only from the earphone.

# Character Entry

Entering characters .....		308
Entering characters using 5-touch input method .....	<b>5-touch input method</b>	309
Entering characters using useful entry function .....		310
Saving fixed phrase .....	<b>Save phrase</b>	312
Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters .....		313
Entering characters using KUTEN code .....	<b>KUTEN code input</b>	313
Saving often-used words .....	<b>Save word</b>	313
Registering passwords in advance .....	<b>Password manager</b>	314
Using downloaded dictionary .....	<b>DL dictionary</b>	315
Entering characters using 2-touch input method .....	<b>2-touch input method</b>	315
Setting input method .....	<b>Text input method</b>	315

For details of Kuten Code List, refer to "Kuten Code List" (PDF version) in the attached CD-ROM or on NTT DOCOMO website.

To view PDF version of "Kuten Code List", Adobe® Reader® is required. If not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

## Entering characters

Procedures for entering characters are as follows.

- There are 2 methods for entering characters: "5-touch input method" and "2-touch input method". → P309, 315
- The types of characters that can be entered are two-byte characters (hiragana, kanji, katakana, alphabetic characters, numbers, symbols and pictograms) and one-byte characters (katakana, alphabetic characters, numbers and symbols). A two-byte character, space or line feed is the same size of two one-byte characters. A one-byte voiced sound or semi-voiced sound mark is the same size of one character.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a simplified form.
- In this manual, "enter" means entering characters and pressing .

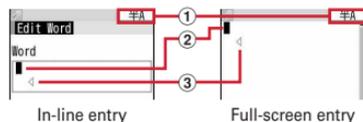
### ◆ Character entry screen

There are 2 kinds of character entry screens: in-line entry mode and full-screen entry mode.

**In-line entry**: Move the cursor to the field without switching screens and enter characters directly.

**Full-screen entry**: Select the field to display the full-screen entry area.

- When fixed phrases pasted or entered exceed the allowable number of entered characters, the excessive characters are deleted.



① **Input mode**

② **Cursor (blinking)**

Indicate location where characters are entered or inserted.

③ **Entry range**

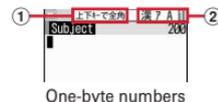
This icon indicates limitation of entry area.

- For the field to enter date and time etc., you may be able to enter numbers by pressing .

## ◆ Changing input modes

### 1 On the character entry screen,

- Each time you press the key, the input mode switches in the following order: 1 (one-byte numbers) → 漢 (hiragana/kanji) → ア (one-byte katakana) → A (one-byte alphabets).



① **Change by **

Two-byte and one-byte switch.

② **Items**

- You can also press  to switch the input mode.

### 2 Move the cursor to the item to switch ▶

#### ❖ Available items and input modes

- The input modes that correspond to items to switch are as follows.

Items		Input mode	
5-touch input method	2-touch input method		
漢	漢	Hiragana/Kanji character	漢
ア	ア	One-byte katakana	半ア
A	A	One-byte alphabetic characters	半A
1	—	One-byte numbers	半数
ア	ア	Two-byte katakana	全ア
A	A	Two-byte alphabetic characters	全A
1	—	Two-byte numbers	全数

- The available input modes vary by the character entry screen.
- 全あ appears when entering readings of a saved word.

## Entering characters using 5-touch input method

In 5-touch input method, multiple characters are assigned to each key and the character is switched every time a key is pressed.

- List of character assignments → P358
- When characters are entered, the cursor moves rightward after approximately 1 second. The number of seconds before moving the cursor can be changed in Text input method. → P315

### ◆ Entering characters in hiragana/kanji

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in phonebook

1 [Phonebook & Logs] twice to switch to the kanji/  
hiragana mode ▶ Enter "ろっぽんぎ" ▶

"ろ": (5 times)

"っ": (3 times) ▶

"ぽ": (5 times) ▶ (twice)

"ん": (3 times)

"ぎ": (twice) ▶



- During character entry, the following operations are available.

: Return to the previous character.

(e.g. お→え→う→い→あ→お→え→…)

: Cancel entered characters.

: Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).

(e.g. ほ→ぼ→ぽ→ほ→…, つ→っ→づ→つ→…)

- You can also press to convert text when an option selection list is not displayed.
- Press to restore the entry before conversion.
- To leave hiragana unconverted, go to Step 2 without pressing .

#### Displaying conversion options list :

When pressing fails to display the preferred character, a conversion options list appears by pressing or pressing again.

#### Displaying kana options list :

While entering hiragana characters, press to display a list of katakana, alphabetic characters, numbers, dates, times, etc.

- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages. Press the key for the option or press to select options.

## 2 ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

#### Restoring the character string to the previous state :

Press for 1 second or more after confirming the entry.

#### Inserting characters :

Press to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

#### Deleting characters :

During character entry and after confirming the entry, the following operations are available.

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string

(e.g. : ドコモ太郎, ドコモ太郎)

- Press to delete 1 character at the cursor position. When the cursor is between characters, 1 character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

- Press for 1 second or more to delete all characters after the cursor position.

- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string

(e.g. : ドコモ太郎)

- Press to delete 1 character to the left of the cursor.

- Press and hold for 1 second or more to delete all entered characters.

#### Entering line feed :

Move the cursor to the location to insert a line feed and press . When the cursor is at the end of entered characters, you can also press to insert a line feed.

- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

## ✓ INFORMATION -----

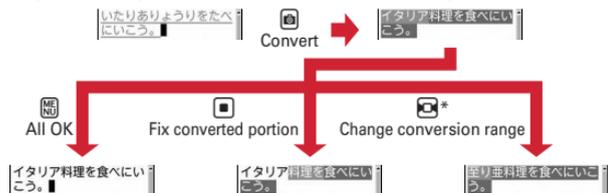
- Pressing after entering voiced/semi-voiced sound does not bring back the previous character.
- When the cursor has been moved rightward by pressing during character entry, the following operations are unavailable.
  - : Add voiced/semi-voiced sound and switch upper/lower case.
  - : Return to the previous character.

- You can enter readings in hiragana and convert them to alphabetic characters, Greek characters, etc. → P364
- When the cursor is at the end of entered characters, press to enter a space.

### ❖ Converting multiple clauses at a time

- Converted within 24 two-byte characters.

<Example> Entering "イタリア料理を食べにいこう。(Let's go to eat Italian food.)"



\* The screen shows the example of .

### ◆ Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function displays a list of the word selection options that match first part of the reading of the entered characters when entering characters in hiragana/kanji mode. Input prediction function automatically saves previously entered characters in the option selection list as Predict dict. data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words appear in addition to the Predict dict. data.
  - Words stored by default, words saved as words
  - Words selected from DL dictionary
- Input prediction function can be used only in the hiragana/kanji mode with full-screen entry.

<Example> Selecting and entering "明日 (asu)"

#### 1 Enter "あ (a)" on the character entry screen

- The option selection list appears. Options change as entered characters increase.

## 2 Select the option ▶ "閉じる (Close)"



Option selection list

- When there are multiple pages, press or to switch pages.

### ❖ Resetting prediction

You can reset data saved as Predict dict. data in the options selection list to default.

1 [Settings & NW services] 7 2 3 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes"

## Entering characters using useful entry function

You can enter pictograms, symbols or fixed phrases, or quote data from the submenu of the character entry screen.

- The submenus do not appear before characters are set or while Deco-mail decoration icons are displayed. On the in-line entry screen, the submenu appears when the entry is fixed.

### ◆ Entering fixed phrases

1 On the character entry screen, 4 1 ▶ 1 - 8

- After fixed phrases are saved, becomes available.
- Press 5 1 on the message text entry screen.

## 2 Select a fixed phrase

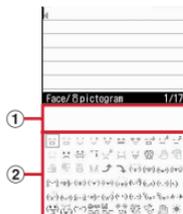
## ◆ Entering pictogram and symbol

- Pictogram list→P359

### <Example> Entering Pictogram D

#### 1 Press on the entry screen of message text or signature editing

A pictogram list of Pictogram D appears. From the second time, the last entered pictogram list appears.



#### ① Input log field

Up to 20 items of pictograms or symbols from the latest entries are displayed. It is displayed on the first page of the pictogram list of Pictogram D, Pictogram 1 and Pictogram 2, and on the first page of the symbol list of one-byte/two-byte symbols.

#### ② Pictogram and symbol list

Only supported symbols appear.

- Each time you press , the pictogram list switches in the order of Pictogram D→Pictogram 1→Pictogram 2. On a pictogram list of Pictogram D, images saved in "Deco-mail pict" folder in My Picture are displayed by folder. Select a Deco-mail pictogram to enter it. Note that, you can switch only Pictogram 1 and 2 each time you press  except on the entry screen of message text or signature.

Downloading Deco-mail pictogram→P163

- Press  to enter symbols. Each time you press the key, switches two-byte and one-byte symbols.
- When there are multiple pages, press  or  to switch pages. However, a folder in "Deco-mail pict" is switched for Pictogram D. Also, you can move to a page or folder by pressing .

## 2 Select a pictogram

Press  to close the pictogram and symbol list.

- You can also select characters from input log field.

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- Pictograms and symbols can be converted also by entering readings.→P359, 364
- Pictograms and symbols transferred via infrared communication may not appear correctly.
- A pictogram or symbol can be entered also by pressing  on the character entry screen and selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Pictogram" or "Symbol". At this time, press  to display a continuous input field above the input log field, and up to 10 pictograms, 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) symbols can be selected continuously. Note that no continuous input field is displayed for Pictogram D.
- If folders in "Deco-mail pict" contain no images, a blank pictogram list appears when trying to display Pictogram D on the entry screen of message text or signature editing.
- Deco-mail pictogram can be inserted also by pressing  on the entry screen of message text or signature editing, and selecting "Decorate mail" → "Insert image" → "Phone memory" or "microSD".
- When pressing  on the character entry screen and selecting "Pict/Symbol/Smiley" → "Symbol" on the character entry screen, selecting a left parenthesis (such as {) causes the associated right parenthesis (such as }) to be automatically entered.

## ◆ Entering smileys

- Smiley list→P367

### 1 On the character entry screen, -

- Press    on the message text entry screen.
- Pressing  displays a list of up to 18 items beginning with the latest one entered from input log of smiley list.

## 2 Select Smileys

### ◆ Quoting data to enter characters

Characters can be entered by quoting password saved in Password manager, phonebook entry, user information, the calculation results on Calculator or character string of the data scanned with Bar code reader.

- Other data can be quoted except when a character entry screen and quoted data have the same function (such as phonebook entry on a phonebook character entry screen).

## ❖ Quoting password data

### 1 On the character entry screen, **[MF]** **[4]** **[3]** ▶ Authenticate

- Press **[MF]** **[5]** **[3]** on the message text entry screen.

### 2 Select password data to quote

## ❖ Quoting phonebook entry

### 1 On the character entry screen, **[MF]** **[4]** **[4]** ▶ Select phonebook entry to quote

- Press **[MF]** **[5]** **[4]** on the message text entry screen.

### 2 Select the data to quote

## ❖ Quoting user information data

### 1 On the character entry screen, **[MF]** **[4]** **[5]** ▶ Authenticate

- Press **[MF]** **[5]** **[5]** on the message text entry screen.

### 2 Select the data to quote

## ❖ Quoting calculation results on Calculator

### 1 On the character entry screen of Notepad or Scheduler, **[ME]** **[4]** **[6]** ▶ Make a calculation ▶ **[■]**

## ❖ Quoting data scanned with Bar code reader

### 1 On the URL entry screen, **[ME]** **[4]** **[6]** ▶ Scan a code ▶ **[■]**

- They can be used from the character entry screen of i-mode or Full Browser.

## Save phrase

### Saving fixed phrase

- Up to 50 items can be saved.

### 1 **[ME]** **[Settings & NW services]** **[7]** **[2]** **[4]** **[9]** ▶ "<New phrase>"

- To check the fixed phrase already saved, move the cursor to the phrase to check and press **[⏪]**. Edit it by pressing **[■]**.

**Deleting the saved fixed phrases :** Move the cursor to the fixed phrase ▶ **[ME]** ▶ "Yes"

### 2 Enter the fixed phrases (up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters) ▶ **[⏪]**

Phrases are saved in "My phrases".

- When editing a saved fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Yes" to replace or "No" to cancel the operation.

## ❖ Saving words during character entry

### 1 On the character entry screen, **[MF]** **[6]** **[2]**

- Press **[MF]** **[7]** **[2]** on the message text entry screen.

### 2 Select the start point

**Selecting a whole sentence :** **[ME]** ▶ **[■]** ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press **[⏪]** to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

### 3 Select the end point

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the edit phrase screen.

**Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence :** **[ME]** ▶ **[■]**

**Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence :** **[⏪]** ▶ **[■]**

### 4 **[⏪]**

## ✓ INFORMATION

- If a blank is included in the character string in the selected range, the following operation is performed.  
Blank spaces only : Cannot be saved as a fixed phrase.  
Blank spaces before and after a character string : Only character string is available.  
Blank spaces between characters : Blank spaces are also available.
- To save a new phrase when 50 fixed phrases are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved fixed phrases in the list.

## Copying/Cutting/Pasting characters

- Only the last item of the copied or cut characters are recorded until the power is turned OFF, and they can be pasted any number of times.

### ◆ Copying/Cutting characters

- 1 On the character entry screen,   **1** or **2****
- On the message text entry screen, press   **3**  **1** to copy or   **3**  **2** to cut.

### 2 Select the start point

- Selecting the whole sentence :**    
- On the message text entry screen, press  to select the whole sentence.

### 3 Select the end point

- The characters in the selected range are copied or cut.
- Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence :**    
- Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence :**   
- Searching the specified character :** **Move the cursor to the end position**      
Quick search starts.

### ◆ Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the permitted number of characters, a message appears indicating not all characters can be pasted. Select "Yes" to paste the character string with excessive characters deleted. Note that, when the permitted number of characters is exceeded on the entry screen of message text, the characters cannot be pasted.

### 1 On the character entry screen, move the cursor to the position to paste characters **3**

- The characters are inserted at the cursor position.
- Press   **4** on the message text entry screen.

### ✓INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters matches with the character type used of the paste destination field, pasting is available. Hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address entry field.
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into the entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

### KUTEN code input

## Entering characters using KUTEN code

Characters, numbers and symbols on the Kuten code list can be entered using 4-digit code.

- For "Kuten Code List", refer to PDF version "Kuten Code List" in the CD-ROM attached.

<Example> Entering "〒" (code number 0209)

### 1 On the character entry screen, **4** **2** Enter the 4-digit Kuten code (**0** **2** **0** **9**)

- Press   **5**  **2** on the message text entry screen.

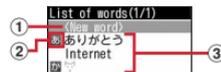
### Save word

## Saving often-used words

Saving frequently used words makes it easy to produce them during character conversion.

- Up to 200 items can be saved.

### 1 [Settings & NW services] **7** **2** **1** "<New word>"



- 1 Select when saving new word
- 2 Icon indicating the beginning of the line
- 3 Saved words

Listed in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

- To check the saved word, move the cursor to the word and press . Edit it by pressing .
- To delete a word, move the cursor to the word and press , and select "Delete". Select "Delete all" to delete all saved words.

## 2 Enter the word to register in the word field (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)

## 3 Enter the reading in the reading field (up to 8 characters in hiragana)

- The word with the following characters entered at the beginning cannot be saved.  
- を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, め, よ, わ, \* (Voiced sound), \* (Semi-voiced sound), - (Long vowels)
- Any blank spaces entered are deleted after saving.

## 4

- When editing a saved word, a confirmation screen appears. Select "Overwrite" to overwrite to the original word or "New" to save as a new word leaving the original word.

### ❖ Saving words during character entry

## 1 On the character entry screen,

- Press on the message text entry screen.

## 2 Select the start point

Selecting a whole sentence : ► Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

## 3 Select the end point

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the word entry field.

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence :

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence :

## 4 Enter the reading

### ✓INFORMATION-----

- To save a new word when 200 words are already saved, delete or edit one of the saved words in the list.
- When a character string containing a line feed is selected, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

### Password manager

## Registering passwords in advance

With authentication information such as user names and passwords registered, you can quote and enter saved information to a site or website that requires such information.

- To use Password manager, you need to change the terminal security code to another one than "0000".→P99
- Quoting registered password→P312
- Up to 50 items can be registered.

## 1 [Settings & NW services] ► Authenticate

## 2

Deleting : Move the cursor to a title ► - ► "Yes"

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to the password for a title.
- To delete selected items, select them ► .

Changing the order : Move the cursor to the title ► or

## 3 Enter the title in the title field (up to 12 two-byte (24 one-byte) characters)

## 4 Enter the password in the password field (up to 64 two-byte (128 one-byte) characters)

## 5

### ❖ Saving words during character entry

You can select entered characters and save them as a password.

## 1 On the character entry screen,

- Press on the message text entry screen.

## 2 Select the start position

Selecting a whole sentence : ▶ Go to Step 4

- On the message text entry screen, press to select the whole sentence. Go to Step 4.

## 3 Select the end position

Selecting from the start position to the beginning of the sentence :

Selecting from the start position to the end of the sentence :

## 4 Authenticate

The characters in the selected range are displayed in the password entry field.

## 5 Enter a title name ▶

### DL dictionary

#### Using downloaded dictionary

You can set words saved in downloaded dictionaries for conversion to Japanese to be displayed as conversion options.

- Up to 5 items can be used simultaneously.
- Downloading dictionaries→P164

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Select the dictionary to use ▶

### 2-touch input method

#### Entering characters using 2-touch input method

- Set the input method to 2-touch input.→P315
- Even with 2-touch guide set to "ON", no guidance appears during in-line entry or 1Seg display. And, guidance does not appear by some functions.

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)" in phonebook

1 [Phonebook & Logs] ▶ twice to switch to the kanji/hiragana mode ▶ Enter "ろっぽんぎ" ▶



2-touch guide

"ろ" :

"っ" :

"ぼ" :

"ん" :

"ぎ" :

- During character entry, the following operations are available.

: Switches between upper and lower cases.

: Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after the entry is fixed).

- Some fields may not permit a line feed.

- part in 2-touch guide indicates a blank is entered.

2 ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

### Text input method

#### Setting input method

1 [Settings & NW services] ▶ Set required items ▶

**Input method** : Set to "5-touch" or "2-touch".

**Input prediction** : Set if you display the option selection list.

**Auto cursor** : Set the time period before the cursor to move to the right automatically.

- Setting "OFF" disables automatic movement of the cursor.

- Setting "Slow" moves the cursor in approx. 1.5 seconds.
- Setting "Normal" moves the cursor in approx. 1 second.
- Setting "Fast" moves the cursor in approx. 0.5 seconds.

**2-touch guide** : Set if you display 2-touch guide.

### ❖ Changing settings during character entry

- The settings cannot be changed before fixing characters or while Deco-mail decoration icons are displayed.
- During in-line entry, you can switch input modes or input methods, and change Auto cursor.

**On the character entry screen,**    - 

- Press  on the message text entry screen.
- To switch "Use 2-touch" and "Use 5-touch", press .
- To switch input prediction ON/OFF, press .
- To set the time period before Auto cursor moves, press  and set the time by pressing  - .
- Press  during 2-touch input to switch 2-touch guide ON/OFF.

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When entering 2 characters both assigned to the same key successively with Auto cursor set to "OFF", enter the first character, press  to move the cursor rightward and enter the next character. To enter "あい", press    .

Voice Mail service .....	318
Call Waiting .....	319
Call Forwarding Service .....	319
Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	320
Caller ID Request Service .....	320
Dual Network Service .....	320
Switching language for voice prompts .....	<b>English guidance</b> 321
Service Numbers .....	321
Set arrival act .....	321
Selecting actions for an incoming call during a call .....	<b>Arrival call act</b> 321
Setting remote control .....	<b>Remote control</b> 322
Multi Number .....	322
2in1 .....	322
OFFICEED .....	325
Registering new network services .....	<b>Additional service (Register USSD)</b> 325

## Available Network Services

- You can use the DOCOMO network services below with FOMA terminal.

Service	Application	Monthly charge
Voice Mail service	Required	Charged
Call Waiting	Required	Charged
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged
English guidance	Not required	Free
Multi Number	Required	Charged
2in1	Required	Charged
OFFICEED	Required	Charged
Public mode (Drive mode)→P63	Not required	Free
Public mode (Power OFF)→P63	Not required	Free
Melody Call→P81	Required	Charged

- Network services are not available out of service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.
- Contact the phone number for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for applications and inquiries.
- "OFFICEED" is a service requiring subscription. For details, refer to DOCOMO's business website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>).
- This manual describes the outline of network services from the aspect of the operation procedure using Menu on FOMA terminal. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

## Voice Mail service

If there is an incoming voice or videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or if you do not answer the call within the specified ring time, this service answers the caller with a reply message and stores a voice message for you.

- To give priority to Voice Mail service over Record message, set ring time for Voice Mail service shorter than a response time for Record message.
- When voice or videophone call is not answered with Voice Mail activated, it is recorded as a missed call and  (the number indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- When connected to the Voice Mail service center using Chara-den, DTMF operation is unavailable. Operate by switching to Send DTMF from submenu. → P57
- When using 2in1, activation, deactivation, check setting, playing message and setting of Voice Mail service can be set for Number A and B respectively. You can configure settings for Number A in A mode, and for Number B in B mode, and select one of them in Dual mode. Other items are common for both.
- For Play messages and Voice Mail service, select either a voice or videophone call first. Other items are common for both.

### ❖ Basic flow of Voice Mail service

**Step 1** : Activate the service.

**Step 2** : The caller leaves a voice message.

**Step 3** : Play the voice message.

**I**  [Settings & NW services]   ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

<Voice Mail service>

[Activate] :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When ring time is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- For B Number, only Activate can be set.

[Set ring time] :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When this is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.

[Deactivate] :   ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] :   ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.
- For Number B, Activate/Deactivate can be checked.

[Play messages] :   ▶  or  ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

-   indicates the number of new messages that the voice prompts presents when they are played. This number does not include saved messages.

[Voice Mail setting] :   ▶  or  ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

[Set V.phoneVoiceMail] :   ▶ "ON" or "OFF"

[Check messages] :   ▶ "Yes"

<Tone/Vibration message notification>

[Ring/Vibrate Msg.Alert] :  ▶ Set required items ▶ 

An alert sounds when a new message is recorded. The terminal vibrates according to the setting in Call vibrate alert in Vibrate alert/effect.

- Set Voice Mail alert to "ON" and select a notification melody.

<Notify missed call>

[Activate] :   ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" or "No"

If a call is received with the terminal turned OFF or out of service area, you are notified by SMS of the call when the terminal is turned ON or moved into service area.

- Selecting "Yes" for receive notification from calls with Caller ID notifies you of only incoming calls with Caller ID, and selecting "No" notifies you of all incoming calls.

[Deactivate] :   ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] :   ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.

<Hide Voice Mail icon>

[Hide Voice Mail icon] :  ▶ "Yes"

The voice message icon disappears from the stand-by display.

## Call Waiting

When there is another incoming voice call during a voice call, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current voice call on hold and then answer the other voice call. You can also make a call to another party, putting the current call on hold.

- To use Call Waiting, set Arrival call act to "Answer" in advance. Otherwise, the call waiting does not answer another incoming voice call during a call, even if it is activated.
- To answer the other incoming voice call during a voice call, perform the following operations.
  - : Put the current call on hold and answers the incoming call.
  - : The current call is disconnected and the calling screen of the incoming call appears. Press and answer the call.
- During Call Waiting, you can switch the party to talk to by pressing .
- When making a voice call to another party during a current voice call, press and select "Dial up".
- Even for an incoming call that Call Waiting does not start, you hear the call waiting ring tone. In this case, a message indicating that you can answer the call by disconnecting the current call appears.

[Settings & NW services] ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] : ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate] : ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] : ▶ "Yes"

## Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service forwards voice calls and videophone calls to the phone of your home or office when there is an incoming voice/videophone call while FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or is powered OFF or you do not answer the call within the specified ring time.

- To make Call Forwarding Service override Record message when both are activated, set ring time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than response time for Record message.
- If an incoming voice or videophone call is not answered with Call forwarding activated, it is recorded as a missed call and 2 (the number indicates the number of missed calls) appears on the stand-by display.
- When using 2in1, activation, deactivation, and check setting of Call Forwarding Service can be set for Number A and B respectively. You can configure settings for Number A in A mode, and for Number B in B mode, and select one of them in Dual mode. Other items are common for both.

### ❖ Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

**Step 1 :** Activate Call Forwarding Service.

**Step 2 :** Register the phone number of forwarding destination.

**Step 3 :** Call comes in to FOMA terminal.

**Step 4 :** Unanswered calls are forwarded to the previously specified destination.

[Settings & NW services] ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] : ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter ring time

- When ring time is set to "0 Sec", incoming calls are not recorded in Received calls.
- For B Number, only Activate can be set.
- You can select a phone number from phonebook with , from Received calls with , and from Redial with .

[Deactivate] : ▶ "Yes"

[Register forwarding number] : ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ ▶ or ▶ "Yes"

- You can set Register The Forwarding Number when the service is active, and set Register The Forwarding Number as well as Activate when the service is inactive.
- For B Number, only Register The Forwarding Number can be set.

- To select a phone number, use the same procedures as to activate Call Forwarding service.

[Set if forwarding number busy] : **4** ▶ "Yes"

A call is answered by Voice Mail if the forwarding number is busy.

[Check setting] : **5** ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.
- For Number B, Activate/Deactivate can be checked.

## ◆ Setting whether to give guidance for Call forwarding

**1** **1** **4** **2** **9** ▶ **1** ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

## Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, calls from the registered phone number are answered with a call rejection announcement or announcement and image, and automatically disconnected.

- If a call is received from a caller set to reject calls from, the ring alert does not ring and the call is not recorded in Received calls.

**1** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **3** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Register caller] : **1** ▶ "Yes"

Register the phone number of the last call you answered as a nuisance caller.

- You cannot register a call you did not answer such as a missed call.

[Register selected No] : **2** ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ **1** ▶ "Yes"

Register the specified phone number as a nuisance caller.

- You can select a phone number from phonebook with **ME**, from Received calls with **1**, and from Redial with **1**.

[Delete all entries] : **3** ▶ "Yes"

[Delete last entry] : **4** ▶ "Yes"

Delete one phone number registered last. Repeating this step enables you to delete the most recently registered phone numbers one by one.

[Check the number of entries] : **5** ▶ "Yes"

## Caller ID Request Service

An incoming call without the caller ID is answered with an announcement or announcement and image requesting caller ID, and automatically disconnected.

- An incoming call rejected by Caller ID Request Service is not recorded in Received calls and **1** (the digit indicates the number of missed calls) does not appear on the stand-by display.

**1** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **8** **4** **2** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate] : **1** ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate] : **2** ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting] : **3** ▶ "Yes"

## Dual Network Service

You can use the mova terminal with the same phone number on FOMA terminal. In a location out of the FOMA service and inside the mova service area, you can communicate with others by using mova terminal.

- FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used simultaneously.
- Operation to switch Dual Network Service is performed from FOMA terminal/mova terminal not using the service.

**1** **ME** **NU** [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **5** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Dual network switching] : **1** ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code

You can switch the network to use with your FOMA terminal.

[Check setting] : **2** ▶ "Yes"

## Switching language for voice prompts

You can set to display in English the guidance for setting network services such as Voice Mail service and voice guidance notifying out of service area etc.

**1**  [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **4** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Guidance setting]: **1** ▶ "Yes" ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ "Yes" ▶ **1** - **3**

- Select the language for the guidance played to the caller, then select the language for the receiver.

[Check setting]: **2** ▶ "Yes"

## Service Numbers

You can make a call to DOCOMO-specified repair office or to general inquiries.

- The item varies or is not displayed by some UIM types. → P41
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, the caller ID selection screen is displayed.

**1**  [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **6** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[ドコモ故障問合せ]: **1** ▶ "Yes" ▶ 故障お問い合わせ (repair office) is dialed

[ドコモ総合案内・受付]: **2** ▶ "Yes" ▶ General Inquiries is dialed

## Set arrival act

You can activate/deactivate or check the Arrival call act settings.

**1**  [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **8** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Activate]: **1** ▶ "Yes"

[Deactivate]: **2** ▶ "Yes"

[Check setting]: **3** ▶ "Yes"

## Arrival call act

### Selecting actions for an incoming call during a call

If subscribing to Voice Mail service, Call Forwarding Service and/or Call Waiting, you can set how to answer voice/videophone calls and 64K data communications received during a call.

- Unless you subscribe to Voice Mail service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting, you cannot answer calls received during a call.
- To use Arrival call act, set Set arrival acts to Activate in advance. Note that it is not required to set Set arrival act to Activate when Call Waiting Service is activated.

**1**  [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **9** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Answer]: **1**

- When Call Waiting Service is activated, the service operates. When it is stopped, you can answer an incoming call after ending the current call. Also, when you receive a voice call, you can select the response from the submenu. → P60

[Voice Mail]: **2**

- The received voice/videophone calls are connected to Voice Mail service.

[Call Forwarding]: **3**

- If you receive a call during a call, it is forwarded to the registered number. However, data received via 64K data communication during another 64K data communication is not forwarded.

[Call Rejection]: **4**

- All calls are rejected.

## Setting remote control

You can access services such as Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone land-line phones, DOCOMO mobile phones, payphones, etc.

- When using Voice Mail or Call Forwarding Service etc. overseas, Remote control must be activated in advance.

**[Settings & NW services]** **[8]** **[9]** **[2]** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

**[Activate]** : **[1]** ▶ "Yes"

**[Deactivate]** : **[2]** ▶ "Yes"

**[Check setting]** : **[3]** ▶ "Yes"

## Multi Number

In addition to Basic Number, you can add and use up to 2 more numbers as phone numbers of FOMA terminal : Additional No.1 and No.2.

- Removing or replacing UIM may cause Multi Number settings (name, phone number, etc.) saved in FOMA terminal to be deleted. In this case, save the settings again.
- The name of Default phone number or Additional phone number is displayed on the incoming/outgoing call screen, Redial or Received calls screen.
- When making a call from Redial/Received calls, a name of Multi Number used for the previous call is displayed and that number is used.

**[Settings & NW services]** **[8]** **[9]** **[7]** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

**[Set Multi Number]** : **[1]** ▶ **[1]**-**[3]** ▶ "Yes"

**[Check setting]** : **[2]** ▶ "Yes"

**[Number Setting]** : **[3]** ▶ Set required items ▶

- Enter the name and phone number of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2.
- The name and phone number set for Basic Number is the one from User information. When User information is not set, "基本契約番号 (basic number)" and a phone number of your subscription are displayed.

- When Multi number call is "Enable", you can select a Multi number to make a call from the submenu for outgoing calls.

**[Incoming calls melody setting]** : **[4]** ▶ **[1]** or **[2]** ▶ Set required items ▶

- Set Individual setting to "ON", and set a ring alert and incoming call image for each additional number. Setting operations are the same as the one for Call alert.

## ◆ Selecting a phone number and making a call

- When Multi number call of Number Settings is "Disable", Multi number cannot be selected.

**[Enter a phone number]** ▶ **[ME NU]** **[4]** ▶ **[1]**-**[3]** ▶ **[ME NU]** or **[FR]**

- When Caller ID from Call option is set to "Unspecified", the Caller ID from Set multi number is applied.

## 2in1

This service allows you to use 2 phone numbers/mail addresses for 1 mobile phone; you can use FOMA terminal as if you have two different mobile phones by using the specific mode function.

- For details of 2in1, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".
- With 2in1 ON, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF then set it to ON again to obtain the correct Number B, or obtain Number B from User information.→P299

Also, if replacing UIM (2in1 subscriber→2in1 non-subscriber), set 2in1 to OFF so that the user information is updated correctly.

### ■ Modes for 2in1

- Operation of each mode for 2in1→P324

**A mode** : Allow to use your phone number (Number A) to make calls, send/receive i-mode mails (Address A) and view the related data.

**B mode** : Allow to use 2in1 phone number (Number B) to make calls, send/receive i-mode mails (Address B) and view the related data.

**Dual mode** : Allow to use functions of both A and B.

## ✓ INFORMATION

- In B mode, SMS To function is unavailable.
- All data is deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode in the following cases.
  - Deleting all items of recorded messages, voice memos, redial, received calls, phonebook entries, mail logs, mail sorting methods
  - Deleting operation except "One item" or "Selected items" for Inbox
  - Deleting mail folder and/or phonebook group
  - Deleting all data
- When making a call in Dual mode with an external device connected, Number A is used.
- i-Channel ticker can be set for each mode.

## ◆ Setting 2in1

Set each option with 2in1 ON.

### 1 [Settings & NW services]

8 7 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Yes" ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

- If 2in1 is already ON, 2in1 setting screen appears after the authentication.

<2in1 Mode switching>

[2in1 Mode switching] : 1 ▶ 1-3

<2in1 setting>

[2in1 setting] : 2 ▶ Select a mode ▶ Phonebook ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ "Yes"

Set a phonebook entry that is displayed for each mode.

- For "Common", Phonebook entries appear in both A and B modes.

A : Phonebook entries in A mode B : Phonebook entries in B mode

AB : Phonebook entries in both A and B modes

<Stand-by for mode>

[For Dual mode] : 3 1 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ "Yes"

[For B mode] : 3 2 ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ "Yes"

<Set call/receive No.>

[Ring alert for No.B] : 4 1 ▶ 1-3

- Setting operations are identical to setting Ring alerts & Sounds.
- Ring alert sounds according to this setting regardless of the setting of Notify/Not notify of caller ID.

[Identification mark] : 4 2 ▶ Set required items ▶

Text strings such as "発信中 (Dialing)" in Identification mark with Mark set to ON is decorated on the incoming/outgoing call or calling screen.

- The setting of Number A also applies to Identification mark.

<2in1 function OFF>

[2in1 function OFF] : 5 ▶ "Yes"

<Receive avoidance>

[Change rcv. avoidance] : 6 1 ▶ Set required items ▶

Incoming calls from the number with Receive avoidance applied is restricted in any mode.

- Mode link for avoid. should be deactivated.

[Check rcv. avoidance] : 6 2 ▶ "Yes"

- You can change settings from the submenu.

[Mode link for avoid.] : 6 3 ▶ "Yes"

When activated, only Number A is accepted in A mode and so is Number B in B mode.

- When activated, 2in1 mode switching is unavailable out of service area.

[Rcv. avoidance(Int.)] : 6 4 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

- You need to deactivate Mode link for avoid.
- If operated overseas, an international call fee for the country where you stay is charged.

## ✓ INFORMATION

<2in1 mode switching>

- Even when 2in1 is OFF, you can set 2in1 to ON and activate 2in1 mode switching by holding down 2 for 1 second or more and performing authentication. When 2in1 is ON, you can activate 2in1 mode switching in the same way.

<2in1 setting>

- When you subscribe to 2in1 for the first time, all saved phonebook entries at the time are set to "A". If you re-subscribe to 2in1, the previous 2in1 setting is used.
- When a new entry is added to the UIM phonebook, it operates according to "Common" regardless of 2in1 modes.

<Stand-by for mode>

- The message displayed after selecting an image is identical to setting Stand-by display.

## ❖ 2in1 function in each mode

Only items with different actions depending on modes are listed (items with same actions as in A mode are excluded).

	Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
<b>Voice/ Videophone Calls</b>	Call	Number A	Number B	Select when dialing <sup>*1</sup>
	Receive <sup>*2</sup>	Depend on Receive avoidance		
<b>Phonebook</b>	Display <sup>*3</sup>	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	Name conversion <sup>*4</sup>	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	New entry	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Receive all items via infrared communication/iC transmission	Depend on Ph.book 2in1 setting at sending side <sup>*5</sup>		
	Receive 1 item via infrared communication/iC transmission	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Copy all items from microSD card	Depend on 2in1 setting when copying <sup>*5</sup>		
	Copy 1 item from microSD card	"A"	"B"	"A"
	Copy to UIM phonebook	"Common" (Ph.book 2in1 setting is not set)		
	Copy from UIM phonebook	"A"	"B"	"A"
	<b>Display redial/received calls</b>	Call from/ Receive to Number A	Call from/ Receive to Number B	All calls/ receptions
<b>Mail/SMS</b>	Display	Mail/SMS sent or received to/ from Address A/ Number A	Mail sent or received to/from Address B/SMS received to Number B	All

	Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
	Send	Address A/ Number A	Address B <sup>*6</sup>	Select when composing mail <sup>*7,8/</sup> Number A <sup>*6</sup>
	Receive <sup>*9</sup>	All		
	Sorting method <sup>*10</sup>	"A" "Common"	"B" "Common"	All
	Add new sorting method	"Common"	"Common"	Select when registering <sup>*11</sup>
	Receive all items via infrared communication/iC transmission	Sender's state is taken over		
	Receive 1 item via infrared communication/iC transmission	Address A/Number A		
	Copy all items from microSD card	State at the time of copying is taken over		
	Copy 1 item from microSD card	Address A/Number A		
	Move/Copy to UIM (SMS only)	Move/Copy after deleting the information of your number		
	Move/Copy from UIM (SMS only)	Move/Copy all as Number A	Unavailable	Move/Copy all as Number A
<b>i-appli</b>		Available	Available <sup>*12</sup>	Available <sup>*13</sup>
<b>Display User information</b>		Number A/ Address A	Number B/ Address B	All

\*1 You can select a number to send when calling to a party in Call option, the schedule or custom menu.

When calling from phonebook, Quick dial or Headset quick dial, the call is made from Number A for the party set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, and the call is made from Number B for the party set to "B".

When calling from recorded messages, voice memo while talking, redial, received calls or mail logs, the call is made according to the number at sending/receiving.

- \*2 Specified caller, Ring alert delay or Unregistered caller is not influenced by Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- \*3 Privacy mode operations take precedence when Secret attribute is set.
- \*4 If the phone number or mail address is saved in the phonebook, the name saved in the phonebook is displayed while calling/receiving/ringing/talking, as the sender of received mail, or as the receiver of sent/unsent mail.
- \*5 If the sender of the terminal used for copying all items is incompatible with 2in1, all items in Ph.book 2in1 setting are set to "A".
- \*6 For B Number, SMS is unavailable.
- \*7 Sender address can be switched to Address A/Address B.
- \*8 For the party set to "A" or "Common" in Ph.book 2in1 setting, Address A is set, and for the party set to "B", Address B is set. However, in the case of multiple receivers, a receiving address is set according to the last mail address in Ph.book 2in1 setting.
- \*9 When a message is received to Address B/Number B in A mode, or to Address A/Number A in B mode, mail ring alert, light and vibrator do not operate.
- \*10 Sorting methods list of "B" does not appear in A mode, and that of "A" does not appear in B mode.
- \*11 Select from Address A/Address B/Common. Sorting methods of "A" are set on Address A, "B" on Address B, "Common" on Common.
- \*12 Message i-cplli and i-cplli stand-by display are unavailable.
- \*13 i-cplli stand-by display is unavailable.

## OFFICEED

"OFFICEED" is an intragroup flat-rate service provided with specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). This service requires a separate subscription to use.

For details, refer to DOCOMO business website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>). (In Japanese only)

**I**  [Settings & NW services] **8** **6** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Area display setting]: **1** ▶ **1** or **2**

-  appears on stand-by display in the OFFICEED area with this option set to ON.

[Start forwarding]: **2** ▶ "Yes"

[Stop forwarding]: **3** ▶ "Yes"

[Check fwd setting]: **4** ▶ "Yes"

## Additional service (Register USSD)

### Registering new network services

When a new network service is introduced by DOCOMO, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

**I**  [Settings & NW services] **8** **9** **1** ▶ Operate by selecting a menu item

[Register USSD]: **1** ▶ Move the cursor to a number ▶  ▶ Enter USSD code ▶ Enter a name (up to 10 two-byte (20 one-byte) characters) ▶ 

- USSD code is a service code given by DOCOMO and is used to set network services etc. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.
- To use an additional service, select the service.
- To delete an additional service, move the cursor to the service and press , select **1** or **2** and select "Yes".

[Record reply message]: **2** ▶ Select a number ▶ Enter USSD code ▶ Enter a reply message (up to 10 two-byte or 20 one-byte characters) ▶ 

- When the additional service is executed, this message appears if the registered code was returned by the service center as a response.
- To delete a registered message, move the cursor to the message and press , select **1** or **2** and select "Yes".



Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING) .....	328
Available services overseas .....	329
Preparing and checking for overseas use .....	330
Making a call from overseas .....	332
Receiving a call from overseas .....	332
Setting a search method for network .....	<b>Network search mode</b> 333
Setting telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to .....	<b>PLMN setting</b> 333
Switching networks .....	<b>3G/GSM setting</b> 334
Displaying current Area service status .....	<b>Area service status</b> 334
Setting stand-by display for international roaming .....	334
Setting roaming guidance .....	<b>Roaming guidance</b> 334
Setting reception for international roaming .....	335
Using network service during international roaming .....	<b>Network Service</b> 335

## Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)

**International roaming (WORLD WING) is a service that allows you to make voice calls and access i-mode using network of affiliated telecommunications carriers even overseas, outside FOMA network services area.**

- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or after September 1, 2005, separate subscription is not required to use WORLD WING. If you declined to use WORLD WING at subscription to FOMA service or canceled it, you need subscription again.
- If you subscribed to FOMA service on or before August 31, 2005 but not to WORLD WING, separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING.
- There are some charging plans unavailable.
- UIM (green/white) compatible with WORLD WING must be installed in FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the following documents before using FOMA terminal overseas.
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]"
  - "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]"
  - DOCOMO International Services website
- Country codes of major countries→P328
- International call access codes of major countries→P331
- International prefix numbers for the universal number→P331
- The service is available in the 3G network and in the service area of GSM/GPRS network. It is also available in countries and districts where 3G850MHz is applied.

### ■ Overseas network

There are 3 types of networks overseas, W-CDMA (3G), GPRS and GSM.

Network	Description
W-CDMA(3G)	Third generation mobile communications network compliant with world standard 3GPP*1.
GPRS*2	A 2.5th mobile communication network that high speed packet communication using GSM communication method is available.
GSM*3	Second generation mobile communications network in digital method most prevailing worldwide.

- \*1 Abbreviation of 3rd Generation Partnership Project. 3GPP is an area standardization organization established to develop standard technology specifications for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).
- \*2 Abbreviation of General Packet Radio Service. By speeding up GSM, data communication such as packet communication is facilitated.
- \*3 Abbreviation of Global System for Mobile Communications. The world's most prevailing mobile network system.

### ■ Country codes of major countries

A country code is used to make an international call or to use Int'l call assist.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Macau	853
Austria	43	Malaysia	60
Belgium	32	Maldives	960
Brazil	55	New Caledonia	687
Canada	1	New Zealand	64
China	86	Norway	47
Czech	420	Peru	51
Egypt	20	Philippines	63
Fiji	679	Russia	7
Finland	358	Singapore	65
France	33	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Holland	31	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hong Kong	852	Taiwan	886
Hungary	36	Thailand	66
India	91	Turkey	90
Indonesia	62	United Kingdom	44
Italy	39	USA	1
Japan	81	Viet Nam	84
Korea	82		

- For codes of other countries and details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

## Available services overseas

Available communication services vary by the telecommunications carrier and the network of the country you stay.

- Call and stand-by durations available may be nearly halved for some network or other conditions in the country you stay.
- A packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.

### ◆ Network and available communication services

- Some services may be unavailable depending on the telecommunications carrier or area. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
	㊦*1	GP RS	G SM
Voice call*2	○	○	○
Videophone call*2, 3	○	×	×
i-mode/Full Browser*4	○	○	×
i-mode mail	○	○	×
SMS	○	○	○
i-Channel*5	○	○	×
i-concier*5, 6	○	○	×
i-Widget*5, 7	○	○	×
Packet communication (PC connection)*8	○	○	×

\*1 When ㊦ (red) appears, sending/receiving a voice call/SMS are available.

\*2 When using 2in1, Number B is not available for making calls.

When using Multi Number, additional numbers are not available for making calls.

\*3 Make and receive international videophone calls to/from parties using certain overseas 3G telecommunications carriers or those using FOMA terminals overseas.

\*4 Connections from TVlink list to the data broadcasting site is included. Note that Activate 1Seg is unavailable overseas.

Preinstalled i-appli, "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" is available also overseas.

\*5 Packet communication fee is charged each time you receive information. Also, auto update for Basic channel of i-Channel and communications by multiple applications of i-Widget are included.

\*6 International Settings of i-concier is required. →P175

\*7 i-Widget roaming set is required. →P244

\*8 64K data communication connecting (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

### ■ SMS

SMS can be sent to or received from parties using overseas telecommunications carriers except DOCOMO.

- When sending SMS to FOMA terminal, enter its phone number in the same way as in Japan.
- When sending SMS to a party using an overseas telecommunications carrier except DOCOMO, enter "+" and "Country code" before the receiver's phone number. Alternatively, enter "010", "Country code" and "receiver's mobile phone number" in this order (Omit leading "0", if exists, from the receiver's phone number).
- If SMS sent to a party using an overseas telecommunications carrier contains characters incompatible with the receiver's terminal, they may not be correctly displayed.

### ◆ Network Services

When subscribing to network services, you can also perform operations such as setting/canceling from overseas.

- Some network services that can be set or canceled may be unavailable depending on an overseas telecommunications carrier.

## Preparing and checking for overseas use

- Overseas usage fees are charged together with your monthly usage fees. For some overseas telecommunications carriers used, overseas usage fees is charged in a bill of the next or subsequent month. Also, usages in the same charging period may be charged in different months.

### ◆ Preparing before leaving Japan

#### ❖ Battery charge

- Handling precautions of AC adapter→P18
- Charging battery using AC adapter→P45

#### ❖ Using i-mode

##### ■ Setting in Japan

iMenu→English→Options→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

##### ■ Setting overseas

iMenu→International Settings→i-mode services Settings

#### ❖ Using network services

When using Voice Mail, Call Forwarding Service, etc. overseas, you need to subscribe to each network service and activate Remote control in advance.→P322

## ◆ Usage in the country you stay

##### ■ Connecting to network

When FOMA terminal is turned ON overseas, it is automatically connected to an available network.→P333

##### ■ Viewing display

- The icon indicating the network in use and the operator name being connected appear.→P334
- Icon definitions are as follows. Icons do not appear while using FOMA network.  
 /  : Connected to 3G Network    : Connected to GPRS Network  
 : Connected to GSM Network

##### ■ Date/Time

- When setting Auto time adjust to "ON", the time or time difference of the clock of FOMA terminal is corrected when time/time difference correction information is received from the network of the overseas telecommunications carrier you are connected. The corrected timing differs by the overseas telecommunications carrier.
- Auto time adjust may not be available overseas. In this case, set Date & time manually.→P49

##### ■ Caller ID notification

Even when sending/receiving a call with Caller ID notification set, Caller ID may not be notified or incorrect Caller ID may be displayed depending on telecommunications carriers used. In this case, you cannot make a call from Received calls.

## ❖ Service inquiries

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back cover of this manual. Please be careful that you are charged also for calls and/or communications, if any, occurring after loss or theft.

### ■ International call access codes of major countries (table 1)

Area	Number	Area	Number
Australia	0011	Macau	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021/0014	Monaco	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Holland	00	Sweden	00
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	United Arab Emirates	00
Italy	00	United Kingdom	00
Korea	001	USA	011
Luxembourg	00	Viet Nam	00

- For other countries and details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or DOCOMO International Services website.

### ■ International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Italy	00
Australia	0011	Korea	001
Austria	00	Luxembourg	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Bulgaria	00	Norway	00
Canada	011	Peru	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Columbia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Holland	00	Switzerland	00
Hong Kong	001	Taiwan	00
Hungary	00	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	United Kingdom	00
Israel	014	USA	011

- Some of the above numbers may be unavailable.
- Universal numbers are only available for the countries listed above.
- When a call is made from a mobile phone, a local call charge is required.
- When a call is made from a hotel, you may be charged for a phone usage fee. Before using the phone, ask the hotel about it.
- In many cases, Universal numbers are unavailable from mobile phones, pay phones or hotels.

## ◆ Setting after returned to Japan

When FOMA terminal is turned ON after you return to Japan, it is automatically connected to FOMA network. If not connected to FOMA network, set Network search mode to "Auto" and reset 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

## Making a call from overseas

You can make voice and videophone calls from overseas using international roaming service.

- For videophone calls, the other party's image displayed on your FOMA terminal may be disturbed or call connection may be unavailable for a reason on the connected terminal.
- If you register names and country codes of frequently-called countries by Int'l call assist, dialing operation can be performed easily. → P59

### ◆ Making an international call (including Japan)

**1** **0** (1 sec. or more) ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶  or 

- Press **0** for 1 second or more to enter "+".
- Omit the leading "0" in area code (city code). (The leading "0" may be required to dial to land-line phones in Italy etc.)

### ◆ Selecting country code to make an international call (including Japan)

You can select a country code registered in Country code setting in Int'l call assist. → P59

**1** Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶  **2** ▶ Select Call type field ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ Select Int'l call field ▶ **2** ▶ Select Country code field ▶ Select Country code ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

Leading "0" of an area code (city code) is converted to "+" and the selected country code.

- When "V.phone" is selected for "Call type", press  to select Chara-den to display during a call.

### ◆ Making an international call (including Japan) by using the phonebook

- It applies only to phone numbers beginning with "0" in phonebook.
- Country code of Auto switch of Int'l call assist must be set to "ON", and the Country code setting must be set to the country to make a call to in advance. → P59

**1**  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶  or  ▶ "Yes"

Leading "0" of the area code (city code) is converted to "+" and country code set.

### ◆ Making a call inside the country you stay

- A call may be made without displaying the message.

**1** Enter a phone number ▶  or  ▶ "No, use original"

Using phonebook :  ▶ Search the phonebook ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶  or  ▶ "No, use original"

### ◆ Making a call to WORLD WING user overseas

To make a call, enter "+" and Japan's country code "81" even when staying in the same country as the party to be called. The call is forwarded internationally from Japan.

**1** **0** (1 sec. or more) ▶ **81** ▶ 90-XXXX-XXXX or 80-XXXX-XXXX ▶  or 

- Omit the leading "0" of a phone number.

## Receiving a call from overseas

You can receive an international call in the same way as in Japan.

### ■ When letting a party make a call from Japan

In the same way as when you are in Japan, let a calling party make a call by entering your phone number.

090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX

### ■ When letting a party make a call from outside of Japan

Let a calling party make a call in the same way as making an international call to Japan, because the call is routed via Japan regardless of the country the caller stays.

Int'l access No. ▶ 81 (Country code of Japan) ▶ 90-XXXX-XXXX or 80-XXXX-XXXX

• Omit the leading "0" of a phone number.

### ✓ INFORMATION

• Regardless of the country the caller stays or the call is made from, the call is forwarded internationally from Japan. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and a receiver is charged for a reception fee.

## Network search mode

### Setting a search method for network

You are reconnected to an available network when starting international roaming or FOMA terminal is placed out of the current network.

- Setting may be unavailable for some radio wave and/or network conditions.
- Telecommunications carriers other than NTT DOCOMO cannot be selected in Japan.

1 [Settings & NW services] 9 2 1 ▶ 1 - 3

- When "Auto" is set, the terminal automatically reconnects to an available network. When "Manual" is set, select a network from the connected network list that appears after available networks are searched.
- When "Network re-search" is selected, operations of each setting are executed.

### ✓ INFORMATION

• appears for unavailable network in PLMN List, 3G appears for 3G Network and GSM appears for GSM/GPRS Network.

- In the following cases, "select net" appears in operator name field. Calls or mail may not be available until an available network is selected and the terminal is in the network. Select a network by searching again or set "Auto".
  - When moving out of the network connected by "Manual"
  - After "Manual" is set, when the terminal is moved to a different network and turned on
  - When network connection failed

## PLMN setting

### Setting telecommunications carrier to preferentially connect to

- This function is enabled when Network search mode is set to "Auto".
- Up to 20 items can be registered.

1 [Settings & NW services] 9 2 1 4

Networks are displayed in descending order of priority.

## 2 Perform necessary operations

Displaying detail information : Select a network

Adding networks : 1 ▶ 1 - 3

UPLMN manual select : Enter country code (MCC) by 3 digits and network number (MNC) by 2-3 digits ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ Select a priority level ▶

UPLMN select by list : Select a country name ▶ Select a network ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ Select a priority level ▶

Set VPLMN to PLMN : Move the cursor to a network, ▶ Select a priority level ▶

Changing : Move the cursor to a network ▶ 2 ▶ Select a priority level ▶

• The telecommunications carrier moves to the selected priority with a different level. To give the lowest priority, select "<Insert last>".

Deleting : Move the cursor to a network ▶ 3 ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ "Yes" ▶

- To delete 1 item, move the cursor to a network.
- To delete selected items, select them ▶ . To delete all items, authentication is required.

## 3G/GSM setting

### Switching networks

- When setting to "AUTO", automatically connected to an available network even when moving to a service area of a different type of network.

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 2 2 ▶ 1 - 3

#### ✓INFORMATION

- When setting to "AUTO", if both 3G and GSM/GPRS Networks are detected, 3G Network precedes.

## Area service status

### Displaying current Area service status

1  [Settings & NW services] 7 4 5

- You can use voice/videophone calls etc. by CS, and i-mode, i-mode mail, etc. by PS.

### Setting stand-by display for international roaming

#### ◆ Displaying operator name

You can display an operator name at the top of the display.

- The operator name does not appear when FOMA network is used or the terminal is out of service area.



1  [Settings & NW services] 9 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

#### ◆ Two time zone clocks

You can display the times of the country you stay and Japan.



1  [Settings & NW services] 9 4 ▶ 1 or 2

#### ✓INFORMATION

- The time in Japan is displayed on the right. To display time in another country on the right, set this to "OFF", set the design of Clock display format to "World time clock", and set the time zone.
- Two time zone clocks are not displayed if moving picture/i-motion or i-alpha is set for stand-by display.
- At the sub-display, the time of the country you stay is displayed.

## Roaming guidance

### Setting roaming guidance

You can set to play voice prompts to notify the caller that the call is in international roaming.

- Set before leaving Japan.

1  [Settings & NW services] 8 5

2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Even when this setting is Deactivate, a ringing sound set by a telecommunications carrier is played.
- Even when this this setting is Activate, voice prompts in a foreign language may be played depending on a telecommunications carrier.

## Setting reception for international roaming

### ◆ Setting Bar calls at roaming

- This function may not be available depending on the overseas telecommunications carrier.
- 64K data communication connecting (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 2 4

### 2 Perform necessary operations

Starting : 1 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code

- Selecting "All barrings" restricts all reception including automatic reception of i-mode mail or SMS, and selecting "Data calls barring" restricts only videophone call reception.
- Even when "All barrings" is set, mail etc. may be received during packet communication by displaying i-mode sites etc.

Stopping : 2 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code

Checking current setting : 3 ▶ "Yes"

### ◆ Setting Notify missed call

If a call is received with the terminal turned OFF or out of service area during international roaming, you receive the information about the call (received date and time, and caller ID) in SMS when the terminal is turned ON or moved into service area.

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 2 5

2 1 or 2 ▶ "Yes"

- Press 3 and select "Yes" to check the current settings. When setting overseas, press 4, select "Yes" and follow the voice prompts to operate.

## Network Service

### Using network service during international roaming

You can make settings from overseas for Voice Mail, Call forwarding and other services.

- Remote control must be activated in advance. → P322
- If operated overseas, an international call fee for the country where you stay is charged.
- Some may not be set depending on the overseas telecommunications carriers.

### ◆ Operating Voice mail(Int.) from overseas

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 1 1 ▶ Select an item ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

### ◆ Operating Call forwarding(Int.) from overseas

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 1 2 ▶ Select an item ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

### ◆ Operating Remote control(Int.) from overseas

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 1 3 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

### ◆ Operating Caller ID request(Int.) from overseas

1  [Settings & NW services] 9 1 4 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

## ◆ Operating Roaming guidance(Int.) from overseas

- 1  [Settings & NW services] 9 1 5 ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

# PC Connection

Data communication .....	338
Before using data communication .....	339
Flow of setup for data communication (OBEX™ communication) .....	340
Flow of setup for data communication .....	341
Using CD-ROM .....	341
Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink .....	341

For details about data communication, refer to "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF version) in the attached CD-ROM or on NTT DOCOMO website.

To see PDF version of "Manual for PC Connection", Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® from the attached CD-ROM. For details of usage, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

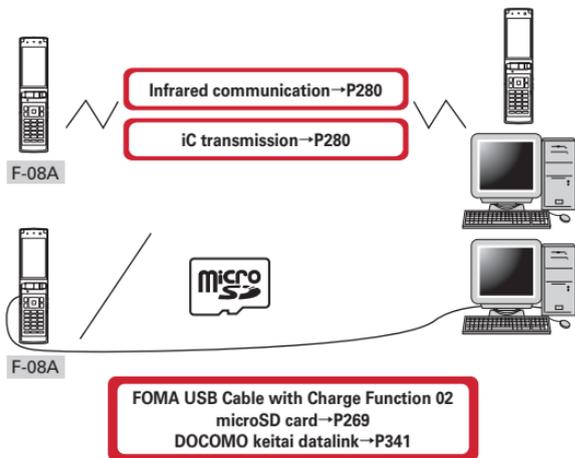
## Data communication

Communications available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC are classified as data transfer (OBEX™ communication), packet communication, and 64K data communication.

- To make packet or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- For packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication is not available overseas.
- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with musea or sigmarion III PDA by DOCOMO. Note that update is required for using musea. For details of update method etc., refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

## ◆ Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

This service allows you to exchange data such as image, music, phonebook, mail, etc., with other FOMA terminals or PCs.



## ◆ Packet communication

Data communication (packet communication) can be performed by connecting to the Internet.

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication can be performed at a reception speed of up to 7.2 Mbps and a transmission speed of up to 384 Kbps by using an access point that supports FOMA packet communication such as mopera U, DOCOMO's Internet connection service. It offers by the best effort method that actual transmission speed varies by the communication environment or the severity of congestion. Communications of large amount of data such as browsing websites containing many images or downloading data may incur high charges.

\* When connecting to an access point out of the FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area or an access point not compatible with HIGH-SPEED, or when using devices not compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as musea or sigmarion III PDA by DOCOMO, communication speed may be reduced.

\* Up to 7.2 Mbps at reception and 384 Kbps at transmission are the maximum speed based on the technical specifications, and do not represent the actual communication speeds. Actual communication speed varies depending on network congestion or communication environment.

## ◆ 64K data communication

64K data communication can be performed by connecting to the Internet.

Since communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, it is suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.

You can connect to access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as mopera U, DOCOMO's Internet connection service, or ISDN synchronous 64K access points.

Be careful that a high cost is charged for long-time communications.

## Before using data communication

### ◆ Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as follows. It may vary depending on PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
<b>Computer</b>	PC/AT compatible computer with USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) More than 800×600 dots for display resolution and High Color 16 bits are recommended
<b>OS (Japanese version)*</b>	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
<b>Memory requirements</b>	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
<b>Hard disk capacity*</b>	5MB or more free disk space

\* Recommended environment to operate DOCOMO Connection Manager is as follows.

OS : Windows 2000 SP4 or later, Windows XP SP2 or later (for details, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.)

Hard disk capacity : 15MB or more free disk space

- DOCOMO does not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- Utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Operation is not guaranteed in an environment except that described above nor DOCOMO assumes responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.

### ◆ Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "F-08A用CD-ROM (CD-ROM for F-08A)"
- \* USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.
- \* If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

### ◆ Usage precautions

#### ❖ Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details, contact your Provider.

- DOCOMO's Internet connection service mopera U is available. mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription.

#### ❖ Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is unavailable.
- For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.  
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html> (in Japanese only)

### ❖ Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- You must be within the FOMA service area
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K
- \* Even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or signals are weak.

## Flow of setup for data communication (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.

Downloading and installing FOMA communication configuration file

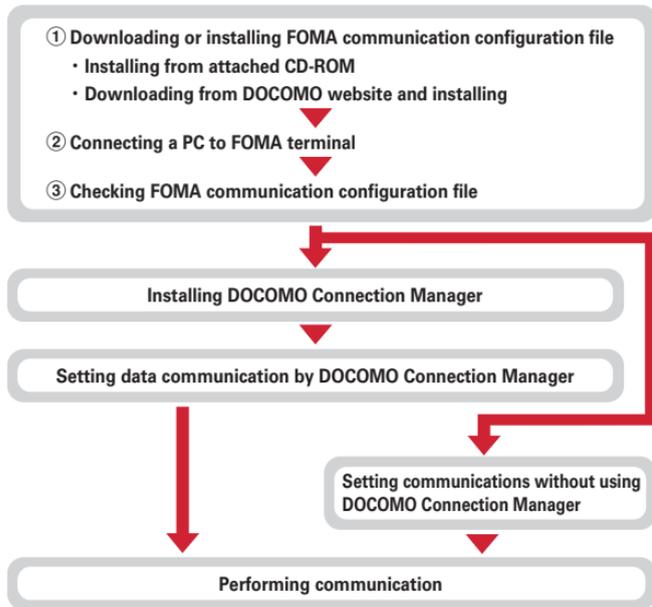
- Installing from attached CD-ROM
- Downloading from DOCOMO website and installing



Data transfer

## Flow of setup for data communication

This section described the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.



## Using CD-ROM

Attached CD-ROM contains software for Data Communication with FOMA terminals, PDF version "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List". For details, refer to attached CD-ROM.

- When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen from Internet Explorer security setting may appear, but may be ignored. Click "Yes".

## Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is a software for backing up phonebook, mail and other data in your mobile phone to a PC and edit them. It can be downloaded from NTT DOCOMO website. For details and downloading of this software, refer to the following website. You can also access to this site from the attached CD-ROM. <http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

For details including downloading procedures, data that can be transferred, operating environments, installing procedures and operations, refer to the website above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software. To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, a USB cable is separately required.



# Appendix/Troubleshooting

Menu list .....	344
Melody List .....	356
List of characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch input method) .....	358
Pictogram list .....	359
Special symbol list .....	364
Smiley list .....	367
Multiaccess combinations .....	370
Multitask combinations .....	371
Services available for the FOMA terminal .....	372
Introduction of options and related devices .....	372
<b>Interfacing to external device</b>	
Playing moving pictures using FOMA terminal, PC, etc. ....	373
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	374
If error message appears mentioned below .....	<b>Error messages</b> 377
Warranty and After-Sales Service .....	381
i-mode fault diagnosis site .....	382
Updating software .....	<b>Software update</b> 383
Protecting the FOMA terminal from harmful data .....	<b>Scanning function</b> 387
Main specifications .....	389
Number of saved/registered/protected items in F-08A .....	392
Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone .....	393
Export Administration Regulations .....	395
Intellectual Property Right .....	396

## Menu list

- Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.
- Settings of menus indicated in red can be restored to the default in Reset.

### ■ Mail

Menu	Default	Page
<b>1</b> <b>1</b> Inbox	—	133
<b>1</b> <b>2</b> Compose message	—	120
<b>1</b> <b>3</b> Compose Deceive-Anime	—	123
<b>1</b> <b>4</b> Unsent messages	—	133
<b>1</b> <b>5</b> Outbox	—	133
<b>1</b> <b>6</b> Check new message	—	130
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> SMS/Area Mail		
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>1</b> SMS		
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> Compose SMS	—	148
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>1</b> <b>2</b> UIM Inbox	—	151
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>1</b> <b>3</b> UIM Outbox	—	151
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>1</b> <b>4</b> SMS settings	Font type : Japanese SMS report request : Not request Keep in SMS center : 3 days SMA Center : DOCOMO Address : 81903101652 Type of Number : International	150
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>1</b> <b>5</b> Check new SMS	—	150
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> Early warning "Area Mail" setting		
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> <b>1</b> Receive setting	YES	148
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> <b>3</b> Beep time	Beep time (1-30 sec) : 10	148
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> <b>3</b> Manner/Public mode setting	Ring in manner/public mode	148
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> <b>4</b> Check ring tone	[Earthquake Early Warning, Disaster/ Evacuation information] —	148
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> <b>5</b> Other		
<b>1</b> <b>7</b> <b>2</b> <b>5</b> <b>1</b> Receive entry	—	148
<b>1</b> <b>8</b> Receive option	—	129
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> Mail settings		

Menu	Default	Page
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>1</b> Alert settings		
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>1</b> <b>1</b> Mail alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Light alert : Glimmer/Color 8 Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	78
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>1</b> <b>2</b> MessageR alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Light alert : Glimmer/Color 8 Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	78
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>1</b> <b>3</b> MessageF alert	Ring alert : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Light alert : Glimmer/Color 8 Vibrate alert : OFF Ring time (sec) : 10	78
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>2</b> Sort method	[Auto-sort ON/OFF] Inbox auto sort, Outbox auto sort : ON [Inbox sort, Outbox sort] —	140
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>3</b> Signature	[Auto add] ON [Edit signature] —	141
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>4</b> Reply setting		
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>4</b> <b>1</b> Reply format	Quote : No Quote characters : >	143
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>4</b> <b>2</b> Activate quick reply	ON	143
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>4</b> <b>3</b> Quick reply presets	了解です (I see.) 後で連絡します (I'll contact you later.) ごめんなさいm(_ _)m (Sorry) ありがとう(-) (Thank you) OK	143
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>5</b> Mail group	—	142
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>6</b> Display settings		
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>6</b> <b>1</b> Display priority	Show message	144
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>6</b> <b>2</b> Receive option	OFF	142
<b>1</b> <b>9</b> <b>6</b> <b>3</b> Incoming msg. attach	Select all	143

Menu	Default	Page
<b>1 9 6 4</b> Attachment auto-play	Auto play	144
<b>1 9 6 5</b> Message list	List style : 2 row (addr+sub) Display preview : Yes Auto status change : ON	143
<b>1 9 6 6</b> Auto-display	MessageR preferred	146
<b>1 9 7</b> Check msg. option	Select all	142
<b>1 *</b> Template		
<b>1 * 1</b> Decome	—	125
<b>1 * 2</b> Decome-Anime	—	125

### ■ i-mode

Menu	Default	Page
<b>2 1</b> iMenu Search	—	154
<b>2 2</b> Bookmark	—	160
<b>2 3</b> Screen memo	—	162
<b>2 4</b> Last URL	—	156
<b>2 5</b> Enter URL	[Enter URL] http:// Browser type : i-mode Browser [URL enter history] —	156 157
<b>2 6</b> i-Channel	[i-Channel list] — [i-Channel setting] Show ticker : Yes Ticker speed : Moderate Text size : Medium Ticker pattern : Pattern 1 [Reset i-Channel] —	174 175
<b>2 7</b> i-mode settings	Default settings→P355	165
<b>2 8</b> Access shortcuts	—	161
<b>2 9</b> RSS reader	—	163
<b>2 *</b> Full Browser Home	—	158
<b>2 0</b> Search engine	Google検索 (Google search), Google ニュース検索 (Google news search), Google画像検索 (Google image search)	287

### ■ i-appli

Menu	Default	Page
<b>3 1</b> Software list	—	223

Menu	Default	Page
<b>3 2</b> i-appli call log	—	238
<b>3 3</b> i-appli settings		
<b>3 3 1</b> Sort software	By access time	240
<b>3 3 2</b> Auto start	ON	237
<b>3 3 3</b> Software info disp.	OFF	223
<b>3 3 4</b> Display light time	Terminal Setting	226
<b>3 3 5</b> Vibrate effect	ON	226
<b>3 3 6</b> i-appli shortcuts	—	236
<b>3 3 7</b> Sound effect volume	Level 4	226
<b>3 3 8</b> i-Widget settings		
<b>3 3 8 1</b> i-Widget sound effect	ON	244
<b>3 3 8 2</b> i-Widget roaming set	No	244
<b>3 3 9</b> i-appli call DL set	Not Reject	238
<b>3 4</b> Display history	[Start failure hist., Abnormal exit hist., Security error hist.] —	225 237 241
<b>3 5</b> About i-appli	—	222

### ■ Phonebook & Logs

Menu	Default	Page
<b>4 1</b> Phonebook	Show all names	72
<b>4 2</b> Phonebook new entry	—	70
<b>4 3</b> Add group	—	72
<b>4 4</b> Phonebook(UIM) new entry	—	70
<b>4 5</b> Received calls	—	54
<b>4 6</b> Redial	—	54
<b>4 7</b> Record msg.&Voice memo		
<b>4 7 1</b> Record message	OFF	64
<b>4 7 2</b> Recorded messages	—	65
<b>4 7 3</b> Record voice memo	—	300
<b>4 7 4</b> Voice memos	—	65
<b>4 8</b> Mail logs		
<b>4 8 1</b> Sent msg. log	—	138
<b>4 8 2</b> Received msg. log	—	138

Menu	Default	Page
4 9 User information	Name, Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	50 298

#### ■ Data Box

Menu	Default	Page
5 1 My Picture	—	256
5 2 MUSIC	—	215
5 3 Music&Video Channel	—	211
5 4 i-motion/Movie	—	259
5 5 Melody	—	266
5 6 Kisekae Tool	—	90
5 7 Machi-chara	—	265
5 8 Chara-den	—	265
5 9 1Seg	—	267

#### ■ Life Kit

Menu	Default	Page
6 1 Bar code reader	—	190
6 2 Ir/iC/PC connection		
6 2 1 Receive Ir data	[Receive, Receive all] —	282
6 2 2 Send all Ir data	—	282
6 2 3 Send all via iC	—	282
6 2 4 Save received data	—	283
6 2 5 Data exchange settings	End alert : OFF Auto authentication : OFF Ph.book image sending : ON	284
6 2 6 USB mode settings*1	Communication mode	275
6 3 microSD	—	272
6 4 Camera		
6 4 1 Still camera	—	180
6 4 2 Movie camera	—	184
6 5 Sound recorder	—	185
6 6 Data Center		
6 6 1 Access Data Center	—	113

Menu	Default	Page
6 6 2 Synchronization log	—	115
6 6 3 Sync setting	Contact image sending : OFF	114
6 7 Map		
6 7 1 Show map	—	242
6 7 2 Map appli	—	242
6 7 3 Select map	地図アプリ (Map Application)	242
6 8 Pedometer/ACT monitor		
6 8 1 Steps/Activity/Calories info	—	304
6 8 2 Set Pedometer/Activity monitor	Use height(100-220cm) : 160cm Weight (30-120kg) : 50kg	304
6 9 1Seg		
6 9 1 1 Activate 1Seg	—	196
6 9 2 Program guide	—	199
6 9 3 1Seg image/video	—	267
6 9 4 Set/Timer list	—	203
6 9 5 Recording result	—	205
6 9 6 TVlink	—	200
6 9 7 Channel list	—	195
6 9 8 User setting		
6 9 8 1 Display setting	Light setting : Auto adjust Display subtitle : In silent mode Subtitle size : Medium(Standard) Subtitle language : 1st language Display icon always : ON Display ticker Incoming message/Receiving info. : Not display	205
6 9 8 2 Sound setting*2	Switch sound : 1st sound Main <- sub sound : Main sound Dolby Mobile : OFF	205
6 9 8 3 Data broadcasting		
6 9 8 3 1 Image & Effect	Set image display : Display Sound effect setting : ON	205
6 9 8 3 2 ToruCa from 1Seg	ON	205
6 9 8 3 3 Restore storage area	—	205
6 9 8 3 4 Reset permit status	—	205
6 9 8 4 Close setting	Continue	205

Menu	Default	Page
<b>6 9 8 5</b> Play setting	Auto CM skip, Auto blur skip : ON Skip notice : Display	205
<b>6 9 8 6</b> Record setting	Record to : Phone Record time : Unspecified	205

#### ■ Accessory

Menu	Default	Page
<b>7 1</b> Scheduler	—	290
<b>7 2</b> Notepad	—	302
<b>7 3</b> Alarm clock	—	288
<b>7 4</b> Calculator	—	302
<b>7 5</b> Dictionaries		
<b>7 5 1</b> Jpn Dic (Gakken Mobile Jpn Dic)	—	303
<b>7 5 2</b> JE Dic (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)	—	303
<b>7 5 3</b> EJ Dic (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)	—	303
<b>7 5 4</b> Today's trivia	—	303
<b>7 5 5</b> Today in history	—	303
<b>7 6</b> Countdown timer	03 min.	288
<b>7 7</b> High-pitched alarm	High-pitched alarm : OFF	290
<b>7 8</b> Fake call		
<b>7 8 1</b> Activate	—	299
<b>7 8 2</b> Alert&Time settings	Call start time : Ring now Ring alert : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1) Alert volume : Level 4	299
<b>7 9</b> Toy's world	—	299

#### ■ Settings & NW services\*3

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 1</b> Alerts & Sounds		
<b>8 1 1</b> Ring alerts & Sounds		
<b>8 1 1 1</b> Call ring alert		
<b>8 1 1 1 1</b> Call ring alert	Phone : Melody/着信音1 (Tone1)	79
<b>8 1 1 1 2</b> V.phone ring alert	Videophone : Melody/ハーブ (Harp)	79
<b>8 1 1 1 3</b> Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	112
<b>8 1 1 2</b> Mail/Msg. ring alert		

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 1 1 2 1</b> Mail ring alert	Mail : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	79
<b>8 1 1 2 2</b> Msg.R ring alert	MessageR : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	79
<b>8 1 1 2 3</b> Msg.F ring alert	MessageF : Melody/着信音2 (Tone2) Ring time (sec) : 10	79
<b>8 1 1 3</b> i-concier ring alert	i-concier : Melody/SHORT SOUND10 Ring time (sec) : 10	79
<b>8 1 1 4</b> Alarm sound		
<b>8 1 1 4 1</b> Alarm clock sound	Alarm clock : Melody/目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	79
<b>8 1 1 4 2</b> Schedule reminder	Alarm on time : Melody/時間になりました (Set time arrives)	79
<b>8 1 1 5</b> System sound		
<b>8 1 1 5 1</b> Keypad sound	Key sound 1	81
<b>8 1 1 5 2</b> Open/Close sound	Open/close sound 1	81
<b>8 1 1 5 3</b> Shutter sound	Standard	82
<b>8 1 1 5 4</b> Movie camera sound	Standard	82
<b>8 1 1 6</b> Charge alert	ON	82
<b>8 1 1 7</b> Call session		
<b>8 1 1 7 1</b> Status message	On-hold tone : Standard	62
<b>8 1 1 7 2</b> On-hold tone	ENTERTAINER	82
<b>8 1 1 7 3</b> Quality alarm	Alarm OFF	82
<b>8 1 1 7 4</b> Reconnect alarm	Alarm OFF	82
<b>8 1 1 7 5</b> Low Battery alert	ON	82
<b>8 1 1 8</b> Melody Call	—	81
<b>8 1 2</b> Adjust volume		
<b>8 1 2 1</b> Alert/Call volume		
<b>8 1 2 1 1</b> Call alert volume	Level 4	80
<b>8 1 2 1 2</b> Listen volume	Level 4	80
<b>8 1 2 2</b> Mail/Msg. alert vol.	Level 4	80
<b>8 1 2 3</b> i-concier ring alert	Level 4	80
<b>8 1 2 4</b> Alarm volume		
<b>8 1 2 4 1</b> Alarm clock sound	Level 4	80
<b>8 1 2 4 2</b> 1Seg alarm sound	Level 15	80
<b>8 1 2 4 3</b> Schedule reminder	Level 4	80

Menu	Default	Page
<a href="#">8 1 2 5</a> i-appli effect sound	Level 4	80
<a href="#">8 1 2 6</a> ToruCa receive alert	Level 4	80
<a href="#">8 1 2 7</a> Operation sound	Level 4	80
<a href="#">8 1 2 8</a> Melody effect sound	Level 4	80
<a href="#">8 1 3</a> Vibrate alert/effect		
<a href="#">8 1 3 1</a> Call vibrate alert		
<a href="#">8 1 3 1 1</a> Call vibrate alert	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 1 2</a> V.phone vibrate alert	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 2</a> Mail/Msg. vibrate alert		
<a href="#">8 1 3 2 1</a> Mail vibrate alert	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 2 2</a> Msg.R vibrate alert	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 2 3</a> Msg.F vibrate alert	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 3</a> i-concier vibrate alert	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 4</a> Alarm vibrate		
<a href="#">8 1 3 4 1</a> Alarm clock	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 4 2</a> Schedule reminder	OFF	81
<a href="#">8 1 3 5</a> i-appli effect	ON	81
<a href="#">8 1 4</a> Silent mode	General	83
<a href="#">8 1 5</a> Ring alert delay	Delayed ring alert : OFF	112
<a href="#">8 1 6</a> Stereo sound effect		
<a href="#">8 1 6 1</a> Movie(i-motion)	OFF	80
<a href="#">8 1 6 2</a> Melody	ON	80
<a href="#">8 1 6 3</a> MUSIC Player	OFF	80
<a href="#">8 1 6 4</a> 1Seg	OFF	80
<a href="#">8 1 6 5</a> Music&Video Channel	OFF	80
<a href="#">8 1 7</a> BGM play	ON	219
<a href="#">8 2</a> Display		
<a href="#">8 2 1</a> Stand-by display		
<a href="#">8 2 1 1</a> Image/i-appli	Same as Kisekai Tool	84

Menu	Default	Page
<a href="#">8 2 1 2</a> Clock format	Style : ON/Digital 2 (terminal color : Pearl White, Precious Black), Digital 3 (terminal color : Mystic Purple) Time format : 12 hour Clock layout : Top (terminal color : Pearl White), Center (terminal color : Mystic Purple, Precious Black) Day : English	95
<a href="#">8 2 1 3</a> Battery icon	Kisekai Tool	93
<a href="#">8 2 1 4</a> Antenna icon	Kisekai Tool	93
<a href="#">8 2 1 5</a> Info/calendar layout	—	85
<a href="#">8 2 1 6</a> i-Channel setting	Show ticker : Yes Ticker speed : Moderate Text size : Medium Ticker pattern : Pattern 1	174
<a href="#">8 2 1 7</a> Shortcut icons	ウォーキング/Exカウンター設定 (Set Pedometer/Activity monitor), 照明/キーバックライト設定 (Display & Key light), 待受ショートカットの使い方 (Using Shortcut icons), ワンセグ (1Seg), i コンシェル (i-concier)	295
<a href="#">8 2 1 8</a> Animated-notice	Name : All incomings Stand-by Ani-notice : Aqua (terminal color : Pearl White), Neon Light (terminal color : Mystic Purple), Accessory (terminal color : Precious Black)	94
<a href="#">8 2 1 9</a> Information display	Display	176
<a href="#">8 2 2</a> Menu preference		
<a href="#">8 2 2 1</a> Select startup menu	Kisekai menu	89
<a href="#">8 2 2 2</a> My shortcut	Activate, 2in1 mode switching, Saving mode ON/OFF, Receive Ir data, Calculator, Bar code reader, Activation option, MUSIC Player	297
<a href="#">8 2 2 3</a> Reset		
<a href="#">8 2 2 3 1</a> Operation history	—	92
<a href="#">8 2 2 3 2</a> Menu design	—	92
<a href="#">8 2 3</a> Color & Action image		
<a href="#">8 2 3 1</a> Color scheme	White (terminal color : Pearl White), Purple (terminal color : Mystic Purple), Black (terminal color : Precious Black)	89

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 2 3 2</b> Call image		
<b>8 2 3 2 1</b> Outgoing call	Display image : Kisekai Tool	86
<b>8 2 3 2 2</b> Incoming call	Show image : Kisekai Tool	87
<b>8 2 3 2 3</b> Videophone dialing	Display image : Kisekai Tool	86
<b>8 2 3 2 4</b> Videophone receiving	Show image : Kisekai Tool	87
<b>8 2 3 2 5</b> Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	112
<b>8 2 3 3</b> Mail image		
<b>8 2 3 3 1</b> Outgoing message	Display image : Kisekai Tool	88
<b>8 2 3 3 2</b> Incoming message	Display image : Kisekai Tool	88
<b>8 2 3 3 3</b> Image message alert	Display image : Kisekai Tool	88
<b>8 2 3 3 4</b> Check msg.	Display image : Kisekai Tool	88
<b>8 2 3 4</b> Videophone image	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	66
<b>8 2 3 5</b> Info display & light		
<b>8 2 3 5 1</b> Caller/Sender info	Main display info At call received : Name+Phone No. Ticker at mail rcvd : Name+Subject Sub-display info At call received, At mail received : Name	109
<b>8 2 3 5 2</b> Indicator light	ON	93
<b>8 2 3 6</b> Contact image	ON	87
<b>8 2 4</b> Display & Key light		
<b>8 2 4 1</b> Display light time	Normal user : 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-appli : Terminal setting i-mode session, Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion : Always on	88
<b>8 2 4 2</b> Light time-out	1 min.	88
<b>8 2 4 3</b> Brightness	Auto adjust	88
<b>8 2 4 4</b> Keypad light	Keypad light, Call/Mail light alert : ON Light color : Rainbow (Key press)	88
<b>8 2 5</b> Light alert		

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 2 5 1</b> Light alert	Light pattern for Phone and Videophone : Light pattern 9 Light pattern for Mail, MessageR/F and i-concier : Glimmer Light color for Phone and Videophone : Color 6 Light color for Mail, MessageR/F and i-concier : Color 8 Light for ToruCa receive: Light : ON Light color for ToruCa receive : Color 3	93
<b>8 2 5 2</b> Call session light	During call: Light : ON Color : Color 50	93
<b>8 2 5 3</b> IC card light	IC card: Light : ON Color : Color 5	93
<b>8 2 5 2</b> Open/Close light	During call: Light : ON Color : Color 8 (terminal color : Pearl White), Color 11 (terminal color : Mystic Purple), Color 2 (terminal color : Precious Black)	93
<b>8 2 6</b> Font & Language		
<b>8 2 6 1</b> Font size	Medium(Standard)	95
<b>8 2 6 2</b> Font style	Kanji/Alphameric : Maru_Gothic Hiragana/Katakana : Kanji/Alphameric	95
<b>8 2 6 3</b> バイリンガル	Japanese	48
<b>8 2 7</b> S-disp auto light on	ON	89
<b>8 2 8</b> Display Machi-chara	Display : ON/STELLA (terminal color : Pearl White, Mystic Purple), ひつじのしつじくん (Butler of sheep) (terminal color : Precious Black)	89
<b>8 2 9</b> Power saving mode		
<b>8 2 9 1</b> Saving mode ON/OFF	OFF	89
<b>8 2 9 2</b> Saving mode options	Standard saving	89
<b>8 3</b> Kisekai/Themes		
<b>8 3 1</b> Kisekai Tool	—	90
<b>8 3 2</b> Style theme	—	93
<b>8 3 3</b> Timed theme	—	84
<b>8 4</b> Security & Locks		
<b>8 4 1</b> Locks		
<b>8 4 1 1</b> Lock on close	Lock on close : OFF	109

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 4 1 2</b> Lock when immobile	Auto-keypad lock : OFF	109
<b>8 4 1 3</b> All lock	—	100
<b>8 4 1 4</b> Personal data lock	OFF	102
<b>8 4 1 5</b> IC card lock		
<b>8 4 1 5 1</b> Lock/Unlock	OFF	248
<b>8 4 1 5 2</b> Lock preference	IC card lock	248
<b>8 4 1 5 3</b> Timed lock	Timed lock : OFF	248
<b>8 4 1 5 4</b> Programed activation	—	248
<b>8 4 1 5 5</b> IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	248
<b>8 4 1 6</b> Keypad dial lock	OFF	103
<b>8 4 2</b> Privacy mode		
<b>8 4 2 1</b> Call/Mail privacy	Call & Logs : Hide set contact Mail & Logs : Hide secrecy fldrs Private call act. : Alert+Show No. Private mail act. : No alert/name/no. Incoming: privacy mode : OFF	105
<b>8 4 2 2</b> Other item privacy	My Picture, i-motion : Hide secrecy album Schedule : Hide set schedule Notepad, i-appli, Screen memo : Show all Bookmark : Hide secrecy fldrs	105
<b>8 4 2 3</b> Activation option	Activate/Deactivate : No activation Auto start : OFF	106
<b>8 4 2 4</b> Contact setting	—	108
<b>8 4 3</b> Security indicator	ON	111
<b>8 4 4</b> Receive display option	Main display info At call received : Name+Phone No. Ticker at mail rcvd : Name+Subject Sub-display info At call received, At mail received : Name	109
<b>8 4 5</b> UIM	[Change PIN code/Change PIN2 code] 0000 [PIN1 code ON/OFF] OFF	99
<b>8 4 6</b> Change security code	0000	99
<b>8 4 7</b> Scanning function		
<b>8 4 7 1</b> Update	—	387
<b>8 4 7 2</b> Set auto-update	—	387
<b>8 4 7 3</b> Set scan	Scan, Message scan : Valid	387

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 4 7 4</b> Version	—	388
<b>8 4 8</b> Password manager	—	314
<b>8 5</b> Call & Answer		
<b>8 5 1</b> Sound & Image		
<b>8 5 1 1</b> Outgoing call	Display image : Kisekae Tool	86
<b>8 5 1 2</b> Call alert	Ring alert : Melody/清音音 1 (Tone1) Show image : Kisekae Tool Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : Light pattern 9/Color 6	78
<b>8 5 1 3</b> Identification mark	Identify No. : OFF	87
<b>8 5 2</b> Anonymous caller	[Anonymous/Payphone/Unavailable] Disable settings	112
<b>8 5 3</b> Any key answer	ON	61
<b>8 5 4</b> Headset		
<b>8 5 4 1</b> Alert preference	Headset + speaker	306
<b>8 5 4 2</b> Auto answer setting	Auto answering : OFF	306
<b>8 5 4 3</b> Headset key control	Control function : OFF	305
<b>8 5 5</b> Reject/Accept call		
<b>8 5 5 1</b> Specified caller	Reject call	111
<b>8 5 5 2</b> Unregistered caller	OFF	113
<b>8 5 6</b> Make/Receive call		
<b>8 5 6 1</b> Show PrioritySetting	No Set Up	62
<b>8 5 6 2</b> Prefix dialing	Prefix1 : 009130010	59
<b>8 5 6 3</b> Sub address	ON	60
<b>8 5 7</b> Call session		
<b>8 5 7 1</b> Noise reduction	ON	60
<b>8 5 7 2</b> Close settings	End the call	61
<b>8 5 8</b> Self mode	OFF	102
<b>8 6</b> Videophone		
<b>8 6 1</b> V.phone dialing img.	Display image : Kisekae Tool	86
<b>8 6 2</b> Videophone alert	Ring alert : Melody/ハープ (Harp) Show image : Kisekae Tool Vibrate alert : OFF Light alert : Light pattern 9/Color 6	78

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 6 3</b> Operation	Auto redial as voice : OFF Display setting : Both sides Sub screen : My side Screen size : Large Visual preference : Normal Display light : Auto adjust Speakerphone : ON	67
<b>8 6 4</b> Data session arv. act	V.phone priority	67
<b>8 6 5</b> Image setting	[Substitute image] Image : Default Chara-den [Answer machine image/Response hold image/On-hold image/Movie memo image] Image : Default	66
<b>8 6 6</b> External device	Phone	68
<b>8 6 7</b> Notify switchable mode		
<b>8 6 7 1</b> Indication ON	—	67
<b>8 6 7 2</b> Indication OFF	—	67
<b>8 6 7 3</b> Check Indication	—	67
<b>8 7</b> Clock & Other		
<b>8 7 1</b> Clock		
<b>8 7 1 1</b> Date & time <sup>4</sup>	Auto time adjust : ON Offset : +00h00m	49
<b>8 7 1 2</b> Auto power ON	Auto power ON : OFF	288
<b>8 7 1 3</b> Auto power OFF	Auto power OFF : OFF	288
<b>8 7 1 4</b> Clock display format	Style : ON/Digital 2 (terminal color : Pearl White, Precious Black), Digital 3 (terminal color : Mystic Purple) Time format : 12 hour Clock layout : Top (terminal color : Pearl White), Center (terminal color : Mystic Purple, Precious Black) Day : English	95
<b>8 7 1 5</b> Alarm auto power ON	OFF	289
<b>8 7 1 6</b> Timed theme	—	84
<b>8 7 1 7</b> Time tone	Set : Always Time tone : OFF	94
<b>8 7 2</b> Text input		
<b>8 7 2 1</b> Save word	—	313
<b>8 7 2 2</b> DL dictionary	—	315

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 7 2 3</b> Reset prediction	—	310
<b>8 7 2 4</b> Save phrase	—	312
<b>8 7 2 5</b> Text input method	Input method : 5-touch Input prediction : ON Auto cursor : Normal	315
<b>8 7 3</b> Software update <sup>45</sup>	[Update] — [Set auto-update] Set auto-update : Auto-update Day : Unspecified Time : 03:00	383
<b>8 7 4</b> Info & Reset		
<b>8 7 4 1</b> Call cost/duration		
<b>8 7 4 1 1</b> Call duration	—	300
<b>8 7 4 1 2</b> Call cost		
<b>8 7 4 1 2 1</b> Last call cost	—	301
<b>8 7 4 1 2 2</b> Call cost limit	Alert : OFF	301
<b>8 7 4 1 2 3</b> Hide call cost icon	—	301
<b>8 7 4 1 2 4</b> Reset call cost	OFF	301
<b>8 7 4 2</b> Check remote setting	—	117
<b>8 7 4 3</b> Memory status	—	280
<b>8 7 4 4</b> Battery level	—	47
<b>8 7 4 5</b> Area service status	—	334
<b>8 7 4 6</b> Reset	—	115
<b>8 7 4 7</b> Delete all data	—	115
<b>8 7 4 8</b> Initial setting	[Date & time] Auto time adjust : ON [Password] 0000 [Keypad sound] Key sound 1 Text size : Medium(Standard)	48
<b>8 7 5</b> Side key shortcut	MusicKey: Press & hold : MUSIC Player Up Key: Press & hold : Silent mode ON/ OFF Down Key: Press & hold : Check new message	298
<b>8 7 6</b> Motion sensor	Motion sensor, Auto rotation, 1Seg, i-mode, My Picture, i-motion/Movie, Music&Video Channel : ON	40
<b>8 8</b> NW Services		
<b>8 8 1</b> Voice Mail		

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 1 1 1 Voice Mail service		
8 8 1 1 1 1 Activate	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 2 Set ring time	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 3 Deactivate	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 4 Check setting	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 5 Play messages	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 6 Voice Mail setting	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 7 Set V_phoneVoiceMail	—	318
8 8 1 1 1 8 Check messages	—	318
8 8 1 1 2 Tone/Vibration message notification	Voice Mail alert : ON Notification melody : 着信音1 (Tone1)	318
8 8 1 1 3 Notify missed call		
8 8 1 3 1 1 Activate	—	318
8 8 1 3 1 2 Deactivate	—	318
8 8 1 3 1 3 Check setting	—	318
8 8 1 1 4 Hide Voice Mail icon	—	318
8 8 2 Call waiting/forward		
8 8 2 1 Call waiting		
8 8 2 1 1 1 Activate	—	319
8 8 2 1 1 2 Deactivate	—	319
8 8 2 1 1 3 Check setting	—	319
8 8 2 2 Call forwarding		
8 8 2 2 1 1 Activate	—	319
8 8 2 2 1 2 Deactivate	—	319
8 8 2 2 3 Register forwarding number	—	319
8 8 2 2 4 Setting if forwarding number busy	—	319
8 8 2 2 5 Check setting	—	319
8 8 3 Chaku-moji		
8 8 3 1 Create message	—	56
8 8 3 2 Message display settings	Only with Caller ID	56
8 8 4 Caller ID		
8 8 4 1 Caller ID notification		
8 8 4 1 1 Activate/Deactivate	—	49
8 8 4 1 2 Check setting	—	49

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 4 2 Caller ID request		
8 8 4 2 1 Activate	—	320
8 8 4 2 2 Deactivate	—	320
8 8 4 2 3 Check setting	—	320
8 8 5 Roaming guidance		
8 8 5 1 Activate	—	334
8 8 5 2 Deactivate	—	334
8 8 5 3 Check setting	—	334
8 8 6 OFFICEED		
8 8 6 1 Area display setting	OFF	325
8 8 6 2 Start forwarding	—	325
8 8 6 3 Stop forwarding	—	325
8 8 6 4 Check fwd setting	—	325
8 8 7 2in1 setting		
8 8 7 1 2in1 mode switching	Dual mode	323
8 8 7 2 Ph.book 2in1 setting	—	323
8 8 7 3 Stand-by display		
8 8 7 3 1 For Dual mode	オブジェ (Objet)	323
8 8 7 3 2 For B mode	犬と香水 (Dog and Perfume)	323
8 8 7 4 Set call/receive No.		
8 8 7 4 1 Ring alert for No.B	[Call ring alert] Phone : Melody/着信音4 (Tone4) [Videophone ring alert] Videophone : Melody/Joy Rhythm [Mail ring alert] Mail : Melody/着信音3 (Tone3) Ring time (sec) : 10	323
8 8 7 4 2 Identification mark	Number A Identify No. : OFF Number B Identify No. : ON Mark : <<>>	323
8 8 7 5 2in1 function OFF	—	323
8 8 7 6 Receive avoidance		
8 8 7 6 1 Change rcv. avoidance	—	323
8 8 7 6 2 Check rcv. avoidance	—	323
8 8 7 6 3 Mode link for avoid.	—	323
8 8 7 6 4 Rcv. avoidance(Int.)	—	323
8 8 8 Melody Call	—	81

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 9 0  Other		
8 8 9 1  Additional service		
8 8 9 1 1  Register USSD	—	325
8 8 9 1 2  Record reply message	—	325
8 8 9 2  Remote control		
8 8 9 2 1  Activate	—	322
8 8 9 2 2  Deactivate	—	322
8 8 9 2 3  Check setting	—	322
8 8 9 3  Nuis. call blocking		
8 8 9 3 1  Register caller	—	320
8 8 9 3 2  Register selected No	—	320
8 8 9 3 3  Delete all entries	—	320
8 8 9 3 4  Delete last entry	—	320
8 8 9 3 5  Check the number of entries	—	320
8 8 9 4  English guidance		
8 8 9 4 1  Guidance setting	—	321
8 8 9 4 2  Check setting	—	321
8 8 9 5  Dual network		
8 8 9 5 1  Dual Network switching	—	320
8 8 9 5 2  Check setting	—	320
8 8 9 6  Service numbers		
8 8 9 6 1  ドコモ故障問合せ	—	321
8 8 9 6 2  ドコモ総合案内・受付	—	321
8 8 9 7  Multi number		
8 8 9 7 1  Set Multi Number	—	322
8 8 9 7 2  Check setting	—	322
8 8 9 7 3  <b>Number Setting</b>	Basic Number : Name : 基本契約番号 (Basic Number) Phone number; The subscribing terminal phone number Additional No1 : Name : 付加番号1 (Additional No1) Additional No2 : Name : 付加番号2 (Additional No2) Additional No1/No2 Phone number : Not recorded Multi number call : Disable	322

Menu	Default	Page
8 8 9 7 4  <b>Incoming calls melody setting</b>	[Additional No1/Additional No2] Individual setting : OFF	322
8 8 9 8  Set arrival act		
8 8 9 8 1  Activate	—	321
8 8 9 8 2  Deactivate	—	321
8 8 9 8 3  Check setting	—	321
8 8 9 9  <b>Arrival call act</b>	Answer	321
8 9  Roaming/Call assist		
8 9 1  NW service(Int.)		
8 9 1 1  Voice mail(Int.)		
8 9 1 1 1  Activate	—	335
8 9 1 1 2  Deactivate	—	335
8 9 1 1 3  Play messages	—	335
8 9 1 1 4  Voice mail settings	—	335
8 9 1 1 5  Set ring time	—	335
8 9 1 2  Call forwarding(Int.)		
8 9 1 2 1  Activate	—	335
8 9 1 2 2  Deactivate	—	335
8 9 1 2 3  Call fwd. settings	—	335
8 9 1 3  Remote control(Int.)	—	335
8 9 1 4  Caller ID request(Int.)	—	335
8 9 1 5  Roaming guidance(Int.)	—	336
8 9 2  Int'l roaming		
8 9 2 1  Network search mode	Auto	333
8 9 2 2  3G/GSM setting	AUTO	334
8 9 2 3  <b>Disp. operator name</b>	Display on	334
8 9 2 4  Bar calls at roaming		
8 9 2 4 1  Bar incoming call	—	335
8 9 2 4 2  Accept incoming call	—	335
8 9 2 4 3  Check setting	—	335
8 9 2 5  Notify missed call		
8 9 2 5 1  Activate	—	335
8 9 2 5 2  Deactivate	—	335
8 9 2 5 3  Check setting	—	335
8 9 2 5 4  Notify missed call(Int.)	—	335

Menu	Default	Page
<b>8 9 3</b> Int'l call assist		
<b>8 9 3 1</b> Auto switch	Country code : ON (Country code : +81, Country name : 日本(Japan)) Int'l prefix : ON (Name : World Call, Int'l prefix No. : 009130010)	59
<b>8 9 3 2</b> Country code setting	—	59
<b>8 9 3 3</b> Auto assist setting	—	59
<b>8 9 4</b> Two time zone clocks	ON	334

## ■ MUSIC

Menu	Default	Page
<b>9 1</b> MUSIC Player	—	215
<b>9 2</b> Music&Video Channel	—	208 209

## ■ Osaifu-Keitai

Menu	Default	Page
<b>* 1</b> IC card content	—	247
<b>* 2</b> DCMX	—	247
<b>* 3</b> ToruCa content	—	250
<b>* 4</b> IC card settings		
<b>* 4 1</b> Lock/Unlock	OFF	248
<b>* 4 2</b> Lock preference	IC card lock	248
<b>* 4 3</b> Timed lock	Timed lock : OFF	248
<b>* 4 4</b> Programed activation	—	248
<b>* 4 5</b> IC lock(power-off)	Remain lock status	248
<b>* 5</b> ToruCa setting		
<b>* 5 1</b> ToruCa alert	Light alert : ON Lighting color : Color 3 Receive alert volume : Level 4	252
<b>* 5 2</b> ToruCa from IC card	ToruCa receive, Duplication check, Auto- display : ON Auto-sort : OFF	252
<b>* 5 3</b> ToruCa auto-read	ON	252
<b>* 5 4</b> ToruCa sort rule	—	252
<b>* 5 5</b> ToruCa from 1Seg	ON	205

Menu	Default	Page
<b>* 6</b> Check IC owner	—	247
<b>* 7</b> Change IC owner	—	247
<b>* 8</b> Search by i-mode	—	246

## ■ User information

Menu	Default	Page
<b>0</b> User information	Name/Mail address : — My phone number : The subscribing terminal phone number	50 298

## ■ i-concier

Menu	Default	Page
<b>i</b> i-concier	—	176

\*1 When USB Cable is connected, default settings are not restored by Reset.

\*2 Dolby Mobile is not restored the default setting by Reset.

\*3 For the network service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

\*4 Reset causes the settings of Auto time adjust (including Time zone and Summer time) and Offset to be restored to the default.

\*5 When performing Reset, Set auto-update is restored to the default settings.

## i-mode settings list

- Settings of menus indicated in red can be restored to the default in Reset.

	Menu	Default	
i-modeBrowserSetting	Image display	Show image	
	Sound	ON	
	Movie auto play	Valid	
	Movie DL in page	Confirm always	
	Script	Valid	
	Phone info use	Valid	
	Font size	Medium	
	Cookie	Valid	
	Delete Cookies	—	
	Referer	Valid	
	Window auto-open	ON	
	Pointer Display	OFF	
	FullBrowser Setting	Image display	Show image
		Sound	ON
Display mode		PC layout mode	
Movie DL in page		Confirm always	
Script		Valid	
Phone info use		Valid	
Font size		Medium	
Cookie		Valid	
Delete Cookies		—	
Referer		Valid	
Window auto-open		ON	
Pointer Display		ON	
FullBrowser home		http://www.google.co.jp	
FullBrowser usage		OFF	
FB permission disp	Display always		
Zoom To	100 %		

Menu		Default	
Common Setting	Shortcut	[1] Zoom out, [2] Scroll Upward, [3] Zoom In, [4] Scroll to Left, [5] PagePilot, [6] Scroll to Right, [7] Open new tab by link, [8] Scroll Downward, [9] Add bookmark, [0] Search in page, [X] Change to left tab, [Z] Change to right tab	
	Auto NW trans. size	Confirm always	
Common Setting	Certificate*	All Certificate available	
	Issued Certificates		—
	Secure trans. svc	Operate certificate	—
		Center host	Host : DOCOMO
		SkipCert. password	ON
	Access point	i-mode	
	i-mode button	Connect iMenu/Search	
	Scroll	1 Line	
	PagePilot Display	Show while moving	
	Pointer Move Range	Normal	
	Pointer Speed	Normal	
	Bookmark Display	Thumbnail	
	Display light	Always on	
	Show/Hide navi keys	Show navi keys	
Check i-mode settings		—	
Reset i-mode settings		—	

\* All certificates saved in UIM are valid by Reset.

## When "Simple Menu" of Kisekai Tool is set

1) 電話	1) 電話帳検索	5) i アプリ	1) ソフト一覧	
	2) 電話帳登録		2) 待受画面選択	
	3) リダイヤル		3) i アプリ設定	
	4) 着信履歴		6) データBOX	1) マイピクチャ
	5) 伝言メモ設定			2) ミュージック
	6) 伝言メモ一覧			3) i モーション/ムービー
	7) プロフィール情報			4) メロディ
1) 受信メール	5) キャラ電			
2) メール	2) 送信メール	7) 設定/ アクセサリ	6) ワンセグ	
	3) 未送信メール		1) 音ノバイブ	
	4) 新規メール		2) ディスプレイ	
	5) i モード問い合わせ		3) 目覚まし	
3) ワンセグ/ カメラ	1) ワンセグ視聴		4) 電卓	
	2) カメラ		5) 赤外線受信	
	3) マイピクチャ		6) 情報表示/リセット	
	4) 待受画面選択	7) 留守番電話		
	1) i モード	1) i Menu 検索	0) プロフィール情報	
2) Bookmark				
3) ラストURL				
4) 画面メモ				
5) i チャンネル				

\* "Simple Menu" is disabled when the screen display is English.

## Melody List

### ◆ Melodies for ring tone

- Melodies in **red** letters support 3D sound.

Melody List ([ ] is the composer)	
着信音 1~6 (Tone1-6)	穏やか着信音 (Slow tone)
でか着信音 (Loud tone)	Women In Love
Amusing voyage	我は海の子 (Child of sea) [文部省唱歌 (Song of the Ministry of Education)]
Quiet Bustle	SWEET RASPBERRY
Stylish Cafe	<b>Satellite</b>
ジムノペディ (Gymnopedies) [Erik Satie]	ボレロ (Bolero) [Maurice Ravel]
交響曲第7番 (Symphony No.7) [Ludwig van Beethoven]	Joy Rhythm
<b>Sea</b>	SHORT SOUND1-10
着信中! (Ringin!)	メールどすえ (You've got a mail (in Kyoto dialect))
お電話どすえ (You've got a call (in Kyoto dialect))	ハーブ (Harp)
目覚まし時計 (Alarm clock)	もうすぐ予定の時間です (It's almost time for the schedule)
時間になりました (It's time)	無音 (Silent)

## ◆ Melodies for mail attachment

Melody List ([ ] is the composer)	
誕生日 (Birthday)	ウィリアムテル序曲 (William Tell Overture) [Gioachino Antonio Rossini]
結婚行進曲 (Wedding March) [J L Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy]	祝婚歌 (Bridal March) [Wilhelm Richard Wagner]
運命 (Symphony No.5) [Ludwig van Beethoven]	ジングルベル (Jingle Bells) [James Pierpont]
タフワフワイ (TAFUWA HUWAI) [Hawaiian folk song]	さくら (SAKURA) [Japanese folk song]
紅葉 (MOMIJI) [岡野 貞一 (TEIICHI OKANO)]	雪 (Snow) [Song of the Ministry of Education]
おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade der Zinnsoldaten) [Leon Jessel]	登場 (Appearance)
Are you sleeping? [French folk song]	トッカータとフーガ (Toccat and fugue) [Johann Sebastian Bach]
子守唄 (Lullaby) [Franz Schubert]	蛍の光 (Auld Lang Syne) [Scottish folk song]
ハッピー (Happy) お出掛け (Be out) メリーゴーランド (Merry-go-round) 安らぎ (Relax) 頑張れ (Cheer up) ヤッター (Goody) 16ビート (16 beats) 忙しい (Busy) 迷宮 (Labyrinth) タンゴ (Tango) エキゾチック (Exotic) 中華 (Chinese) 南国 (Southern country) 琴 (Koto)	草津節 (Kusatsubushi) [Gunma district folk song]
お祭り (Festival) 悲哀 (Sadness) がっくり (Flatten) 発見 (Discovery) チャイム (Chime) お知らせ (Information)	

## List of characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch input method)

Key	Hiragana/Kanji mode (two-byte)	Katakana mode (two- or one-byte)	Alphabet mode (two- or one-byte)	Numeric mode (two- or one-byte)*1
1	あ い う え お	アイウエオ 1	. / @ - : ~*2 _ 1	1
2	か き く け こ	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3	さ し す せ そ	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4	た ち つ て と	タ チ ツ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5	な に ぬ ね の	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6	は ひ ふ へ ほ	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7	ま み む め も	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8	や ゆ よ	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9	ら り る れ ろ	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0	わ を ん ー	ワ*3 ヲン ー 0	0	0 + *4
✕	Change upper/lower case, add voiced/semi-voiced sound, insert a line feed.	Change upper/lower case, add voiced/semi-voiced sound, insert a line feed.	Change upper/lower case, insert a line feed.	* P *4
#	、 。 ? ! ・ ■	、 。 ? ! ・ ■	, . ? ! ' - & ( ) ¥ ■	# T *4
☒			* You can enter only in one-byte character (except message text entry screen of i-mode mail and SMS). @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	

■ : One-byte space ■ : Holding down the keypad also switches upper and lower case.

\*1 Characters of " \* ", "#", "P", "T" and "+" can only be entered in the field that supports them.

\*2 "~" is entered in the one-byte mode.

\*3 Switch upper and lower cases only in two-byte mode.

\*4 Press the relevant key for 1 second or more to enter the character.

## Pictogram list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Pictogram	Reading
♥	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ
♥	はーと、あい、こころ、どきどき、すき、らぶ、ゆれるはーと
♥	はーと、しつれん、ふられた、わかれた、しょっく
♥	はーと、あい、こころ、すき、らぶ、はーとたち
☺	かお、えがお、わらう、わらい、わーい、うれしい、にこにこ
×	かお、おこる、いかり、ぶん、ちっ
∩	かお、かなしい、こまった、ごめん、がく
∩	かお、かなしい、こまった、さいあく、もうやだ
☹	かお、だめ、ふる
☹	どうぶつ、いぬ
☹	どうぶつ、ねこ
✱	てんき、はれ、たいよう
☁	てんき、くもり、くも
☂	てんき、あめ、かさ
☂	てんき、ゆき、ゆきだるま
⚡	てんき、かみなり、いかすち、いかづち、でんき
🌀	てんき、うずまき、たいふう、あらし、ぐるぐる、くるくる、めまい
☀	てんき、きり、あめ
↓	てんき、こさめ、あめ、かさ
♪	おんぶ、おんがく、うた、るん
♫	おんぶ、おんがく、うた、さんれんぶ、るん、むーど
👏	おんせん、ふる、おふる、いいきぶん
💎	はな、かわしい
☝	きす、きっす、くちびる、くち、ちゅ、ちゅう、ちゅー、きすまーく

Pictogram	Reading
❖	きらきら、ぴかぴか
☺	でんきゅう、ぴか、あいであ、あいであ、ひらめき
✱	いかり、おこる、おこり、きれる、むかつく、むか
👂	がんばる、がんばれ、ばんち、ぐー、ぐう
●	ばくだん、ばくはつ
zzz	おやすみ、すいみん、ねる、ねむい、ぐー、すー、ぐう、ずう
!	びっくり、あつ、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
!?	びっくり、ほんと、えっ、えー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
!!	びっくり、ちょー、えくすくらめーしょん、えくすくらめいしょん
☹	しょっく、ぐらぐら、どん
㊄	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ
♨	あせ、あせる、ひやあせ、なみだ、だらー、たらー
☺	いそぐ、いそげ、だっしゅ、ためいき、ふう、ふう、ふー、はしる
〰	のばす、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
〰	のばす、くるり、ちょうおん、ちょーおん
☺	おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、けってい
↗	やじるし、みぎうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぶ、みぎななめうえ
↘	やじるし、みぎした、さがる、さげる、だうん、みぎななめした
↖	やじるし、ひだりうえ、あがる、あげる、あっぶ、ひだりななめうえ
↙	やじるし、ひだりした、さがる、さげる、だうん、ひだりななめした
↗	やじるし、ぐっど、あがる、あげる、ぐっと
↘	やじるし、ばっど、さがる、さげる、ばっと
👉	かお、め、からだ
👉	かお、みみ、からだ

Pictogram	Reading
	ぐー、ぐう、じゃんけん、て、こぶし、ばんち、からだ
	ちよき、じゃんけん、て、ぴーす
	ぱー、ぱあ、じゃんけん、て、ばい、さんせい
	あし、あしあと、あるく、とほ、からだ、きつく、けり、ける
	とらんぶ、はーと、あい、こころ
	とらんぶ、すべード
	とらんぶ、だいや
	とらんぶ、くらぶ
	のりもの、こうつう、でんしゃ、れっしゃ、えき
	のりもの、こうつう、ちかてつ、えむ
	のりもの、こうつう、しんかんせん、のぞみ、ひかり、こだま
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、せだん
	のりもの、こうつう、じどうしゃ、くるま、たくしー、どらいぶ、あーるぶい
	のりもの、こうつう、ばす
	のりもの、こうつう、ぶね、ぶえりー、こうかい
	のりもの、こうつう、ひこうき、じえっと、じえっとき、ぶらいと、くうこう
	のりもの、よっと、ぶね、りぞーと
	つりー、くりすます、き
	いえ、うち、おうち、じたく
	びる、かいしゃ、しょくば、がっこう
	ゆうびん、ゆうびんきょく、ぼすと
	びょういん、びょうき、けが
	ぎんこう、ばんく
	えーていーえむ、えいていえむ、ぎんこう
	ほてる
	こんびに、こんびにえんす、こんびにえんすすとあ

Pictogram	Reading
	がそりんすたんど、がそりん、がすすた、すたんど
	ちゅうしゃじょう、ちゅうしゃ、ばーきんぐ
	しんごう、しんごうき
	といれ、かつぶる、でーと、けっこん
	しょくじ、ごはん、れすとらん、ぶあみれす
	こーひー、どりんく、のみもの、かつぶ、こっぶ、きっさてん、さてん、おちゃ
	かくてる、おさけ、さけ、ぱー
	びーる、おさけ、さけ、いざかや、のみかい、こんぱ、かんぱい
	はんぱーがー、ぱーがー、けいしょく、ぶあーすとぶーど
	はいひーる、ひーる、くつ、あし
	はさみ、かつと、びょういん、びょうしつ、さんぱつ、とこや
	まいく、からおけ、うた、うたう
	えいが、えいがかん、しねま、かめら、さつえい、びでお
	うま、けいば、もくば、めりーごーらんど、ゆうえんち
	おんがく、おと、きく、へっどほん、へっどぶおん
	え、あーと、げいじゅつ、びじゅつ、ぼれっと
	えんげき、ひと、しんし、ぼうし
	いべんと、はた
	ちけっと、きっぶ
	すぼーつ、うんどう、しゃつ、たんくとつぷ
	すぼーつ、うんどう、やきゅう、そぶと、ぼーる、そぶとぼーる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、ごるぶ
	すぼーつ、うんどう、てにす、たつきゅう、らけっと
	すぼーつ、うんどう、さっかー、ぼーる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、すきー、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すけーと、すのぼ、すべる
	すぼーつ、うんどう、ぼすけっと、ぼすけ、ぼすけっとぼーる

Pictogram	Reading
	すぼ一つ、うんどう、ごーる、はた、れーす、えふわん、もーたーす ぼ一つ
	ぼけべる、ぼけっとべる、ペーじゃー
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きつえん、いっぶく
	たばこ、しがー、しがれっと、きんえん
	かめら、しゃしん、さつえい、げきしゃ
	かばん、ぼっぐ、てさげ、りょうこ
	ほん、のーと、しょしんしゃ
	りほん、ちょうねくたい、ねくたい、あめ
	ぶれぜんと、たんじょうび、おくりもの
	ろうそく、きゃんどる、たんじょうび、ぼーすでい、ぼーすでー
	でんわ、くろでん、てれふおん、てれほん、てる、てれ
	けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、でんわ、びっち、ふおーん、 ふおん
	めーる、てがみ
	めも、しょるい、れぼーと、しゅくだい、しけん
	てれび、がめん、ぼんぐみ
	げーむ、こんとろーら
	しーでいー、あるぼむ、しんぐる、でいすく
	くつ、しゅーす、すにーかー、あし
	めがね
	くるまいす
	せいざ、おひつじざ、おひつじ
	せいざ、おうしざ、おうし
	せいざ、ふたござ、ふたご、すなどけい
	せいざ、かにざ、かに
	せいざ、ししざ、しし
	せいざ、おとめざ、おとめ
	せいざ、てんびんざ、てんびん、おもち、もち

Pictogram	Reading
	せいざ、さそりざ、さそり
	せいざ、いてざ、いて、あがる、あつぷ
	せいざ、やぎざ、やぎ
	せいざ、みずがめざ、みずがめ、なみ
	せいざ、うおざ、うお、さかな
	つき、しんげつ、まる
	つき
	つき、はんげつ
	つき、みかづき
	つき、まんげつ、まる
	でんわ、けいたいでんわ、けいたい、けーたい、ふおーん、ふおん、 びっち、ちゃくしん
	めーる、てがみ、じゅしん
	ふあつくす、ふあくす、じゅしん
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	あいもーど、あい、どこも
	どこもていきょう、でい、でー、でいー
	どこもほいんと、ほいんと、でい、でー、でいー
	えん、かね、きんがく、ねだん、りょうきん
	ただ、むりょう、じゅう、ひま、ふりー
	あいでい、あいでいー、あいでー
	かぎ、きー、ひみつ、ばすわーど、ろっく
	かいぎょう、まがる、つづく、つづき
	さくじょ、しーえる、くりあ、くーる
	さがす、しらべる、むしめがね、さーち
	にゅー、にゅー、あたらしい、しん
	はた、もくひょう、ごるふ、いちじょうほう、いち
	だいやる、だいある、ふりーだいやる、ふりーだいある
	しゃーぷ

Pictogram	Reading
㊦	もばきゅー、もばきゅう、しつもん、きゅう、きゅー
①	いち、すうじ、ばんごう
②	に、すうじ、ばんごう
③	さん、すうじ、ばんごう
④	よん、し、すうじ、ばんごう
⑤	ご、すうじ、ばんごう
⑥	ろく、すうじ、ばんごう
⑦	しち、なな、すうじ、ばんごう
⑧	はち、すうじ、ばんごう
⑨	きゅう、く、きゅー、すうじ、ばんごう
⑩	ぜろ、れい、すうじ、ばんごう
㊦	かちんご、さつえい、すたーと、はこ
㊦	ふくろ、つぼ
㊦	ぺんさき、ぺん
㊦	はんご、ひと、ひとかげ
㊦	いす、ざせき、すわる
㊦	よる、よなか、しんや、れいと
㊦	すぐ、もうすぐ、すーん
㊦	おん
㊦	おわり、えんど
㊦	じかん、じこく、たいむ、とけい
㊦	じてんしゃ、チャリ、チャりんご、のりもの
㊦	れんち、すばな、こうぐ、どうぐ
㊦	ぼそこん、ぴーしー、こんぴゅーた、こんぴゅーたー
㊦	えんぴつ、ぶんぼうぐ
㊦	くりっぷ、ぶんぼうぐ、てんぷ
㊦	やじるし、さゆう
㊦	やじるし、じょうげ
㊦	やじるし、りさいくる、かいてん、まわる

Pictogram	Reading
㊦	えぬじー、だめ
㊦	ひみつ、まるひ
㊦	きんし、げんきん、だめ
㊦	くうしつ、くうせき、くうしゃ、あき、あく、から
㊦	ごうかく
㊦	まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゃ、いっばい、まんたん、ふる
㊦	けいこく、きけん、びっくり
㊦	こびーらいと、しー、まるしー
TM	とれーどまーく、ていーえむ
®	れじすたーどとれーどまーく、とれーどまーく、あーる、まるあーる
㊦	あいあぶり、あるふあ、あぶり
㊦	あいあぶり、あるふあ、あぶり
㊦	どるぶくろ、どる、かね、おかね
㊦	うでどけい、とけい、うおっち
㊦	すなどけい、とけい
㊦	おにぎり、おむすび、ごはん、おべんとう、べんとう
㊦	けーき、しょーとけーき、でざーと、おかし、かし
㊦	ばん、ぶれっど
㊦	どんぶり、らーめん、めん、うどん、そば
㊦	ゆのみ、おゆのみ、おちゃ、ちゃ
㊦	とっくり、おちょこ、おさけ、さけ、にほんしゆ
㊦	わいんぐらす、わいん、おさけ、さけ
㊦	ばなな、くだもの
㊦	りんご、あつぷる、くだもの
㊦	さくらんぼ、ちえりー、くだもの
㊦	くろーぱー、よつば、はっぱ
㊦	ちゅーりっぷ、はな
㊦	わかば、ふたば、はっぱ
㊦	もみじ、こうよう、はっぱ

Pictogram	Reading
	さくら、はな
	かたつむり、まいまい、でんでんむし、どうぶつ、むし
	ひよこ、とり、どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん、とり、どうぶつ
	さかな、おさかな、どうぶつ
	うま、どうぶつ
	ぶた、どうぶつ、ぶー
	しゃつ、ていしゃつ、ぶく、ようぶく、ていしゃつ
	ずぼん、ぼんつ、じーぼん、じーんず、ぶく、ようぶく
	けしょう、くちべに、るーじゅ、りつぷ
	ゆびわ、あくせさりー、りんぐ
	おうかん、かんむり、おうさま
	べる、ちゃべる、かね
	どあ、とびら、と
	がっこう、だいがく
	なみ、うみ、つなみ、おおなみ
	ふじさん、やま
	すぽーつ、うんどう、すのーぼーど、ぼーど、すのぼ、すべる
	すぽーつ、うんどう、はしる、にげる
	かお、こまる、うーむ、うーん、うむ、むすっ、かながえる
	かお、ほっ
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、ひやあせ、たらー、だらー、あせ、あせる
	かお、おこる、ぶー、ぶー
	かお、ほけー、しらー、しらけ
	かお、はーと、らぶ、すき、わーい、うれしい
	かお、あっかんべー、べー、いたすら
	かお、ういんく、ういんく、ぱちっ、ぱち
	かお、うれしい、わーい、きやつ、きゃ

Pictogram	Reading
	かお、がまん
	かお、どうぶつ、ねこ
	かお、かなしい、なく、えーん、わーん、なきがお
	かお、なみだ、かなしい、ぼろり、なく、なきがお
	かお、おいしい、うまい、まんぞく
	かお、えがお、わらう、うっしっし、うしし、ししし
	かお、さけぶ、さけび、げっそり、ひゃー、むんく
	て、おっけー、おーけー、おーけい、おうけい、ぐっど、ゆび、おやゆび、ぐっど
	てがみ、めーる、らぶれたー、こいづみ
	がまぐち、さいふ、おかね、かね

## Special symbol list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol	Reading	Symbol
あーる	R r ゾ	えっち	Hh	かぶしきがいしや	(株) KK	くさい	≡ ξ
あい	I i	えぬ	Nn	から	~	くざい	≡ ξ
あすたりすく	*	えふ	F f	かるりー	㊦	くしー	≡ ξ
あすてりすく	*	えむ	Mm	がんま	Γ γ	くらむ	㊦
あっとまーく	@	える	L l	がんまー	Γ γ	くろぼし	★
あるふあ	Aα	えん	¥	きー	X x	くろまる	●
あるふあー	Aα	おう	O o	きごう	<>@/ //	けい	K k
あんだーばー	_	おー	O o		±×≠÷	けー	K k
あんど	&	おーむ	Ω ω		≤≥∴§\	ご	⑤ V
あんぱさんど	&	おす	♂		∞∧∈∨∩	ごうどう	≡
いー	E e	おなじ	々 //		∋∣∩∪	ごめ	※
いーた	H η	おみくろん	O o		∠∟⊥∩∪	ごめじるし	※
いおた	I i	おめが	Ω ω		∩∩∩∩∩	ころん	:
いこーる	=	おんぐすとろーむ	Å		Σ≡≠≠≠	さん	③ III
いち	① I	おんぶ	♫		“ ” > L √	さんかく	△▲▽▼
いぶしろん	E ε	かい	X x		∞∞∞∞∞	し	④ IV
うぶしろん	Y u	かける	x	Å%∞†‡¶	しー	C c	
えい	A a		⌈ ⌋ ⌈ ⌋ ⌈ ⌋ "	きゅー	Q q	しー	C c
えいち	H h	かっこ	" " ( ) [ ]	きゅう	⑨ IX	じー	G g
えー	A a		◇ ◇	きろ	キロ	しーしー	cc
えす	S s	かっぱ	K k	きろぐらむ	kg	しーた	θ θ
えつくす	X x	かぶ	(株)	きろめーとる	km	じーた	Z z
				く	⑨ IX	じえい	J j



Reading	Symbol	
まいなす	—	
まる	○ ● ◎ ◦	
	. ① ② ③	
	④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦	
	⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪	
	⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮	
	⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲	
	⑳ 上 中 下	
	左 右	
	みゆー	Mμ

Reading	Symbol
みり	mm $\overset{\text{ミ}}{\underset{\text{リ}}{\text{ム}}}$
みりぐらむ	mg
みりばー	$\overset{\text{ミ}}{\underset{\text{リ}}{\text{バ}}}$
みりめーとる	mm
むげん	∞
むげんだい	∞
めいじ	明治
めーとる	$\overset{\text{メ}}{\underset{\text{トル}}{\text{ム}}}$
めす	♀

Reading	Symbol
やじるし	→←↑↓ ⇒⇔
ゆう	(有)
ゆー	U u
ゆうげんがいしゃ	(有)
ゆうびん	〒
ゆうびんばんごう	〒
ゆえに	∴
ゆぶしろん	Y U

Reading	Symbol
よん	④ IV
らむだ	∧ λ
りっとる	ℝ
ろー	P ρ
ろく	⑥ VI
わい	Y y
わっと	ワッ
わる	÷

\* Some may differ from actual displays.

\* There are types of entered characters as two-byte only, one-byte only and both two/one-byte characters.

# Smiley list

You can convert characters by entering the readings in hiragana/kanji mode.      can also be converted by entering "かお" or "かおもじ".

## • Greeting/Reply (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^)/	あいさつ、ばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、ばいばい
v(^^) byebye!!	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい、 じゃあ、どーも、 よろしく
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい、 じゃあ、どーも、 よろしく
(^^)/	あいさつ、ばいばい
(^^)/	あいさつ、おーい
(//^~^//) f*	あいさつ、にこっ
~(**)	あいさつ、やあ
(*^^)/	あいさつ、ちわっ
v('ω`='ω`)/	あいさつ、おはよう
(o^~^o)b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(≡ω≡)b	へんじ、ぐっ、ぐー
(・v・n)	へんじ、はい
(**)ok	へんじ、おっけー
('`')ゞ了解!	へんじ、りょうかい
(o^..o)/	あいさつ、やあ
(="ω`)/	あいさつ、やあ

## • Smile/Glad (34 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
(^^)v	うれしい、にこっ
(^o^)	うれしい、うほほ、 にこっ、わーい
o(^o^o)	うれしい、うきうき
(o^_^o)	うれしい、にこっ
(*^_^*)	うれしい、にこっ
(.v.)	わらう、きたー、 にこっ
v(^^^)/	うれしい、わーい
v('`')ノ	うれしい、わーい
(*^v^*)	うれしい、にこっ
(☆v☆)	うれしい、きらーん
(^^)v	うれしい、やったね、 びーす、にこっ、 ぶい
(=^~^=)	うれしい、にこっ
('`v`')	うれしい、にこっ
(≡v≡)	うれしい
;)	わらう、にこっ、 すまいる
V(^o^)	うれしい、びーす
(^o^)/717	わらう、ちゅっ、 にこっ

Smiley	Reading
((o(^^)o))	うれしい、わくわく
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
v(^o^)	うれしい、いえい、 ぶい、びーす
(^_^)v	うれしい、やったね、 びーす、にこっ、 ぶい
(^^)	わらう、にこっ
(^o^)	わらう、わーい
(^o^)/	わらう、おーい、 はーい
(^o^)v	わらう、やったね、 びーす、にこっ、 ぶい
)^o^(	わらう、 ほっぺがおちる
\(^o^)/	わらう、わーい
;)	わらう、にこっ、 すまいる
v(≡v≡)/	うれしい、きゃー
d=(^o^)=b	うれしい、ぐー
ε=v(*^v^)/	うれしい、きゃー
(@^o^@)	うれしい
('`舞`')	うれしい、むふふ

## • Bashful/Angry (18 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^ゞ	てるる、ほりほり
f(^_^)	てるる、てへ
(#^^#)	てるる、にこっ、 ぼっ
(*^^*)	てるる、えへっ
(//v//)	てるる、てれ
(*^)	てるる、てへっ
(="ω`=)	てるる、てへっ
(*`D`*)	てるる、こまる、 てれ
:p	てるる、てへっ
('V')	てるる、うぶぶ
v(*`D`')ノ	おこる、こら、 こるあ、こるあ
o--)=o☆	おこる、ぼんち
(ノ^ノ)ノ	おこる、ちゃぶだい
(-#)	おこる、こらっ
:(	おこる、ふまん
ψ('◇')ψ	おこる、こら
(ノ^△')ノ	おこる、こらっ
(●`ε`●)	おこる、ぶんぶん、 むかっ

## • Cry/Sad (19 items)

Smiley	Reading
(>_<)	なく、あいた、 いたい、いてー、 ひえー
(T^T)	なく、うるうる
(T_T)	なく、しくしく
(/_)	なく、しくしく
(+_+)	かなしい、びくっ
(x_x)	かなしい、がっくり
(/__)	なく、ぐすん
(つД`)	なく、ぐすん
〇 _ _	かなしい、がっくし
(´ω´)	かなしい、しょぼん
(;O)	なく、しくしく
(>_<)	なく
(.:	なく、しくしく
(T-T)	なく、なき、 うるうる
(TOT)	なく、なき、 うるうる
(/__)	なく、いたい
:<	なく、かなしい
(;´Д<)	なく、なき、ぐすん
´·(ノД´)´·	なく、えーん

## • Surprise (28 items)

Smiley	Reading
(*_*)	おどろき、びくっ
(..?)	おどろき、めがてん
(..)	おどろき、めがてん
(´-´)	おどろき、うーん

Smiley	Reading
(@_@)	おどろき、びくっ
(-;)	おどろき、ぎくっ
(-☆)	おどろき、きらーん
(□□)!!	おどろき、がーん
(´o´;)	おどろき、ほかーん
Σ(□□)!	おどろき、びくくり、 がーん、ぎく
(□◇;)	おどろき、えっ
(´□´;)	おどろき、えっ
(´□´)	おどろき、えっ
(((((´Д´))))	おどろき、がくがく
(=.=)	おどろき、ぎくっ、 てつや
(.:.)	おどろき、めがてん
(´o´)	おどろき、ぎくっ、 ぎょ
(´o´;	おどろき、ぎくっ、 ぎょ
(@_@。	おどろき、びくっ、 ぎょっ
(´Д´)	おどろき、ほかーん
(´_´)	おどろき、うーん
(´o´;	おどろき、めがてん
(.:.)	おどろき、めがてん
(.:.;	おどろき、めがてん
(.o.)	おどろき、めがてん
(´o´)/	おどろき、おおー、 びくくり
(´o´;;	おどろき、ぎくっ
Σ(□□;)	おどろき、がーん

## • Doubtful/Impatient (21 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^^;)	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
(?_?)	ぎもん、なぜ
(.-;)	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
w=(´o´)=w	ぎもん、ばたばた
σ(´^_´)?	ぎもん、えっ
(;_;)ゞ	ぎもん、じー
(O><)(;><)O	あせり、あたふた
(´Д´;::´Д´)	あせり、あたふた
^^;	あせり、ぎくっ
(^^;;	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
(^_^)	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
(^_^;	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
(_;)	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
(¥¥;	ぎもん、ぎくっ、 あせ
(*_*;	あせり、びくっ
^_^;	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ
(?_?;	ぎもん、ぎくっ、 なぜ
ε=┐(´_´)┐	あせり、にげる
(´∇´;)	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ、えっ
((O><O))	あせり、じたばた
(´D´)	あせり、ぎくっ、 あせ

## • Others (61 items)

Smiley	Reading
(^▽^@)♪♪♪	うたう
(´◇´)ゞ	りょうかい、 おっけー、らじゃ
m(_)_m	べこり
(._.)	べこり
<(_)>	ありがと、おねがい、 ごめん、べこり
≡≡≡^(*_*)ノ	いそぐ、にげる
(^_^^)!!!!!!)!!!!!!	こそこそ
p(^_~)q	がんばれ、ふあいと
;)	ういんく
(^_~)	ういんく
(´∀´)イイ	いい
(^人^)	かんしゃ、 ありがどう
!(^^)!	びんぼーん
ヽ(^^)	よしよし、おしい
(*≧m≦*)	ぶっ
(σ´∀´)σ	げっつ
(￣ー)	にやり
(´∀´)っ	どうぞ
(^^)旦~	どうぞ、おちゃ
(μ´□´)μ	きて、かもん、 おいで
♪~(´ε´)	くちぶえ
(´_´)y~~	たばこ
(´·ω´)	しゃきーん
c(´∀´)o	せーふ
(.-;)y-~	いっぶく
(.-;)y-~~	いっぶく

Smiley	Reading
(~ ~)	うまい、たべる
(人)	おねがい
(^ ^)人(^ ^)	かんばい、なかま、 たっち
(i) \ (^ ^)	よしよし
(^ ^ ^) o O	つんつん
~~(m' D' )m	たすけて
~~(m' V' )m	いひひ
o ( _ _ ) X X X	めもめも、かきかき

Smiley	Reading
( ^ V ^ ) ももも	もしもし
( ' □ )	あーん
丿 ( ^ V ; ) 丨	やれやれ
( ' ^ ; )	はあ、ためいき
( ; _ ) = 3	ためいき
( - ; )	うーん
( ' - )	ふぶん、じまん
( ' ー )	よだれ
( ー + ) ヲ	ぶっ

Smiley	Reading
( _ )	ほへー
( o )	ほへー
( p _ )	むしめがね
( - )	じとっ
( - )	じとっ
( - ) 凸	ちちち
( . )	どれどれ
[ 壁 ] _ )	ちらっ
( + o + )	いたい

Smiley	Reading
( - ) zzz	ねてる、ねる
( _ ) o O	ねむい
( ' _ ; )	ぶーん
( U o U )	ねむい
( ^ ( I ) ^ )	くま
U ^ I ^ U	いぬ
ホィッ( _ _ ) /	ほい
\ ( ' V , ' ) /	よだれ
> ^ ) ) ) ) 彡	さかな

\* Some may differ from actual displays.

## Multiaccess combinations

Availability of operations of processes generated/performed for each operation currently in progress is as follows.

- In i-mode (i-mode connection) includes communication using i-Channel and i-concier (except information reception), Full Browser and data broadcasting site.
- i-mode mail reception includes reception of MessageR/F, i-Channel and i-concier information.

○ : New operations are available △ : New operations are available depending on the condition × : New operations are unavailable

Current status		During a voice call	During a videophone call	In i-mode	In data communication (Packet)	In data communication (64K)	
Processes that occur or are performed	Voice call	Send	△*1	×	○	×	
		Receive	△*1, 2, 3	△*2, 3, 4	○	○	△*2, 3, 4
	Videophone call	Send	×	×	○*8	×	×
		Receive	△*2, 3, 4	△*2, 3, 4	△*9	△*2, 6	△*2, 3, 11
	i-mode	Connect	○	×	△*10	×	×
	i-mode mail	Send	○	×	○	×	×
		Receive	○*5	×	○	×	×
	SMS	Send	○	×	○	○	×
		Receive	○*5	○*5	○	○	○*5
	Data communication (Packet)	Send	○	×	×	×	×
		Receive	○	×	×	×	×
	Data communication (64K)	Send	×	×	×	×	×
		Receive	△*3, 6, 7	△*3, 6, 7	△*6, 7	△*6, 7	△*6, 7

\*1 During a call, a subscriber to Call Waiting can make or receive a call to/from another party.

\*2 Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service, if subscribed to, can be used.

\*3 When Set arrival act is Activate, Arrival call act is used.

\*4 When Call waiting is Activate, you can answer an incoming call after disconnecting the current call or communication.

\*5 The ring tone does not sound.

\*6 Recorded as a missed call.

\*7 If Call Forwarding Service is active and Ring time is "0 Sec.", it is available by Call Forwarding Service.

\*8 You are disconnected from i-mode.

\*9 Operate according to DataSession arv. act.

\*10 Connecting to i-concier or data broadcasting site is available.

\*11 Recorded as a missed call when Call waiting is Activate.

## Multitask combinations

The following table indicates whether an item in New Task start menu can be activated combined with the currently running function/group.

- Functions that can be activated may be unavailable depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

○ : Available △ : Partilly available × : Unavailable

Menu items \ Executing functions/group	Dial	Mail	i-mode/ i-concier	i-appli	Phonebook & Logs	Data Box	LifeKit/ Osaifu-Keitai	Accessory	Settings	Music/1Seg	Silent mode ON/OFF
During a voice call	×	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	×
During a videophone call	×	△	△	△	△	×	△	△	△	△	×
In data communication (Packet)	○	△	×	○	○	△	○	○	○	△	○
In data communication (64K)	×	△	△	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	×
Mail	○	△	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-mode	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
i-appli	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	○	○	△	○
Phonebook & Logs	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	○	○	△	○
Data Box	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	△	○	△	○
LifeKit	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
Accessory	○	○	○	○	○	△	○	△	○	△	△
Settings & NW services	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
MUSIC	○	○	○	○	△	△	△	△	○	△	○
Osaifu-Keitai	○	△	△	△	○	△	△	△	○	△	○
User information	○	○	○	○	△	○	○	○	○	○	○
i-concier	○	○	△	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

## Services available for the FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (Not provided for those who do not require Directory assistance service)	104 (no area code)
Sending telegrams (charged : telegram fee)	115 (no area code)
Time (charged)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charged)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster recorded message service (charged)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (charged : service + call)	106 (no area code)

### ✓INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) per call (as of May, 2009).
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), the call charge is billed together with a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen including tax). This service is available without charge for those visually impaired or physically disabled in the upper body. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a land-line phone (as of May, 2009).
- Customers who use Call forwarding from a land-line phone whose forwarding destination is a mobile phone, may still hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or turned OFF due to the settings.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a land-line phone or a payphone to a FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal is applicable to "Emergency Location Report". When making an emergency call to 110, 119, 118, etc., information of your location (location information) is automatically informed to an emergency call receiving organization such as police. For some locations and/or wave reception conditions, the emergency call receiving organization cannot recognize the correct location.

When the caller ID is hidden for the call, i.e., by appending "184" to the dialed number, none of location information or your phone number is notified; however, the organization may acquire the location information and phone number regardless of your settings, if they have determined that such information is necessary for the protection of life etc. The area and timing of implementing "Emergency Location Report" vary by the preparatory state of respective emergency call receiving organizations.

- When calling to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone and give your phone number and your current location precisely since the police or fire department has to call you back for confirmation. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, do not move when making the call and do not turn OFF the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- For some areas you are calling from, you are not connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or land-line phone in that case.

## Introduction of options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the area.

For details, contact a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02\*<sup>1</sup>
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01\*<sup>2</sup>
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Battery Pack F09
- In-Car Holder 01
- Desktop Holder F30
- Back Cover F39
- Carry Case S 01
- FOMA USB Cable\*<sup>3</sup>
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02\*<sup>3</sup>

- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01<sup>\*4</sup>/P02<sup>\*4</sup>
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01<sup>\*4</sup>
- Earphone Plug Adapter 01
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001<sup>\*4</sup>
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001<sup>\*5</sup>/P002<sup>\*5</sup>
- Stereo Earphone Set P001<sup>\*5</sup>
- Earphone/Microphone 01
- Stereo Earphone Set 01
- Remote controller with microphone F01<sup>\*4</sup>
- Earphone Terminal P001<sup>\*5</sup>
- Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use<sup>\*1</sup>
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna<sup>\*6</sup>
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)<sup>\*6</sup>
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver 01<sup>\*4</sup>

\*1 Charging battery using AC adapter→P45

\*2 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to use/charge F-08A.

\*3 If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

\*4 Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 is required to connect to F-08A.

\*5 Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 and Earphone Plug Adapter P001 are required to connect to F-08A.

\*6 Use this only in Japan.

## Playing moving pictures using FOMA terminal, PC, etc.

You can play moving pictures (MP4 format) created with a PC etc. on FOMA terminal by recording it in microSD card. And, you can play moving pictures (MP4 format) shot with FOMA terminals on a PC by data-transferring by microSD card, mail attachment, etc.

- Moving picture file shot by FOMA terminal→P178
- MP4 format that can be played on FOMA terminal→P259
- Playing data in microSD card→P272

\* For compatible external devices, refer to the following website from a PC.

FMWORLD (<http://www.fmworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→動画再生機能の対応状況 (Support of moving picture playing function)

- To play moving pictures recorded in microSD card, save to the specific folders using FOMA F series SD utility etc.
- microSD card folder structure→P270

Updating the microSD card information→P275

\* For SD utility of FOMA F series, refer to the following website from a PC.

FMWORLD (<http://www.fmworld.net/>)→携帯電話 (Mobile phone)→データリンクソフト (Data link software)

### ❖ Introduction of moving picture playing software

Playing moving pictures on a PC (MP4 format) requires QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer, Inc. QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the following website.

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operating procedure, refer to the website shown above.

## Troubleshooting

- Check for the necessity of software update first, and update the software if necessary. →P383
- When checking the following items not to improve the state, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual or make a call to DOCOMO-specified repair office.

### ■ Power supply and charging

#### ● FOMA terminal cannot be turned ON.

- Is the battery pack installed correctly? →P42
- Is the battery exhausted? →P44, 47

#### ● FOMA terminal cannot be charged (the charging light does not turn on or blinks).

- Is the battery pack installed correctly? →P42
- Are the adapter and FOMA terminal set correctly?  
Is the AC adapter connector securely inserted to FOMA terminal or the desktop holder (optional) when you use AC adapter (optional)? Is AC adapter's power plug inserted to the outlet or cigarette lighter socket correctly? →P45, 46
- Is the charging jack of FOMA terminal dirty when you use desktop holder? If it is dirty, clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- If you make a call, perform communication, or operate other function for a long time while charging the battery pack, FOMA terminal may become hot and the light may blink. In this case, try again after the terminal temperature dropped.

### ■ Operations and screens

#### ● FOMA terminal etc. become hot while operating/charging.

While operating or charging, or if you use i-appli, videophone call, 1Seg watching, etc. for a long time while charging the battery, FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter may become hot. There is no problem about safety and continue to use it.

#### ● The operation time provided by the battery pack is short.

- Is your terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area? Out of service area, many powers are consumed to search available radio waves.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack varies by the operating environment and battery pack's deterioration.
- The battery pack is a consumable part. Each time it is charged, time available with each charging reduces. Even the full charge state, when the operation time is too short, purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.

#### ● Turning the power off or restarting automatically happens.

If the jack of battery pack is dirty, the contact may become poor and the power may shut OFF. If it is dirty, clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

#### ● No operations are performed when pressing keypad.

Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Side key hold, Lock on close/Lock when immobile? →P100, 101, 109

#### ● The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

When large amount of data is saved in FOMA terminal or transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed.

#### ● The recognition of UIM is not performed successfully.

Is UIM installed in the right direction? →P40

#### ● The display is dim.

- Is Light time-out or Brightness of Display & Key light changed? →P88
- Is Power saving mode set? →P89
- Is 1Seg ECO mode set to ON? →P199

#### ● The images, melodies, etc. set in each function do not operate, and operate by default setting.

Is UIM used when downloading images, melodies, etc. installed to FOMA terminal? →P40

### ■ Calls and sounds

#### ● Calls cannot be made using the keypads.

Have you activated All lock, Omakase Lock, Self mode, Keypad dial lock, Lock on close/Lock when immobile? →P100, 101, 102, 103, 109

#### ● The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Call alert volume of Adjust volume set to "Silent"? →P80
- Have you activated Public mode (Drive mode), Silent mode, Self mode or Privacy mode? →P63, 82, 102, 103
- Is Specified caller, Anonymous caller, Ring alert delay or Unregistered caller set? →P111, 112, 113
- Is Ring time for Voice Mail service or Call Forwarding Service "0 Sec."? →P318, 319

- Is Greeting msg resp time "0 Sec."?→P64
- Is Delayed time(Sec) in Auto answer setting "0 sec."?→P306

● **Calls are not connected (Even when moving, "圏外 (out of service area)" does not disappear or although radio waves are enough, making/receiving calls is unavailable).**

- Turn the power off and on, or remove and attach battery pack or UIM.→P40, 42, 47
- Even when the signal meter on your FOMA terminal indicates there are strong radio waves, due to the type of radio waves, making/receiving calls may be unavailable. Move to call again.
- Is Specified caller, Anonymous caller or Unregistered caller set?→P111, 112, 113
- Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/emails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. In this case, "Please wait for a while" appears and the caller hears a busy tone. Move to other place or call again at other time.

● **During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud.**

- Has Listen volume of Adjust volume been changed?→P53, 80
- If you set Voice clear or Voice slowing to ON, the other party's voice becomes easy to hear.→P53

■ **Mail and i-mode**

● **Mail cannot be received automatically.**

- Is Receive option set to "ON"?→P142

● **Connections to i-mode, i-mode mail, i-appli and i-Channel are unavailable.**

- Is Host selection set to other than "i-mode"?→P167
- If subscribing to i-mode while operating, turn FOMA terminal off and on.

●  **continues to blink and does not disappear.**

After/while checking new message in the i-mode Center or sending/receiving mail, i-mode connection is terminated and continues to blink. If data communication is not made, it is automatically interrupted, but if pressing , it can be terminated soon.

■ **Camera, 1Seg and Osaifu-Keitai**

● **Still images and moving pictures taken with the camera are blurred.**

- Check whether clouds or dirt attach to the lens of camera.
- When shooting an object nearby, use auto scene recognition or switch to macro shooting.→P182, 187
- When full auto focus is set to "OFF", activate auto focus manually.→P182
- Shoot in Shake reduce:Auto.→P188
- To shoot a portrait image, use the face detection function.→P189

● **1Seg watching is unavailable.**

- Are you out of terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service area or in a place where airwave is weak?→P194
- Is channel set?→P195

● **Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be deleted.**

- After data in IC card was deleted, delete i-appli. Also, iD 設定アプリ (iD appli) cannot be deleted.→P240
- When data in IC card used by i-appli to delete is not deleted, i-appli may not be deleted. If not deleted, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop.

● **Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable.**

- When removing the battery pack or activating Omakase Lock, IC card functions are unavailable regardless of the IC card lock settings.→P42, 101
- Do you place  mark of FOMA terminal over IC card reader? →P246
- Have you activated IC card lock?→P248

■ **Overseas use**

● **圏外 (out of service area) is displayed, and International roaming service is unavailable.**

- You are out of the international roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength.
- Check whether the service area and telecommunications carrier are available, referring to international service guides such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".
- Using Network search mode, search for a telecommunications carrier available for the service.→P333
- Switch 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO" or any available network after moving from Japan to overseas. If "AUTO" is set in Japan, once turn OFF FOMA terminal and then turn it ON.→P334

● **No incoming voice or videophone calls are received when using overseas.**

- Is DataSession arv. act set to other than "V.phone priority"?→P67
- Is Bar calls at roaming activate?→P335
- Videophone call is unavailable in use of GSM/GPRS network.

● **Making/Receiving calls are unavailable suddenly while using FOMA terminal overseas.**

- Check the total amount of charges at docomo Information Center. For use of International roaming (WORLD WING), the limit of maximum charges for use is set in advance. When exceeding the limit, all services stop. Even if exceeding the limit of maximum charges for use, pay the charges to restart the services.
- Check 3G/GSM setting. When "Auto is set", the specified network is received and the services may not be used. Switch the setting to the network ("3G" or "GSM/GPRS") available for the country or area where you stay.→P334

● **No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/Functions for using contents saved in phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate.**

Even when a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on FOMA terminal unless notified from the network or telecommunications carrier used. And, a notified caller ID is different from that of the caller by some networks or telecommunications carriers used.

■ **Data management/Data display**

● **Data transfer is not performed**

Is USB HUB used? If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.

● **Data saved in microSD card is not displayed.**

- When data is saved on a PC etc., perform to update microSD card information (except WMA file).→P275
- Restore data in microSD card.→P275

● **If trying to display an image,  is displayed instead of it.**

 may be displayed instead of destroyed image data.

● **Attached files are deleted and the images cannot be viewed.**

- Check the setting of Incoming msg. attach.→P143
- Check the setting of Limit Mail Size. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■ **Others**

● **FOMA terminal cannot be turned OFF.**

By pressing  for 10 seconds or more, power can be forcibly turned OFF.

● **The display has afterimages.**

- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, afterimages may remain. Remove the battery pack after turning OFF the power.
- If FOMA terminal is left open for a while with the same screen displayed, afterimages of that screen may remain even after changing the screen for a certain operation.

● **The display has some dots always lit or unlit.**

FOMA terminal displays are manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in FOMA terminals.

● **The sub-display light turns on/does not turn on when picking up FOMA terminal.**

- It operates according to S-disp auto light on.→P89
- The sub-display light turns on by detecting the speed and tilt when lifted. Even if S-disp auto light on is set to "ON", the light may not turn on if FOMA terminal picked up slowly or inclination is not enough.

● **There are differences in lighting color and/or brightness**

- Note that, the following phenomena are caused by characteristics of LEDs used for lighting, not defects of FOMA terminal :
    - The lighting color and/or brightness varies among FOMA terminals or by LEDs.
    - The actual lighting color seems to discord from the lighting color name for some FOMA terminals.
    - Though the lighting color name described indicates the major light source color of the LED, the lighting may appear in a different color because the light source settings are delicately different among functions.
  - Check that the key lighting turns on in "Blueberry", "Kiwi" and "Grape" by Keypad light, and the light turns on in "Color 1", "Color 6" and "Color 11" by Light alert. If one or more of these colors do not turn on, contact a sales outlet such as docomo Shop etc.→P88, 93
- **The light blinks with FOMA terminal closed.**  
Is Indicator light, Time tone. Security indicator or USB mode settings set?→P93, 94, 111, 275

## If error message appears mentioned below

- The "(number)" or "(xxx)" in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.
- **All locked.**  
All lock is ON.→P100
- **Apply secret attribute to mail address and SMS?**  
This message appears when external phonebook entries with secret attribute set are loaded or when secret attribute is set for phonebook entries.→P108
- **Authentication type is not supported.(401)**  
The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified site or website is disabled.
- **Call cost reached limit. Call disconnected./Call cost reached limit. Call on-hold disconnected./Call cost already reached limit. Unable to call.**  
Reset the total calls cost.→P300
- **Cannot execute because of other tasks.**  
When updating pattern data, terminate all other functions in advance.
- **Caution! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender.**  
With Message scan of Set scan set to "Valid", you make an attempt to display SMS containing a phone number and/or URL description. (It does not appear when mopera mail or voice mail reception notification is received in SMS.)
- **Certificate is rejected.(tampered)**  
The site certificate has been altered. Connection is suspended.
- **Cessation of broadcast.**  
The selected channel is stopped.
- **Check address.**  
An incorrect or no mail address was input to the mail group.
- **Check SMS center setting.**  
Setting of SMS Center in SMS settings is incorrect.→P150
- **Connection failed.(403)**  
Failed to connect to the site for a certain reason such as connection rejection.
- **Connection failed.(562)**  
Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions.
- **Connection interrupted.**  
Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.
- **Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.**  
Download has suspended because the data exceeds savable size while downloading i-motion.→P172
- **Continue using i-appli and transmit data? Yes/ Terminate i-appli**  
After "Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?" appears, an attempt was made by i-appli to make communications.
- **Corrupted data or microSD.**  
Accessing microSD card is disabled due to a problem in data saved in the microSD card or the card itself. Install a new microSD card, or format or restore the data.→P269, 275
- **Corrupted data or microSD. Saving to phone memory.**  
When "microSD" is the destination for saving still images or movies and the microSD card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switches to "Phone".
- **Corrupted data.**  
i-appli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar code reader.
- **Corrupted data. Restore default setting?**  
Functions cannot be started until selecting "Yes" to return the default setting.
- **Current UIM is not registered as IC owner. Unable to run/download/update.**  
**Details are given in IC owner in Osaifu-Keitai Menu**  
This message appears when UIM is replaced after registering as IC owner and an attempt is made to download, update or activate Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.→P247
- **Data in IC card is full. Unable to run/download/update. Delete service?**  
Memory space in IC card is insufficient when starting, upgrading or downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli. Delete data from IC card according to instructions on the screen and delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.→P240
- **Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?**  
This message appears when communications using i-appli are made very frequently in a predetermined period of time. Select "Yes" to continue using, "No" to continue without communications or "Terminate i-appli" to stop.
- **Delete software and IC card data?**  
Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which also deletes data in the IC card is included in the i-appli. Select "Yes" to delete the i-appli and the data in the IC card.

- **Dial callout restricted.**  
This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad dial lock ON.→P103
- **Error in IC card data. Unable to delete software.**  
Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli containing errors in the IC card data cannot be deleted.
- **Error in image. Does not work correctly.**  
Unable to display the Flash graphics due to image error.
- **Error in storage area. Unable to use password manager. Quitting.**  
Password save/quote is disabled due to an error in Password manager memory space.
- **Failed to activate.**  
Activate 1Seg could not be activated due to an error in activation or station selection process.
- **Failed to read/clear call cost information.**  
UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.→P40
- **i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error.**  
The i-appli stand-by display has been closed due to an unpermitted operation or i-appli action.
- **Infrared/iC transmission Connection interrupted.**  
An error occurred during communication or transmission. Do not move FOMA terminal from the right location before data sending/receiving completes.→P281
- **Infrared/iC transmission Failed to connect via authentication.**  
Sending or receiving all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct.→P282, 283
- **Infrared/iC transmission No response. Retry data exchange?**  
A certain period of time elapsed since communication starts, but no communicating parties are found. Locate your and the other party's FOMA terminals or Bluetooth devices correctly.→P281
- **Infrared/iC transmission No UIM, requested software failed to start.**  
Even if an i-appli To is set to data received, it is not activated due to UIM operation restriction.→P40
- **Input error (205)**  
Input data for the site or website is incorrect.
- **Insert UIM.**  
UIM may not be correctly installed or the card may not be damaged.→P40
- **Insufficient memory.**  
Operation interrupted due to insufficient memory. If it appears frequently, once turn OFF FOMA terminal and then turn it ON.
- **Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)**  
Cannot be connected because of the error in the site or website. Make sure the URL.
- **Invalid data. Unable to save.**  
Data received through infrared communications/iC transmission cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.
- **Invalid data.(xxx)**
  - The specified site or website does not support i-mode.
  - Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
  - Sending auto-send message failed.
- **Invalid microSD. Unable to use DRM function.**  
Accessing the authentication area in microSD card is disabled for a certain reason. Data compatible with data transfer cannot be saved to microSD card with errors.
- **Invalid UIM. Requested service not available.**  
Operation is disabled by UIM operation restriction.→P40
- **Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.**  
i-appli cannot start by UIM operation restriction.→P40
- **Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?**  
Select "Yes" and set ToruCa auto-read to "ON".
- **以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした (561) Mails could not be sent to following address.(561)()**  
○○@△△△.ne.jp  
Sending i-mode mail to the following address failed : Press  to display the receiver address of the failed message sending. Check the receiver address and retry sending in a place with good radio wave conditions. Mail addresses displayed in the message vary by the destinations.
- **Message kept in center.**  
SMS have already been sent.
- **No content is available.(204)**  
Could not find data at the specified site.
- **No response.(408)**  
Unable to receive a response from a site or website within the specified time and the communication is disconnected. Retry later.
- **Omakase Lock activated.**  
Omakase Lock is ON.→P101
- **Out of 1Seg service area.**
  - Reception fails because you are out of broadcasting service area. Retry the operation in a place with good radio wave conditions.
  - Reception fails because the channel is chargeable or for a certain reason.
- **Out of service area.**  
Unable to perform because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.
- **Page is not found.(404)**  
Make sure the URL is correct.

- **Password is not correct.(401)**  
The user name or password entered on the authentication screen of sites or website is incorrect.
- **Play limit reached. Unable to retrieve.**  
When the replay restriction set to a Music&Video Channel program is exceeded, downloading cannot be resumed.→P211
- **Please wait.**
  - Failure in the voice line/packet communications facilities or congestion in voice line network/packet communications network. Retry later.
  - A call can be made to 110, 119 and 118. However, the connection is not established by some conditions.
- **Please wait for a while (Packet)**  
Failure in the packet communications facilities or congestion in packet communications network. Retry later.
- **PUK blocked.**  
Contact docomo Shop sales outlet.
- **Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.**  
Unable to receive all SMS because an error occurred during reception. Please perform the Check new message function for SMS in a place with good radio wave conditions again.→P150
- **Registration is in progress. (554)**  
User registration with i-mode is in process. Retry later.
- **Remotely Controllable services are not subscribed.**  
Voice Mail service or Call forwarding service has not subscribed yet. A subscription is required separately.
- **Replay period has not yet started.**  
Replaying is disabled as it is still before the replay period set to Music&Video Channel, music data or i-motion. Check the program information or the detail information.→P211, 218, 278
- **Requested software unavailable.**  
i-appli cannot be started because of an error in i-appli. Starting i-appli To is disabled if there is a problem in i-appli settings or start-up conditions.
- **Restarted. Removing battery with power ON or unclean UIM metal part/battery may cause restart. Regular cleaning recommended.**  
This message appears when you remove the battery pack and install it again with the power left ON. This may also appear if the jack of battery pack or metallic part of UIM is soiled, but it is not a malfunction. Clean regularly metallic parts of the battery pack and UIM.
- **Root certificate has expired. Connect?**  
The CA certificate has expired. (→P168)  
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P49
- **Root certificate is not valid.**  
FOMA terminal certificate is invalidated by setting. Change the setting.→P168
- **Run software and delete data in IC card. Then delete software.**  
Delete the data in the IC card in advance to delete the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.
- **Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.**  
INBOX is full. Save the data from INBOX into FOMA terminal or delete it.→P283
- **Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update. Delete a service?**  
Download or update of similar Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is disabled before deleting the existing one. Select "Yes" and delete saved Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.
- **Service is not subscribed.**
  - You are not an i-mode subscriber. You need to subscribe to use the service.
  - If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power OFF and then turn ON.
- **Service unavailable.**  
SMS service is unavailable.
- **Services are full. MUSIC of overwritten service is unable to play. Overwrite?**  
The service of Uta-hodai that can be saved exceeds the limit. Select "Yes" to overwrite from services with the oldest replay expiration. Also, music data downloaded from overwritten services becomes unavailable.
- **Software already updated.**  
The i-appli has already been upgraded to the latest version.
- **Software terminated due to security error.**  
i-appli ended due to an unpermitted operation or i-appli action.
- **Some data are needed to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?**  
This appears if there is expired Uta-hodai when an attempt is made to play music with Music player. Select "Yes" to update music data (Packet communication for updating the data is charged). When "No" is selected, expired Uta-hodai becomes unavailable.→P215
- **SSL/TLS session cannot be established.**  
SSL/TLS session was interrupted due to a session error or an authentication error on the server side.
- **SSL/TLS session failed.**  
A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL/TLS session. Session is suspended.
- **This certificate has expired. Connect?**  
The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. →P168  
This may appear when date and time are not set or wrong.→P49

- **This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?**  
CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name.→P168
- **This data may not be replayed.**  
i-motion or movie file format is not supported on FOMA terminal.
- **This site is not certified. Connect?**  
The site certification is not supported by FOMA terminal.
- **This software contains an error.**  
Unable to import because i-αplli data contains an error.
- **This software is currently unavailable for use.**  
Using i-αplli is stopped by the IP (Information Provider).
- **This UIM cannot be recognized.**  
UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty.→P40
- **Time out**  
The i-mode Center is busy. Retry later.
- **Time reset. Unable to download/play data. Set auto time adjustment ON in Date & Time and restart phone.**  
With Auto time adjust "OFF" in Set date and time, removing the battery pack or leaving it exhausted for a long time may cause the date and time to be deleted.→P49
- **Too many applications running. Quit some applications and try again.**  
Function cannot be started due to a lack of memory space. Retry after quitting other functions.
- **Too much text entered. Entry uncompleted.**  
An attempt is made to save an item containing characters exceeding the limit selected from a site etc. to phonebook. Press  to display the phonebook registration screen with excess characters erased.
- **Transmission failed.(552)**  
Failed to transmit the i-mode mail because of an error of the i-mode Center. Retry later.
- **UIM full.**  
UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete or move SMS in UIM to FOMA terminal.→P151
- **Unable to check new messages.**  
Please retry in a place with good radio wave conditions. If the error persists, retry later.
- **Unable to delete some applications in IC card. Delete others?**  
i-αplli items to be deleted include Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αplli that cannot be deleted because its related data cannot be deleted from the IC card. To delete other i-αplli items, select "Yes".
- **Unable to play. Connect phone to PC and start application to update music if necessary.**  
The music data cannot be replayed because it already expired, its replay expiration cannot be confirmed or information specific to FOMA terminal is changed due to a trouble, repair or replacement of the terminal. To play, check that it does not expire using a PC and connect FOMA terminal to the PC for synchronization.→P213
- **Unable to retrieve the requested URL.(504)**  
Failed to connect to the specified site etc. for a certain reason.
- **"○○○.ne.jp"宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません (555) Unable to send. "○○○.ne.jp" is not available temporarily.(555)**  
i-mode Center is busy. Please wait for a while and retry. The domain name displayed in the message varies by the receiver.
- **Unable to shoot serially.**  
You cannot shoot serially because of insufficient memory space. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.
- **Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**  
As FOMA terminal is performing communication, data transfer mode cannot be set. Try again after the communication ends.
- **Unable to update pattern definitions.**  
Updating the pattern definitions has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with good radio wave conditions.
- **Unable to use data type.**  
Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be moved/copied from a microSD card to FOMA terminal or searched for.
- **URL address changed.(301)**  
The site or website automatically performs URL transfer or the URL was changed.
- **URL address is not valid.(xxx)**  
Make sure the URL.
- **Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.**  
This message appears when a very large volume of data was sent or received in a predetermined period of time with the i-mode packet flat-rate service used. Connection may be disabled for a predetermined period of the time; use i-mode after a while.
- **Work area full. Quit other applications.**  
For the lack of memory space for operation, quit other applications.
- **You have no certificate. Connect?**  
The user certificate has not been downloaded.

## Warranty and After-Sales Service

### ❖ Warranty

- FOMA terminal is provided with a written warranty. Make sure that you receive it. Check the written contents and items such as "shop name/date of purchase" and keep it in a safe place. If it does not contain the necessary information, immediately contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Since troubles, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal may cause contents in the phonebook etc. to be modified or deleted. DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the phonebook data etc., in case. And, in repairing etc. of FOMA terminal, information downloaded through i-mode or i-appli is not transferred to repaired FOMA terminal with some exceptions according to the copyright law.
  - \* The data of phonebook, i-motion or data used by i-appli in FOMA terminal can be saved in microSD card.
  - \* This FOMA terminal allows you to save phonebook and other data in Data Center by using Data Security Service (a charged service requiring subscription).
  - \* If a PC is available, you can use DOCOMO keitai datalink (→P341) and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer stored contents in phonebook etc. to the PC and store.

### ❖ After-Sales Service

#### ■ When problems occur

Before requesting repair, read the section on "Troubleshooting" (→P374). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

#### ■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office. Be sure to check the opening hours of the office before you go. Also, you must bring the warranty. Note that, repair may take longer time depending on the state of damage.

#### ■ In the warranty period

- FOMA terminal is repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.

- The warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber is charged for the repair of items not covered in the warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident, neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DOCOMO-specified.
- The subscriber is charged for the repair of the color LCD or connector if broken after purchase.

#### ■ Repairs may not be possible in the following cases.

- When judged as malfunction due to moisture at the repair office (e.g. when detected in a moisture seal reaction)
- When corrosion due to moisture, condensation, perspiration, etc. is detected, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed (repairs may not be possible if external connection jack, earphone/microphone jack or liquid crystal panel is damaged, or the terminal outer case is lifted)
- \* Even in case that a repair is possible, since those conditions are outside the range of the warranty, a repair is charged.

#### ■ After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

#### ■ Replacement parts

- Replacement parts (parts required to maintain the product functions) are basically kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. However, repair may not be possible due to lack of repair parts etc. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Call the contacts listed on the back of this manual, "Repairs".

#### ■ Notes

- Do not modify FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - May cause fire, injury or damage.
  - Modified FOMA terminals etc. are repaired only after the customer accepts that the modified parts are to be restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- The following cases may be regarded as modifications.
  - A sticker etc. is put on the LCD or keypad part
  - FOMA terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
  - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO's genuine parts

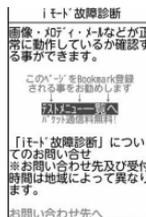
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to FOMA terminal. The inscription stickers certify that FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that, if stickers are removed intentionally or reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- Function settings and information such as total calls may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. Should that happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece, speaker, etc. of FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- This terminal is waterproof, but if the inside of FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn the power off and remove the battery pack, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of FOMA terminal.

#### ▲ Phonebook, and downloaded data, etc. ▼

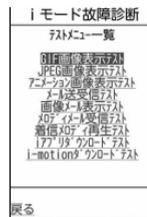
- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility whatsoever for changes of information or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be changed or lost when changing models or repairing FOMA terminal. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for such incidents. DOCOMO may, at its option, replace your mobile phone instead of repairing it. Data downloaded to FOMA terminal including images and ring tones and data you created is transferred only at repairing (Some data may not be transferred. Also cannot be transferred depending on the failure level).
  - \* Depending on the size of data saved in FOMA terminal, transfer may take a time or be disabled.

## i-mode fault diagnosis site

Using your FOMA terminal, you can check whether sending/receiving of messages and downloading of images and melodies are normally performed.



TOP screen



- When FOMA terminal is assumed to have malfunctions as the result of the diagnosis, contact the phone number given in "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

## Software update

### Updating software

This function makes network connection to check for the necessity of updating FOMA terminal software and, when necessary, downloads a part of the software through packet communication\* to update the software. You can improve function/operability of FOMA terminal by updating software that is important for the terminal operations.

When software update is required, the information is posted in "お客様サポート (Support)" on NTT DOCOMO website or iMenu.

\* Packet communication for software update is free.

- Software may be updated in the following 3 methods

Automatic update : Download new software automatically, and overwrite at the time specified in advance.

Immediate update : Update on the spot as preferred.

Reserved update : Specify the day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time-slot.

#### ✓INFORMATION

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. The update may fail.
- Software update can be done even when various data, such as a phonebook registered in FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data, are remaining; note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DOCOMO recommends backing up necessary data. However some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.
- Software update is available even when Host selection is other than "i-mode".
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power (→P47).
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases.
  - When UIM is not inserted

- When the battery is not fully charged
- When the power is OFF
- When 圏外 (out of service area) is displayed
- When date and time are not set
- While using other functions
- When PIN code is being entered
- When PIN is blocked
- In Omakase Lock
- In Self mode
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when PIN1 code ON/OFF is "ON", PIN code entry screen does not appear at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating.
- Making/Receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during software update. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- To update software, an SSL session is established with a server (our site). Validate the certificate using Certificate. This is set to Valid by default.→P168
- It is recommended that software update be executed in good radio wave conditions with three bars of the antenna icon displayed (→P47) and the terminal not moved. If radio wave conditions become weaker during software download or the download is stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave conditions.
- An icon indicating stored mail in i-mode Center disappears after software update. Also, when Receive option is "ON" and mail is received during software update, the screen that notifies arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update is completed.→P129
- When updating software, your private information concerning FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software update managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When software update has failed, "Rewrite failed" appears and all operation becomes unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- Software cannot be updated overseas.

## ◆ Updating software automatically <Set auto-update>

You can set if you update automatically or to be notified that software update is necessary.

- Set auto-update is set to "Auto-update", Day is set to "Unspecified" and Time is set to "03:00" by default.

1 [MF] [Settings & NW services] 7 3 ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Set auto-update" ▶ Set required items ▶



- When setting Set auto-update to "Auto-update", set Day and Time to perform Auto-update. When "Disable" is set, select "Yes" on a confirmation screen of auto-update disability.

## ◆ When update is necessary

- When setting Set auto-update to "Auto-update", the update file is downloaded automatically, and (rewrite notice icon) appears on the stand-by display. If you select (rewrite notice icon), the start time of update can be confirmed or changed.
- When setting Set auto-update to "Only notification", (update notification icon) appears.→P384 "Starting Software update"

<Example> Confirm the time of update

1 ▶ Select (rewrite notice icon)

The day of the week and the time to update are displayed. Select "OK" to return to the stand-by display, and (rewrite notice icon) disappears.



Changing time : "Change" ▶ Authenticate ▶ Set required items ▶

Rewriting immediately : "Now rewrite" ▶ Authenticate

The next procedure→P385 Step 2 and the following steps in "Updating software immediately"

## ✓INFORMATION-----

- (rewrite notice icon) appears in the following cases.
  - When the downloading of the update file is completed
  - When update was unavailable since other functions were activated
  - When update is canceled, or update start time is changed
- (update notification icon) appears in the following cases.
  - When there is notification from DOCOMO
  - When the software update screen appears
  - When reserved update fails or reserved update is canceled
  - When the reservation is canceled (except when Delete all data is performed)

## ◆ Starting Software update

You can start software update in two ways : selecting (update notification icon) on the stand-by display or pressing an item number from menu.

<Example> Start by selecting update notification icon

1 ▶ Select (update notification icon) ▶ "Yes" ▶ Authenticate



Software update screen

- When "No" is selected, a clearing confirmation screen of update notification icon appears.

Starting from the menu: **[MENU]** [Settings & NW services]

**[7]** **[3]** ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Update"

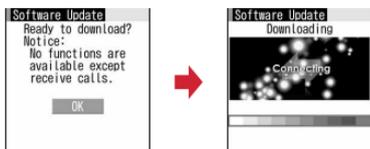
- When update is necessary, "Update is needed" is displayed. Select "Now update" (→P385) or "Reserve" (→P385).
- When update is not necessary, "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before." is displayed. Press **[OK]** and continue using.

## ◆ Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

### 1 "Now update" on Software Update screen ▶ After about 5 seconds, download starts automatically

Pressing **[OK]** starts downloading immediately.



- To cancel downloading, press **[Cancel]**.

When the server is busy :



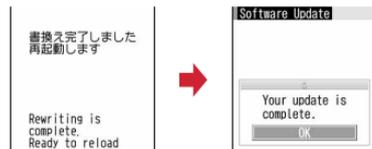
- Select "Reserve" and enter the date for update.→P385

### 2 Download is complete and after about 5 seconds, software updating is automatically started

Pressing **[OK]** starts rewriting immediately. While rewriting, only the operation of pressing **[Power]** for 8 seconds or more to turn OFF the power is available.



### 3 Automatically reloaded after the completion of update ▶ **[OK]**



## ◆ Updating software at pre-specified time <Reserved update>

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

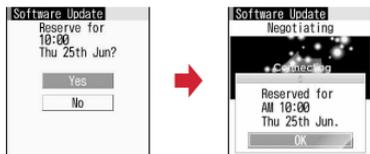
<Example> Selecting from displayed options

## 1 On Software Update screen, "Reserve"

Available dates for reservation are shown by the time of the server.



## 2 Select preferred day and time-slot ▶ "Yes"



**Reserving from other than displayed options :**

### ① "Others"

### ② Select preferred day

Reservation availability for each time period is displayed. Press  to display description.

### ③ Select preferred time-slot

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

### ④ Select preferred day and time-slot ▶ "Yes"

## 3

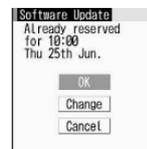
When the setting of the reservation is completed,  (reservation icon) appears on the stand-by display.

## ❖ Checking/Changing/Canceling reservation

<Example> Checking the day and time-slot reserved for software update

## 1 [Settings & NW services]

  ▶ Authenticate ▶ "Update" ▶ Check the contents



- Select "OK" to stop checking.

**Changing the reservation :** "Change"

The selection screen of preferred day appears.

The next procedure→P386 Step ② and the following steps in "Reserving from other than displayed options"

**Canceling reservation :** "Cancel" ▶ "Yes" ▶ 

## ❖ When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the following screen appears and, after about 5 seconds, the terminal automatically starts software update. (Pressing  starts software update immediately). Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the stand-by display. When downloading is completed, software rewriting is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel Software update, press  and select "Yes".

## ✓INFORMATION

- Reservation of software update may be canceled in the following cases.
  - When the battery pack is removed, or exhausted battery has not been charged
  - When Delete all data
  - When reserved date/time comes while activating Omakase Lock
- Note that the software update may not start during software update, or if any other functions are used at the reserved date and time. At the reserved date and time, if packet communication is in progress, the software update starts after the packet communication is completed.

## Scanning function

### Protecting the FOMA terminal from harmful data

Update pattern definition first, then keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or programs that are imported to FOMA terminal by downloading from a website, mails, this function detects data and deletes data or inhibits activation of applications that may cause troubles.

- Pattern definition used for the check is upgraded as needed for a new problem.  
When Set auto-update is "Enable", pattern definitions are automatically downloaded and updated when they are upgraded.
- The Scanning function provides a certain countermeasure against invasion of data which causes some trouble in the mobile phone, when viewing website, receiving messages, etc.  
Note that, if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent those troubles from occurring.
- Different pattern definition is used for different mobile phone models. Also, note that DOCOMO may stop distribution of pattern definition for models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- During pattern definition update, unique information about your FOMA terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the Scanning function managed by DOCOMO). DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scanning function.

- When the correct date and time are not set on FOMA terminal, the pattern definitions cannot be updated.
- Updating pattern definition is stopped by a voice call arrived.

## ◆ Setting Scanning function <Set scan>

With this option set to "Valid", data and programs are checked automatically when they are executed. If hazardous data is detected, a warning is displayed in 5 levels.  
→P388

1  [Settings & NW services] 4 7 3 ▶ Set required items ▶  ▶ "Yes"

Scan : Set whether to enable Scanning function.

Message scan : Set whether to enable the scanning function when SMS is displayed.

## ◆ Updating pattern definition automatically <Set auto-update>

- When the Auto-updating pattern definitions is completed,  appears on the stand-by display. Select the icon, check the message and press .

1  [Settings & NW services] 4 7 2

2 "Enable" ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes" ▶ 

- Select "Disable" if you do not use auto-update.

## ◆ Updating pattern definition

When Set auto-update is "Disable" or  (Auto-update of the latest pattern definition data failed) appears on the stand-by display, manually update the pattern definitions data.

1  [Settings & NW services] 4 7 1 ▶ "Yes" ▶ "Yes"

Downloading and updating of the pattern definitions are started.

## 2

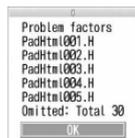
- When updating of pattern definition is not necessary, "Pattern definitions are up-to-date." is displayed. Press  and continue using.

### ◆ Displaying scan results

#### ■ Displaying problem element scanned

##### ① "Detail" while displaying a warning level screen

When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem names are omitted and the total number of the detected problem elements is displayed.



#### ■ Displaying scan results

Warning level	Handling method
<b>Warning level 0</b> 	<b>"OK"</b> : Continue processing of the started application <b>"Detail"</b> : List names of the detected problem elements
<b>Warning level 1</b> 	<b>"Yes"</b> : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles <b>"No"</b> : Continue processing of the started application <b>"Detail"</b> : List names of the detected problem elements
<b>Warning level 2</b> 	<b>"OK"</b> : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles <b>"Detail"</b> : List names of the detected problem elements

Warning level	Handling method
<b>Warning level 3</b> 	<b>"Yes"</b> : Delete data that may cause troubles <b>"No"</b> : Stop processing of the application that may cause troubles <b>"Detail"</b> : List names of the detected problem elements
<b>Warning level 4</b> 	<b>"OK"</b> : Delete data that may cause troubles <b>"Detail"</b> : List names of the detected problem elements

### ✓ INFORMATION

- When the problem factor is detected while downloading Music&Video Channel program and FOMA terminal is turned OFF without checking the warning message, the warning level screen appears next time you display Music&Video Channel screen.
- When a problem element is detected on i-appli set for the stand-by display and the starting i-appli is stopped, i-appli stand-by display is canceled.
- For some problem elements, "Detail" button may not appear.

### ◆ Displaying pattern definition version

1  [Settings & NW services]   

## Main specifications

### Phone

<b>Product name</b>		F-08A
<b>Size</b>		Approx. 109(H)×50(W)×15.4(T) (Unit: mm) (Maximum thickness : Approx. 17.8 mm)
<b>Weight</b>		Approx. 120 g (with battery)
<b>Continuous stand-by time*1, 2, 3</b>	<b>FOMA/3G</b>	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 560 H Moving (Auto) : Approx. 330 H Moving (3G static) : Approx. 360 H
	<b>GSM</b>	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 280 H
<b>Continuous call time*2, 3, 4</b>	<b>FOMA/3G</b>	Voice call : Approx. 200 min. Videophone call : Approx. 110 min.
	<b>GSM</b>	Approx. 200 min.
<b>1Seg watching time*2, 5</b>		Approx. 280 min. (1Seg Eco-mode : Approx. 320 min.)
<b>Charging time*6</b>		AC adapter : Approx. 140 min. DC adapter : Approx. 140 min.
<b>LCD</b>	<b>Type</b>	Display : TFT 262,144 colors Sub-display : Organic EL 1 color
	<b>Size</b>	Display : Approx. 3.0 inches Sub-display : Approx. 0.5 inches
	<b>Number of pixels</b>	Display : 409,920 pixels (480 dots×854 dots) Sub-display : 1,920 pixels (60 dots×32 dots)
<b>Image pickup device</b>	<b>Type</b>	Out-camera : CMOS In-camera : CMOS
	<b>Size</b>	Out-camera : 1/3.2 inches In-camera : 1/10.0 inches
	<b>Number of effective pixels</b>	Out-camera : Approx. 5,200,000 pixels In-camera : Approx. 320,000 pixels
<b>Camera section</b>	<b>Number of recording pixels (Max.)</b>	Out-camera : Approx. 5,000,000 pixels In-camera : Approx. 310,000 pixels
	<b>Zoom (digital)</b>	Out-camera : Up to approx. 16.0× In-camera : Up to approx. 2.0×

<b>Recording section</b>	<b>Savable still images*7</b>	Up to approx. 780 images (default) Up to approx. 2,000 images (after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted)
	<b>Continuous shooting of still images</b>	2-9
	<b>File format for still image</b>	JPEG
	<b>Moving picture shooting time*8</b>	Up to approx. 65 min. (save to phone/default) Up to approx. 106 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 57 min. (save to 64MB microSD card)
	<b>Moving picture file format</b>	MP4
	<b>1Seg recording time</b>	Up to approx. 30 min. (save to phone/after preinstalled data that can be deleted are deleted) Up to approx. 640 min. (save to 2GB microSD card)
<b>Playing music</b>	<b>Continuous play time</b>	i-motion : Approx. 1,285 min.*9 Chaku-uta full® : Approx. 4,624 min.*9, 10 WMA file : Approx. 4,213 min.*10 Music&Video Channel (sound) : Approx. 4,624 min.*10 Music&Video Channel (moving picture) : Approx. 313 min.
		<b>Recording size</b>

\*1 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time when FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally. Stationary continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally remains stationary. Moving continuous stand-by time indicates the average utilization time when FOMA terminal is closed and able to receive radio waves normally with a combination of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" status.

- \*2 Call, communication or stand-by time may be reduced to about half, or 1Seg watching time may be reduced due to battery pack charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc.
- \*3 The call, communication or stand-by times are reduced by making i-mode communications, creating i-mode mail, activating downloaded i-appli, making i-appli stand-by display settings, downloading or playing Music&Video Channel program, playing tune with MUSIC Player, activating or recording 1Seg, etc.
- \*4 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated time that FOMA terminal can send/receive radio waves normally.
- \*5 1Seg watching time indicates the estimated watching time with using Stereo Earphone Set 01 (optional) that FOMA terminal can receive radio waves normally.
- \*6 Charging time indicates the estimated time for charging an empty battery with FOMA terminal turned OFF. Charging with FOMA terminal turned ON requires longer time.
- \*7 The number of savable still images is based on "QCIF(176×144)" for an image size, "Standard" for Quality and 10 Kbytes for a file size.
- \*8 Moving picture shooting time is the time for one movie. It is based on "QCIF(176×144)" for Image size and "STD(Standard)" for Quality. It varies depending on the moving picture to record.
- \*9 AAC format files.
- \*10 Background playing is available.

#### ■ Battery Pack

<b>Quality</b>	Battery Pack F09
<b>Battery used</b>	Li-ion battery
<b>Nominal voltage</b>	3.7V
<b>Nominal capacity</b>	770mAh

#### ❖ Number of still images saved

The number of savable still images varies by Image size, Size restrictions, settings of Quality or saving destination (→P186) or shooting states.

- The following table indicates the number to be displayed in the counter of the still image shooting screen.

#### ■ Number of savable still images (approximate by quality) in F-08A FOMA terminal, microSD card

- "Phone" indicates the number after you delete the preinstalled data that can be deleted. Also, "microSD" indicates a card with capacity of 64 Mbytes.

Image size	Save to	Economy (Approx.)	Standard (Approx.)	Fine (Approx.)
QCIF (176×144)	Phone	2000	2000	2000
	microSD	3870	3870	1935
QVGA (240×320)	Phone	2000	2000	2000
	microSD	1935	1935	1290
VGA (640×480)	Phone	1996	1538	855
	microSD	967	774	430
V-VGA (480×640)	Phone	1996	1538	855
	microSD	967	774	430
Stand-by (480×854)	Phone	1778	1339	790
	microSD	967	645	430
WXGA (768×1280)	Phone	790	595	323
	microSD	430	322	175
FullHD (1080×1920)	Phone	517	395	200
	microSD	276	215	107
3.8M (1456×2592)	Phone	256	180	87
	microSD	138	96	47
5M (1944×2592)	Phone	200	159	75
	microSD	107	86	40

## ❖ Shooting time of moving pictures

The moving picture shooting time available varies by Size restrictions, Quality, Image size, Recording Type, settings of saving destination (→P186) or shooting conditions.

- The following table indicates the time to be displayed in the counter of the moving picture shooting screen.

### ■ Savable shooting time at a time (approximate by quality)

- Restriction size for Msg attach: Large/Small → P186
- Each shooting time is the same regardless of the saving destination.
- With Size restrictions set to None, the shooting time each time is the same as set as the time limit (→P184). However, if the total recording time is shorter than the time limit, the shooting time for one time is the same as the total shooting time.

Size restrictions	Image size	*	LP (Approx.)	STD (Approx.)	HQ (Approx.)	XQ (Approx.)
Msg attach:Small	QCIF (176×144)		50 sec.	28 sec.	18 sec.	10 sec.
			63 sec.	32 sec.	21 sec.	11 sec.
	QVGA (320×240)		28 sec.	15 sec.	10 sec.	4 sec.
			32 sec.	16 sec.	11 sec.	4 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		10 sec.	5 sec.	3 sec.	1 sec.
			11 sec.	5 sec.	4 sec.	1 sec.
(Sound only)		—	242 sec.	121 sec.	—	
Msg attach:Large	QCIF (176×144)		205 sec.	114 sec.	74 sec.	40 sec.
			258 sec.	129 sec.	86 sec.	43 sec.
	QVGA (320×240)		115 sec.	61 sec.	40 sec.	16 sec.
			129 sec.	65 sec.	43 sec.	17 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		42 sec.	21 sec.	14 sec.	5 sec.
			43 sec.	22 sec.	14 sec.	6 sec.
(Sound only)		—	16 min.	495 sec.	—	

\* Video type : Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only

### ■ The total shooting time of moving pictures (approximate by quality) in F-08A FOMA terminal, microSD card

- The value with Size restrictions set to "None". When Size restrictions is set, the total savable shooting time may differ.
- "Phone" indicates the number after you delete the preinstalled data that can be deleted. "microSD" indicates a card with capacity of 64 Mbytes.

Save to	Image size	*	LP (Approx.)	STD (Approx.)	HQ (Approx.)	XQ (Approx.)
Phone	QCIF (176×144)		190 min.	106 min.	68 min.	36 min.
			239 min.	119 min.	79 min.	39 min.
	QVGA (320×240)		106 min.	56 min.	36 min.	14 min.
			119 min.	60 min.	40 min.	15 min.
	VGA (640×480)		38 min.	19 min.	13 min.	306 sec.
(Sound only)		—	920 min.	458 min.	—	
microSD	QCIF (176×144)		103 min.	57 min.	37 min.	20 min.
			130 min.	65 min.	43 min.	21 min.
	QVGA (320×240)		57 min.	30 min.	20 min.	487 sec.
			65 min.	32 min.	21 min.	502 sec.
	VGA (640×480)		20 min.	10 min.	425 sec.	166 sec.
	(Sound only)		21 min.	10 min.	438 sec.	168 sec.
(Sound only)		—	500 min.	249 min.	—	

\* Video type : Video + Voice : Video only : Voice only

## Number of saved/registered/protected items in F-08A

Type	Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Phonebook <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 1,000	—
UIM phonebook	Up to 50	—
Kisekæ Tool <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 50	—
Mail	Received messages <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Up to 1,000
	Sent messages <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Up to 500
	Unsent messages <sup>*1, 2</sup>	Up to 200
	Decome-Anime templates <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 300
Deco-mail templates <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 300	—
Area Mail	Up to 30	Up to 15
SMS in UIM <sup>*3</sup>	Up to 20	—
MessageR <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 100	Up to 50
MessageF <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 50	Up to 25
Bookmark <sup>*4</sup>	Up to 200	—
Screen memo <sup>*1, 4</sup>	Up to 100	Up to 100
DL dictionary	Up to 10	—
Downloaded fonts <sup>*5</sup>	Up to 5	—
Channel list	Up to 10	—
TVlink	Up to 50	—
Programs of Music&Video Channel <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 10	—
Music	Chaku-uta full <sup>®*1</sup>	Up to 100
	Uta-moji Lyrics <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 100
	Playlist	Up to 20
i-appli <sup>*1, 6</sup>	Up to 100	—
ToruCa <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 200	—
Images <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 2,000	—
Moving picture/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound recorder <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 200	—
Playlists of moving picture/i-motion	Up to 100	—

Type	Savable/Recordable number	Protectable number
Melodies <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 500	—
Machi-chara <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 50	—
Chara-den <sup>*1</sup>	Up to 50	—
1Seg <sup>*1</sup>	Video	Up to 10
	Image	Up to 100
Scheduler <sup>*7</sup>	Up to 2,600	—
Notepad	Up to 50	—

\*1 Depending on the size of data or usage status of common memory space, the actual number of items that can be saved and recorded may be fewer.

\*2 The total number of i-mode mail and SMS.

\*3 The total number of received and sent SMS. It does not include the number of SMS report request.

\*4 The total number of i-mode and Full Browser.

\*5 It includes the number of "プリティー桃" stored by default.

\*6 Total number of i-appli and Message i-appli. Up to 5 items of Message i-appli can be saved.

\*7 Total number of schedules, schedules in i-schedule and watching/recording reservation. Up to 100 items of watching/recording reservation in total can be saved.

## Specific absorption rate (SAR) of mobile phone

### ◆ SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA F-08A meets the MIC's<sup>\*1</sup> technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)<sup>\*2</sup> averaged over 10 grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP.<sup>\*3</sup>

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this FOMA F-08A is 1.44 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). The test for SAR was conducted according to the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value. For further information about SAR, please see the websites below.

World Health Organization (WHO) :

<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP :

<http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC :

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>

TELEC :

[http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index\\_e.htm](http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm)

NTT DOCOMO :

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>

FUJITSU LIMITED :

<http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/sar/>

\*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications.

\*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

\*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection.

### ◆ Declaration of Conformity

The product "F-08A" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found at <http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/doc/>.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR<sup>\*</sup> limits<sup>\*\*</sup> for exposure to radio-frequency(RF) energy, which SAR<sup>\*</sup> value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.965W/Kg. While there may be differences between the SAR<sup>\*</sup> levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet<sup>\*\*\*</sup> the EU requirements for RF exposure.

\* The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

\*\* The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/Kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

\*\*\* Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operation positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

## ◆ Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice

---

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions :
  - ① this device may not cause harmful interference, and
  - ② this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications made in or to the radio phone, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, will void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## ◆ FCC RF Exposure Information

---

This model phone meets the U.S. Government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

This model phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. This model phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the FCC of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions as accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output level of the phone.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to prove to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC, when tested for use at the ear, is 1.06W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.776W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements).

While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirements.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Equipment Authorization Search section at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/> (please search on FCC ID VQK-F08A).

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and which positions the handset at a minimum distance of 1.5 cm from the body.

\* In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the general public is 1.6 Watts/kg (W/kg), averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## ◆ Important Safety Information

### AIRCRAFT

Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers flight mode or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

### DRIVING

Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

### HOSPITALS

Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

### PETROL STATIONS

Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

### INTERFERENCE

Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

### Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15 cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pace maker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and does not carry it in a breast pocket.

### Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

### For other Medical Devices :

Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

## Export Administration Regulations

**This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). And, they are also under coverage of Export Administration Regulations of the U.S. When exporting and reexporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan or US Department of Commerce.**

## Intellectual Property Right

### ◆ Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of FOMA terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.

Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Avoid taking pictures of others with FOMA terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

### ◆ Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Deco-mail", "visualnet", "V-live", "i-area", "Chara-den", "i-appli DX", "i-Channel", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "Public mode", "ToruCa", "iD", "2in1", "DCMX", "OFFICEED", "IMCS", "Chokkan Game", "docomo STYLE series" and logos of "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-appli", "Music&Video Channel", "DCMX", "iD" and "HIGH-SPEED" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Vista® and Windows Media® are trademarks or registered trademarks of "Microsoft Corporation" in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- "Catch Phone (Call Waiting Service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.

- This product contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.  
ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan, US and other countries.  
Copyright© 2009 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.  
JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated.  
Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 2003-2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.  
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- Adobe and Adobe Reader are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- FlashFX® Pro™ is a registered trademark of DATALIGHT, Inc.  
FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2009 DATALIGHT, Inc.  
U.S.Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- microSDHC Logo is a trademark.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.
- ATOK + APOT of Justsystem Corporation is installed in this product as Japanese character conversion function.  
"ATOK" "APOT (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology)" are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.
- This equipment is provided with the software licensed by Symbian Software Ltd. or the licensor©1998-2009.  and Symbian OS are trademarks of Symbian Ltd. or the licensor.

**NetFront**



- "Privacy mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU LIMITED.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- Google is registered trademark of Google Inc.
- スーキーパー (Zookeeper) is a trademark or registered trademark of KITERETSU Inc.
- "日英版しゃべって翻訳 for F (J-E Speech Translation for F)" is trademark of ATR-Trek.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- The abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) below are used in this manual.
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise and Ultimate).
  - Windows XP indicates the Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional operating system or Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 indicates the Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional operating system.

## ◆ Others

- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with the technologies of GestureTek, Inc. Copyright<sup>©</sup> 2006-2009, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- "学研モバイル国語辞典 (Gakken Mobile JpnDic)", "学研モバイル和英辞典 (Gakken Mobile JE Dic)", "学研モバイル英和辞典 (Gakken Mobile EJ Dic)", "今日は何の日 (Today's trivia)" and "今日の歴史 (Today in history)" are copyrighted by GAKKEN CO., LTD.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases below.
  - Recording moving pictures and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA  
For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.
- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When downloading licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a "Revocation List" with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you cannot access a content that requires the upgrade.

# MEMO

# Index/Quick Manual

---

Index .....	400
Quick Manual .....	408

# Index

## Using Index

You can also use this index listing function names and keywords as "Alphabetical keyword reference". For functions such as "Save" and "Delete", first search by a function name of the first level (**bold**) and then by an index item of the second layer.

### <Example> Downloading Chara-den

<b>Chara-den</b> .....	65, 265
Adding/Deleting folder.....	276
Deleting.....	279
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	278
<b>Downloading</b> .....	164
Moving.....	277

## A

<b>AC adapter</b> .....	45
<b>Accept/Reject call</b> .....	111
<b>Access shortcuts</b> .....	161
<b>Add icon</b> .....	296
<b>Additional service (Register USSD)</b> .....	325
<b>Adjust volume</b> .....	80
<b>After-Sales Service</b> .....	381
<b>Alarm auto power ON</b> .....	289
<b>Alarm clock</b> .....	288
1Seg alarm clock.....	288
<b>Alarm clock sound</b> .....	79
<b>Alarm sound</b> .....	79
<b>Album</b> .....	276
Adding/Deleting.....	276
Moving/Copying data.....	277
Playing album.....	278
<b>Alert by contact</b> .....	71
<b>Alert preference</b> .....	306
<b>Alert/Image by group</b> .....	72
<b>All lock</b> .....	100
<b>Animated-notice</b> .....	94
<b>Anonymous caller</b> .....	112
<b>Antenna icon</b> .....	93

<b>Any key answer</b> .....	61
<b>Area Mail</b> .....	147
Receiving.....	147
Setting.....	148
<b>Arrival call act</b> .....	321
<b>Arrival information</b> .....	34, 38
<b>Attaching/Removing battery pack</b> .....	42
<b>Attachment</b> .....	126, 132
Changing/Removing.....	127
<b>Attachment auto-play</b> .....	144
<b>Authentication</b> .....	98
Terminal security code.....	98
<b>Auto answer setting</b> .....	306
<b>Auto power ON/OFF</b> .....	288
<b>Auto rotation</b> .....	39
<b>Auto-send</b> .....	127

## B

<b>Backup</b> .....	273
<b>Bar code reader</b> .....	190, 241
<b>Basic menu</b> .....	35
<b>Battery</b> .....	44
Charging.....	44
Charging time.....	44

Operation time.....	44
<b>Battery icon</b> .....	93
<b>Battery level</b> .....	47
<b>BGM play</b> .....	219
<b>Bookmark</b> .....	160
Access shortcuts.....	161
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail).....	132

## C

<b>CA Certificate</b> .....	168
<b>Calculator</b> .....	302
<b>Calendar → Scheduler</b> .....	78
<b>Call alert</b> .....	78
<b>Call cost</b> .....	300
Call cost limit.....	301
Hide call cost icon.....	301
Reset call cost.....	301
<b>Call duration</b> .....	300
<b>Call Forwarding Service</b> .....	319
<b>Call light</b> .....	27
<b>Call option</b> .....	57
<b>Call ring alert</b> .....	79, 218
<b>Call Waiting</b> .....	319
<b>Caller ID notification</b> .....	49



Display & Key light.....	88
Brightness.....	88
Display light time.....	88
Keypad light.....	88
Light time-out.....	88
Displaying address.....	136
Displaying own phone number.....	50
DL dictionary.....	315
DOCOMO Cert.....	168
DOCOMO keitai datalink.....	341
Double-tapping.....	39
Dual Network Service.....	320

## E

Early warning "Area Mail".....	147
Earphone/Microphone with Switch.....	305
Earpiece.....	27
English guidance.....	321
Export Administration Regulations.....	395
External connection jack.....	27
External device.....	68

## F

Fake call.....	299
FeliCa.....	246
FeliCa mark (F)Mark.....	27
File restriction.....	278
FirstPass.....	155, 169
Flash.....	159
Focus mode.....	38
Folder.....	276
Adding/Deleting.....	276
Font.....	
Downloading.....	164
Font size.....	95, 144
Font style.....	95
Full Browser screen.....	157

## G

Greeting msg resp time.....	64
Guide area.....	32

## H

Headset key control.....	305
Headset quick-dial/Headset quick-answer.....	305
High-pitched alarm.....	290
Host selection.....	167

## I

i-appli.....	222
Abnormal exit history.....	241
Auto start.....	237
Count software.....	223
Creating/Deleting folders.....	239
Deleting.....	240
Display light time.....	226
Downloading.....	222
i-appli call.....	237
i-appli call DL set.....	238
i-appli call log.....	238
i-appli call setting.....	225
i-appli To.....	238
IC card content.....	223
i-Widget.....	243
Map setting.....	225
Motion tracking.....	226
Moving.....	240
Preinstalled i-appli.....	226
Program guide key setting.....	225
Security error history.....	225
Set auto start info.....	237
Set NW transmission.....	225
Setting volume.....	226
Software description.....	225
Software info disp.....	223
Software list.....	223
Software settings.....	225
Sort software.....	240
Start failure history.....	237
Starting.....	223
Trace information.....	224
Upgrading.....	239
Vibrate effect.....	226
i-appli stand-by display.....	85, 239
Canceling.....	239

IC card lock.....	248
IC lock(power-off).....	248
iC transfer service.....	247
iC transmission.....	280
Receiving.....	282
Sending.....	281
i-Channel.....	174
i-Channel setting.....	174
Icon list.....	29, 31
i-concier.....	175
Data Security Service.....	113
Information.....	175
Information display.....	176
i-concier ring alert.....	79
Identification mark.....	87
Image.....	256
Adding/Deleting album.....	276
Creating animation.....	258
Data Security Service.....	113
Deleting.....	279
Detail information/Edit detail information.....	278
Displaying.....	256
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail).....	132
Downloading.....	163
Editing.....	258
Moving/Copying.....	277
Settings.....	257
Slideshow.....	257
Sorting.....	280
Uploading.....	164
Using images.....	257
Image message alert.....	88
i-mode.....	154
i-mode fault diagnosis site.....	382
i-mode mail.....	120
Activate quick reply.....	143
Add bookmark.....	139
Adding address (Simultaneous sending).....	121
Adding to phonebook.....	139
Address type.....	121
Attachment.....	126, 132
Auto-send.....	127
Changing read/unread state.....	137
Check new message.....	130



Mail auto receive .....	128	Display priority .....	144	Multi Number .....	322
Mail creation screen .....	120	Displaying .....	146	Call option .....	57
Mail group .....	142	Displaying/Saving attachment .....	147	<b>Multiaccess</b> .....	286
Mail image .....	88	Font size .....	146	Combination of functions .....	370
Mail light .....	27	Protecting .....	146	<b>Multitask</b> .....	286
Mail logs .....	138	Reading screen .....	146	Combination of functions .....	371
Mail settings (FOMA terminal) .....	140	Sorting .....	146	<b>Music</b>	
Mail template .....	124	<b>Microphone</b> .....	27	Background play .....	208, 212
Deleting .....	126	<b>microSD card</b> .....	269	Chaku-uta full® .....	212
Downloading .....	125	Adding/Deleting folder .....	276	Ring alert .....	218
Mail To .....	165	Backup .....	273	Uta-hodai .....	212
Mail/Msg. ring alert .....	79, 218	Displaying data .....	272	Uta-moji Lyrics .....	212
<b>Map</b>		Folder structure .....	270	WMA file .....	213
Map appli .....	242	Formatting .....	275	<b>MUSIC Player</b> .....	212, 215
Select map .....	242	Installing/Removing .....	269	Data list screen .....	214
Show map .....	242	Memory status .....	274	Delete all WMAs .....	219
<b>Media To</b> .....	165	Moving/Copying .....	271, 272, 277	Display image and lyrics .....	219
<b>Melody</b> .....	266	Operating from PC .....	275	Displaying detail information .....	218
Adding/Deleting album .....	276	Scan card .....	275	Folder list screen .....	214
Deleting .....	279	Sync data info .....	275	Link lyrics & song .....	218
Detail information/Edit detail information .....	278	<b>Missed calls</b> .....	55	Managing data .....	216
Downloading .....	164	<b>Motion sensor</b> .....	39, 40	Playing/Operating .....	215
List .....	356	<b>Movie</b> .....	172	Playlist .....	216
Melodies for mail attachment .....	357	<b>Movie auto play setting</b> .....	173	Playlist list screen .....	214
Moving/Copying .....	277	<b>Movie ringtone</b> .....	79	Replay restriction .....	216
Playing/Saving (i-mode mail) .....	132	<b>Moving picture memo</b> .....	300	Saving music data .....	212
Settings .....	267	<b>Moving picture playing software</b> .....	373	Saving Uta-moji Lyrics .....	212
Sorting .....	280	<b>Moving picture shooting screen</b> .....	179	Settings .....	216
Using melody .....	267	<b>Moving picture/i-motion</b>		<b>Music&amp;Video Channel</b> .....	208
<b>Melody Call</b> .....	81	Adding/Deleting album .....	276	Adding/Deleting folder .....	276
<b>Memory status</b> .....	280	Capturing .....	263	Chapter list .....	211
<b>Menu</b> .....	35	Custom edit .....	263	Deleting .....	211, 279
Customizing .....	92	Deleting .....	279	Moving .....	211, 277
List .....	344	Detail information/Edit detail information .....	278	Playing/Operating .....	209
<b>Message i-appli</b>		Edit by size .....	264	Replay restriction .....	210
Downloading .....	223	Editing .....	263	Set program .....	208
<b>Message list</b> .....	143	Moving/Copying .....	277	Sorting .....	280
<b>MessageF alert</b> .....	78	Playing .....	259	<b>Music&amp;Video Channel player screen</b> .....	209
<b>MessageR alert</b> .....	78	Playlist .....	261	<b>Music&amp;Video Channel screen</b> .....	208
<b>MessageR/F</b> .....	145	Settings .....	261	<b>My Menu</b> .....	155
Auto-display .....	146	Shooting .....	184	<b>My phone number</b> .....	50
Check new message .....	130	Sorting .....	280	<b>My Picture → Image</b>	
Deleting .....	146	Uploading .....	164		
Display by type .....	146	Using moving picture/i-motion .....	262		

**N**

Network security code .....	98
New Task start menu .....	286
Noise reduction .....	60
Notepad .....	302
Notify switchable mode .....	67
Nuisance Call Blocking Service .....	320

**O**

OFFICEED .....	325
Omakase Lock .....	101
On hold .....	53
One-key shortcut i-appli .....	236
On-hold .....	62
On-hold tone .....	82
Open/Close sound .....	81
Options and related devices .....	372
Original certificate .....	168
Osaifu-Keitai .....	246
Out of service area .....	47
Out-camera .....	27
Outgoing call image .....	86

**P**

Packet communication .....	339
Password manager .....	314
Pause ("P") .....	57
Pedometer/ACT monitor .....	304
Displaying information .....	304
Setting .....	304
Personal data lock .....	102
Personalized silent mode .....	83
Phone	
Call option .....	57
Incoming call image .....	87
Making a call .....	52
Operation while receiving a call .....	60
Outgoing call image .....	86
Receiving a call .....	60
Phone To (AV Phone To) .....	165
Phonebook .....	70
Adding .....	70

Call option .....	57
Caller ID settings .....	74
Copying .....	75
Copying to UIM/FOMA terminal .....	75
Data Security Service .....	113
Deleting .....	75
Details screen .....	74
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail) .....	132
Editing .....	74
Group setting .....	72
No. of items .....	76
Secret code .....	74
Switching order of phone numbers/mail addresses .....	74
Switching phonebook numbers .....	74
Phonebook search .....	72
Phonebook list .....	72
Rocket search .....	73
Specifying search method .....	73
Pictogram D .....	121
Pictogram list .....	359
PIN code ON/OFF .....	99
PIN/PIN2 code .....	98
Changing .....	100
Power	
Auto power ON/OFF .....	288
Power ON/OFF .....	47
Power saving mode .....	89
Saving mode ON/OFF .....	89
Saving mode options .....	89
Prefix dialing .....	59
Preinstalled i-appli .....	226
DCMX credit appli .....	230
FOMA communication environment check application .....	231
G-Guide TV Remote Controller .....	228
Google Mobile .....	236
Health checker .....	231
i-appli banking .....	234
iavatar maker .....	227
iD appli .....	229
iW Watch .....	233
J-E Speech Translation for F .....	227
Keitai Brain Stretching 2 .....	227

LOGIC PUZZLE F .....	226
Map Application .....	233
McDonald's TOKUSURU KEITAI application .....	235
Mobile Google Map .....	228
Mobile Suica Setup i-appli .....	230
Puchipuchi Zookeeper ver.F .....	226
Rakuoku ☆ application .....	234
ROID widget .....	232
Start! i-Widget .....	232
Stock Prices Application .....	236

**Priority**

Caller ID notification .....	50
Displaying name .....	70
Incoming call image .....	87
Light alert .....	94
Outgoing call image .....	86
Ring alert .....	80
Vibrate alert .....	81

**Privacy mode**

Activation option .....	106
Contact setting .....	108

**Programed activation**

.....	248
-------	-----

**Public mode**

.....	63
-------	----

**Public mode (Drive mode)**

.....	63
-------	----

**Public mode (Power OFF)**

.....	63
-------	----

**PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)**

.....	99
-------	----

**Pulse checker → Health checker****Q**

Quality alarm .....	82
Quick dial .....	76
Quick mail .....	128
Quick Manual .....	408
Quick search .....	286
Search service .....	287
Quick zoom .....	134

**R**

Receive display option .....	109
Receive option .....	129
Receive option .....	142
Received calls .....	54
List/Details screen .....	54

Received mail → i-mode mail	
Received signal level	47
Receiving screen	128, 145, 149
Reception result screen	128, 145, 149
Reconnect alarm	82
Record message	64
Quick message recorder	64
Recorded messages	
Playing/Deleting	65
Redial	54
List/Details screen	54
Register USSD	325
Remote control	322
Remote control function	284
Remote controller with microphone F01	
	206, 220, 261, 268
Remote customization	116
Reply format	143
Reset	115
Menu	92
Reset	115
Total calls cost	301
Total calls duration	300
User information	298
Reset i-Channel	175
Retrieving image	88
Ring alert delay	112
Ring alerts & Sounds	79
RSS reader	162
Registering RSS	163

## S

SAR	393
Savable/Recordable/Protectable number	392
When exceeding	280
Scanning function	387
Set auto-update	387
Set scan	387
Schedule	
Data Security Service	113
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail)	132
Downloading	164
Schedule reminder	79

Scheduler	290
Calendar screen	290
Check No. of items	290
Copying/Pasting/Deleting/Editing/Operating mail	
	293
Day off of week	291
Day view screen	293
Days off	291
Details screen	294
Holiday settings	291
i-schedule	295
Quick schedule	292
Reminder option	293
Saving	292
Schedule reminder	292
Scheduler view type	291
Screen memo	162
S-disp auto light on	89
Search message	137
Secrecy search	73
Secret attribute	75, 295
Security codes	98
Security indicator	111
Security Scan → Scanning function	
Select language	48
Select startup menu	89
Self mode	102
Send DTMF	57
Sent mail → i-mode mail	
Service Numbers	321
Set arrival act.	321
Set greeting message	64
Set random image	84
Shortcut icons	295
Shortcut icons settings	296
Shortcut operations	36
Show PrioritySetting	62
Shutter sound	82
Side key hold	109
Side key shortcut	298
Signature	
Inserting	120, 149
Setting	141
Silent mode	82

Personalized silent mode	83
Simultaneous sending	121
Smiley list	367
SMS	148
Add bookmark	139
Adding to phonebook	139
Check new SMS	150
Creating/Sending	148
Deleting (FOMA terminal)	138
Display priority	144
Displaying (FOMA terminal)	133
Displaying (UIM)	151
Editing	149
Moving/Copying (to UIM)	151
Quick mail	128
Reading screens	133
Receiving	149
Setting	150
Sort method	140
SMS report request	150
SMS To	165
Software update	
Auto-update	384
Immediate update	385
Reserved update	385
Set auto-update	384
Software update screen	384
Sort method	140
Sound recorder	185
Speaker	27
Speakerphone function	53
Special mode	91
Special symbol list	364
Specified caller	111
Stand-by display	47, 84
Antenna icon	93
Battery icon	93
Clock display format	95
i-appli stand-by display	85
Info/calendar layout	85
Status message	62
Stereo sound effect	80
Still image	
Displaying	256

Editing.....	258
Shooting.....	180
<b>Still image shooting screen</b> .....	179
<b>Style theme</b> .....	93
<b>Sub address</b> .....	60
<b>Sub-display</b> .....	33
<b>Submenu operation</b> .....	37
<b>Super clear-voice 2 → Voice clear</b>	
<b>Switch Task menu</b> .....	286
<b>System sound</b> .....	81

## T

<b>Task area</b> .....	31
<b>Terminal security code</b> .....	98
<b>Terminal security code change</b> .....	99
<b>Time tone</b> .....	94
<b>Timed lock</b> .....	248
<b>Timed pause ("T")</b> .....	57
<b>Timed theme</b> .....	84
<b>Tone signal (Send DTMF)</b> .....	57
<b>ToruCa</b> .....	249
Check No. of items.....	252
Creating/Deleting folders.....	251
Data Security Service.....	113
Displaying/Saving (i-mode mail).....	132
Downloading.....	164
Moving/Deleting/Sorting/Attaching/Displaying.....	250
Obtaining.....	249
Searching.....	251
<b>ToruCa alert</b> .....	252
<b>ToruCa auto-read</b> .....	252
<b>ToruCa from IC card</b> .....	252
<b>ToruCa sort rule</b> .....	252
<b>Toy's world</b> .....	299
<b>Two-key shortcut i-appli</b> .....	236

## U

<b>UIM</b>	
Installing/Removing.....	40
Operation restriction.....	40
Security codes.....	40
Type.....	41
<b>Unblocking PIN lock</b> .....	100

<b>Unregistered caller</b> .....	113
<b>Unsent mail → i-mode mail</b>	
<b>USB mode settings</b> .....	275
<b>User Certificate</b> .....	168
<b>User information</b>	
Checking.....	50, 298
Details screen.....	298
<b>Uta-moji Lyrics</b> .....	212
Link lyrics & song.....	218

## V

<b>Vibrate alert/effect</b> .....	81
<b>Videophone</b> .....	52
Auto redial as voice.....	67
Chara-den.....	65
Display setting.....	66
Image setting.....	66
Making a call.....	52
Receiving a call.....	60
<b>Videophone alert</b> .....	78
<b>Videophone image</b> .....	66
<b>Videophone settings (Operation)</b> .....	67
<b>View preference</b> .....	55, 74, 139
<b>Voice clear</b> .....	53
<b>Voice Mail service</b> .....	318
<b>Voice memo</b> .....	300
<b>Voice memos</b>	
Playing/Deleting.....	65
<b>Voice slowing</b> .....	54

## W

<b>Warranty</b> .....	381
<b>Web To</b> .....	165
<b>Website</b> .....	156
<b>WMA file</b> .....	213
<b>WORLD WING</b> .....	42

## Numeric

<b>1Seg</b> .....	194
Creating Channel list.....	195
Data broadcasting.....	199
Deleting recorded data.....	279

Detail information/Edit detail information of recorded data.....	278
Displaying recorded data.....	267
Horizontal display (full-screen).....	197
Horizontal display (video with data broadcasting).....	197
Multi window.....	200
OFF timer.....	198
Operation settings for recorded still image.....	269
Operations while watching TV.....	197
Program guide i-appli.....	199
Recording.....	201
Recording reservation.....	203
Recording result.....	205
Reservation list screen.....	203
Setting channels.....	195
Sorting recorded data.....	280
Storage area.....	194
Subtitle.....	197
Time shift function.....	199
TV link.....	200
User setting.....	205
Vertical standard display.....	197
Watching.....	196
Watching reservation.....	203
1Seg Eco mode.....	199
<b>1Seg watching screen</b> .....	197
<b>2in1</b> .....	322
<b>2in1 setting</b> .....	323
<b>3G-324M</b> .....	52
<b>5-touch input method</b>	
List.....	358
<b>64K data communication</b> .....	339

# Quick Manual

## ◆ How to use Quick Manual

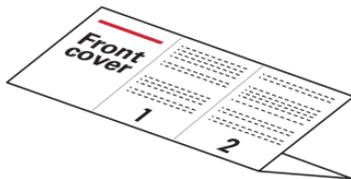
The "Quick Manual" appended to this manual briefly describes the basic screen displays and operating procedure of FOMA terminal. Cut along the cutoff line and fold up the manual as shown below.

For the use of international roaming service (WORLD WING), please refer to "Quick Manual (Overseas Use)".

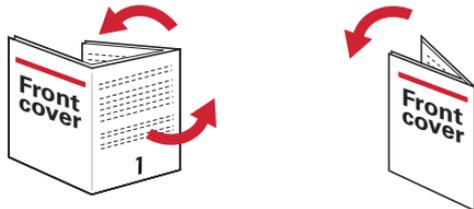
### 1 Cut along the cutoff line

Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

### 2 Fold once horizontally



### 3 Fold the left and the right so that the front cover faces outward



Quick Manual

❖ General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

<In English>

☎ 0120-005-250 (toll free)

\* Available from land-line phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

<In Japanese only>

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

No prefix 151 (toll free)

\* Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.

❖ Repairs

<In Japanese only>

No prefix 113 (toll free)

\* Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.

☎ 0120-800-000 (toll free)

\* Available from land-line phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

Please check on the number before dialing.

Entering characters

❖ Switching input modes

On the character entry screen, (several times) ▶

· While displaying items to switch, use to switch one-byte/two-byte characters.

Input mode

漢 : Hiragana/Kanji character

半7 : One-byte katakana

半A : One-byte alphabetic characters

半数 : One-byte numeric characters

全A : Two-byte katakana

全A : Two-byte alphabetic characters

全数 : Two-byte numeric characters

1

❖ Entering pictograms, symbols and fixed phrases

Entering pictograms

On the character entry screen, ▶ Select pictogram

Entering symbols

On the character entry screen, ▶ Select symbol

Entering fixed phrases

On the character entry screen, ( on the message text entry screen) ▶ Select a fixed phrase type ▶ Select a fixed phrase

4

❖ Entering/Converting characters (5-touch method)

Operations available before conversion

The characters are inserted at the cursor position.

: Select input mode and press keys successively to change characters to input.

: Change characters to Kana

: Return to the previous character

(e.g. : お→え→う→い→あ→お→え→…)

: Cancel entered characters

: Add voiced/semi-voiced sound, switch upper/lower case or insert a line feed (only after conversion).

(e.g. : ほ→ぼ→ぽ→ほ→…, つ→っ→づ→っ→…)

<Example> Entering "六本木 (Roppongi)"

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode

"ろ" : (5 times)

"つ" : (3 times) ▶

"ぼ" : (5 times) ▶ (twice)

"ん" : (3 times)

2

❖ Copying/Pasting characters

Copying characters

On the character entry screen, ( on the message text entry screen) ▶ Select the start position ▶ Select the end position

Pasting characters

On the character entry screen, move the cursor to the position to paste ▶ ( on the message text entry screen)

Phonebook

❖ Adding to FOMA terminal phonebook

1 (1 sec. or more) ▶ Enter a name ▶ Set required items ▶

· Phonebook No.

· Reading

· Select/Shoot image

· : Group

5

"せ" : (twice) ▶

2

· Displaying conversion options list : or

· Returning to state before converted :

3 ▶ "閉じる (Close)"

❖ Deleting characters

When the cursor is in the text

: Delete a character at the cursor position. Delete a character at the right of the cursor when the cursor is between characters.

· Pressing for 1 sec. or more deletes all the characters after the cursor.

When the cursor is at the end of the text

: Delete a character at the left of the cursor

· Pressing for 1 sec. or more deletes all the characters entered.

3

- ☎ : Phone number
- ✉ : Mail address
- 🎂 : Birthday
- 📝 : Note
- 📧 : Postal Code/Address
- 🏢 : Company name
- 👤 : Job title
- 🌐 : URL

#### Adding to UIM phonebook

- ☎ [Phonebook & Logs] **4** ▶ Enter a name ▶ Set required items ▶ ☑

#### Adding from redial list or received call list

- ☎ ▶ Move the cursor to a party ▶ **4** **1**
  - Updating phonebook : **☎** **4** **2**
- 1** (FOMA terminal phonebook) or **2** (UIM phonebook)
  - To update phonebook, select the party to save.
- Set required items ▶ ☑

6

## ❖ Editing the phonebook

- ☎
  - Switching phonebook : ☑
- Move the cursor to a party ▶ **☎** **3** **1**
  - For UIM phonebook, **☎** **3**.
- Edit ▶ ☑
  - An overwriting confirmation screen appears.

## ❖ Searching the phonebook

- ☎** [Phonebook & Logs] **1**
  - Switching phonebook : ☑
- 1** - **6**
  - For UIM phonebook, **1** - **3**.

7

## Camera function

### Shooting still images

- ☑ ▶ Point the camera at the object and **☑** ▶ **☑**

### Shooting moving pictures

- ☑ (1 sec. or more) ▶ Point the camera at the object **☑** ▶ **☑** ▶ **☑**

### Displaying image

- ☎** [Data Box] **1** **1** ▶ Select an image

### Playing moving picture

- ☎** [Data Box] **4** **2** ▶ Select a moving picture

### Operation available in playing moving picture

- ☑ : Adjust volume (rewind/fast forward play on the horizontal display)
- ☑ : Adjust volume
- ☑ : Rewind/Fast forward play (adjust volume on the horizontal screen)
- ☑ : Pause/Play

8

- ☑ : Stop

## Videophone

### ❖ Making videophone calls

- Enter a phone number ▶ ☑
- Talk with the other party
  - Putting a call on-hold : **☑**
  - Switching earpiece/speaker : **☑**
  - Switching image to send : **☑**
- When ending the call, **☑**

### ❖ Receiving videophone calls

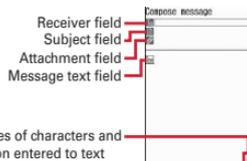
- A call comes in ▶ **☎** or **☑**
  - On hold : **☑** while receiving a call
  - Operation during a call is the same as Step 2 in "Making videophone calls".
- When ending the call, **☑**

9

## i-mode mail

### ❖ Creating/Sending i-mode mail

- ☑ (1 sec. or more)



- Select **☑** ▶ Select input method ▶ Enter or select the receiver
- Select **☑** ▶ Enter the subject
- Select **☑** ▶ Enter message text
  - Creating Deco-mail : **☑** ▶ Select a decoration icon ▶ Decorate

10

- ☑
  - Saving mail : **☎** **☎** **3**
  - Auto-send : **☎** **2**

### ❖ File attachment

- Select **☑** on the mail creation screen
  - Removing attachment : **☑** ▶ "Yes"
- Select the type of the file to attach ▶ Select the attachment source ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a file

### ❖ Displaying received/sent mail

- ☑ ▶ **1** or **5**
- Select a folder
- Select a mail

11

## ❖ Editing/Sending i-mode mail

<Example> Editing unsent mail

- 1 **4**  
· Editing sent mail : **5**
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select a mail  
· Editing sent mail : Select a mail
- 4 Edit

## ❖ Check new message (mail)

- 1

12

## Activating/Operating 1Seg

- 1 (1 sec. or more)

### Operations available while watching 1Seg

- : Adjust volume
- (with data broadcasting display area) : Move the cursor
- (1 sec. or more) : Silent
- (1-9, \*, 0, #) : One-key channel selection (13ch and up can be selected from TV station list)
- 8** **7** : 1Seg ECO mode ON/OFF
- : Switch watching screen
- : Display/Hide subtitles
- (1 sec. or more) : Start/Stop video recording
- : Record a still image
- : Activate Program guide i-appli
- "Yes" : End

13

## Activating/Operating Music&Video Channel/MUSIC Player

- 1 [MUSIC] **1** or **2**

### Operations available after activation

- : Play/Pause
- : Adjust volume
- (1 sec. or more) : Rewind/Fast forward
- (1 sec. or more) : Move to the beginning of the chapter/tune\*<sup>1</sup>
- (1 sec. or more) : Move to the next chapter/tune
- (quickly twice)\*<sup>2</sup> : Save to Quick playlist
- (1 sec. or more)\*<sup>2</sup> : Stop

\*1 If playing time is within 3 seconds, move to the previous chapter/tune.

\*2 Only valid for MUSIC Player.

14

## Network Service

### ❖ Voice Mail service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Charged

#### Activating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **1** **1** **1** "Yes" "Yes" Enter ring time

#### Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **1** **1** **3** "Yes"

#### Playing voice messages

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **1** **1** **5** **1** or **2** "Yes" Follow the voice prompts to operate

15

### ❖ Call Waiting Service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Charged

#### Activating/Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **2** **1** **1**  
[Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] "Yes"

#### Answering another call

- during a call
- Switching to another party to talk :

#### Making another call

- During a call, **0** Enter a phone number
- Switching to another party to talk :

#### Ending a call

- When ending the call,
- Switching to the other party on-hold : or

16

### ❖ Call Forwarding Service

Application : Required Monthly fee : Free

#### Activating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **2** **2** **1** "Yes" "Yes"
- 2 Enter a phone number of the forwarding destination  
· Entering the forwarding destination in the phonebook :
- 3 "Yes" Enter ring time

#### Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **2** **2** **2** "Yes"

### ❖ Caller ID Display Request Service

Application : Not required Monthly fee : Free

#### Activating/Deactivating the service

- 1 [Settings & NW services] **8** **4** **2** **1**  
[Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] "Yes"

17

## Viewing display

### ◆ Top of the display



- ① : Battery icon
- ② : Antenna icon  
 : Out of service area  
 : Self mode ON  
 : In data transfer mode
- ③ : In i-mode communication (i-mode site)/(packet communication)
- ④ : In infrared communication etc.  
 : The total calls cost exceeds the limit

18

- ⑤ : Communication using handsfree-compatible device in progress  
 : Speakerphone function in use  
 : Power saving mode activated
- ⑥ : High-pitched alarm is set to "ON"
- ⑦ : Lock on close/Lock when immobile is activated  
 : A phonebook entry or schedule has secret attribute
- ⑧ : Unread Area Mail  
 : Unread i-mode mail, SMS and SMS in UIM are full  
 : Arrival i-concier information exists
- ⑨ : Storage state in i-mode Center
- ⑩ : Displaying SSL/TLS page etc.  
 : Mail failed to Auto-send exists  
 : Auto-send mail exists  
 : Music&Video Channel program obtaining reservation exists

19

- ⑪ : i-appli/i-appli DX is running  
 : i-appli stand-by display ON  
 : Receiving i-appli call  
 : Alarm clock ON  
 : Schedule reminder ON  
 : Alarm clock and Schedule reminder are set together
- ⑫ : Inside OFFICEED area

20

### ◆ Bottom of the display



- ① : Missed calls
- ② : Recorded messages
- ③ : Voice messages in Voice Mail service
- ④ : Unread messages
- ⑤ : Unread ToruCa
- ⑥ : i-appli call
- ⑦ : Shortcut icons
- ⑧ : Silent mode ON  
 : Personalized silent mode ON

21

- ⑨ : Call alert volume OFF  
 : Vibrator for voice call ON  
 : Call alert volume OFF & vibrator for voice call ON
- ⑩ : In Public mode (Drive mode)
- ⑪ : Record message ON/recorded messages full
- ⑫ : Keypad dial lock ON  
 : Side key lock
- ⑬ : Personal data lock ON  
 : Music&Video Channel obtaining failure/success
- ⑭ : Reading UIM  
 : IC card lock ON
- ⑮ : Available multi-cursor key
- ⑯ : Performing 1Seg recording reservation/1Seg recording (only watching stopped)  
 : i-appli Auto start failed

22

- ⑰ : Status display of USB mode settings and microSD card
- ⑱ : Connected to external device using USB cable  
 : Pedometer/ACT monitor is set
- ⑲ : Software update notice  
 : Software update pre-specified/Update notification icon  
 : Failed to Auto-update of latest pattern definition/Successful

23

## Menu list

· Menu list for the case Select startup menu is set to "Basic menu" is described.

### Mail

- 1 1 1 Inbox
- 1 1 2 Compose message
- 1 1 3 Compose Decome-Anime
- 1 1 4 Unsent messages
- 1 1 5 Outbox
- 1 1 6 Check new message
- 1 1 7 SMS/Area Mail
- 1 1 8 Receive option
- 1 1 9 Mail settings
- 1 1 \* Template

24

### i-mode

- 2 1 1 iMenu Search
- 2 1 2 Bookmark
- 2 1 3 Screen memo
- 2 1 4 Last URL
- 2 1 5 Enter URL
- 2 1 6 i-Channel
- 2 1 7 i-mode settings
- 2 1 8 Access shortcuts
- 2 1 9 RSS reader
- 2 1 \* Full Browser Home
- 2 1 0 Search engine

### i-appli

- 3 1 1 Software list

25

- 3 2 1 i-appli call log
- 3 3 3 i-appli settings
- 3 4 4 Display history
- 3 5 5 About i-appli

### Phonebook & Logs

- 4 1 1 Phonebook
- 4 1 2 Phonebook new entry
- 4 1 3 Add group
- 4 1 4 Phonebook(UIM) new entry
- 4 1 5 Received calls
- 4 1 6 Redial
- 4 1 7 Record msg.&Voice memo
- 4 1 8 Mail logs
- 4 1 9 User information

26

### Data Box

- 5 1 1 My Picture
- 5 1 2 MUSIC
- 5 1 3 Music&Video Channel
- 5 1 4 i-motion/Movie
- 5 1 5 Melody
- 5 1 6 Kisekae Tool
- 5 1 7 Machi-chara
- 5 1 8 Chara-den
- 5 1 9 1Seg

### Life Kit

- 6 1 1 Bar code reader
- 6 1 2 Ir/iC/PC connection
- 6 1 3 microSD

27

- 6 4 4 Camera
- 6 4 5 Sound recorder
- 6 4 6 Data Center
- 6 4 7 Map
- 6 4 8 Pedometer/ACT monitor
- 6 4 9 1Seg

### Accessory

- 7 1 1 Scheduler
- 7 1 2 Notepad
- 7 1 3 Alarm clock
- 7 1 4 Calculator
- 7 1 5 Dictionaries
- 7 1 6 Countdown timer
- 7 1 7 High-pitched alarm
- 7 1 8 Fake call

28

- 7 1 9 Toy's world

### Settings & NW services

- 8 1 1 Alerts & Sounds
- 8 1 2 Display
- 8 1 3 Kisekae/Themes
- 8 1 4 Security & Locks
  - Locks
  - Privacy mode
  - Security indicator
  - Receive display option
  - UIM
  - Change security code
  - Scanning function
  - Password manager
- 8 1 5 Call & Answer
  - Sound & Image
  - Anonymous caller

29

	Any key answer Headset Reject/Accept call Make/Receive call Call session Self mode
<b>[8] [6] Videophone</b>	
<b>[8] [7] Clock &amp; Other</b>	Clock Text input Software update Info & Reset Side key shortcut Motion sensor
<b>[8] [8] NW Services</b>	Voice Mail Call waiting/forward Chaku-moji

30

## Other Main Functions

Function	Operating procedure
Start/Cancel Side key hold	(1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Self mode	(1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Public mode	(1 sec. or more)
Display iMenu	
Display i-appli folder list	(1 sec. or more)
Display Received calls/Redial	/
Start/Cancel IC card lock	(1 sec. or more)*
Display Scheduler	
Display alarm list	(1 sec. or more)
Start/Cancel Silent mode	(1 sec. or more)
Start i-Widget	
Start quick search	
New Task start menu	

\* Authentication is required to cancel.

33

	Caller ID Roaming guidance OFFICEED 2in1 setting Melody Call Other
<b>[8] [9] Roaming/Call assist</b>	
<b>MUSIC</b>	
<b>[9] [1] MUSIC Player</b>	
<b>[9] [2] Music&amp;Video Channel</b>	
<b>Osaifu-Keitai</b>	
<b>[*] [1] IC card content</b>	
<b>[*] [2] DCMX</b>	
<b>[*] [3] ToruCa content</b>	

31

## Services available

Services	Phone No.
<b>Directory assistance service (charged : service fee + call fee) (not provided for those who do not require the service)</b>	104 (no area code)
<b>Sending telegrams (charged : telegram)</b>	115 (no area code)
<b>Time (charged)</b>	117 (no area code)
<b>Weather (charged)</b>	Area code + 177
<b>Police emergencies</b>	110 (no area code)
<b>Fire and ambulance</b>	119 (no area code)
<b>Marine emergencies and accident reports</b>	118 (no area code)
<b>Disaster recorded message service (charged)</b>	171 (no area code)
<b>Called call (charged : service + call)</b>	106 (no area code)

34

<b>[*] [4] IC card settings</b>
<b>[*] [5] ToruCa setting</b>
<b>[*] [6] Check IC owner</b>
<b>[*] [7] Change IC owner</b>
<b>[*] [8] Search by i-mode</b>

## User information

## i-concier

32

## Emergency number for misplacement

### ❖ Omakase Lock

\* If you are the member of docomo Premier Club, you can use the service any number of times with no commission. If you are not the member of docomo Premier Club, you are charged for the service (however, you are not charged if you subscribe to this service at the same time as service interruption or during interruption.). Also, if you subscribe to Keitai Anshin Pack, you can use the service within the fixed charge of Keitai Anshin Pack.

Setting/Canceling Omakase Lock (24 hours)

0120-524-360

### ❖ Other emergency contact numbers

Contact : \_\_\_\_\_

Contact : \_\_\_\_\_

· Please check on the number before dialing.

35

## Quick Manual (Overseas Use)

### ❖ Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas

#### <docomo Information Center>

(24 hours) (in Japanese only)

#### ● From DOCOMO mobile phone

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114\*** (toll free)

- \* Call to Japan is charged when calling from a land-line phone.
- \* When calling from an F-08A, dial +81-3-5366-3114 to contact the docomo Information Center. (Press **0** for 1 sec. or more to enter "+".)

#### ● From land-line phone <Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-0120-0151\***

\* Local call charges may be required.

\* For the latest information about international call access codes for major countries (table 1)/international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2), refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

### ❖ Failures encountered overseas

#### <Network Technical Operation Center>

(24 hours)

#### ● From DOCOMO mobile phone

International call access code for the country you stay (table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414\*** (toll free)

- \* Call to Japan is charged when calling from a land-line phone.
- \* When calling from an F-08A, dial +81-3-6718-1414 to contact the docomo Information Center. (Press **0** for 1 sec. or more to enter "+".)

#### ● From land-line phone <Universal number>

International prefix number for the universal number (table 2) **-800-5931-8600\***

- \* Local call charges may be required.
- \* For the latest information about international call access codes for major countries (table 1)/international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2), refer to DOCOMO International Services website.

1

## Preparing for using overseas

Before you use FOMA terminal overseas, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

### ❖ i-mode settings

Setting in Japan : iMenu → English → Options → International Settings → i-mode service Settings

Setting overseas : iMenu → International Settings → i-mode services Settings

### ❖ Activating Remote control

Setting in Japan : [Settings & NW services] **8 9 2 1** ▶ "Yes"

Setting overseas : [Settings & NW services] **9 1 3** ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

### ❖ Two time zone clocks

2

[Settings & NW services] **9 4** ▶ **1** [ON] or **2** [OFF]

## Network and available communication services

- A packet communication fee differs from the one in Japan.
- Only typical examples are described.

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
Voice call			
Videophone call	*1		
i-mode connection			
i-mode mail			
SMS			
i-Channel			

3

Communication services	Network		
	3G	GPRS	GSM
Packet communication (PC connection)*2			

\*1 When (red) appears, you can make/receive a voice call and send/receive SMS.

\*2 64K data communication (PC connection) is unavailable overseas.

## Network search mode

[Settings & NW services] **9 2 1** ▶ **1** - **3**

## PLMN setting

[Settings & NW services] **9 2 1 4** ▶ Move the cursor to the network ▶ **2** ▶ Select the priority ▶

## Disp. operator name

You can display an operator name at the top of the display.

4

[Settings & NW services] **9 2 3** ▶ **1**  
[Display on] or **2** [Display off]

## Setting after returned to Japan

When FOMA terminal is turned ON after you return to Japan, it is automatically connected to FOMA network. If not connected to FOMA network, set Network search mode to "Auto" and reset 3G/GSM setting to "AUTO".

## Making a call/videophone call

- The call is forwarded internationally from Japan even when staying in the same country as a receiver, so enter "+" and the country code for Japan "81".

## ❖ International call (including to Japan)

**0** (1 sec. or more) ▶ Country code ▶ Area code (City code) ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ or

5

## Call inside the country you stay

Enter a phone number ▶ or "No, use original"

## Receiving a call/videophone call

A call is received ▶ or

## Roaming guidance

Set before leaving Japan.

[Settings & NW services] **8** **5** ▶ **1** [Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] ▶ "Yes"

## Restricting incoming calls during international roaming

Some may not be set depending on the overseas telecommunications carriers.

- [Settings & NW services] **9** **2** **4**
- 1** ▶ **1** [All barrings] or **2** [Data calls barring]

6

Area	Code	Area	Code
Italy	39	USA	1
Japan	81	Viet Nam	84
Korea	82		

For other country code and details, refer to DOCOMO's international service web page.

## International call access codes of major countries (table 1)

Area	No.	Area	No.
Australia	0011	Macau	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021/0014	Monaco	00
Canada	011	New Zealand	00
China	00	Norway	00
Czech	00	Philippines	00
Denmark	00	Poland	00
Finland	00/990	Portugal	00
France	00	Russia	810
Germany	00	Singapore	001
Greece	00	Spain	00
Holland	00	Sweden	00

9

- Canceling Bar calls at roaming : **2**
- "Yes" ▶ Enter the network security code

## Network Services

To use overseas, Remote control must be set in advance.

### Voice Mail service

[Settings & NW services] **9** **1** **1** ▶ **1**  
[Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

### Call Forwarding Service

[Settings & NW services] **9** **1** **2** ▶ **1**  
[Activate] or **2** [Deactivate] ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

### Roaming guidance

[Settings & NW services]  
**9** **1** **5** ▶ "Yes" ▶ Follow the voice prompts to operate

7

Area	No.	Area	No.
Hong Kong	001	Switzerland	00
Hungary	00	Taiwan	002
India	00	Thailand	001
Indonesia	001	Turkey	00
Ireland	00	UAE	00
Italy	00	United Kingdom	00
Korea	001	USA	011
Luxembourg	00	Viet Nam	00

## International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)

Area	Code	Area	Code
Argentina	00	Italy	00
Australia	0011	Korea	001
Austria	00	Luxembourg	00
Belgium	00	Malaysia	00
Brazil	0021	New Zealand	00
Canada	011	Norway	00
China	00	Philippines	00
Columbia	009	Portugal	00
Denmark	00	Singapore	001
Finland	990	South Africa	09

10

## Country codes of major countries

A country code is used to make an international call or to use Int'l call assist.

Area	Code	Area	Code
Australia	61	Macau	853
Austria	43	Malaysia	60
Belgium	32	Maldives	960
Brazil	55	New Caledonia	687
Canada	1	New Zealand	64
China	86	Norway	47
Czech	420	Peru	51
Egypt	20	Philippines	63
Finland	358	Russia	7
France	33	Singapore	65
Fiji	679	Spain	34
Germany	49	Sweden	46
Greece	30	Switzerland	41
Holland	31	Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689
Hong Kong	852	Taiwan	886
Hungary	36	Thailand	66
India	91	Turkey	90
Indonesia	62	United Kingdom	44

8

Area	Code	Area	Code
France	00	Spain	00
Germany	00	Sweden	00
Holland	00	Switzerland	00
Hong Kong	001	Taiwan	00
Hungary	00	Thailand	001
Ireland	00	United Kingdom	00
Israel	014	USA	011

## Service inquiries

For loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas" on the cover of Quick Manual (Overseas Use) or "Failures encountered overseas" on P1.

Each inquiry number must be prefixed with "International call access codes (table 1)" or "International prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2)" assigned to the country you stay.

11

Please ask checking/changing subscription detail, application of various services and request of various information materials online.

**From i-mode** iMenu ⇒ お客様サポート (Support) ⇒ お申込・お手続き (Application/Procedures) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)

**No packet communication charges**

**From PCs** My docomo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種お申込・お手続き (Various application/Procedures)

- \* You need your "Network security code" to use the site from i-mode.
- \* No packet communication charge applies to access the site from i-mode. Packet communication charge applies to access from overseas.
- \* You need "docomo ID/Password" to access the site from your PC.
- \* If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "docomo ID/Password", contact to the numbers for "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.
- \* You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
- \* There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

## About Proper Telephone Etiquette

### Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in cases below

- In a place where use of mobile phones is prohibited  
Always turn OFF your FOMA terminal in an aircraft or hospital.
  - \* Be aware that patients using electronic medical equipment are in many areas in hospitals. Your FOMA terminal must be turned OFF even in lobbies or waiting rooms.
- When you are in crowded train and near by someone using pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices  
FOMA terminal's signals may negatively affect the operation of implanted pacemakers, defibrillators or other devices.

### Always set Public mode in cases below

- When driving  
Using a mobile phone by holding it with the hand while driving is subject to penalty.
  - \* If you inevitably receive a call, tell the caller that you will "call back" by handsfree, then park in a safe place and call back.

- In public places such as a theater, movie theater or art museum  
Using your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

### Match the volume of voice and ring alert to your location

- In a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice etc. when using your FOMA terminal.
- In town areas, while using your FOMA terminal, be sure not to block foot or car traffic.

### Consider privacy

- ! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Functions designed for public use

Your FOMA terminal has a number of useful functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

- Public mode (Drive mode/Power OFF)  
The caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is driving a car or in a place (electric train, bus, movie theater, etc.) requiring control of calling, and the call is disconnected. → P63
- Recorded messages  
Allows the caller to leave a message/video message when you cannot answer the call. → P64
- Vibrate alert  
Vibrates when there is an incoming call. → P81
- Silent mode/Personalized silent mode  
Eliminates all sounds your FOMA terminal makes, such as keypad sound and ring alert (Silent mode). → P82  
Allows the user to change Silent mode operations (Personalized silent mode). → P83

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it.

## General Inquiries <docomo Information Center>

### 0120-005-250 (toll free)

\* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish, Korean.

\* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

■ From DOCOMO mobile phones  
(In Japanese only)

■ From land-line phones  
(In Japanese only)

### (No prefix) 151 (toll free)

\* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

### 0120-800-000 (toll free)

\* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

● Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

● For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo shop etc. near you on the NTT DOCOMO website or the i-mode site.

▶ NTT DOCOMO website <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/> ▶ i-mode site iMenu⇒お客様サポート (user support)⇒ドコモショップ (docomo Shop) \* In Japanese only

## Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cumulative cost overseas <docomo Information Center>

(available 24 hours a day)

■ From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code for  
the country you stay (table 1)

**-81-3-5366-3114\* (toll free)**

\* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※ If you use F-08A, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ From land-line phones <Universal number>

International prefix number for  
the universal number (table 2)

**-800-0120-0151\***

\* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※ See page 331 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

● If you lose your FOMA terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the FOMA terminal.

● If the FOMA terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.



Li-ion 00

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, a docomo agent or a recycle center.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

## Repairs

■ From DOCOMO mobile phones  
(In Japanese only)

■ From land-line phones  
(In Japanese only)

### (No prefix) 113 (toll free)

\* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

### 0120-800-000 (toll free)

\* Available from mobile phones and PHSs.

## Failures encountered overseas <Network Technical Operation Center>

(available 24 hours a day)

■ From DOCOMO mobile phones

International call access code for  
the country you stay (table 1)

**-81-3-6718-1414\* (toll free)**

\* You are charged a call fee to Japan when calling from a land-line phone, etc.

※ If you use F-08A, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to enter '+', press and hold the '0' key for at least one second).

■ From land-line phones <Universal number>

International prefix number for  
the universal number (table 2)

**-800-5931-8600\***

\* You might be charged a domestic call fee according to the call rate for the country you stay.

※ See page 331 for international call access codes for major countries (table 1) and international prefix numbers for the universal number (table 2).

Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.  
Manufacturer: FUJITSU LIMITED

# F-08A

# Manual for PC Connection

<b>Data Communication .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Before use .....</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication).....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Flow of setup for data communication .....</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal.....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Installing FOMA communication configuration file .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Using DOCOMO Connection Manager .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager...</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>AT command.....</b>	<b>27</b>

## ■ About Manual for PC Connection

This manual describes about data communications using F-08A and how to install "FOMA communication configuration file" and "DOCOMO Connection Manager" contained in CD-ROM.

Depending on the environment of your PC, some of operation procedures and/or screens may be different.

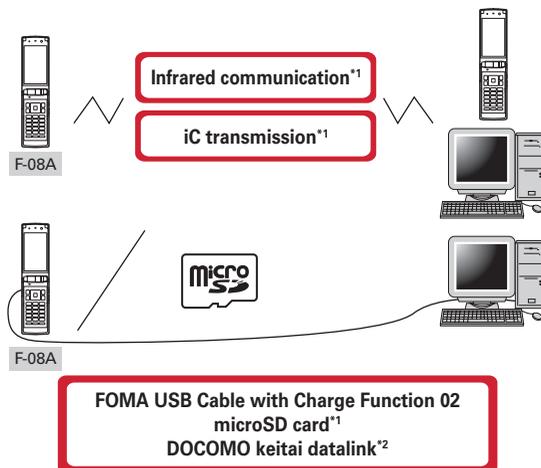
# Data Communication

There are 3 communication modes available by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC : data transfer (OBEX™ communication), packet communication and 64K data communication.

- To make packet communications or 64K data communications or edit data such as the phonebook using a PC connected, installation of the software in the attached CD-ROM and various settings are required.
- When performing packet communication overseas, use IP connection (packet communication is unavailable with PPP connection). 64K data communication can not be used overseas.
- FOMA terminal does not support FAX communication or Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be performed connecting with DOCOMO's PDA like musea or sigmarion III.  
Note that update of musea is required for use. For details on update such as method, refer to DOCOMO website.

## Data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

You can send and receive data such as image, music, phonebook or mail etc. to/from other FOMA terminals or PCs etc.



\*1 For details, see "Data Management" in "F-08A INSTRUCTION MANUAL".

\*2 For details, see "Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink". →P3

## Packet communication

You can connect to the Internet and perform data communication (packet communication). Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which makes it suitable for high-speed exchange of comparatively small amounts of data as in sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible.

High-speed packet communication can be performed at a maximum reception speed of 7.2Mbps and a maximum transmission speed of 384kbps by using access points that support FOMA packet communication such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service. Best effort method which the actual communication speed varies with the environment and the rate of congestion offers.

Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images and downloading will require high charges.

\* The communication speed may be slower when connecting out of FOMA HIGH-SPEED area, connecting to access points incompatible with HIGH-SPEED, or using devices incompatible with HIGH-SPEED such as DOCOMO's PDA like musea or sigmarion III.

\* Maximum speed of reception 7.2Mbps and transmission 384kbps are the values in technical standards, thus they are not indicated actual communication speed. Actual communication speed varies by the network congestion or environment of communication.

## 64K data communication

You can connect to the Internet and perform 64K data communication.

Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which makes it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents.

Access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U of DOCOMO's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points can be used.

Please be careful that a high cost will be charged for long-time communications.

## Before use

### Operating environment

The operation environment for using data communication is as shown below. They may vary depending on the PC system configurations.

Item	Requirements
<b>Computer</b>	PC/AT compatible computer with USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) Recommended 800 x 600 dots in display resolution and High Color 16 bits or more
<b>OS (Japanese version)*</b>	Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista
<b>Memory requirements</b>	Windows 2000 : 64MB or more      Windows XP : 128MB or more Windows Vista : 512MB or more
<b>Hard disk capacity*</b>	5MB or more free disk space

\* Recommended environment for operating DOCOMO Connection Manager is as follows.

OS : Windows 2000 SP4 or more, Windows XP SP2 or more (For details, refer to DOCOMO website)

Hard disk capacity : 15MB or more free disk space

- DOCOMO will not guarantee operations on upgraded OS.
- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under conditions other than that described above.
- Recommended environment for operating the menu is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later (For Windows XP, Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later). If no menu appears when CD-ROM is set, take actions given below.
  - ① Under Windows Vista : Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".  
Under Windows XP, Windows 2000 : Click "スタート (Start)" → "ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run)".
  - ② Enter as follows in "名前 (Name)" and click "OK".  
<CD-ROM drive name> : ¥index.html  
\* CD-ROM drive name varies depending on a PC to be used.
- When the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC's CD-ROM drive, the warning screen may be displayed. This warning depends on the security settings of Internet Explorer but it is not a problem for use. Click "はい (Yes)".  
\* Depending on the environment of your PC, the screen may be different.

### Devices required

The following devices are required in addition to FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for F-08A"

\* USB cable for PC is not available because the connector type is different.

\* When using USB HUB, it may not operate properly.

## Usage precautions

### Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet on a PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter referred to as Provider) is required. This charge is paid directly to the Provider, and is separated from the FOMA service charge. For details, contact your Provider.

- DOCOMO's Internet connection service, mopera U is available. mopera U is a charged service requiring subscription.

### Dialup connection (Provider etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- Connections to DoPa access points are unavailable.
- For service and connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.  
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/index.html>

### User authentication

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password and connect. Your ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator of the connection destination such as your provider or corporate LAN. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

### FirstPass

If FirstPass (user certificate) is required for the access authentication during using PC browser, you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, refer to "簡易操作マニュアル" in the attached CD-ROM.

### Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication in Japan, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64K.

\* Note that even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy or the radio wave conditions are poor.

## Using CD-ROM

The attached CD-ROM includes software to use the data communication with FOMA terminal, "Kuten Code List" in the PDF version, etc.

### Introduction of DOCOMO keitai datalink

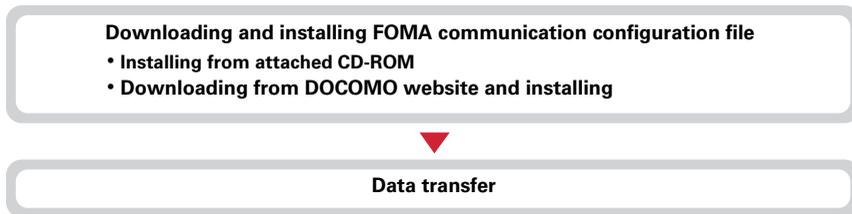
"DOCOMO keitai datalink" is software to back up and edit your phone information such as phonebook and mail. It is provided on NTT DOCOMO website. For details and download of this software, refer to the following website. You can also access to the following website from the attached CD-ROM.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

- For details of downloading procedure, data that can be transferred, operating environments, installing procedure, operation procedure, etc., refer to the website above. For operations after installation, see Help in the software.
- To use DOCOMO keitai datalink, USB cable is required.

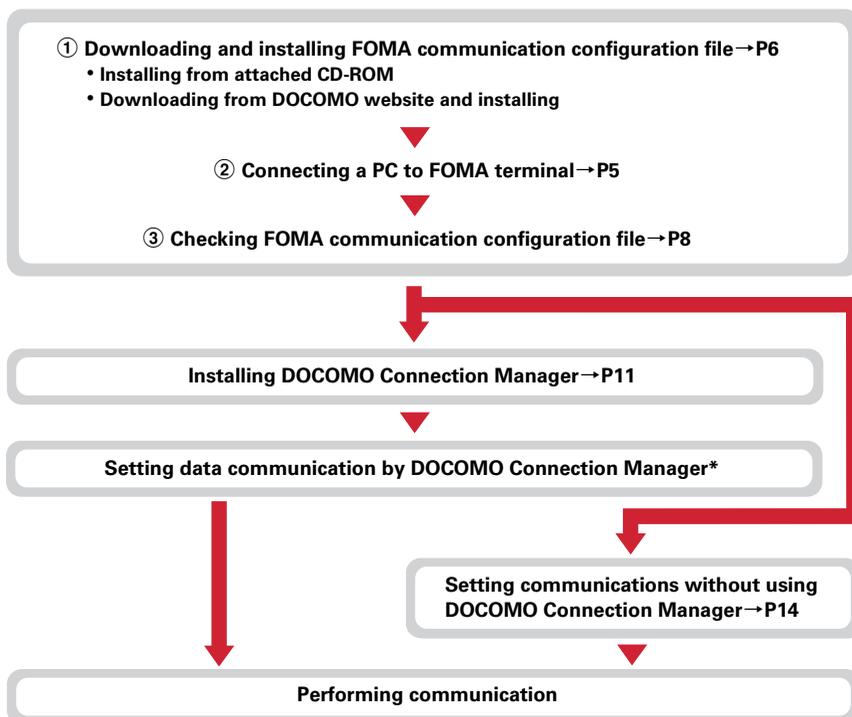
## Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX™ communication)

When using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional), install FOMA communication configuration file in advance.



## Flow of setup for data communication

This section describes the setup work needed to perform packet communication or 64K data communication.



\* For setting of DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".

## FOMA communication configuration file

When performing Packet communication or 64K data communication by connecting to a PC with USB cable, install FOMA communication configuration file.

## DOCOMO Connection Manager

When DOCOMO Connection Manager (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication can be simply operated from a PC.

### Precautions for installation/uninstallation

- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running and exit the program if any.  
\* Exit any resident programs on Windows including antivirus software.  
Example : Right-click the icon displayed in the task bar, click "閉じる (Close)" or "終了 (End)".
- For installing/uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file or DOCOMO Connection Manager, make sure that a user with administrator's privilege performs the operation. Installing/uninstalling the software by other users may produce an error. For Windows Vista, when the "ユーザーアカウント制御 (User Account Control)" screen appears, click "許可 (Permit)" or "続行 (Continue)", or enter the password and click "OK". For details on PC administrator privileges, contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- For operations of a PC, settings of administrator privileges, etc., refer to the Instructions Manual of the PC.

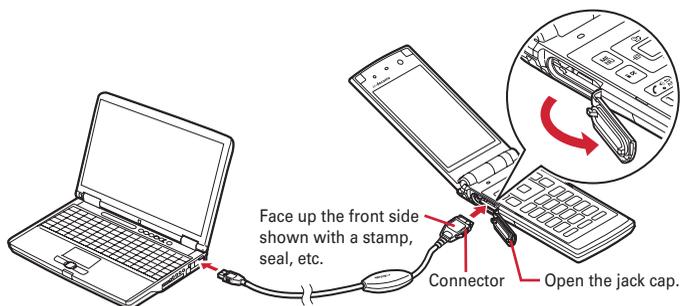
## Connecting up PC to the FOMA terminal

The method of inserting and removing USB cable are explained here. FOMA communication configuration file is not installed.→P6

- If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC before installing FOMA communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that USB cable has been inserted and request the driver. Click "キャンセル (Cancel)" to end.
- The connection should be made with PC and FOMA terminal both turned ON.
- The description in this manual takes the case with FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) for example.

### Inserting USB cable

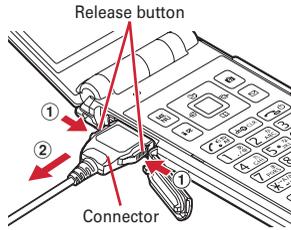
- 1** Insert the connector of the USB cable into FOMA terminal's external connection jack.
- 2** Insert the other end of the USB cable connector into the PC USB port.



- When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected,  appears on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.

## Removing USB cable

- 1 Press the USB cable's release buttons on both sides of the connector (①) and remove the connector from FOMA terminal (②).



- 2 Remove the USB cable out from the PC.

### INFORMATION

- Be careful not to give excessive force to the connector of the USB cable when connecting/disconnecting the cable to/from FOMA terminal. When disconnecting the connector, be sure to pull it straight while pressing the release button. Applying an excessive force to disconnect the connector may give damage to it.
- Do not remove the USB cable during data communication. The data communication is disconnected and it may cause data loss or malfunction.

## Installing FOMA communication configuration file

To make data communication by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC with USB cable, FOMA communication configuration file is required. Install the file before connecting FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

### Installing FOMA communication configuration file

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation". →P5
- Do not connect FOMA terminal until a message that instructs you to connect FOMA terminal to a PC appears in Step 5.

<Example> Installing the driver under Windows Vista

- 1 Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.

**2** Click "データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Configuration software)".



**3** Click "インストール (Install)" of "FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA communication configuration file (USB driver))" and double-click "F08Ast.exe" icon from a window displayed.



**4** Click "インストール開始 (Start installation)".

**5** When a message indicating to connect FOMA terminal to the PC appears, connect FOMA terminal to the PC.

- Connect FOMA terminal while the power is ON.

**6** On the "インストール完了画面 (Installation completion screen)", click "OK".

- When you do not install DOCOMO Connection Manager, uncheck "ドコモ コネクションマネージャをインストールする (Install DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

**■ When you install DOCOMO Connection Manager next**

Continue to install from Step 4 in "Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager". →P12

For DOCOMO Connection Manager, refer to "Using DOCOMO Connection Manager". →P9

## Checking FOMA communication configuration file

- When a PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

<Example> Checking the driver under Windows Vista

**1** Click  (Start) → "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" → "システムとメンテナンス (System and maintenance)" → "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

### ■ Under Windows XP

- ① Click "スタート (Start)" → "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" → "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance)" → "システム (System)".
- ② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab → "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

### ■ Under Windows 2000

- ① Click "スタート (Start)" → Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)" → Double-click "システム (System)" icon.
- ② On the "システムのプロパティ (Property of system)" screen, click "ハードウェア (Hardware)" tab → "デバイスマネージャ (Device manager)".

**2** Double-click the type of each device → Check that the name of the following devices are registered.



- Device types and names are shown as below. The order to be displayed differs depending on OSs.

- ポート (COMとLPT) (Port (COM and LPT)) :
    - FOMA F08A Command Port (COMx)\*
    - FOMA F08A OBEX Port (COMx)\*
  - モデム (Modem) : FOMA F08A
  - ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ (Universal Serial Bus Controller) or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ (Controller) :
    - FOMA F08A
- \* Depending on the PC environment, x represents different numbers.

## Uninstalling FOMA communication configuration file

- Before operating, refer to "Precautions for installation/uninstallation." → P5
- Before operating, remove FOMA terminal from the PC.

<Example> Uninstalling the driver under Windows Vista

**1** Click  (Start) → "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" → "プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall programs)".

### ■ Under Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)" → "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" → "プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete Programs)".

### ■ Under Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" → Click "コントロールパネル (Control panel)" from "設定 (Settings)" → Double-click "アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)" icon.

**2** Select "FOMA F08A USB" and click "アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)" (for Windows XP or Windows 2000, "変更と削除 (Change and delete)").

**3** Check that "FOMA F08A Uninstaller" is displayed and click "はい (Yes)".  
The uninstall process starts.

**4** After the uninstallation in progress screen is displayed, click "OK".

## INFORMATION

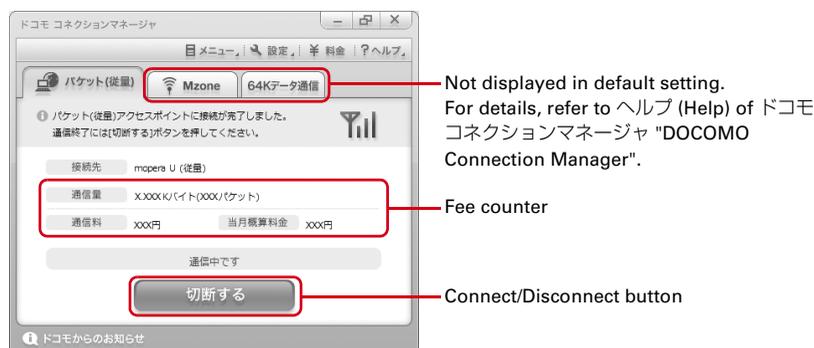
- When "FOMA F08A USB" is not displayed on the deletion screen, execute the operations in "Installing FOMA communication configuration file" again and uninstall. → P6

## Using DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager is convenient software to use flat-rate data communication and pay-as-you-go data communication. You can easily subscribe to mopera U and make a PC setting according to your subscription status.

Also, you can check an estimate of data communication volume or usage fees by the charge counter function.

The method of installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained here.



- For Internet connection with FOMA terminal, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider (mopera U etc.) applicable to services and data communication.  
For details, refer to DOCOMO website.

## INFORMATION

- Note that communications of large-size data such as viewing websites containing images using packet communication and downloading (example: updating of application, music, movie, OS or anti-virus software) will require high charges.  
Note that FOMA flat-rate packet services such as Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full and Biz-hodai or the price limit of Biz-hodai double is not applied to the data communication by connecting FOMA terminal and a PC etc. with USB cable.
- For using of flat-rate data plan, you need to subscribe to Internet service provider applicable to flat-rate data communication charging plan. For details, check to DOCOMO website.
- For connection/settings of mopera, refer to mopera website.  
<http://www.mopera.net/mopera/support/index.html>

## Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, check the items below and perform to change setting of software/uninstall as required.

- Prepare FOMA terminal, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 02 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) in advance.
- Check the contents of subscription for services and Internet service provider.
- If installing connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager, change the setting not to be activated automatically as required.→P11 "Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager"

## Changing setting of Internet Explorer

- Before installing DOCOMO Connection Manager, set to "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)" for connection setting at "インターネットオプション (Internet option)" field of Internet Explorer in advance.

<Example> Changing under Windows Vista

- 1 Click  (Start)→"すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"Internet Explorer".  
■ Under Windows XP, Windows 2000  
Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→Click "Internet Explorer".
- 2 Click "ツール (Tool)"→"インターネットオプション (Internet option)".
- 3 Click "接続 (Connection)" tab→Select "ダイヤルしない (No dialing)".



- 4 Click "OK".

## Using connection software except for DOCOMO Connection Manager

DOCOMO Connection Manager includes same function as that of software below and using together is not required. Perform to change setting not to be activated or uninstall as required.

- mopera U start up tool
- mopera U connection & setting tool
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA Byte counter

And, when using Mzone (Public wireless LAN connection) by DOCOMO Connection Manager, uninstall the following public wireless LAN connection software.

And, when installing all at once, Mzone connection cannot be used by DOCOMO Connection Manager.

- U公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (U public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティソフト (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility software)
- ドコモ公衆無線LANユーティリティプログラム (DOCOMO public wireless LAN utility program)

## Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager

- After performing to install FOMA communication configuration file, when the screen for installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager appears, click "OK" and start from Step 4.
- When FOMA communication configuration file is installed already, start from Step 1.

<Example> Installing under Windows Vista

**1** Insert the CD-ROM into the PC's CD-ROM drive.

**2** Click "インターネット接続 (Internet connection)".



### 3 Click "インストール (Install)" field in Step ② of "本CD-ROMからのFOMAデータ通信の設定方法 (Setting method of FOMA data communication from this CD-ROM)".

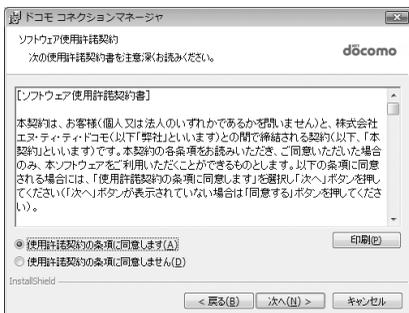


- For Windows XP, when the confirmation screen for installing of MSXML6/Wireless LAN API is displayed, click "Install" to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API. After performing to install MSXML6/Wireless LAN API, reboot Windows to start installation of DOCOMO Connection Manager automatically.

### 4 Click "次へ (Next)".

### 5 Check "注意事項 (Precautions)" and click "次へ (Next)".

### 6 Check the contents of ソフトウェア使用許諾契約 (Software license agreement) and if you agree to the agreement, select "使用許諾契約の条項に同意します (Agree to the clauses of the agreement)" and click "次へ (Next)".



### 7 Check the installing folder and click "次へ (Next)".

- To change the installation destination, click "変更 (Change)" and specify any installation destination.

### 8 Click "インストール (Install)".

Installation starts.

### 9 When the "InstallShieldウィザードを完了しました (Performed InstallShield wizard)" screen appears, click "完了 (Done)".

Installing DOCOMO Connection Manager is completed.

## INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a message notifying you to reboot Windows is displayed, follow the instruction of screen and reboot.
- Do not install during data communication.

## Starting DOCOMO Connection Manager

- Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

### <Example> Setting under Windows Vista

1 Click  (Start) → "すべてのプログラム (All Programs)" → "NTT DOCOMO" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

### ■ Under Windows XP, Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)" → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" (for Windows 2000, "プログラム (Program)" → "NTT DOCOMO" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)" → "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ (DOCOMO Connection Manager)".

DOCOMO Connection Manager starts.

When booting a PC at first time, the setting wizard screen appears automatically.



- According to the setting wizard, perform to set for making data communication connecting to Internet.

After setting, you can perform communication using DOCOMO Connection Manager.

For details, refer to "ドコモ コネクションマネージャ操作マニュアル (DOCOMO Connection Manager operation manual)".

## INFORMATION

- Just exiting the Internet browser or mail software may not disconnect communication. When you do not use communication, be sure to disconnect the communication from "切断する (Disconnect)" button of DOCOMO Connection Manager.
- Please note that if auto update is set for OS update etc., the software is updated automatically and high cost may be charged for the packet communication fee.



Connect/Disconnect button

## Setting communications without using DOCOMO Connection Manager

The method of dialup connection setup without DOCOMO Connection Manager is explained.

- When using an access point compatible with HIGH-SPEED such as mopera for packet communication, make settings using DOCOMO Connection Manager.

### Flow of dialup network setting

- Flow of setup for data communication→P4
- Before operating, make sure that a PC and FOMA terminal are properly connected.

#### Setting the dialup connection (APN)\*→P14

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to set.



#### Setting Show/Hide caller ID\*→P16

- Set as required.



#### Setting Dialup Network

- Setting for Windows Vista→P17
- Setting for Windows XP→P19
- Setting for Windows 2000→P22

\* Set for packet communication.

Communication software to input AT commands is required for settings.

The method of setting using "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)" that comes with Windows 2000 and Windows XP is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)". For Windows Vista, set using the software supported by Windows Vista (Follow the method for the software to be used.).

### Setting the dialup connection (APN)

#### The dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connections (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers (cid) between 1 and 10 in FOMA terminal. "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and "mopera.net" (APN) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register APN for cid2 or 4-10.

- For the dialup connections (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook entries registered for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and FOMA terminal phonebook is as shown below.

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection number in the dialup connection numbers setting.

## Setting the dialup connection (APN)

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

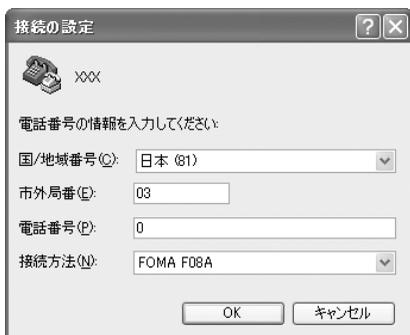
**1** Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" ("プログラム (Programs)" for Windows 2000)→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)".

**2** Enter the desired dialup connection name in "名前 (Name)"→Click "OK".



- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be used in "名前 (Name)".  
¥ / : \* ? < > | "

**3** Enter a fictional phone number (such as "0") for "電話番号 (Phone number)" → Check that "接続方法 (Connection method)" is set to "FOMA F08A" → Click "OK".



- "市外局番 (Area code)" differs depending on the PC environment. The code does not relate to Dialup connection (APN) setup. So no need to change.

**4** Click "キャンセル (Cancel)" on the "接続 (Connect)" screen.

**5** Enter the dialup connection (APN) in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, <PDP\_TYPE>, "<APN>" → .

<cid> : Enter any number between 2 or 4-10.  
<PDP\_TYPE> : IP or PPP  
<APN> : Dialup connection (APN)



- +CGDCONT command → P34 "Supplement to AT command"
- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press .

**6** Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)" → Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".

**7** When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)" → When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".

### Setting Show/Hide caller ID

You can set to show/hide call ID for packet communication at once.

Caller ID is your important information. Take care when deciding to disclose your caller ID.

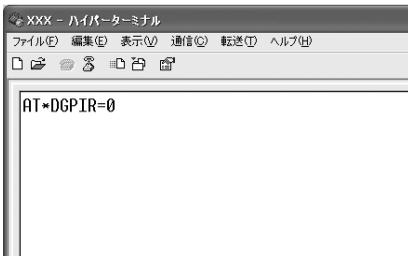
- If "Not notify" is set when using moper a U or moper a, connection is unavailable.

<Example> Setting under Windows XP

**1** Perform Step 1 - 4 in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)".

**2** Enter notify/not notify of caller ID in the format "AT \*DGPIR=<n>" → .

<n> : 0-2  
0 : Connect directly (Default)  
1 : Connect prefixing 184 (Not notify)  
2 : Connect prefixing 186 (Notify)



- If nothing is displayed even when AT command is entered, enter ATE1 and press .

**3** Check that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル (File)" → Click "ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)".

**4** When confirming disconnection, click "はい (Yes)" → When confirming saving, click "いいえ (No)".

## Show/Hide caller ID function by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) to the dialup connection number.

- The Show/Hide of caller ID when both of the \* DGPIR command and dialup network settings are set is as shown below.

Setting made by * DGPIR command \ Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	No setting	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
* 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.		

## Setting dialup network

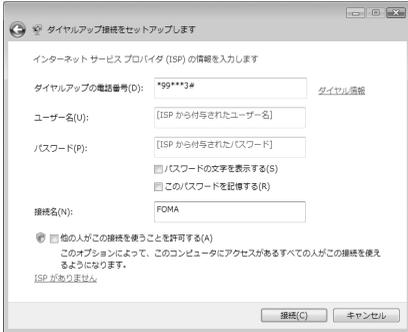
### Setting for Windows Vista

- 1 Click  (Start) → "接続先 (Dialup connection)".
- 2 Click "接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Set up connection or network)".
- 3 Select "ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up dialup connection)" and click "次へ (Next)".



- When the "どのモデムを使いますか? (Which modem will you use?)" screen is displayed Click "FOMA F08A".

- 4** Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Dialup phone number)" ("\*99\*\*<cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Enter "接続名 (Connection name)" and click "接続 (Connect)".  
 <cid> : P15 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	*99***3#	*8701
mopera	*99***1#	*9601

- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "接続名 (Connection name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.

¥/:\*?<>|

- 5** On the connecting screen, click "スキップ (Skip)".

- Only make settings without connecting to the Internet right away.

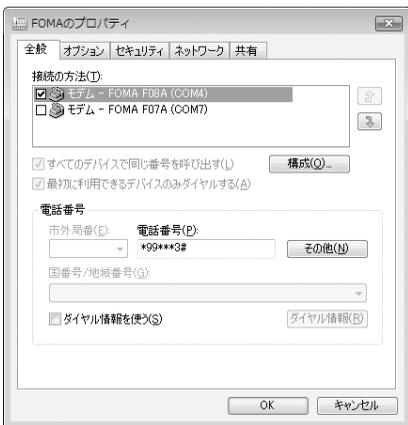
- 6** On the "インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in Internet connection test)" screen, click "接続をセットアップします (Set up connection)".

- 7** Click "閉じる (Close)".

- 8** Click  (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)".

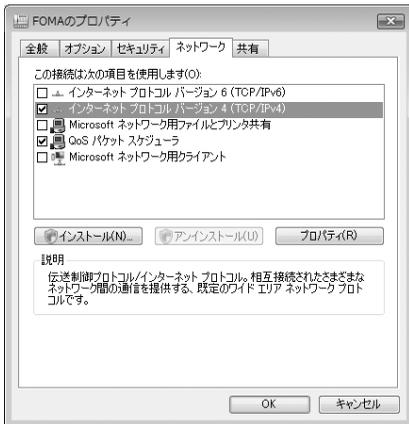
- 9** Right-click the dialup connection created and click "プロパティ (Property)".

- 10** Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, select only "モデム-FOMA F08A (Modem-FOMA F08A)" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (  ) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続の方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (  ) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

# 11 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below.



- Uncheck (  ) "インターネットプロトコルバージョン6 (TCP/IPv6) (Internet Protocol Version 6 (TCP/IPv6))".
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコルバージョン4 (TCP/IPv4) (Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set various information.
- When settings of "QoSパケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" and other items have been requested from the provider, etc., check/uncheck as required.

# 12 Click "オプション (Option)" tab→Click "PPP設定 (PPP settings)".

# 13 Uncheck all items ( ) and click "OK".



# 14 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P25

## Setting for Windows XP

# 1 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)".

# 2 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの開始 (New connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

# 3 Select "インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".

# 4 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually)" and click "次へ (Next)".

# 5 Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect)" and click "次へ (Next)".

### ■ When "デバイスの選択 (Device selection)" screen is displayed

Select only "モデム-FOMA F08A (Modem-FOMA F08A)" and click "次へ (Next)".

**6 Enter the desired dialup connection name in "ISP名 (ISP name)" → Click "次へ (Next)".**



- You cannot use "." (one-byte period) at the beginning of "ISP名 (ISP name)". Also, the following characters (one-byte) cannot be used.  
¥/:\*?<>|"

**7 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" \* 99 \* \* \* <cid>#) for packet communication) with one-byte → Click "次へ (Next)".**

<cid> : P15 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"



- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, enter as follows.

Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
mopera U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
mopera	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

**8 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" → Enter "パスワード (Password)" → Enter "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)" → Select all items as shown below and click "次へ (Next)".**



- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)", "パスワード (Password)" or "パスワードの確認入力 (Password confirmation entry)".

**9 On the "新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completion)" screen, click "完了 (Done)".**

**10 Click "スタート (Start)" → Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)" → "アクセサリ (Accessories)" → "通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)".**

# 11 Select the created dialup connection icon and click "ファイル (File)"→Click "プロパティ (Property)".



# 12 Check the setting of each item in "全般 (General)" tab.



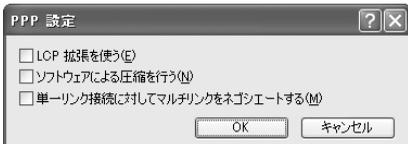
- When multiple modems are connected to a PC, select only "モデム-FOMA F08A (Modem-FOMA F08A)" at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field.
- Uncheck (  ) other than selected modem.
- COM port number assigned to the modem displayed at "接続方法 (Connection method)" field differs by the environment of a PC you use.
- Uncheck (  ) "ダイヤル情報を使う (Use dial information)".

# 13 Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below→Click "設定 (Settings)".



- Since "QoS/パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler)" settings in "この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection)" can not be changed, leave it as is.
- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc. select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP))", click "プロパティ (Property)" and set necessary information.

# 14 Uncheck all items ( ) and click "OK".



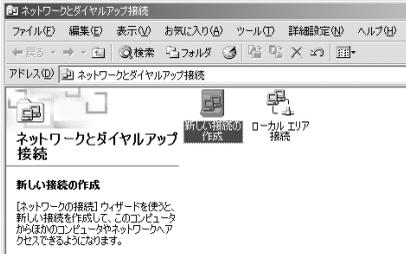
# 15 Click "OK".

Performing communication→P25

## Setting for Windows 2000

1 Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)".

2 Double-click "新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)" icon.



■ When "所在地情報 (Location information)" screen is displayed

- ① Enter the area code in "市外局番／エリアコード (Area code)"→Click "OK"
- ② Click "OK" on the "電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options)" screen.

3 On the "ネットワークの接続ウィザードの開始 (Network connection wizard start)" screen, click "次へ (Next)".

4 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet)" and click "次へ (Next)".

5 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN))" and click "次へ (Next)".

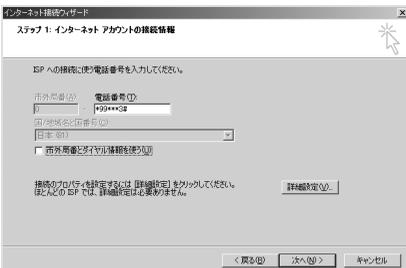
6 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem)" and click "次へ (Next)".

■ When "モデムの選択 (Modem selection)" screen is displayed

Select "FOMA F08A" and click "次へ (Next)".

7 Enter the phone number of the dialup connection in "電話番号 (Phone number)" (" \* 99 \* \* \* <cid>#" for packet communication) with one-byte→Click "詳細設定 (Detailed settings)".

<cid> : P15 The number registered in "Setting the dialup connection (APN)"

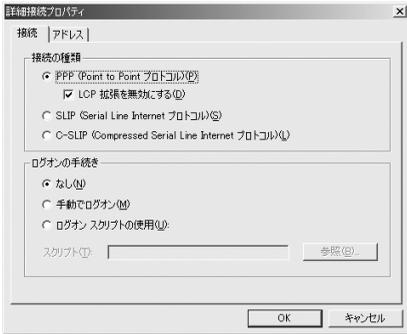


- When connecting to moper a U or moper a, enter as follows.

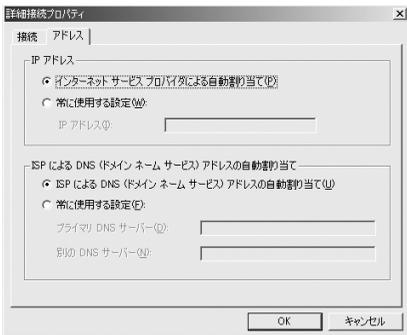
Dialup connection	Packet communication	64K data communication
moper a U	* 99 * * * 3#	* 8701
moper a	* 99 * * * 1#	* 9601

- Uncheck (  ) "市外局番とダイヤルアップ情報を使う (Use area code and dial information)".

## 8 Set each item in "接続 (Connection)" tab as shown below.



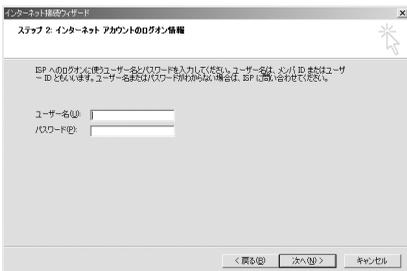
## 9 Click "アドレス (Address)" tab → Set each item.



- When settings of IP and DNS information have been requested from the provider, etc., set various information.
- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to change the setting.

## 10 Click "OK" → Click "次へ (Next)".

## 11 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" → Enter "パスワード (Password)" → Click "次へ (Next)".



- When the access point is mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)". When you click "次へ (Next)" and the screen to confirm the blank entry appears, click "はい (Yes)".



**17** Click "ネットワーク (Network)" tab→Set each item as shown below→Click "設定 (Settings)".



**18** Uncheck all items (  ) and click "OK".



**19** Click "OK".

Performing communication→P25

**Performing communication via dialup connection**

Starting communication and disconnection are explained here.

<Example> Performing communication under Windows Vista

**1** Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

USB cable connection→P5

**2** Click  (Start)→"接続先 (Dialup connection)"→Select the dialup connection and click "接続 (Connect)".

■ Under Windows XP

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "すべてのプログラム (All programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)"→Double-click the connection icon.

■ Under Windows 2000

Click "スタート (Start)"→Select "プログラム (Programs)"→"アクセサリ (Accessories)"→"通信 (Communication)" and click "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)"→Double-click the connection icon

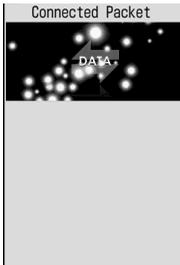
### 3 Enter "ユーザー名 (User name)"→Enter "パスワード (Password)"→Click "ダイヤル (Dial)".



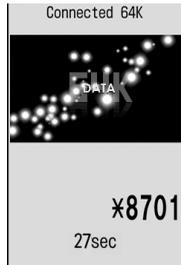
- When using mopera U or mopera, you do not need to enter "ユーザー名 (User name)" or "パスワード (Password)".
- When "ユーザー名 (User name)" was entered or "パスワード (Password)" was saved while settings, these entries are no longer necessary.
- Click "OK" when the connection established screen is displayed.

## INFORMATION

- FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet communication or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established.



For packet communication



For 64K data communication

- The communication speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- The communication is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.

## Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the PC browser may not disconnect communication. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation.

<Example> Under Windows Vista

- 1 Right-click  in the task tray→Select "切断 (Disconnect)" and click the dialup connection to disconnect.

### ■ Under Windows XP, Windows 2000

Click dialup icon in the task tray→Click "切断 (Disconnect)".

## AT command

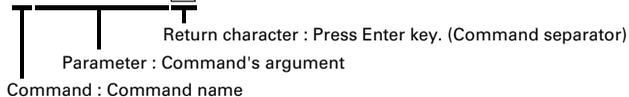
AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

### AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters.

<Example> Connecting to mopera U with ATD command

ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#



AT commands and their parameters must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character until the character directly preceding  must be entered on a single line. Each line can be up to 256 characters including "AT".

### AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, a PC must be in terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. When terminal mode is set, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

#### ● Offline mode

FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control it.

#### ● Online data mode

FOMA terminal is communicating. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the sent characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.

#### ● Online command mode

AT commands can be used even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

#### ■ Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures.

- Enter +++ command or code set in the S2 register.
- Turn the RS-232C\* ER signal OFF when set in "AT&D1".

\* The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO ".

### INFORMATION

- When making a call or sending an AT command from external device, it is sent from Number A with 2in1 in Dual mode or A mode, and from Number B in B mode.

## List of AT command

- AT command that can be used via the FOMA F08A (Modem).
- Entering "¥" may cause "\" to appear depending on the font setting for a PC or communication software.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
A/ A/ OK	Execute the previously executed command again. When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.
AT AT <input type="text"/> OK	Use commands on this list by prefixing to commands other than A/ or +++. When using only this command, "OK" is returned with FOMA terminal enabled for using AT commands.
ATA RING ATA <input type="text"/> CONNECT	Perform the receiving process when entered while receiving a packet communication or 64K data communication. The following commands can be entered when receiving a packet communication. ATA184 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function OFF ATA186 : Handling of incoming calls : Send caller ID function ON
ATD ATD *99 * * * 1# <input type="text"/> CONNECT 460800	ATD *99 * * * <cid># : Performs calling process for packet communication. If <cid> or * * * <cid> is omitted, <cid>=1 is set. ATD [parameter] [phone number] : Perform calling process for 64K data communication. Calling process is not permitted if phone number contains characters other than the following. 0-9, *, #, A, a, B, b, C, c The following characters and a space can be entered but are not recognized in dialing. ,(comma), !, -, @, D, d, P, p, T, t, W, w Setting Show/Hide caller ID is enabled by inserting 186 or 184 after ATD. ATDN or ATDL can be used for redial calling.
ATE<n> ATE1 <input type="text"/> OK	*1 Set whether FOMA terminal will return echo for command sent from a PC. n=0 : Echo OFF    n=1 : Echo ON (default) Normal usage is n=1. If the PC has an echo function, setting this command to n=0 prevents double display of characters.
ATH ATH <input type="text"/> NO CARRIER	Disconnect line when entered during a communication. Execute in online command mode.→P27
ATI<n> ATI0 <input type="text"/> NTT DoCoMo OK	Display the confirmation code. n=0 : "NTT DoCoMo"    n=1 : Display model name of FOMA terminal n=2 : Display version of FOMA terminal    n=3 : Display elements of ACMP signals n=4 : Display details of functions that can be communicated by FOMA terminal in numeric
ATO ATO <input type="text"/> CONNECT 460800	Return from online command mode to online data mode during communication.
ATQ<n> ATQ0 <input type="text"/> OK	*1 Set whether to display result code. n=0 : Display (default)    n=1 : Not display When ATQ1 is executed, "OK" is not returned.
ATS0=<n> ATS0=0 <input type="text"/> OK	*1 Set number of rings until FOMA terminal receives communication automatically. n=0 : Not receive automatically (default) n=1-255 : Receive automatically with specified number of rings ATS0? : Display current settings
ATS2=<n> ATS2=43 <input type="text"/> OK	Set escape character. n=0-127 (default : n=43)    When n=127 is set, escape is unavailable. ATS2? : Display current settings
ATS3=<n> ATS3=13 <input type="text"/> OK	Set the carriage return (CR) character that identifies the end of AT command character string. Appended to end of echoed command character string and result code. n=13 (fixed value) ATS3? : Display current settings

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
ATS4=<n> ATS4=10 [↵] OK	Set the line feed (LF) character. When result code is displayed as alphabetic characters, appends the character after the carriage return (CR) character. n=10 (fixed value) ATS4? : Display current settings
ATS5=<n> ATS5=8 [↵] OK	Set the back space (BS) character. When this character is detected during command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. n=8 (fixed value) ATS5? : Display current settings
ATS6=<n> ATS6=5 [↵] OK	Set pause time (seconds) until dialing commences but do not operate. n= : 2-10 (default : n=5) ATS6? : Display current settings
ATS8=<n> ATS8=3 [↵] OK	Set pause time (seconds) until commas are dialed but do not operate. n=0-255 (default : n=3) ATS8? : Display current settings
ATS10=<n> *1 ATS10=1 [↵] OK	Set the delay time (1/10 seconds) for automatic disconnection but do not operate. n=1-255 (default : n=1) ATS10? : Display current settings
ATS30=<n> ATS30=0 [↵] OK	Set a period of time (minutes) with no data transmission/reception to terminate the connection for 64K data communications. n=0-255 : (default : n=0, n=0 indicates that inactive timer is set to OFF.) ATS30? : Display current settings
ATS103=<n> ATS103=1 [↵] OK	Set the separator used to append and send received sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : *    n=1 : / (default)    n=2 : ¥ or \ ATS103? : Display current settings
ATS104=<n> ATS104=1 [↵] OK	Set the separator used to append and send outgoing sub addresses in 64K data communication. n=0 : #    n=1 : % (default)    n=2 : & ATS104? : Display current settings
ATV<n> *1 ATV1 [↵] OK	Set result code display method. n=0 : Number display    n=1 : Alphabetical display (default) When ATV0 is executed, "0" is not returned to the same line.
ATX<n> *1 ATX4 [↵] OK	Set whether to detect busy or dial tones and whether to display the speed in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. Busy tone detection : Send "BUSY" response when dialup connection is busy. Dial tone detection : Detect whether FOMA terminal is connected. n=0 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed is displayed n=1 : No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=2 : No busy tone, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=3 : Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed is displayed n=4 : Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed is displayed (default) When n=0 is set, AT&E and AT¥V command will be unavailable.
ATZ *3 ATZ [↵] OK (When in offline mode)	Reset the current setting to the registered state. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT%V AT%V [↵] Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT&C<n> *1 AT&C1 [↵] OK	Set the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE. n=0 : Always ON    n=1 : Vary according to line connection status (default) When set to n=0, the CD signal is set to ON directly before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF directly before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT&D<n> *1 AT&D2 [↵] OK	Set the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF while online data mode takes effect. n=0 : Ignore status (status is always considered to be ON) n=1 : Move to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF n=2 : Disconnect line and move to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default)
AT&E<n> *1 AT&E1 [↵] OK	Set the speed display used when connection is made. n=0 : Display communication speed of wireless zone n=1 : Display communication speed between a PC and FOMA terminal (default)
AT&F AT&F [↵] OK (When in offline mode)	Reset the current setting to the default. When this command is executed during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected (displaying "NO CARRIER").
AT&S<n> *1 AT&S0 [↵] OK	Set control of the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE. n=0 : Always ON (default)    n=1 : ON at time of connection
AT&W AT&W [↵] OK	Register the current settings in FOMA terminal.
AT * DANTE AT * DANTE [↵] * DANTE : 3 OK	Indicate FOMA terminal reception level in the " * DANTE : <n>" format. n=0 : Out of service area n=1 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 0 or 1 antenna. n=2 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 2 antennas. n=3 : Received signal level of FOMA terminal is 3 antennas. AT * DANTE=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT * DGANSM=<n> *2 AT * DGANSM=0 [↵] OK	Set to reject or permit incoming packet communications. n=0 : Reject setting = OFF, Accept setting = OFF (default) n=1 : Reject setting=ON    n=2 : Accept setting=ON AT * DGANSM? : Display current settings AT * DGANSM=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DGAPL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT * DGAPL=0,1 [↵] OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to permit incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN permitted for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN permitted for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to/deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT * DGAPL? : Display current settings AT * DGAPL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DGARL=<n> [,<cid>] *2 AT * DGARL=0,1 [↵] OK	Set the dialup connections (APN) to refuse incoming packet communications. APN uses <cid> defined by +CGDCONT command. n=0 : Add to list of APN rejected for incoming communications n=1 : Delete from list of APN rejected for incoming communications If the <cid> is not defined by the +CGDCONT command, it can still be added to/deleted from the list. If the <cid> is omitted, all the <cid> are added to/deleted from the list. AT * DGARL? : Display current settings AT * DGARL=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DGPIR=<n> *2 AT * DGPIR=0 [↵] OK	Set Caller ID notification when packet communication connection is being performed. This command is available when a communication is sent or received. n=0 : Connect to APN directly (default)    n=1 : Connect to APN prefixing 184 n=2 : Connect to APN prefixing 186 When Show/Hide caller ID is specified by dialup network→P17 AT * DGPIR? : Display current settings AT * DGPIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT * DRPW AT * DRPW [↵] * DRPW : 0 OK	Indicate an index for the reception power of the radio waves that FOMA terminal receive. AT * DRPW=? : Display a list of displayable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CAOC AT+CAOC [↵] +CAOC : "000024" OK	Display last call cost.
AT+CBC AT+CBC [↵] +CBC : 0,100 OK	Display FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC : <bc>,<bcl>" format. bc=0 : Powered by the battery pack      bc=1 : Not powered by the battery pack bc=2 : Battery pack removed            bc=3 : Power-supply error bcl=0 : No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1-100 : Battery remained AT+CBC=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 *1 AT+CBST=116,1,0 [↵] OK	Set the line to use (Setting of bearer service) n=116 : 64K data communication (default)    n=134 : 64K videophone AT+CBST? : Display current settings AT+CBST=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CDIP=<n> *1 AT+CDIP=0 OK	Set whether to notify received sub address. And, subscription status of Multi Number can be confirmed. n=0 : The information of sub address is not displayed. (default) n=1 : The information of sub address is displayed. m=0 : Multi Number not subscribed.    m=1 : Multi Number subscribed. AT+CDIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CDIP:<n>,<m>" format AT+CDIP=? : List of the settable values is displayed.
AT+CEER AT+CEER [↵] +CEER : 36 OK	Display the reason of immediate disconnection. Disconnection reason list→P34
AT+CGDCONT *2 →P34	Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.→P34
AT+CGEQMIN *2 →P35	Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.→P35
AT+CGEQREQ *2 →P35	Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.→P35
AT+CGMR AT+CGMR [↵] 1234567890123456 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+CGREG=<n> *1 AT+CGREG=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to report network service registration status (Within/Out). n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CGREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of packet service area      stat=1 : Within packet service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within packet service area (during international roaming) AT+CGREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CGREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CGREG=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CGSN AT+CGSN [↵] 123456789012345 OK	Display FOMA terminal serial No.
AT+CLIP=<n> *1 AT+CLIP=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to display sender's caller ID on a PC when receiving 64K data communication. n=0 : Not display result (default)      n=1 : Display result m=0 : Network setting not to send caller ID m=1 : Network setting to send caller ID      m=2 : Unknown AT+CLIP? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIP : <n>,<m>" format AT+CLIP=? : Display a list of assignable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CLIR=<n> *2 AT+CLIR=2 [↵] OK	Set Caller ID notification when sending 64K data communication. n=0 : Use the setting in service agreement n=1 : Not send n=2 : Send (default) m=0 : CLIR not operating (always sends) m=1 : CLIR operating (never sends) m=2 : Unknown m=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send) m=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default=sends) AT+CLIR?: Display the current settings and status in the "+CLIR : <n>,<m>" format AT+CLIR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CMEE=<n> *1 AT+CMEE=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to display an error report at FOMA terminal. n=0 : Display "ERROR" and no result code (default) n=1 : Use result code, displaying reason as number n=2 : Use result code, displaying reason as alphabetic characters Display reasons in the "+CME ERROR : xxxx" format when n=1 or n=2 is set (xxxx = number or alphabetic characters).→P34 "Error messages list" AT+CMEE?: Display current settings AT+CMEE=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CNUM AT+CNUM [↵] +CNUM : ,"090XXXXXXXX", 129 OK	Display FOMA terminal's own phone number in the "+CNUM : ,<numbers>,<type>" format. number : Own phone number (With 2in1, display Number A in Dual mode or A mode and Number B in B mode) type=129 : International access code + not included type=145 : International access code + included
AT+COPS=<n>,2,<oper> *2 AT+COPS=0 [↵] OK	Set search method for network operator to connect. n=0 : Auto (default) n=1 : Manual n=3 : No mapping When n=1 is set, set PLMN Number in hexadecimal value for <oper>. AT+COPS?: Display current settings AT+COPS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CPAS AT+CPAS [↵] +CPAS : 0 OK	Display whether FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS : <n>" format. n=0 : Possible n=1 : Impossible n=2 : Status unknown n=3 : Possible and receiving n=4 : Possible and communicating AT+CPAS=? : Display a list of displayable values
AT+CPIN="<pin>"," <newpin>" AT+CPIN="0000" [↵] OK	Enter these commands for entering PIN/PIN2 codes or PUK with PIN code ON. To enter PUK, enter new PIN/PIN2 code in <newpin>. Even if entering in <newpin> when entry of PIN/PIN2 code is request, PIN/PIN2 code cannot be changed. n=READY : Entry of code not requested n=SIM PIN : Entry of PIN code waited n=SIM PIN2 : Entry of PIN2 code waited n=SIM PUK : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN code n=SIM PUK2 : Entry of PUK waited due to failure in unblocking PIN2 code AT+CPIN? : Display the code currently requested in "+CPIN : <n>" format
AT+CR=<n> *1 AT+CR=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to display the communication type before "CONNECT" is displayed during connection. n=0 : Not display (default) n=1 : Display the communication type in the "+CR : <serv>" format serv=GPRS : Packet communication serv=SYNC : 64K data communication serv=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CR?: Display current settings AT+CR=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CRC=<n> *1 AT+CRC=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to use +CRING result codes when communication is received. n=0 : Not use (default) n=1 : Use "+CRING : <type>" result codes type=GPRS "PPP",,"<APN>" : Packet communication type=SYNC : 64K data communication type=AV64K : 64K videophone AT+CRC?: Display current settings AT+CRC=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+CREG=<n> *1 AT+CREG=0 [↵] OK	Set whether to report network service registration status (Within/Out). n=0 : Not notified (default) n=1 : When the terminal is moved from Within service area to Out of service area or vice versa, the status is reported in the "+CREG : <stat>" format. stat=0 : Out of sound service area stat=1 : Within sound service area stat=4 : Unknown stat=5 : Within sound service area (during international roaming) AT+CREG? : Display the current settings and status in the "+CREG : <n>,<stat>" format AT+CREG=? : Display a list of assignable values

Upper slot : Command Lower slot : Example	Description
AT+CUSD=<n>,"<str>" *1 AT+CUSD=0,"012345678" OK	Set Additional service (Register USSD) of Network Services. Enter Service code provided by DOCOMO in <str>. n=0 : Not answer mid result (default) n=1 : Answer mid result in "+CUSD : <m>, "<str>","0" format m=0 : Information not requested m=1 : Information requested AT+CUSD? : Display current settings AT+CUSD=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+FCLASS=<n> *1 AT+FCLASS=0 OK	Set communication type supported by FOMA terminal. n=0 : Only data supported (fixed value) AT+FCLASS? : Display current settings AT+FCLASS=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+GCAP AT+GCAP +GCAP : +CGSM,+FCLASS, +W OK	Display the range of AT commands supported by FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP : <n>" format. n=+CGSM : Support GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part) n=+FCLASS : Support +FCLASS commands n=+W : Support +W commands
AT+GMI AT+GMI FUJITSU OK	Display FOMA terminal manufacturer name.
AT+GMM AT+GMM FOMA F08A OK	Display model name of FOMA terminal.
AT+GMR AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK	Display FOMA terminal version.
AT+IFC=<n,m> *1 AT+IFC=2,2 OK	Set how to control local flow between a PC and FOMA terminal. n, m=0 : No flow control n, m=1 : Perform XON/XOFF flow control n, m=2 : Perform RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default) AT+IFC? : Display the current settings in the "+IFC:<n>,<m>" format (n and m indicate values of DCE by DET and DTE by DCE, respectively) AT+IFC=? : List of the settable values is displayed.
AT+WS46=<n> *1	Display wireless network used when sending communication in n number. When entering AT+WS46=<n>, ERROR is returned because it cannot be changed. n=12 : GSM network n=22 : 3G network (FOMA) n=25 : GSM or 3G network (FOMA) (default) AT+WS46? : Display current settings AT+WS46=? : Display a list of assignable values
AT+Z AT+Z E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 · · · (snip) · · · S104=001 OK	Display the currently set commands and S register settings.
AT+ZV<n> *1 AT+ZV0 OK	Set whether to use expanded result codes when connection is made. n=0 : Not use expanded result codes (default) n=1 : Use expanded result codes
+++ +++ (not displayed) OK	Move from online data mode to online command mode when entered during a communication. The escape guard interval is 1 second (fixed value).

\*1 Registered in FOMA terminal by &W command.

\*2 Not reset by &F and Z commands.

\*3 When Z command is executed before the &W command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

## Disconnection reason list

### ■ Packet communication

Value	Description
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

### ■ 64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	The remote device is called but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

## Error messages list

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM
15	SIM wrong	Other than DOCOMO SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

## Supplement to AT command

- <cid> is the number used to control dialup connection (APN) for packet communication to be registered in FOMA terminal. "1-10" can be registered in FOMA terminal. An APN "mopera.ne.jp" (PPP connection) to connect to mopera is registered in cid1 and an APN "mopera.net" (IP connection) to connect to mopera U is registered in cid3 by default.

<APN> is an optional string for each connection to indicate dialup connection.

### ■ Command name : +CGDCONT=[parameter]

- **Outline**  
Sets dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.
- **Format**  
+CGDCONT= [<cid> [, "<PDP\_TYPE>" [, "<APN>"] ] ]
- **Parameter description**  
<cid> : 1-10  
<PDP\_TYPE> : IP or PPP  
<APN> : Optional

#### • Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" for PPP connection (when <cid> =2).

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc" 
```

OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**  
 AT+CGDCONT= : Return all <cid> to the setting by default.  
 AT+CGDCONT=<cid> : Return the specified <cid> to the setting by default.  
 AT+CGDCONT? : Display current settings.  
 AT+CGDCONT=? : Display a list of assignable values.

## ■ Command name : +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

Set the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) provisioned by the network when packet communication is established.

- **Format**

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid> [,<Maximum bitrate UL> [,<Maximum bitrate DL> ] ]

- **Parameter description**

<cid> : 1-10

<Maximum bitrate UL> : None (default) or 384

<Maximum bitrate DL> : None (default) or 7232

\* For <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL>, the maximum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. If "384" and "7232" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

- **Example of execution**

(1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQMIN=2

OK

(2) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and 7232kbps download (when <cid>=4)

AT+CGEQMIN=4,,384,7232

OK

(3) Command used to permit only 384kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)

AT+CGEQMIN=5,,384

OK

(4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 7232kbps download (when <cid>=6)

AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,7232

OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

AT+CGEQMIN= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays current settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

## ■ Command name : +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

- **Outline**

Set QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network at the transmission of packet communication.

- **Format**

AT+CGEQREQ= [<cid>]

- **Parameter description**

Only commands that require connection at 64-384kbps upload, 64-7232kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each <cid>.

<cid> : 1-10

- **Example of execution**

(when <cid>=3)

AT+CGEQREQ=3

OK

- **Operation performed when parameter is omitted**

AT+CGEQREQ= : Returns all <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays current settings.

AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of assignable values.

## Result codes

- When ATV command is set to n=1 (default), the result code is displayed in alphabetic characters. When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed numerically. → P29

### ■ Result codes

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to other party
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completed connection Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	Network restriction in place (The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.)
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted

### ■ Extended result code

- When AT&E is set to n=0

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and base station
122	CONNECT 64000	64000bps
125	CONNECT 384000	384000bps
133	CONNECT 3648000	3648000bps
135	CONNECT 7232000	7232000bps

- When AT&E is set to n=1

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and a PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1200bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2400bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4800bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7200bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9600bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14400bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19200bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38400bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57600bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115200bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230400bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460800bps

\* To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to a PC with a USB cable function.

## ■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connect via 64K data communication (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
3	AV64K	Connect via 64K videophone
5	PACKET	Connect via packet communication

## ■ Display example of result code

### When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the settings of AT $\neq$ V command, only "CONNECT" is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#  
CONNECT

Number display example : ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#  
1

### When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1, AT $\neq$ V0 (default) is set

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format : "CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>".

Text display example : ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#  
CONNECT 460800

Number display example : ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#  
1 21

- When ATX1, AT $\neq$ V1 is set<sup>\*1</sup>

The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format.

"CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal - PC> <Communication protocol> <dialup connection (APN)>/<upstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal→radio base station)>/<downstream maximum speed (between FOMA terminal←radio base station)>"<sup>\*2</sup>

Text display example : ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/384/7232  
(Indicates the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 384kbps and a maximum download speed of 7232kbps.)

Number display example : ATD \* 99 \* \* \* 3#  
1 21 5

\*1 When ATX1 and AT $\neq$ V1 are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only AT $\neq$ V0 be used.

\*2 When AT $\neq$ V1 is set, <dialup connection (APN)> and the following are displayed only when packet is used for connection.

# Kuten Code List

For entering characters using code, see "Entering characters using code" in the attached manual.  
 Note that some characters in the code input list may look different from actual ones.

1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code									1st -3rd	4th digit of code								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
010										081	上	十	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	203	款	飲	漢	潤	漣	瀧	看
011										082	十	十	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	204	管	管	緩	肝	監	監	観
012										083	十	十	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	205	誦	誦	邊	閑	閑	閑	館
013																						206	誦	邊	邊	閑	閑	閑	館
014										130												207	廣	廣	廣	閑	閑	閑	館
015										131												208							
016										132												209							
017										133												210							
018										134												211							
019										135												212							
020										136												213							
021										137												214							
022										138												215							
023										139												216							
024																						217							
026										160												218							
027										161												219							
028										162												220							
029										164												221							
031										164												222							
032										165												223							
033										166												224							
034										167												225							
035										168												226							
036										169												226							
037										170												227							
038										171												228							
039										172												229							
040										173												230							
041										172												231							
042										173												232							
043										173												232							
044										174												232							
045										174												233							
046										175												234							
047										176												235							
048										177												236							
048										178												237							
050										179												238							
051										179												239							
052										180												240							
053										181												241							
054										180												242							
055										182												243							
056										182												242							
057										182												243							
058										183												243							
060										184												244							
061										185												245							
062										186												246							
063										187												247							
064										188												248							
065										189												249							
070										190												250							
071										191												251							
072										192												252							
073										193												253							
074										194												254							
075										195												255							
076										196												256							
077										197												257							
078										199												258							
078										200												259							
080										201												260							
080										202												261							





